

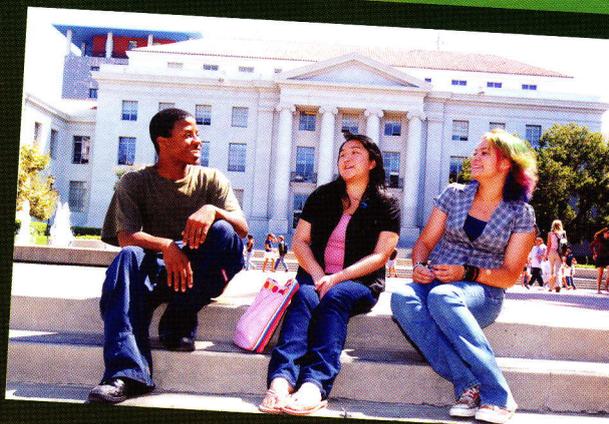
Jarmila Fictumová, John Ceccarelli, Tony Long

Angličtina

konverzace pro pokročilé

*Topic-based Vocabulary
for Advanced Learners*

Moderní učebnice prověřená mnohaletou praxí
doplněná e-learningovou podporou



To the teacher

This new edition of the *Green Book* seeks to make your classroom work easier and more efficient. By using it, you can prepare students for various higher-level exams or simply improve their word-power and language competence in general. **An answer key with tapescripts and an English-Czech vocabulary** have been included in the textbook. The authors - American, British and Czech - have tried to maintain a balance by providing both **British** and **American** usage.

To the student

This textbook should give you an idea of the level of English required for more advanced examinations. Relevant and interesting material has been supplemented with lexical exercises. **Practice makes perfect, And more practice...** are exercises aimed at providing more context, idioms, metaphors and euphemisms. The other exercises are mostly meant for classroom use. However, you can work on your own, without a teacher, since there is an **answer key**. There are a few longer texts for **reading** comprehension, and each unit has a **listening** comprehension exercise.

Prioritising Vocabulary

It would be unrealistic to expect any student to learn and retain all the words related to any topic. If you have already dealt with the topic, you can put your knowledge to use in the many speaking and discussion activities provided, as well as “topping up” your vocabulary in each topic. If you are seeing much of the vocabulary for the first time, a process of prioritising is recommended. You should decide for yourself if you need an item, and should not try to learn everything at once. **We recommend methodical revision.** After studying several topics, you should revise earlier ones and in the process, add some of the vocabulary that you did not study the first time round. In closing, we hope that you will enjoy using the book and wish you all the best for your further studies of English. *The authors* .

Acknowledgements

This book has evolved from vocabulary lists added to by generations of teachers of the Brno Language School. After the Velvet Revolution, the first booklet was published with the help of the native speakers working at the school at that time, the major part being rewritten by Tony Long. The greater part of the second edition, published by the State Language School in Brno, was added by John Ceccarelli in collaboration with many others (in particular Ondřej Matuška, who formatted the book), all of whom I would like to thank here. My thanks also go to Anne Johnson for proofreading this new edition of the textbook. Last but not least, my thanks go to my friends and family for their support and understanding. *JF*

ANGLIČTINA

KONVERZACE PRO POKROČILÉ

Topic-based Vocabulary for Advanced Learners

ANGLIČTINA

KONVERZACE PRO POKROČILÉ

Topic-based Vocabulary for Advanced Learners

Slovo úvodem

Kniha vznikala v průběhu několika desetiletí na Státní jazykové škole v Brně (SJS), nejprve jako průběžně aktualizovaný seznam slovíček. Tak také poprvé vyšla tiskem v roce 1993, doplněna otázkami. Když byl během pěti let náklad rozebrán, vznikl nápad přidat cvičení a obrázky a vytvořit tak učebnici. Byla psána s představou, že bude sloužit nejen studentům SJS, ale také pokročilým studentům angličtiny u nás i jinde v Evropě. Poprvé ji vydala SJS začátkem roku 1999 nákladem 3 000 výtisků. Součástí učebnice byla kazeta. Užívání učebnice si vynutilo vytvoření anglicko-českého glosáře výrazů z jednotlivých lekcí s uvedením výslovnosti u obtížných výrazů, který je nyní v upravené verzi součástí této učebnice. Po celou dobu se na tvorbě učebnice podíleli vyučující SJS, kteří prováděli velmi podrobné korektury a zároveň materiály používali ve výuce. Učebnice proslula jako „zelená kniha“ kvůli barvě obálky. „Vocabulary Lists“ vyšly v roce 2002, stejně jako opravená a doplněná učebnice se dvěma kazetami – nákladem 7 000 výtisků.

Spoluautor John Ceccarelli (Američan) žije v současné době v Praze a Tony Long (Brit) žije střídavě v ČR a ve Velké Británii. (Jeho texty jsou v knize označeny iniciálami *TL*.) Jarmila Fictumová učí praktický jazyk a překlad na Katedře anglistiky a amerikanistiky Filozofické fakulty Masarykovy univerzity v Brně.

Učebnice svým pojetím vyhovuje mentalitě českých, slovenských i německy mluvících studentů. Zároveň však vychází z tradice anglických učebnic a soustavně rozvíjí všechny čtyři řečové dovednosti – mluvení, poslech, čtení i psaní – má celou řadu rozmanitých typů cvičení. Témata jsou logicky seřazena do skupin:

FAMILY, HOME, FOOD, SHOPPING, CLOTHES,
WORK & LEISURE, COMMUNICATION, TOWN & COUNTRY, SIGHTSEEING, TRAVEL

FARMING, CLIMATE, NATURE,
THE HUMAN BODY, HEALTH, SPORT,
MEDIA, CULTURE, EDUCATION, HOLIDAYS, MODERN SOCIETY

Toto nové, moderní vydání učebnice může sloužit širokému okruhu pokročilých studentů, kteří se připravují na **různé typy zkoušek u nás i v zahraničí (úroveň B2–C2 dle Společného evropského referenčního rámce)**, v kurzech nebo sami, neboť **obsahuje klíč ke cvičením** a další doplňkové materiály. Poslechová cvičení na přiloženém CD jsou ve formátu MP3. Toto CD rovněž obsahuje další studijní materiály – otázky a překladové věty k jednotlivým tématům. Je také možno využívat ZDARMA on-line testy a podrobné slovníčky k jednotlivým stranám učebnice na e-learningovém portálu Masarykovy univerzity:

<http://eldum.phil.muni.cz/course/view.php?id=19>

Jarmila Fictumová

FAMILY

1 In groups of four, based on what you know from television or personal experience, describe the typical British or American family. In your group prepare a short report for the other students. Then in pairs briefly describe your own families and report to the other pair.

2 Try to answer the questions on the right before reading the text. Then read it and see if you were right.

FAMILY VALUES, OLD AND NEW

In Britain and around the world, the image of the family continues to change. The traditional “Victorian family”, in which the man was the breadwinner, the woman the homemaker, and the children numerous and obedient, is giving way to new ideas about what the modern family should look like.

One of the most obvious characteristics of the new family is that there are not always two parents. Due mostly to the rise in divorces since World War II, single-parent families are becoming more and more frequent and accepted in British society. Usually, it is the mother who takes responsibility for raising the child, and she has to balance the pressures of earning a living and raising her children at the same time.

However, even in families with both parents present, many mothers are giving up the role of homemaker and pursuing their own careers. Some go on maternity leave after their children are born and then take up part-time work when the child is old enough to go to school. Others feel that their careers come first, and wait until they have fully established their career before having children.

Another area that has changed significantly is what happens before marriage. In the past, people lived with their parents until they got married, and each marriage was supposed to be a “white wedding”. Today, premarital sex and living together before marriage are considered normal, and many people “try out” their relationship by living together before getting married.

These changes, together with other changes such as mixed marriages, have altered the face of British society. Some people deplore them as a breakdown of traditional values. Others praise them as expressions of greater tolerance and diversity. But one thing is for sure: British families are changing and will continue to change.

- 1 In the traditional Victorian family, the man
 - a was never contradicted.
 - b made bread for the family.
 - c was the sole provider for the family.
 - d shared responsibility for the family budget with the wife.
- 2 The main reason for the rise in single-parent families is
 - a the increase in premarital sex.
 - b that many men were killed in World War II.
 - c that some women put their careers before their children.
 - d the increase in broken marriages.
- 3 One of the main reasons for living together before getting married is that
 - a couples want to see how well they get on before getting married.
 - b couples have to balance earning a living with raising a child.
 - c traditional values have broken down in Britain.
 - d premarital sex is on the rise.
- 4 Find a word in the text that means:
 - a changed
 - b acceptance of different lifestyles
 - c speak with approval of
 - d say that one strongly dislikes something

DATING



1 You are working in a computer dating agency. Here are the personal descriptions of six of your clients. Try to find the best match for each client. Give reasons for your choice. Then decide which is the least likely match. You may find some help in the 'Dating' box on the following page.

Jane

- 28 years old.
- Beautician.
- Short; wonderful figure.
- Shoulder-length curly blonde hair.
- Talkative and easy-going, loves to have a laugh.
- Enjoys throwing parties in her flat, going out with girlfriends, or just curling up in front of the TV with a glass of wine. Says she just wants somebody to have some fun with.

Susan

- 21 years old.
- University student.
- Tall and slim.
- Long dark hair.
- Relaxed in small groups but rather shy in big groups; quite serious and ambitious but likes to have fun as well.
- Loves animals; likes taking her dogs on long walks in the countryside, going to the pictures, and quiet evenings at home. Wants a meaningful relationship.

Ed

- 29 years old.
- Researcher on a scientific project.
- Tall and well-built.
- Long, straight brown hair and brown eyes.
- Very talkative and sociable, energetic, always on the go.
- Likes mountain biking, outdoor life, and going to parties and to the pub. Prefers big groups of people but also likes more intimate situations.

Peter

- 19 years old.
- Bricklayer.
- Short and stocky.
- Very short blond hair.
- Outgoing and friendly; has a very cynical sense of humour.
- Likes playing football, hanging out with his friends, and going for ski-trips to the mountains. Likes his free time and doesn't want too serious a relationship.

Mike

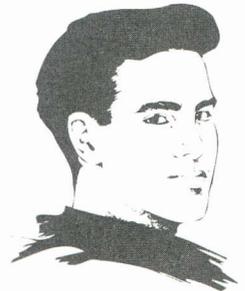
- 42 years old.
- University professor.
- Medium height.
- Short curly grey hair and beard.
- Quiet and reserved; can be moody, intellectual.
- Likes going to the theatre and classical concerts; prefers one-to-one situations to large groups. Is looking for a like-minded woman to share a serious relationship.

Mary

- 37 years old.
- Computer programmer.
- Fairly short and very pretty.
- Divorced with one adult child.
- Quiet but energetic. Doesn't mind big groups of people but prefers smaller intimate situations.
- Likes jogging, swimming, and travelling. Wants someone to have fun with but nothing too serious.

2 Underline the adjectives describing personal qualities on the preceding page and then position them in the space below. They do not have to be in columns. Your positioning of them is personal – there is no right or wrong answer.

NEGATIVE	NEUTRAL	POSITIVE
	<i>intellectual</i>	<i>quiet</i>



3 You think of yourself as an accomplished matchmaker and you think your friend needs help. Write a computer dating profile about them – use your imagination!

4 Now write a description of your ideal partner. In pairs, compare the descriptions of your ideal partners. In what ways are they similar? In what ways do they differ?

5 Look at the pictures on the right. Agree on a name for each person. Which characteristics would you use when talking about them?



Dating

Expressing opinion
I think / believe / feel that...

In my opinion...
It seems to me that...
As I see it...
Personally, I think...

Talking about people
always on the go
mellow
tolerant
funny
eternal optimist
irritable
moody
hilarious

hypercritical
aggressive
can't get it together
to sleep with anybody /
sleep around
sharp-tongued
sarcastic
talented
intelligent
thoughtful
do anything for anyone
broad / open-minded
considerate
fun-loving
cheerful
sympathetic

Getting together
to make small talk
to see each other
to date sb (US)
to go out together
to go steady (US)
to take sb out
to make a good match
to chat sb up (GB)
dating agency
computer dating
handsome
"lonely hearts" ads (GB) /
personal ads (US)
childhood sweetheart

matchmaker
high-school
sweetheart (US)
infatuation / crush
to break off the
engagement
to dump sb
to split up / break up
to let sb down
to walk out on sb
fiancé, fiancée
to become engaged to
engagement ring
to move in with sb
living together

INVITATIONS

1  Below are two scrambled dialogues in which someone invites someone else to do something. Put the dialogues into order. Then listen and check if you were right.

Mark calls up Jamie and asks her out to a movie.

- J: Great. I'll see you then. Bye.
M: How about tomorrow night at 8:00? We could go and get something to eat first and then maybe go out for a drink afterwards.
J: Sounds great! When should we do it?
M: Bye.
J: Mmm. You know, tomorrow's out for me. I've already got something planned. Why don't we make it Thursday night instead?
M: Hi, Jamie! This is Mark. Listen, I was wondering if you wanted to go and see that new Spielberg film.
J: Hello, Jamie speaking.
M: Sounds good to me. So I'll pick you up at around 6:00, okay?

Joe meets Anne in the street and invites her to a party.

- J: Well, you can always come out after dinner. We'll be going all night.
A: Yeah, I'd love to... Oh, wait a minute. What time on Saturday?
J: Sure. Maybe next time.
A: I know, but I have to work early on Sunday morning. Thanks anyway.
J: I don't know. It'll probably start sometime around nine. Why?
A: Oh, shame! I can't make it on Saturday night. I'm going to dinner with my mother.
J: Hey Anne! I'm having a party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

2 The people in the picture are discussing invitations. Choose either of the two pictures and write a similar conversation between the two people. Then, act it out to the class.

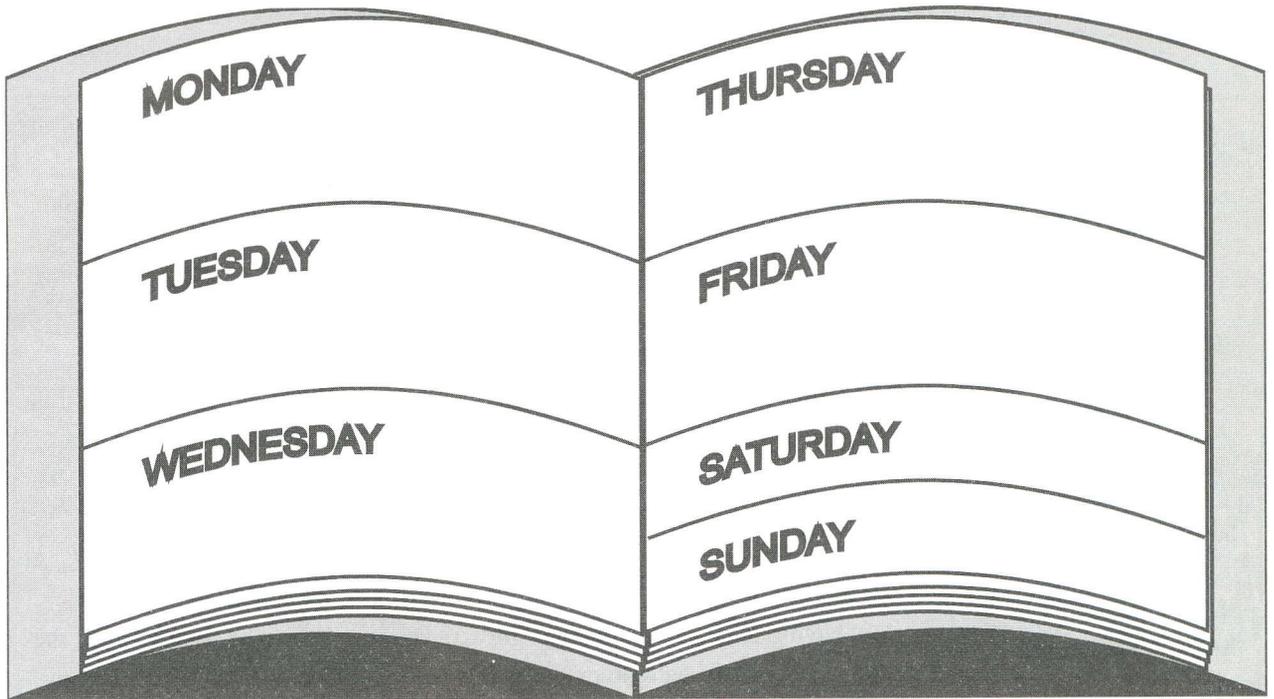
N.B. A good invitation starts by saying what is planned and then asking the person to join in.

Example: I'm having a party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

! Try **NOT** to start off a spoken invitation with "I would like to invite you to" or "Do you have time tonight?"



3 Look at the pages of the appointment book below and fill in any three days with appointments. Then turn to your neighbour and arrange a date on a day that is free for both of you, using some of the phrases in the box below.



4 After you have arranged everything, find another student and tell him/her about your plans for the following week. Use structures such as:

On Monday I'm meeting...

On the 25th I'm leaving for...

Invitations

Making invitations

Would you like to... ?
 I was wondering if you wanted to / you'd like to... ?
 Would you care to come round?
 Do you think you'll be free?
 Have you got anything special on tonight?
 What have you got on tonight?
 Do you want to come round / go out for dinner?
 Does seven o'clock suit you?
 How about seven o'clock?
 Is that all right with you?
 Let's make it seven o'clock.

Accepting invitations and asking about an invitation

I'd love to.
 Sounds great.
 That'd be lovely / wonderful / fun.
 Great! Thanks.
 Thank you very much.
 That would be fun / wonderful.
 Would you like me to bring anything?
 Can I bring something?
 Let me bring dessert.
 What time should I be there?
 Can I bring a friend?
 What should I wear?
 Is it casual or formal?

Declining invitations

I'm sorry, but...
 That's very kind of you but...
 I'm busy on Saturday.
 I've already got something planned.
 Something's come up.
 I can't make it to the party on Friday...
 Thanks anyway.
 Maybe next time.

Hesitation strategies

I appreciate the invitation, but ...
 Could I let you know later?
 Could I get back to you tonight?
 I have to see if Charles wants to come.
 I have to check my diary.

WEDDINGS

1 What are the traditions or even superstitions that have to do with marriage? Can you think of any “dos and don’ts” for the bride and groom on the big day?

2 Read the following text and fill in the blanks using the words and phrases on the left. In which country do you think the wedding might have taken place?

- aisle
- altar
- banns posted
- best man
- big day
- ceremony
- church wedding
- church bells
- civil wedding
- guest list
- honeymoon
- honeymoon suite
- lace veil
- limousine
- husband and wife
- minister
- organ
- rice
- tuxedo
- marriage vows
- wedding dress
- wedding invitations
- wedding reception
- wedding rings
- white wedding

I know it sounds corny, but my wedding day really was the most beautiful day of my life. We had a big **1**_____ in my parents’ church, with the grand **2**_____ playing “Here Comes the Bride” and **3**_____ ringing as we left and everything. It cost a fortune, but we just felt that a **4**_____ wouldn’t be special enough. All of the preparations, like sending out the **5**_____, making up the **6**_____, and going to get the **7**_____ left us completely exhausted, but when the **8**_____ finally arrived we were so excited that we didn’t have any time to be tired.

I had a beautiful long **9**_____ with a lovely **10**_____ and a long train. As I walked down the **11**_____ on my father’s arm, I saw Dave standing at the **12**_____ in his brilliant white **13**_____ and I thought I would just faint! Somehow I managed to hold on, and the next thing I knew I was in front of the **14**_____ with Dave at my side. I can barely remember reciting our **15**_____ to each other or the rest of the **16**_____, (although I do remember the **17**_____ having to search his pockets for five minutes before he finally found the **18**_____). All I can remember is this feeling inside of intense burning joy and amazement. Finally, the minister said “I now pronounce you **19**_____,” and Dave lifted my veil and kissed me, and I just started crying and crying. Everybody was throwing **20**_____ as we ran to the limousine, and a piece got caught right in Dave’s eye. We had a lovely **21**_____ at the biggest hotel in town, and everyone was drinking, dancing, and laughing (or, in my mother’s case, crying). That night we slept in the **22**_____ at the hotel, and although it certainly wasn’t a **23**_____, it felt completely different sleeping together as husband and wife. The next day we climbed back into the **24**_____ and sped off on our two-week **25**_____ in the Bahamas. It was, in a word, perfect.

3 Look at the pictures. How could they be linked to weddings?



TUXEDO RENTAL

BRIDAL SHOP



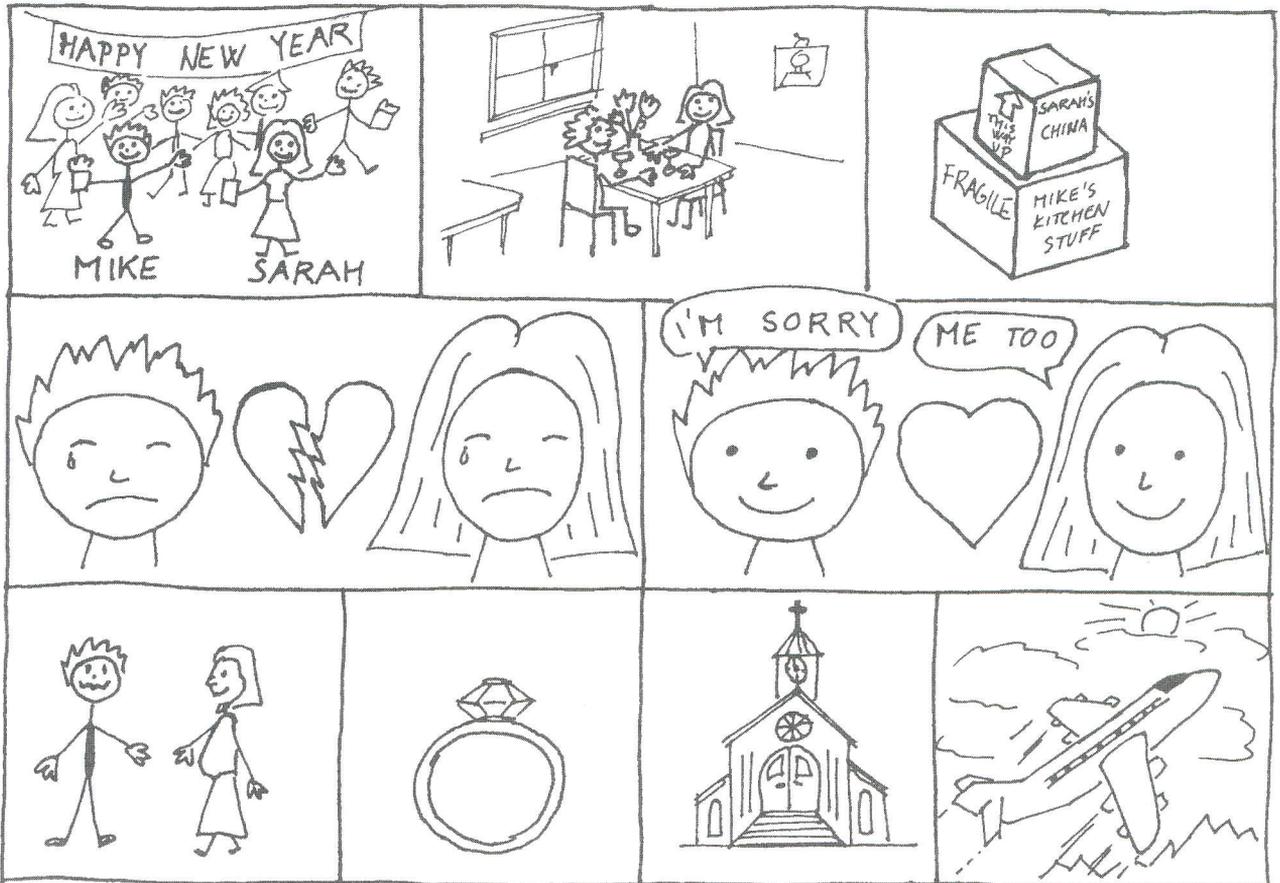
4 Below are some pictures which tell the story of Mike and Sarah's love affair. Write a story to go along with the pictures. Each picture should be a paragraph. Start with about 10 words per paragraph, then expand.

You could start like this:

... and finish like this:

This is a story of two young people – Sarah and Mike. They first met at ...

... and they lived happily ever after.



Weddings

to propose to sb
catering company
special license
stag night / bachelor party
"big day"
church wedding
white wedding
civil wedding
shotgun wedding
registry office / register office
bride, bridegroom
wedding announcements (in newspapers and to friends)
wedding invitations (to guests)

banns
marriage vows
ceremony
bridesmaid
maid of honour
matron of honour
best man
witness
wedding cake
wedding reception
wedding ring
trousseau × dowry
newlyweds
to leave on / for one's honeymoon

Congratulations

My warmest congratulations.
All the best.
The very best of luck.
May you be happy together.
May all your dreams come true.
Please accept my most sincere congratulations and best wishes on the occasion of your wedding. (formal)

BABIES

1 Here are some pictures that have to do with children. Say what the things are and what they are used for.

2 In America and Britain, many families use babysitting agencies to find someone to look after their child when they have to go out. How do you feel about this? Could you trust a complete stranger with your child? If not, what are some other ways to find babysitters?

3 You are going to leave your baby alone for the first time. Your friend has agreed to babysit for you. In small groups, write a short note thanking your friend for their help and explaining exactly what they should do.

4 Imagine that you are visiting a friend who has just had a baby. She is a proud mother. You have no experience with newborns. What can you say? Look at the phrases in the box below.



Babies

Talking to or about babies

Was he / she early / late / premature / overdue?
 What an adorable baby!
 Can I hold him / her?
 Does she sleep through the night yet?
 His eyes are just like his father's.
 She has her father's eyes.
 She really takes after her father.
 That's a good boy / girl...

Nursery

changing table / mat / pad
 to breast-feed
 to bottle-feed / the baby is on formula (US)
 to change, wash and iron the nappies
 (disposable / cloth) nappies (GB) / diapers (US)

to cry / howl / scream
 to hug
 to rock the baby
 to burp the baby
 to take a child on your lap
 to take a child in your arms
 to pamper a child
 to spoil a child
 dummy (GB) / pacifier (US)
 toddler
 infant
 kid
 crèche (GB) / nursery school (US)
 babysitter
 au-pair / nanny
 play groups / schools / schemes
 day nursery / day care / kindergarten
 cradle
 rattle
 bib

cot (GB) / crib (US)
 high chair
 baby-bouncer
 baby-walker
 baby-carrier / baby-backpack
 pram / baby carriage (US) / buggy (US)
 playpen
 pushchair (GB) / stroller (US)
 carry-cot
 toy chest
 teddy bear
 stuffed / fluffy animals / soft toys
 squeaky toys
 potty
 to toilet-train
 maternity leave / baby break
 dependents

HIGH SCHOOL PRINCIPAL DEFENDS FREE CONDOM PROGRAM

INTERNET PORNOGRAPHY RANKS HIGH AMONG PARENTS' CONCERNS

CRIME AND VIOLENCE ON THE RISE AMONG TEENAGERS

SPANKING YOUR CHILD MAY MAKE HIM EVEN NAUGHTIER

1 What kind of a child were you when you were growing up – well-behaved or naughty? Illustrate your answer with examples.

What was the worst trouble you ever got into when you were younger? What was your punishment? Did you “learn your lesson”?

2 On the left are the headlines to some newspaper articles dealing with some youth issues. Write three short paragraphs to tell the story for each headline. Can you spot the US headline and make it British?

3  You are going to listen to a dialogue between a father and a son. Here are some questions for you to answer.

- What is the problem?
- Which subjects did Mark fail?
- Which names of schools and universities come up in the dialogue?
- What are they like?

4 In groups of two or three act out an argument between parents and a teenager who is having one of the problems you wrote about. Do young people face similar problems in your country? What other problems do they face?

Youth

adolescent
teenager
youngster
brat
to bring up / raise
to behave yourself
to indulge / pamper
to spoil
to talk back
to scold / tell off
to spank / slap
to punish
to get the cane / stick / strap
corporal punishment
detention
borstal / reform school
child abuse
to beat a child
to be grounded / gated
to rebel
to show off
to play truant / cut class (US)

generation gap
rebellion
Talking about children
going through puberty / adolescence
obedient × disobedient
polite × rude
well brought-up
naughty
stubborn
selfish
greedy
cheeky (GB) / to be/get smart (US)
independent
impressionable
easily led
a show-off

Parents often say
Wait till Daddy / your father gets home...
What are you up to?
It's just a phase.

Possible problems and issues
peer pressure
bad company
counterculture
TV violence
addiction
lack of physical exercise
couch potato
“copycat” crime
shoplifting
pornography
alternative lifestyles
miscarriage
protection / contraception
pregnant / expecting
pregnancy
family planning clinic
to have / get an abortion
to terminate the pregnancy
drinking age
voting age
(legal) age of consent

MARRIED LIFE

1 English often uses different words to express the same or similar ideas. Sometimes the difference is as simple as using a different preposition or verb with a noun. At other times, there are slight changes in the meaning. Fill in the blanks in the sentences below with the correct word, then write new sentences correctly using the other words.

- Mary knew that Mike was _____ on her. She regarded _____ as the limit.
 - having extramarital relationships
 - cheating
 - being unfaithful
 - committing adultery
- As a poor family, they had many _____. The _____ was never enough to ease the _____.
 - money problems
 - family allowance
 - economic pressure
 - weekly budget
- When Jane got pregnant, she had to decide whether to have the baby and _____ or have _____.
 - miscarriage
 - a pregnancy
 - some contraception
 - an abortion
 - adopt it out
- Their marital problems were so bad that they had to get some _____. When that failed they agreed to get _____.
 - marriage counsellor
 - marriage guidance
 - separation
 - divorced
 - incompatible
- Mark always said that he shouldn't have to help with the chores because he was the _____. His wife found that a bit _____.
 - feminist
 - homemaker
 - breadwinner
 - sexist

2 Finish the statement below. What would she say if she were a man? What is the other side of the coin? Can you say something positive about marriage?



3 The following is a soap opera outline. In small groups tell the story and try to act out some scenes.

- 1960** John and Sue got married.
1962 Steven was born.
1963 Sylvie and Fiona (twins) were born.
1968 John often went out with his secretary. Sue found out. Ended.
1971 John met Anna. Sue found out. "Trial" separation. John and Anna set up house. John paid alimony. Sue looked after three children.
1973 Divorce. John and Anna couldn't have children.
1975 Adopted two.

Married Life

Some positive aspects of marriage

to set up home
 emotional warmth and security
 love and happiness
 longevity of relationship
 tolerance of foibles
 stability for children
 tax deductions / less taxes to pay

Marital problems

to get regular marriage guidance
 marriage counselling service / counsellor
 entrenched attitudes
 incompatibility
 nagging
 spouse
 infidelity / unfaithfulness
 extramarital relationships / adultery

jealousy
 wife beater × hen-pecked husband
 to cheat on sb
 lover / mistress
 to have a drinking problem
 gambling
 skeleton in the cupboard (GB) / closet (US)
 to get a divorce
 separation
 alimony
 custody
 visiting rights
 stepfather
 stepmother
 stepbrother × half-brother
 sole provider / single parent
 sexism
 housewife / homemaker / stay-at-home mother

househusband
 breadwinner
 chores / housework
 stereotypes / roles
 routine / rut

Social policies

money problems
 to be under severe economic pressure
 budget
 to receive child support / child benefits
 family allowance

Adoption

guardian
 foster parents
 to foster sb
 to adopt sb (out)
 adoption agency
 orphan
 orphanage
 children's home / youth home

OLD AGE AND RETIREMENT

1 Discuss these questions with a partner.

Are there any elderly people in your family?
 Are they energetic or tired of life, or...
 What kinds of problems do they face?
 What options are there to help them with these problems?
 What are some advantages of being older?

2 Now read the diary entry and fill in the gaps using the words below.

- arthritis
- senile
- widow's pension
- nursing home
- home help
- meals on wheels
- hard of hearing
- live-in nurse
- granny flat

3 With a partner act out a discussion between the writer's parents. Try to come to some kind of agreement.

Dear Diary,

Mum and Dad were fighting again today. It's about Grandma. She's getting really old and she can't take care of herself anymore. She lives in a little **1** _____ across town, and has her meals delivered by **2** _____, but her **3** _____ has been getting worse and worse and she just can't look after the place anymore. She is also getting a little bit **4** _____, and she's so **5** _____ that you have to shout everything in her ear for her to hear it. All she has to live on is her **6** _____, so she doesn't have enough money to hire a **7** _____ or any kind of **8** _____, and Mum doesn't even want to talk about sending her to a **9** _____. She wants her to come and live with us, but Dad is against it. He says the place is too small, and that she should go to Mum's sister's house, but I know that the real reason is that they don't really get on very well. I hope they work it out soon. I hate it when they argue.



Old Age and Retirement

Disagreeing

I don't agree with you.
 I respect your opinion, but I think...
 That's ridiculous.
 You can't be serious.
 Yes, that's true but my feeling is that...
 I hate to disagree with you but I believe...

Expressing and receiving sympathy

Please accept my deepest sympathy.
 My condolences (on your loss).
 I'm really sorry to hear about...
 Too bad that... (US) /
 Shame about (GB)

Thank you for your sympathy / concern / great support.

I'll call you if I need you, thanks.

Positive aspects of being old

joys of grandparenthood
 senior citizen clubs
 bowling clubs
 going on coach tours
 going on a cruise
 state × private pension
 superannuation
 widow's pension

What can be done

to take early retirement
 (frail) elderly
 OAP (old age pensioners)
 meals on wheels

old people's / folks' homes
 nursing homes
 telegram from the Queen
 granny flat (GB)
 home help

Being old and ill

ageism
 confusion
 senile
 hard of hearing / deaf
 arthritis
 rheumatism
 euthanasia
 to die of (e.g., cancer)
 to die of old age
 no longer with us
 passed away / passed on
 to commit suicide
 life-support systems
 to carry out an autopsy on sb

to hold the inquest on sb's death
 post mortem

Funeral

death notice
 hearse
 grave
 undertaker
 obituary
 tombstone / gravestone
 wreath
 to leave / bequeath st to sb
 to inherit
 inheritance
 to be cremated / buried
 to be in mourning
 cemetery / graveyard / churchyard
 garden of remembrance

FAMILY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

I Find the wrong word in each sentence and replace it with a correct one by choosing a, b, c or d.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 He was born with a gold spoon in his mouth.
a raised
b bed
c silver
d under</p> <p>2 She has thrown head over heels in love with him.
a fallen
b hills
c from
d bed</p> <p>3 The child was born outside wedlock.
a kid
b torn</p> | <p>c grown
d out of</p> <p>4 She's old enough to be his grandfather.
a father
b mother
c grandmother
d lover</p> <p>5 They should kiss and wake up.
a ought to
b hiss
c make up
d or</p> |
|--|--|

II Match the following verbs and adjectives with the two nouns: FAMILY (6) and LOVE (7).

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| to start a | puppy |
| undying | to declare |
| to break up the | a large |
| to inspire | blind |
| an adoptive | everlasting |
| an extended | to feed the |
| to send | unrequited |
| a single-parent | to show |
| to fall out of | to leave the |
| to look after the | the immediate |

III Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.

By the 1970s, the prototypical nuclear family had yielded somewhat to modified structures including the one-parent family, the stepfamily, and the childless family. **8** O_____ families in the past were usually the result of the death of a **9** s_____. Now, however, most one-parent families are the result of **10** d_____, although some are created when unmarried mothers bear children. In 1991, more than one out of four children lived with only one parent, usually the mother. Most one-parent families, however, eventually become two-parent families through **11** r_____.

A stepfamily is created by a new **12** m_____ of a single parent. It may consist of a parent and children and a **13** c_____ spouse, a parent and children and a spouse whose children live elsewhere, or two joined one-parent families. In a **14** s_____, problems in relations between nonbiological parents and children may generate tension; the difficulties can be especially great in the marriage of single parents when the children of both parents live together as **15** s_____.

IV Match the sayings on the left with their definitions on the right.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 16 Lucky at cards, unlucky in love. | a completely unable to get something |
| 17 Not able to get something for love or money. | b if something has hurt you once, you avoid it |
| 18 Burn the candle at both ends. | c if you often win, you will not be happy in love |
| 19 A burnt child dreads the fire. | d you should punish your child |
| 20 Marriages are made in heaven. | e to work much too hard |
| 21 Time works wonders. | f sun brings good luck to the couple |
| 22 Shrouds have no pockets. | g the passing of time can solve many problems |
| 23 Happy is the bride that the sun shines on. | h you cannot predict who will marry whom |
| 24 Spare the rod and spoil the child. | i you cannot take any material goods with you when you die |

V Match the expressions and use them in sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| 25 retirement | a newborn, premature, stillborn, test-tube |
| 26 nursery | b to go into, to take early |
| 27 relationship | c to cultivate, to break (off), to enter into |
| 28 baby | d strict, (un)conventional, religious |
| 29 relative | e rhymes |
| 30 upbringing | f blood, close, distant, near(est) |

FAMILY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

I Find the wrong word in each sentence and replace it with a correct one by choosing a, b, c or d.

- 1 She had to cope with the upwards and downs of life all by herself.
a work
b ups
c downwards
d all herself
- 2 Her father used to tell her: "Out of site, out of mind." – and he was right.
a head
b sigh
c mine
d sight
- 3 He was old enough to be her uncle.
a son
b grandfather
- 4 By that time they planned to be husband and woman.
a wife
b spouse
c mistress
d mother
- 5 In a quarrel he always makes a mountain out of a hill.
a downhill
b molehill
c gnat
d bull

II Match the following verbs and adjectives with the two nouns: CHILD (6) and MARRIAGE (7).

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| arranged | break-up |
| foster | to consummate a |
| hasty | to end a |
| illegitimate | to keep an eye on a |
| loveless | to neglect |
| mixed | to scold a |
| naughty | to abuse a |
| of convenience | well-behaved |
| an only | collapse |
| to announce a | to spoil a |

III Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.

Childless families may be increasingly the result of deliberate choice and the availability of birth **8 c** _____. For many years the proportion of couples who were childless declined steadily as venereal and other diseases that cause **9 i** _____ were conquered. In the 1970s, however, the changes in the status of women reversed this trend. Couples often choose not to have children or to postpone having them until their careers are well established.

Since the 1960s, several variations on the family unit have emerged. More **10 u** _____ couples are living **11 t** _____, before or instead of marrying. Some elderly couples, most often widowed, are finding it more economically practical to **12 c** _____ without marrying. Homosexual couples also live together as a family more openly today, sometimes sharing their **13 h** _____ with the children of one partner or with adopted or **14 f** _____ children. Communal families, made up of groups of related or unrelated people, have long existed in isolated instances. Such units began to occur in the United States during the 1960s and 1970s as an **15 a** _____ life-style, but by the 1980s the number of communal families was diminishing.

IV Match the sayings on the left with their definitions on the right.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 16 Don't throw the baby out with the bathwater. | a death makes everyone equal |
| 17 Every family has a skeleton in the cupboard / closet. | b you cannot always be having fun |
| 18 Life isn't all beer and skittles. | c a child who is very much like one of his / her parents |
| 19 A growing youth has a wolf in his belly. | d teenagers are hungry all the time |
| 20 To be the black sheep of the family. | e you can present someone with an opportunity but you cannot force them to make use of it |
| 21 Blood is thicker than water. | f people who are related stick together more than people outside a family |
| 22 A chip off the old block. | g do not discard something valuable in your enthusiasm for getting rid of something useless |
| 23 You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink. | h to be considered as the worst member of the family |
| 24 Death is the great leveller. | i every family has an unpleasant secret |

V Match the expressions and use them in sentences.

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 25 pension | a to keep to / within, to exceed |
| 26 miscarriage | b to contribute towards, to live on |
| 27 relationship | c please accept my deepest, I have every... |
| 28 budget | d holiday, secret, teenage, whirlwind |
| 29 sympathy | e of justice |
| 30 romance | f close, love-hate, intimate, platonic, uneasy |

HOME

DIFFERENT KINDS OF HOUSING

1 Look at the following advertisements and match them to the people they are best suited for.

Joe
is a computer programmer.
works in the centre of the town.
has a car.
wants to live alone.
needs room for an office at home.
hates traffic.

Jamie
is a college student.
has a small scholarship and is looking for a part-time job.
likes going to the pub at night.
has a bike: "who needs a car?"
is new in town and doesn't know anyone.
is living away from her parents for the first time.

Charlie and Edith
are a retired couple.
are on a tight budget.
have trouble sleeping at night.
are too old to drive.
love walking in the country.

Wishing to expand in a OFFICE and COMPUTER Training. No capital required, profit sharing. Write to: Abbey Services Ltd., 15 St. Catherine's Road, Bournemouth, BH16 4AL, England.

REAL ESTATE MARKETPLACE
APARTMENTS/HOMES FOR RENT

CONDOS FOR LEASE OR SALE: Shady Meadows Realty is now offering 1-, 2-, and 3-bedroom flats at extremely economical rates. Situated in the secluded Bristley Valley, these apartments are just a five-minute walk from the Artswood National Forest, as well as being close to the central shopping district, the local school, and connections to public transport. Call TODAY!

Prague 6 - Buzarovce apt. 3 r., furnished, tel. 10.000 Kč/month. Long-term lease. Tel. 300.0351 (evening)

Modern furnished flat in KOPČENÁ, Prague 1
2+1 with separate shower, tel. line.
For further details contact KING & CO. PRAGA
222 21 011, 222 20 005.

PRAGUE 6 - DUBČICE - DABA
Very large flats/apartments in a brand new house.
• 2+1, 28 m² • 4+1, 64 m²
• 3+1, 100 m² • 4+2, 88 m²
100% space, 43 m² of terrace, WC, kitchen
Call or fax owner at 2241 0741

New modern apt. with furn. for rent: 2 rooms x 145 m²
bath: living 60 m², kitchen, 2 bedrooms, 1 bath, room, 1 large basement, 2 car garage, floor 1500 m²
located on telephone, central heating, 25.000 Kč/month. Located in Prague 9 - Horní Počernice.
(Call) (02) 86 34 41. (Fax) Kohnen.

• P 41 apt. 2+1, furnished, tel. 11.000 Kč/month
• P 81 apt. 2+1, furnished, tel. 9.000 Kč/month
• P 81 apt. 2+1, furnished, tel. 10.000 Kč/month

Building erected beneath the Castle, 2 beds & bath, spacious kitchen, TV & car
WE HAVE YOUR HOME AWAY FROM HOME
Janáčekova 666/5, 33 Tel. 53 35 26 or 53 95 81

Continental Realty
• Prime Area Houses and Apartments for Rent
• Helpful, Skilled English-speaking Agents
Na Lanškounce 18, P 6 Tel/Fax 311-0906

Reconstructed, furnished flat in 1st district, Prague 1
100 m from the Old Town Square.
Phone King & Co. Praga 232 51 01 or 02, 232 5 1415

Rent/Flats
Currency Available:
• 1 br, 2 rooms, furn. lux. garage, 7.000 Kč
• 1 br, 2 rooms, furn. lux. garage, 12.000 Kč
among others: 777-071 24 90 95

IS REAL. OFFERS FLATS FOR RENT
LUXURIOUS TWO-BEDROOM FLAT in good neighbourhood. Close to downtown and the university district. The apartment has a fireplace, hardwood floors, and a beautiful view. NO PETS \$1800.

with fig. 2 suns, garden, garage with priv. 7000 Kč
Prž Vinohr: 2 bed, big floor, nice flat, 1950 Kč
Prž Smíchov: on the river, 1600 Kč, 3 BR room, 2100 Kč
Prž-villa: 4br/2ba for 6000 Kč, ready to go for 4000 Kč
Prague 310 4714, 310 2231, 310 3202, 369 322

ROOM FOR RENT: in 4-bedroom, 2 1/2 bath house with garden, porch, and washing machine. Close to downtown and university. Must be responsible, friendly, and NON-SMOKER! Pets OK. \$325 + utilities. We are 2 men, 2 women and 1 cat, all of us students (except the cat).

161 Lanškounce 5 5 room family house, garden, garage
Prž Mělník: 4 bedrm 5 room house, nice garden, quiet location
27 NEWLY RECONSTRUCTED APARTMENTS
1 TO 5 BEDROOMS - CENTRAL DISTRICT & TRN

2  Listen to the telephone conversation about a flat that is for rent and fill in the missing information in Peter's notes.

3 Choose one of the advertisements on the preceding page and with a partner roleplay a similar phone conversation. You can take the part of Joe or Jamie. Your partner is the landlord/landlady.

4 Complete the paragraphs on the right choosing some of the following comments.

It was very cramped.

It is nice and cosy.

It was so spacious you could get lost in it.

It had a kitchen corner.

I had to share the bathroom with the other tenants.

There was a large swimming pool and hot tub in the back.

The commute to work was too long.

The couches folded down into a double bed.

The living room doubled as my office, so it was rather messy.

It was in a bad part of town.

The walls were so thin you could hear everything your neighbours said.

It was right up the street from the university.

5 What other advantages and disadvantages of each kind of house can you think of?

Ringmer Road, Brighton - 01273-946192

1 _____-bedroom flat in a 2 _____ house

3 _____ flats in the house, the 4 _____ lives in one of them.

Special features:

5 _____ floors

tall 6 _____

7 _____ in the garage – share with other tenants

8 _____ in the back that leads to a 9 _____

with a 10 _____.

They are looking for someone who is 11 _____.

12 _____, 13 _____.

THESE ARE THE FLATS OF OUR LIVES

When I was at university, I hardly had any money at all. I couldn't get a room in the halls of residence, so I had to live in a bedsitter. There were some nice things about it. For example, ...

But it also had its disadvantages.

When I graduated from university, I found a job as an accountant and started to earn decent money. My girlfriend and I moved into a flat in a housing estate. It was much nicer than my previous place.

But it still wasn't perfect. My girlfriend eventually broke up with me and moved out because she said...

My career went ahead very well, and soon I was a rich stockbroker. I got married, and when my wife became pregnant we decided to buy a house in the suburbs. It was very expensive and luxurious. ...

Having such a large place, however, presented some problems. For instance, ...

When I retired, we decided that we needed a change of pace, so we bought a nice mobile home, with a piece of land in the country where we could park it when we weren't travelling. It was perfect for our lifestyle.

Now I'm dead and I rest in a pine box, apparently. ...

TYPES OF DWELLINGS

1 Match the following expressions to the pictures. Put a number in each box.

1 semi-detached house (GB)
duplex/two-family house (US)

2 chalet

3 terraced house (GB)
row house (US)

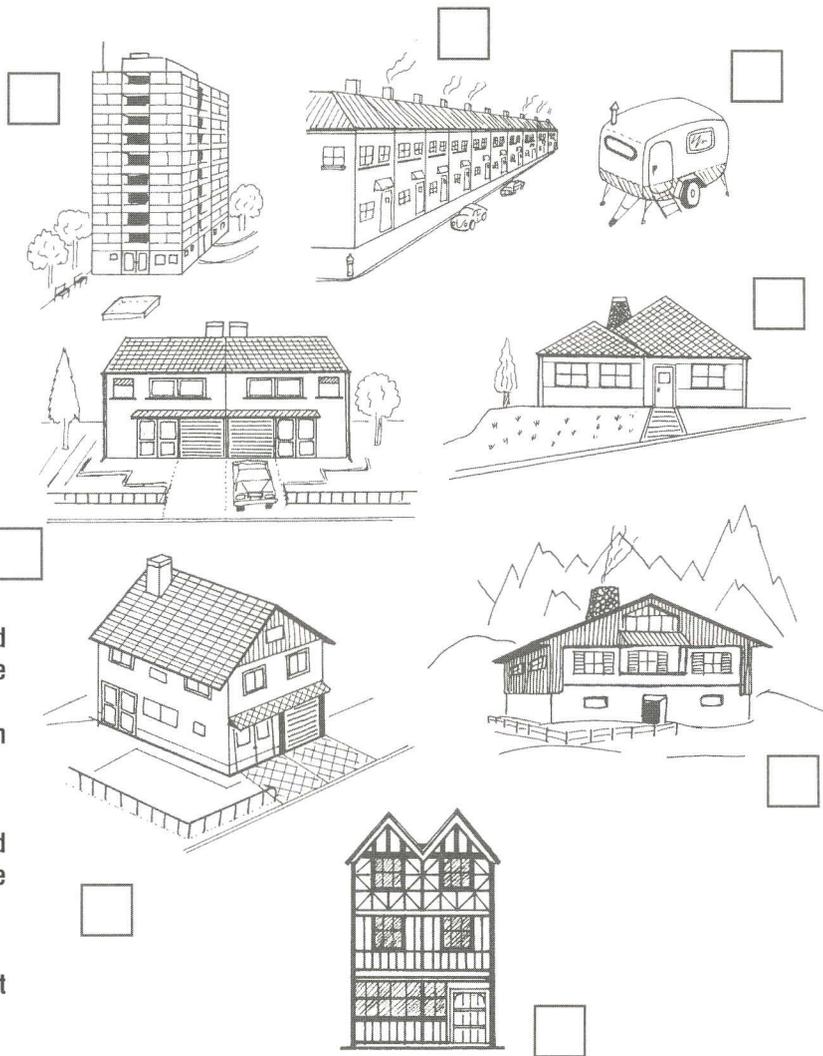
4 block of flats (GB)
apartment building (US)

5 detached house (GB)
(single-family) house (US)

6 bungalow (GB)
ranch house (US)

7 caravan (GB)
trailer (US)

8 half-timbered house
Tudor-style house (GB)



2 Where would you be most likely to find each of these houses? Can they all be found in your country? What kinds of people do you think live in each?

3 Which type of house do you live in and what other type of house might you like living in?

4 Describe the house of the future. What will be different? What will stay the same?

Types of Dwellings

redbrick house
(without plaster)

housing estate
council houses and
flats (GB) / housing
project (US) / public
housing (US)

condo(minium) (US)
high-rise / towerblock /
multi-storey building

skyscraper
town house
country house
mansion
manor house
castle
chateau

stately home
palace
half-timbered house /
Tudor-style house (GB)
cottage
summer cottage
weekend cottage /
"second home"

log cabin
grass hut
igloo
teepee
mobile home
a squat
halls of residence (GB) /
dorm(itory) (US)

flat (GB) /
apartment (US)
bachelor flat / bachelor
pad
bedsitter / bedsit
studio
basement flat

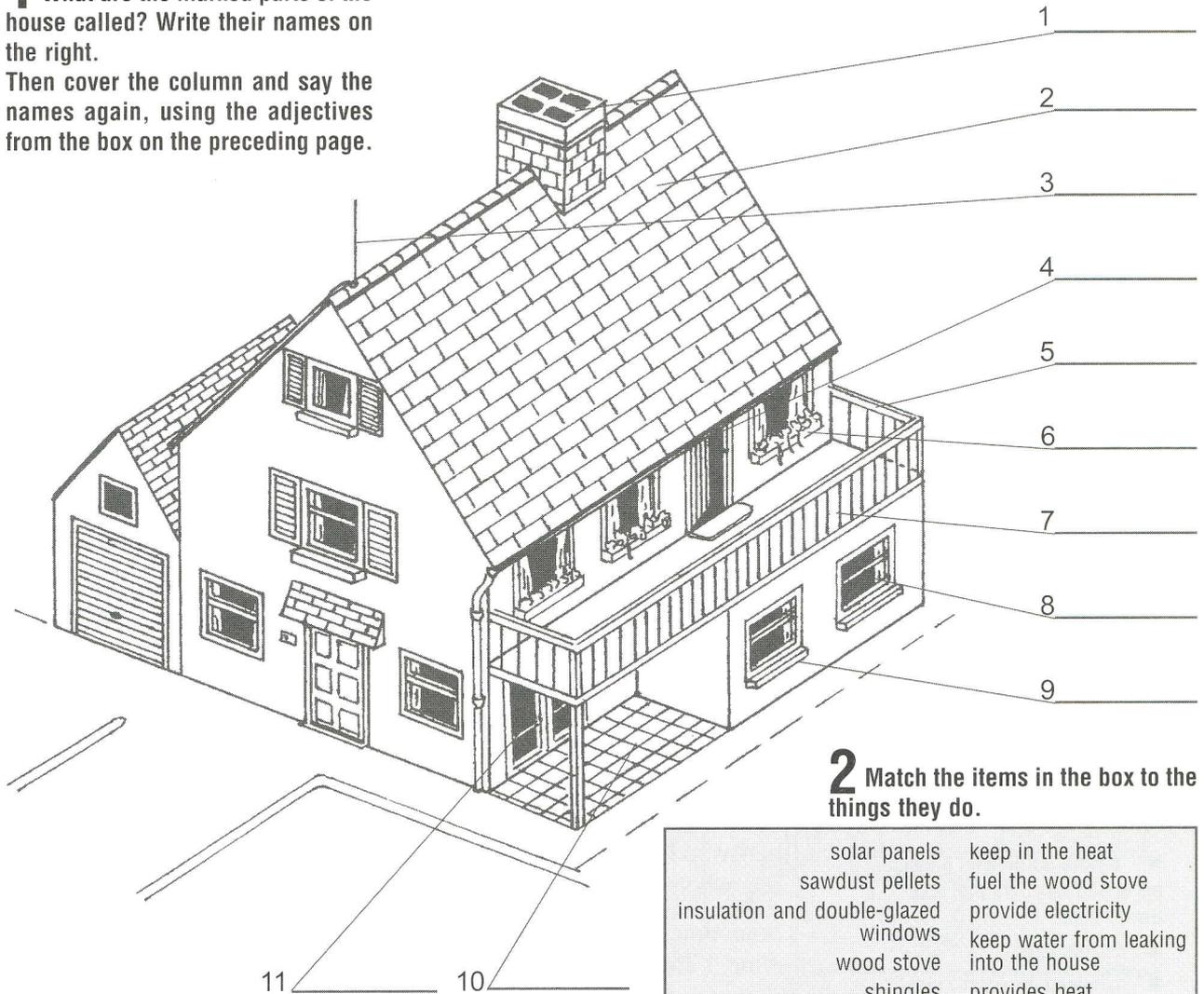
Positive qualities
comfortable
cosy
luxurious / exquisite
pleasant
roomy / spacious
large
tidy / spotless
well-kept

attractive
elegant
magnificent
newly built
Negative qualities
dilapidated
haunted
ramshackle
hideous
cramped
shabby
dingy
poky
leaky
damp

Activities
to move into
to move out of
to move house
to rent (out)
to lease
to (re)decorate
to furnish
to renovate
to refurbish
to alter
to pull down /
demolish

PARTS OF A HOUSE

1 What are the marked parts of the house called? Write their names on the right.
Then cover the column and say the names again, using the adjectives from the box on the preceding page.



2 Match the items in the box to the things they do.

solar panels	keep in the heat
sawdust pellets	fuel the wood stove
insulation and double-glazed windows	provide electricity
wood stove	keep water from leaking into the house
shingles	provides heat

Parts of a House

roof
flat or sloping or butterfly
thatched
corrugated iron
shingled / tiled
chimney / chimney-stack
lightning conductor (GB) / rod (US)
TV aerial (GB) / antenna (US)
skylight
gutter
attic conversion / converted attic
garret
loft
loft conversion
sash-window
dormer window

bay window
casement window
storm windows (US)
corridor
basement
cellar
utility room
storeroom
workshop
laundry
drying room
airing cupboard (GB)
boiler room
library
study
reception room
foyer / entrance hall
pantry / larder

In the garden

shed
conservatory
gazebo
patio
greenhouse / hothouse
swimming pool
garden gate
garden path
flagstones
garden gnome
courtyard
back garden (GB) / back yard (US)
drive (GB) / driveway (US)
letter box (GB) / mail box (US)
bird table / feeder

BUILDING A HOUSE

1 Try answering some of these questions before reading the text. Then read it to correct and check the answers and complete the task.

- When the author first saw the house, she was
 - excited.
 - sceptical.
 - relieved.
 - angry.
- According to George, what was the most important part of the house?
 - the roof
 - the rafters
 - the foundations
 - the environmentally-friendly features
- Now that the house is finished, the author
 - wishes they were still building it.
 - thinks it wasn't worth all of the problems they had to deal with.
 - is happy it is finished.
 - wishes they had done some things differently.

2 Find a word in the text that means the following.

- to have something passed on to you when its previous owner dies
- discouraged
- damaged by water / age
- to press together
- empty
- small sores caused by rubbing the skin too much

GRANDFATHER'S GIFT

When we inherited this old house from my grandfather, my first thought was to pull it down and start all over again. The roof had collapsed in several places, the floor was sagging, and it just generally looked a mess. My husband, George, is a building contractor, and he wasn't put off by how bad the house looked. He went straight to the cellar to inspect the foundations. If the foundations were solid, he said, the rest could be repaired. They were, so we called an architect and started drawing up plans for renovating the house.

The biggest problem was the roof. It had several holes in it, and the beams and rafters were rotten almost all the way through. So we replaced the roof altogether, put in new rafters, then covered the roof with new shingles. We replaced the floorboards and then covered them with lovely wall-to-wall carpeting.

George and I didn't just want to build a house that would last. We also wanted it to be environmentally sound, something that we could feel proud to live in. We therefore installed state-of-the-art solar panels on the roof. We lined the walls with extra-thick insulation and installed double-glazed windows so the house would keep in the heat. We even reused the huge piles of sawdust that were left over from the job. We had them compressed into wood pellets that could be burned in our new wood-stove. It's amazing. One scoop of pellets burns for as long as a whole log of wood, and heats the whole house.

Sometimes, when I'm sitting in front of the stove with a glass of wine, I almost miss the days when this old house was just a barren skeleton, full of possibilities. Then I think of all of the sore muscles and blisters, of all of the problems we ran into along the way, and I'm glad it's all behind us and that now we can just sit back and enjoy it.

Building a House

building site / construction site
to renovate an old house
to rebuild
to level the ground
to dig the foundations
to apply for a mortgage
building society (GB) / savings and loan institution (US)

Building materials

bricks
built of brick
stone
breeze-blocks

mortar
concrete
cement
gravel
prefabricated sections
ferro-concrete
timber (GB) / lumber (US)
floorboards
beams and rafters
plank
tile
slate
shingle

Tools and construction machinery

excavator
bulldozer
cement mixer
scaffolding
wheelbarrow
shovel
trowel
bucket

1 Find the following in the picture.

- 1 doormat
- 2 hinge
- 3 doorhandle
- 4 peephole
- 5 keyhole
- 6 letter box (GB)
mailbox (US)
- 7 lock and (security) chain
- 8 threshold
- 9 doorstep
- 10 wall-to-wall carpet × rug
- 11 entry phone / intercom
- 12 keys
- 13 staircase
- 14 staircase landing
- 15 handrail / railing
- 16 bannister

- 17 (light-)switch
- 18 clock
- 19 coat rack
- 20 cupboard

2 Customs and manners vary from country to country. Are there “front-door” behaviour differences between your country and Britain / US?

to wipe (one's) feet

to take sb's coat / hang one's coat

to turn

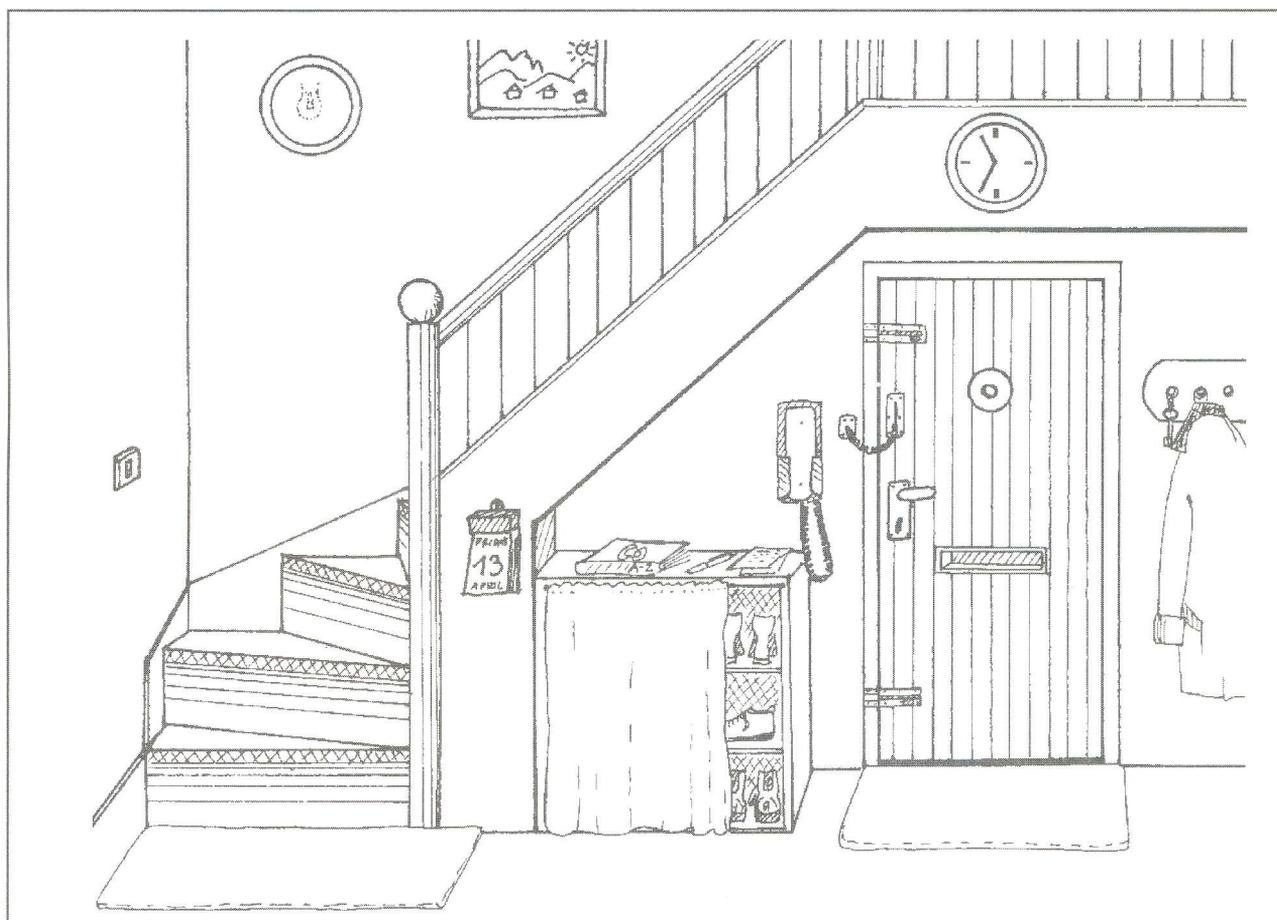
to look through

to take off one's shoes

to ring the (door)bell

to bolt the door

3 Look at the picture carefully again and spot one mistake the artist has made.



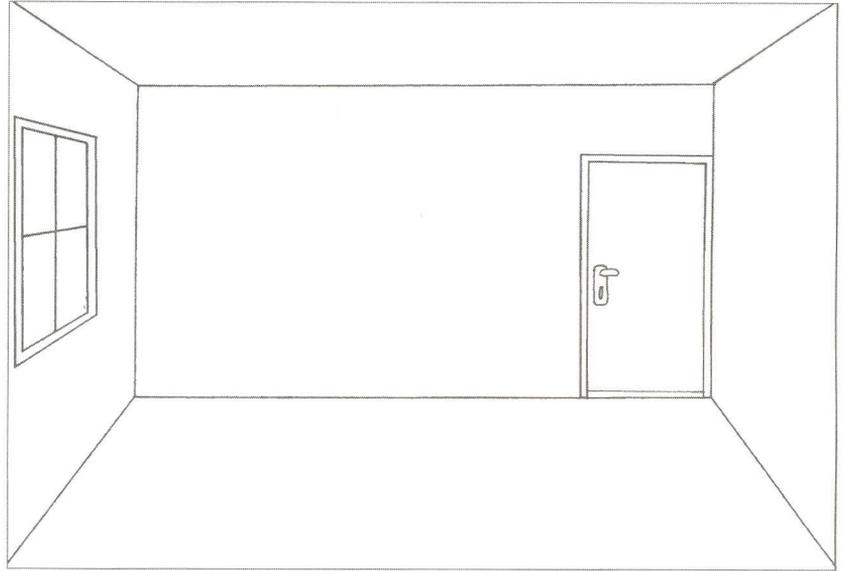
BEDROOM

1 Find the following in the picture below.

- 1 double bed
- 2 headboard
- 3 sheets and blankets
- 4 bed linen
- 5 pillowcase
- 6 eiderdown (GB) / duvet (GB)/down comforter (US)
- 7 mattress
- 8 chest of drawers
- 9 dressing table
- 10 mirror
- 11 stool
- 12 bedside table
- 13 bedside lamp
- 14 alarm clock
- 15 wedding photo
- 16 fitted wardrobe / built-in wardrobe (GB) / closet (US)
- 17 curtain
- 18 head of the bed × foot of the bed
- 19 window sill
- 20 power point (GB) / socket

2 You may not like the bedroom below. Draw your ideal one, adding the missing things. You could also just write their names into the picture.

e.g. exercise bike, piles of dirty clothes on the floor, a dog or a cat, a bible, a cradle, etc.



BATHROOM

1 Find the following in the picture.

- 1 bath / bathtub / tub
- 2 shower
- 3 laundry basket (made of cane)
- 4 hand / bath / beach towel
- 5 washbasin / handbasin
- 6 towel rail / rack
- 7 bath mat
- 8 bidet
- 9 medicine cabinet / chest
- 10 shower curtain
- 11 bathroom scales
- 12 soap: a bar of soap
- 13 plug
- 14 sponge
- 15 flannel (GB) / wash cloth (US)
- 16 comb
- 17 brush
- 18 toothbrush
- 19 toothpaste
- 20 toothmug
- 21 toilet
- 22 roll of toilet paper

- 23 toilet seat
- 24 pedestal
- 25 cistern
- 26 (bathroom) mat
- 27 tiled floor / floor tiles
- 28 back scrubber
- 29 shampoo and conditioner
- 30 rod / rail

2 Here are some verbs connected with the nouns in exercise 1 – try to match them.

- to take / have a long*
to stand on
to fill / run
to spray everything
to pull
to flush
to squeeze
to go to / sit on / read on
to clean
to overflow
to slip on

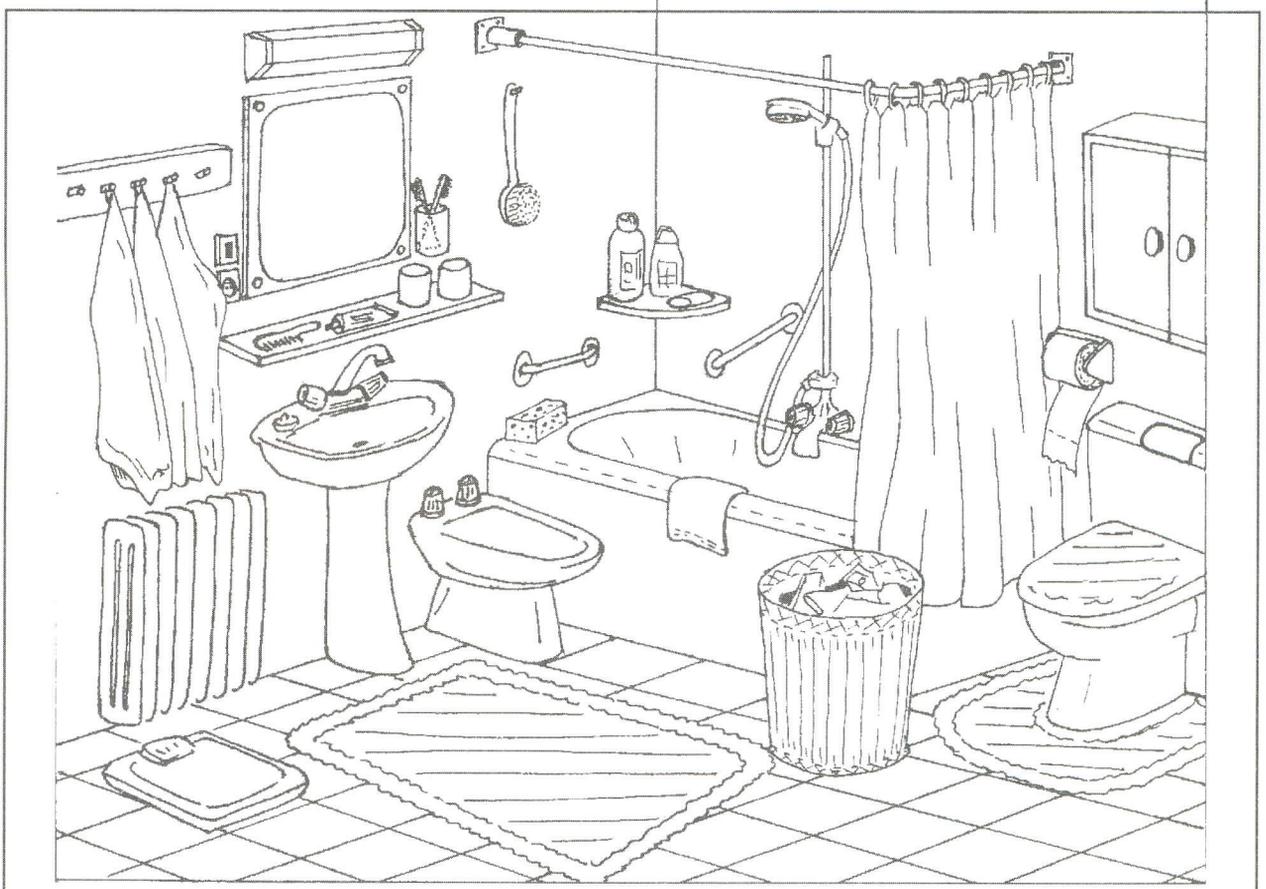
3 Discuss the usage of the following words with your teacher.

- toilet
 bathroom
 restroom
 WC
 loo
 lav
 lavatory
 bog
 the john

4 “To go to the toilet” is a very direct expression in English.

Note these expressions: *to powder one's nose, to wash one's hands, to be excused, to spend a penny, etc.*

Do any of them translate from your own language?

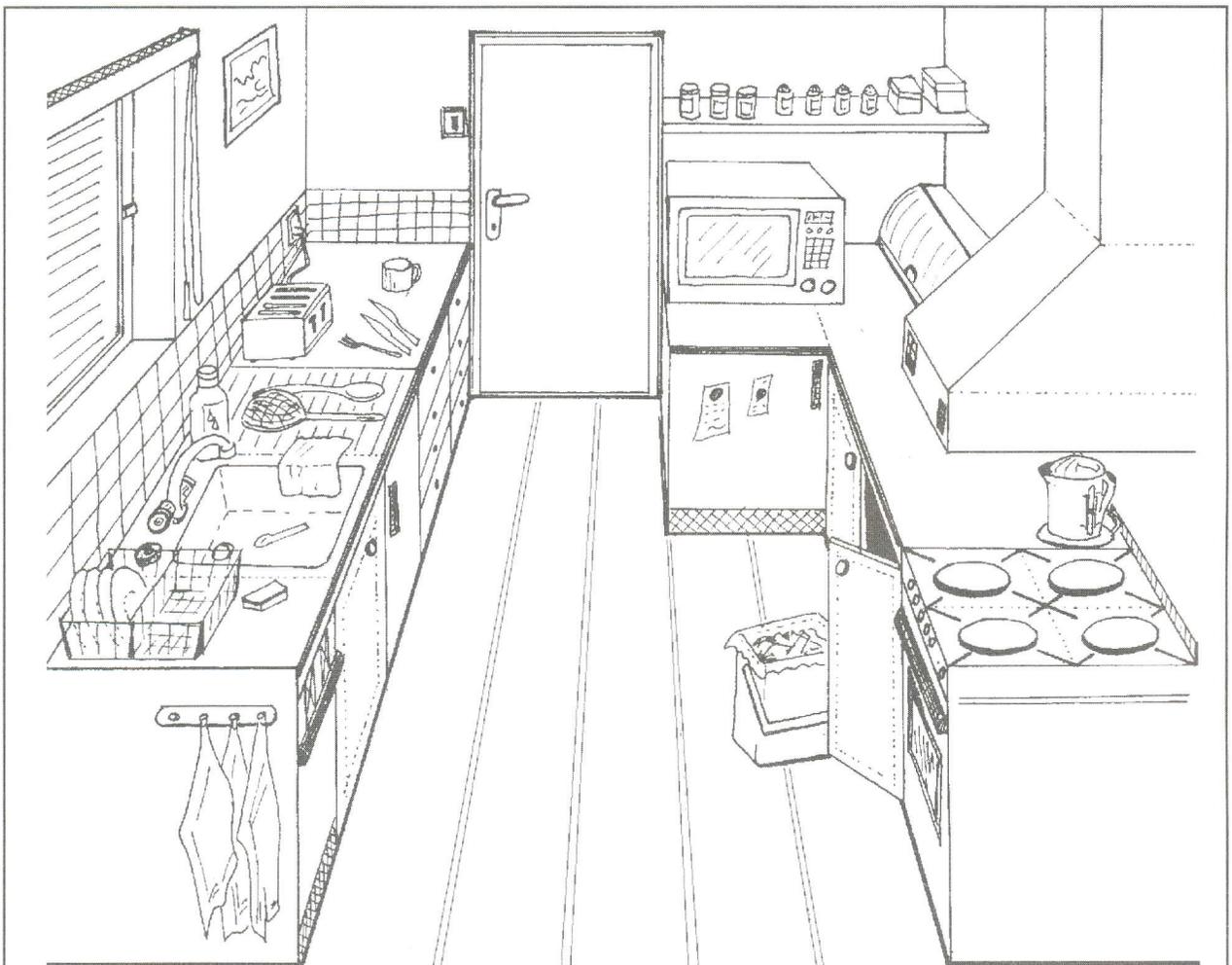


KITCHEN

1 Find the following in the picture and group them under the following headings:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1 kitchen unit | 15 microwave oven |
| 2 cupboard | 16 refrigerator / fridge |
| 3 kitchen sink | 17 rubbish bin (GB) / trash can (US) |
| 4 tap (GB) / faucet (US) | 18 electric kettle |
| 5 bread bin | 19 toaster |
| 6 draining board | 20 shelf |
| 7 dish rack | 21 sieve / strainer |
| 8 pelmet / curtain rail | 22 washing-up liquid (GB) / dishwashing liquid (US) |
| 9 Venetian blind | 23 dishcloth |
| 10 dishwasher | 24 ladle / mixing / wooden spoon |
| 11 stove / cooker | 25 mug |
| 12 knife and fork | 26 kitchen towel / tea-towel / drying-up cloth |
| 13 extractor fan / cooker hood | |
| 14 oven | |

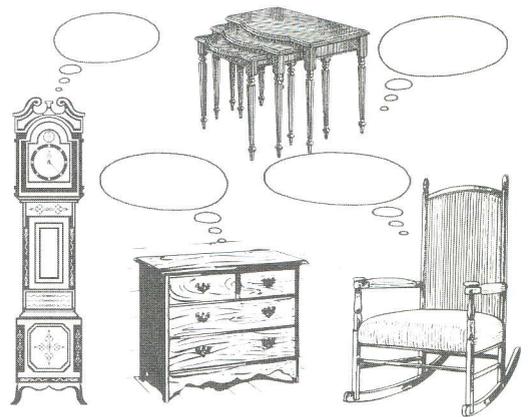
KITCHEN FIXTURES	UTENSILS	ELECTRICAL APPLIANCES	OTHER



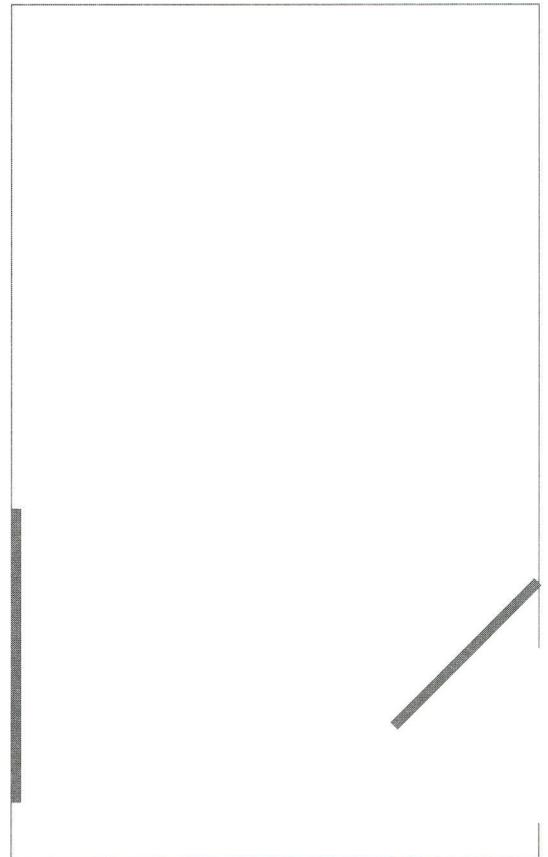
LIVING ROOM

1 On the right there are some old pieces of furniture found in the living room. If each of them could talk, what would they say?

rocking chair
 chest of drawers
 grandfather clock
 nest of tables



2 How do you like to relax?
 What would be in your dream living room that could help you unwind after a hard day at work or at school?
 Using the empty diagram on the right, describe your ideal living room. Would you use any of the pieces of furniture in the pictures on this page?



Living Room

wall unit
 fireplace
 mantelpiece
 painting
 bookcase
 shelves
 wardrobe
 sofa / couch / settee
 sofa-bed
 coffee table

nest of tables
 magazine rack
 plant rack
 drinks cupboard / cabinet
 rocking chair
 reclining chair
 swivel chair
 wing chair
 oak table
 sideboard (GB) / china cabinet (US)
 piano

grandfather clock
 French windows
 shutters
 vertical blinds
 chandelier
 standard lamp
 spotlight
 dimmer switch
 electric fire
 gas fire
 double glazing

GARDEN

1 Do you have a garden at your house? Do you enjoy working in it, or do you see it as just another chore?

2 Look at the pictures below. Name the actions and/or the tools.

3 Match the pictures and the phrases on the right.

4 Your neighbour is getting a little bit too old to take care of the garden by herself and has asked you to help. Take a look at the list of chores on the right and decide which ones you should do, which ones she can do by herself, and which jobs can be done by both of you.



- prune the fruit trees
- mow the grass
- rake the leaves
- dig the garden
- water the plants
- weed the flowerbed

- trim the hedge with shears
- prick out the seedlings
- thin out the carrot patch

spread manure in the vegetable plot

plant the lettuce and cabbage

lay × sow the lawn

Garden

allotment × garden × land

fence × hedge

rockery (GB) / rock garden (US)

shrub

bush

fertile × barren / infertile / poor soil / earth

manure / dung × compost

lawn × flowerbed × vegetable plot

to plant st × sow seeds

to prick out (GB) / transplant (US)

to graft

to be in bud

to bloom (flowers)

to be in blossom (trees)

to dig the garden

flowerpot

window box

nursery box

sapling

spade

trowel

shovel

hoe

pitchfork

rake

lawn / grass rake

scythe

sickle

lawnmower

watering can

hose(pipe)

wheelbarrow

deckchair

spray nozzle

garden clippers / shears

secateurs

work gloves / garden gloves

vegetable seeds

grass seed

step ladder

chainsaw

MAINTENANCE

1 Look at the pictures and name the tools and actions you do with them.

2 How handy are you? Which of the following things would you attempt to fix yourself and which of them would you call in a specialist for? Circle the letter for these.

- a a dripping tap

- b peeling paint on the window frames

- c a gas leak

- d a broken water heater

- e installing new shelves in the larder

- f building a conservatory

- g putting in a satellite dish

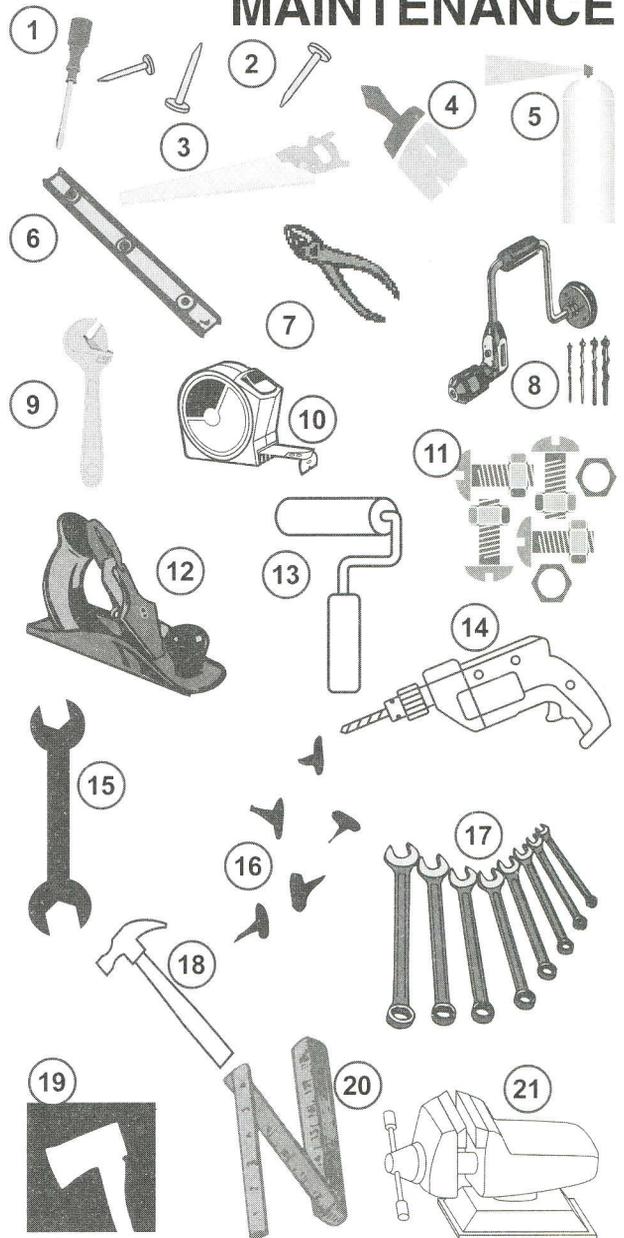
- h fixing a broken lawnmower

- i installing a high-voltage electrical outlet for a new washing machine

- j putting in a phone jack in the study

3 If you did decide to call in a specialist, who would you call?

What tools and materials would be needed for each job? Write at least two next to each job.



Maintenance

(N.B. The nouns printed in *italics* can also be used as verbs.)

saw × fretsaw ×
hacksaw

hammer

axe / hatchet

nail

screw

drawing pin

glue

(paint)brush

(paint) roller

tape *measure*

folding ruler

nuts and *bolts*

screwdriver

file

(spirit) *level*

T-square

(electric) *drill*

plane

chisel set

mallet

brace

pair of pliers × pincers

clamp

to service

to renovate

to maintain

to repair / mend /

fix (up)

toolbox

socket set

vice (GB) / vise (US)

spanners (GB) / wrenches
(US)

open-ended × ring (GB) /
box end (US)

adjustable (GB) / crescent
wrench (US)

mole grips (GB) / vise
grips (US)

Skilled labourers / tasks

bricklayer

plasterer

carpenter × joiner

electrician

plumber

locksmith

glazier

interior decorator

roofer

tiler

to whitewash

to distemper

to lay the tiles

to build the walls

to paint the furniture

to hang wallpaper /
wallpaper

to assemble × make furniture

HOME – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.

Largely depending on their means, people in Britain live in a diverse variety of **1 a**_____ ranging from country **2 m**_____ to single rooms or hostels in the inner cities. The majority, however, live in **3 h**_____ and (to a lesser extent) flats, either as owner-occupiers or as **4 t**_____ paying rent. About 19 per cent of houses are **5 d**_____, 31 per cent are semi-**6 d**_____ and 29 per cent are **7 t**_____. Owner-occupation increased substantially between 1971 and 1994. Most people buy their homes with a **8 m** _____, with the **9 p**_____ as security. **10 B**_____ societies are the largest source of such loans, although banks and other financial institutions also take a significant share in the mortgage market.

Match the following expressions with the four nouns ACCOMMODATION (a), NEIGHBOURHOOD (b), LOAN (c) and INTEREST/MONEY (d) and translate the collocations.

- | | | | |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| 11 | to hunt for | 19 | to move into / out of a |
| 12 | to calculate | 20 | bank |
| 13 | to pay back / off a | 21 | suitable |
| 14 | ... rate | 22 | to provide |
| 15 | shortage of | 23 | ... accumulates |
| 16 | to grow up in a | 24 | dangerous |
| 17 | middle-class | 25 | generous |
| 18 | to take on / out a | 26 | to live off the |

Insert the following words into the sentences and try to interpret the metaphor; what are the equivalents in your own language?

HOME CEMENTED BRICK WALL ROOF

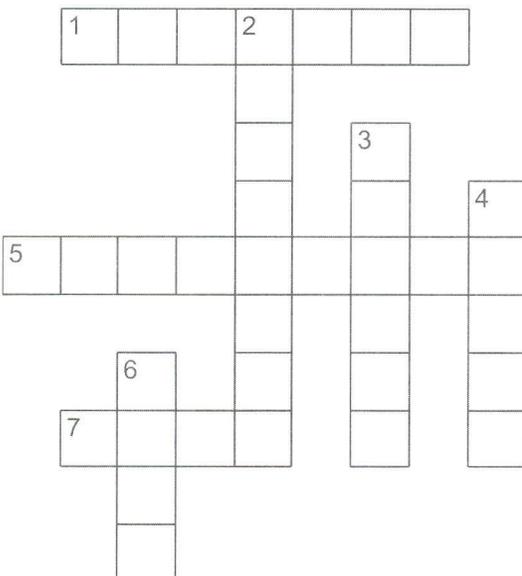
In recent years, her career has gone through the **27**_____.

In the process, he **28**_____ his control over the company.

It was like talking to a **29**_____: nobody paid attention to what I was saying.

There was a huge propaganda campaign to drive **30**_____ the message.

Try this crossword.



Across

1. a large impressive house
5. a room used for both living and sleeping in
7. space directly under the roof of a house, used for storing things

Down

2. a small window in a roof or ceiling
3. a long metal or plastic channel fixed under the edge of a roof to carry away the water when it rains
4. a private road or area between a house and the street for the use of vehicles
6. a structure covering or forming the top of a building

HOME – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Read the following passage and fill in the missing words.

There are some 5 million houses and flats in the public housing sector. Most of the public **1** h_____ in Great Britain is provided by local housing authorities. Thirty-seven per cent of local authority tenants live in **2** f_____, thirty-three per cent in **3** t_____ houses, and twenty-five per cent in semi-**4** d_____ houses. Most have the right to buy the homes they **5** o_____ if they wish. Housing associations are the main providers of additional low-cost housing for **6** r_____ and for sale to those on low incomes and in the greatest housing **7** n_____. Associations now own, manage, and **8** m_____ almost a million homes and about 65 thousand hostel bed-spaces in Great Britain. Almost 10 per cent of **9** h_____ are rented from private **10** l_____.

Match the following verbs and adjectives with the four nouns INHERITANCE (a), HOME (b), HOUSE (c), and DOOR (d) and translate the collocations.

- | | | | |
|----|-----------------|----|-------------------------|
| 11 | to work from | 19 | to answer the |
| 12 | to (re)decorate | 20 | to claim |
| 13 | to set up | 21 | to demolish |
| 14 | worthless | 22 | sliding |
| 15 | revolving | 23 | to squander |
| 16 | sprawling | 24 | to refurbish / renovate |
| 17 | to come into | 25 | magnificent |
| 18 | second | 26 | to slam |

Insert the following words into the sentences and try to interpret the metaphor; what are the equivalents in your own language?

RUINS FOUNDATIONS CEILING WINDOW

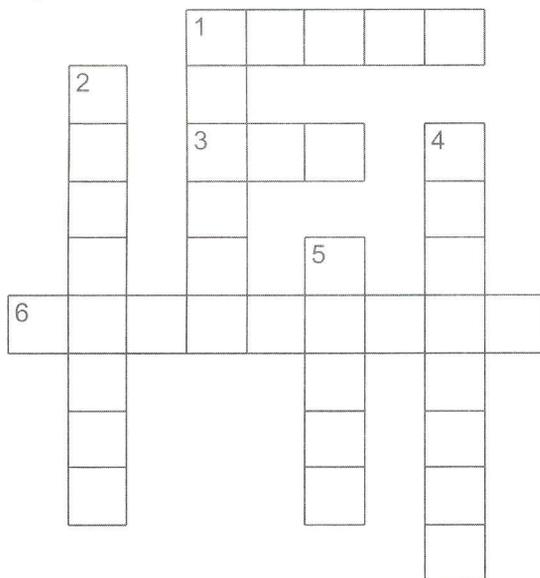
The convention offered a **27**_____ on the latest green technology.

They decided to put a **28**_____ on the income of MPs.

The **29**_____ are being laid for a steady increase in energy prices for the next year.

Her career was in **30**_____.

Try this crossword.



Across

1. a seat without a back or arms
3. a large long container for water in which a person sits to have a bath
6. the floor or ground at the bottom of a doorway, considered as the entrance of a house

Down

1. a long soft seat with a back and usually with arms, for two or more people
2. a small opening in a wall, door, curtain, etc through which one may look
4. sheets and pillowcases
5. a flat board fixed to a wall or forming part of a cupboard, bookcase, etc for things to be placed on

FOOD

Look at the pictures below and match them with the following words:

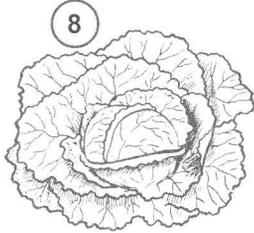
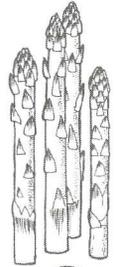
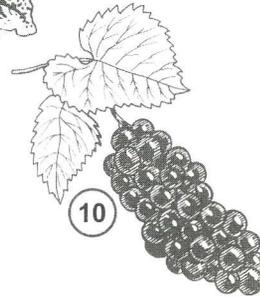
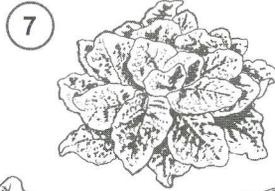
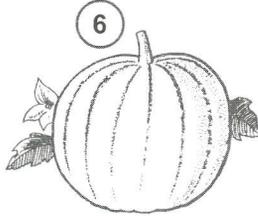
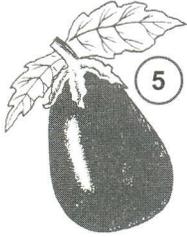
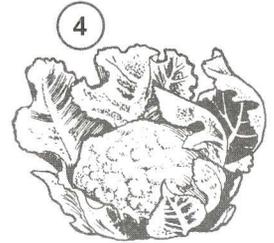
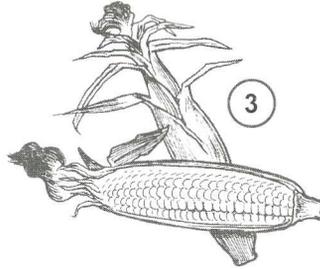
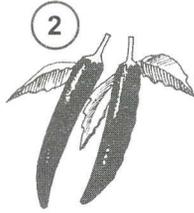
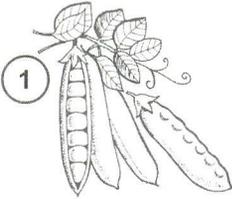
asparagus
blackberries
blueberries
broccoli
cabbage

cauliflower
celery
sweetcorn
eggplant / aubergine

grapes
chilli / chile peppers
lettuce
peas

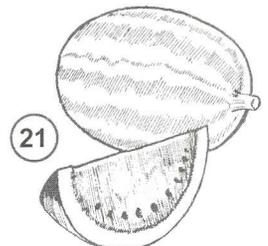
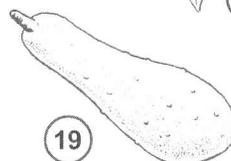
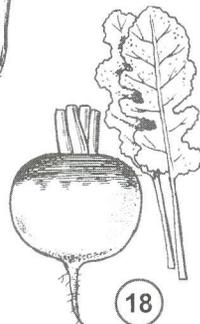
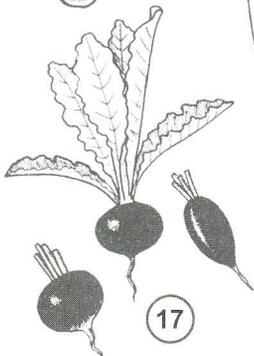
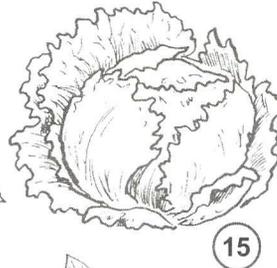
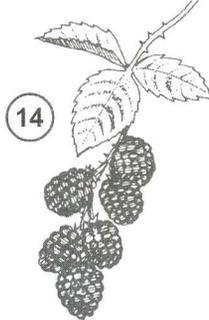
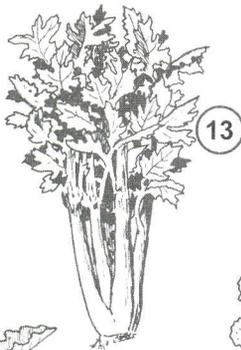
peppers
pumpkin
radishes
spinach

squash
green beans
turnip
watermelon



10

11

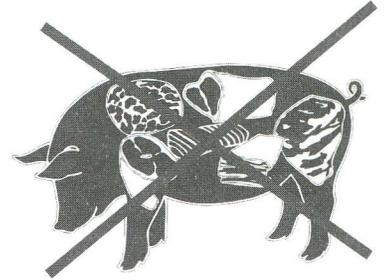
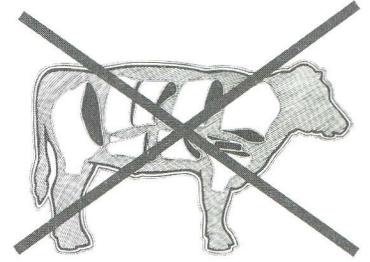


HEALTHY EATING

1 Do you know anyone who is a vegetarian? Would you ever consider being a vegetarian? What things would you miss the most? Should children be vegetarians? Do you think that it is healthy?

2  Listen to the recording and answer the questions.

- 1 The speaker says that she quit eating meat because
- her parents gave it to her with every meal.
 - she had a pet sheep who was killed for meat.
 - she doesn't think it is healthy.
 - she prefers fish.
- 2 She thinks that meat isn't healthy because
- it is fattening.
 - the animals it comes from aren't raised naturally.
 - it causes heart disease and high cholesterol.
 - it spoils before it gets to the market.
- 3 The speaker doesn't eat fish because
- it is full of preservatives.
 - she doesn't like the taste.
 - it's too expensive.
 - it gets contaminated by water pollution.
- 4 She says that she
- can't imagine not being a vegetarian.
 - would eat healthy meat if she could find it.
 - doesn't like beans but has to eat them for their protein.
 - has had to learn how to cook new things like pastas and stir-fries.



Healthy Eating

Meat

minced meat / mince (GB) / ground beef (US)

offal

beef

veal

pork

lamb

mutton

bacon

ham

smoked meat

sausage

salami

tinned meat

lunchmeat / cold cuts (US)

liver

kidneys

tripe

Fish

carp

trout

pike

eel

cod

salmon

sardines

mackerel

tuna

sea bass

perch

catfish / wels

zander

Game

venison

hare

pheasant

partridge

rabbit

wild boar

bear

blackcock

capercaillie

Poultry

duck

goose

broiler

capon

turkey

chicken

free-range eggs

Soups

clear soup / broth

cream soup

tripe soup

pea soup

vegetable soup

tomato soup

mushroom soup

noodles

liver balls

bouillon / stock cube

chicken noodle soup

Milk / Dairy produce

(semi-)skimmed milk × full-fat milk

yoghurt

cheddar

blue cheese

cottage cheese

butter

cream

Fruit and nuts

banana

lemon

orange

grapefruit

pineapple

satsuma

nectarine

tangerine

bilberries / blueberries

cranberries

raspberries

gooseberries

strawberries

mulberries

currants

cherry

plum

apricot

peach

pear

apple

walnuts

hazelnuts

coconut

almonds

figs

dates

raisins

Vegetables

onion

garlic

leek

cucumber

aubergine / eggplant

potatoes

carrots

parsnip

celeriac × celery

kohlrabi

Brussels sprouts

tomatoes

beans

green beans (GB) /

French beans /

string beans (US)

lentils

mixed pickles

gherkins

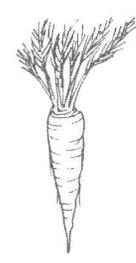
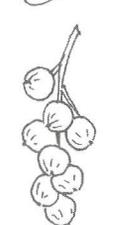
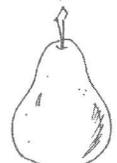
mushrooms

rhubarb

horseradish

courgette (GB) /

zucchini (US)



HEALTHY EATING

3 Discuss whether the following foods are healthy or unhealthy and say why.
How healthy is the cuisine of your country?

french fries
green salad
BBQ pork ribs
cereal
dark bread
ice cream
whisky
salty foods
fresh fruit
TV dinners
coffee
fried chicken
fish
chocolate
fried cheese

4 Make notes describing your personal preferences in eating and cooking and what you think may have influenced them. Then exchange your views with other students. In groups of four, prepare a short report for the class.

5 Is it healthy to eat/drink the items below? Why or why not?



Healthy Eating

nourishment
to be weight conscious
low-calorie food
to be overweight
to get fat
to put on weight
to be slimming
to lose weight
to eat modestly
to be on a diet
anorexia nervosa
bulimia
Weight Watchers (famous slimming club)
vegetarian
vegan
meat-eater
factory-farmed meat
preservatives
grains

pulses
soya meat / crumbles / chunks
high-fibre diet
saturated / unsaturated fats
health food / whole food
Sweets and confectionery
custard
pancakes
ice-cream cone
chocolate
toffees
candy bar (US)
candy floss (GB) / cotton candy (US)
semolina pudding
banana split
rice pudding
trifle (GB)
Christmas pudding (GB)

sundae
frozen yoghurt
jelly (GB) / jello (US) / gelatine
jam (GB) / jelly (US)
marmalade
Cakes, pies and pastries
sponge cake
fruit cake
apple pie
apple strudel
apple / rhubarb crumble
bun
doughnut
tart
biscuits (GB) / cookies (US)
scone
muffin
crumpet

brownies (US)
Meals and snacks
to grab / snatch a bite to eat
to lunch at one's desk
packed lunch (GB) / sack lunch (US)
elevenses (GB)
to pop out
to go out for lunch / dinner
works canteen / cafeteria
luncheon vouchers (GB) / lunch tickets (US)
to have lunch with sb
to send out for sandwiches
to live on coffee and cigarettes
pub lunch
liquid lunch
brunch

1 Separate the following verbs into the three categories below, then describe the difference between them saying what kinds of foods are typically prepared in this way.

thicken poach crush stir stew scramble
 roast peel simmer chop blend dice
 microwave boil mince purée fry grill
 quarter bake whip beat steam sauté

CUTTING	COOKING	MIXING
<i>slice</i>		

2 In pairs, make notes in your own language as your partner dictates a recipe to you. Then write a recipe for your favourite meal.

Chicken Parmesan (serves 2)

2 full chicken breasts, boned	3 tsp. oregano some flour
1 16 oz tin tomato paste	2 tsp. dried basil
3 eggs	1/4 lb. parmesan cheese
3 cloves garlic	1 tsp. salt
juice of 1 lemon	1/2 lb. mozzarella cheese
1 onion	1 tsp. pepper
1 package breadcrumbs	

In a large bowl, beat the eggs. Mix in the lemon juice and a pinch of parmesan cheese. Add chicken breasts, making sure that they are completely covered by the egg mixture, and allow to marinate for 6 hours.

Preheat oven to 200° C.

Peel and crush the garlic. Dice the onions. Cover the bottom of a small saucepan with a thin layer of olive oil, add the garlic, onions, oregano, and basil. Sauté over low heat until soft. Add tomato paste and simmer for 30 minutes.

Heat a thin layer of olive oil in a small pan. Take chicken breasts from the egg mixture and cover in a light layer of flour. Dip chicken back into the eggs and then cover with a generous layer of breadcrumbs. Place gently in the pan and brown lightly on both sides.

Pour enough tomato sauce to cover the base of a small casserole dish. Add the chicken breasts, cover with the remainder of the sauce and sprinkle the grated cheese on top. Bake for 15-20 minutes or until the cheese is golden brown.

Serve with spaghetti or oven-baked potatoes, mixed green salad, and a good red wine.

Bon Appetit!

Cooking

Seasonings

(black) pepper
 white pepper
 red pepper / paprika
 thyme
 parsley
 sage
 basil
 chives
 dill
 rosemary
 marjoram
 curry (powder)
 oregano
 nutmeg
 clove(s)
 ginger
 mint
 aniseed
 cinnamon

cumin (powder)
 caraway
 allspice
 chillies
 soya sauce / soy sauce
 vinegar
 mustard
 salad dressing

Cooking

ingredients
 a pinch of
 to add
 to bring to the boil /
 a boil
 to dip
 to marinate
 to bottle
 to pickle
 baking tin
 casserole (dish)

saucepan
 frying pan
 dough
 pastry
 cornflour
 breadcrumbs
 self-raising flour
 baking powder
 gravy × sauce
 mashed potatoes
 purée(d) potatoes
 sauté(e) (potatoes)
 dumplings
 rice
 stewed fruit
 canned fruit

Cooking for pleasure

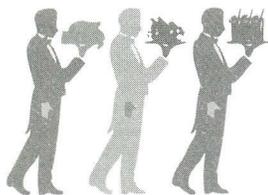
"The way to a man's heart is through his stomach."
 creating new dishes

collecting cook(ery) books
 exchanging recipes
 a foody (sb obsessed with food)
 gourmand / gourmet
 connoisseur
 luxury foods / fancy foods
 seafood
 salmon
 caviar
 lobster
 champagne / sparkling wine
 vintage wine
 quail's eggs
 snacks
 canapés
 open sandwiches
 sandwiches
 appetisers
 crisps (GB) / potato chips (US)
 peanuts

EATING OUT

1 Put the following steps to eating out in the correct order.

- reserve a table
- leave a tip
- leave your coats in the cloakroom
- eat the appetiser
- order your meal
- look at the menu
- go to the restaurant
- ask for the menu
- pay the bill
- eat the dessert
- wait for the waiter to seat you
- ask for the bill
- eat the main course
- leave the restaurant



2 Now fill in the missing information in the following dialogues.

Dialogue A

Hello, Bistro LeReepov, how may I help you?

Hello, I'd like to reserve a table for the evening of the twenty-fourth, please.

_____?

Two, please.

_____?

Non-smoking, please. And, could I please have one of the tables that overlooks the bay?

_____?

Oh, too bad. Oh, well, anywhere will do, then.

_____?

Eight o'clock.

_____?

Thank you. Good bye.

Dialogue B

Good evening, my name is Marcelle, and I will be your waiter for the evening. Are you ready to order?

Yes, I think so.

_____?

I think we'll start off with the mixed seafood.

_____?

No, I think we'll just share one portion.

_____?

Yes, I'll have the Spaghetti Alfredo, and the lady will have... what did you want, dear? Oh, yes, the Macaroni Surprise.

_____?

A bottle of your finest red wine, and some water as well.

_____?

Thank you.

Eating Out

- price
- quality
- taste
- nutritive value
- appearance
- menu planning
- surroundings
- nice atmosphere
- good range of wines
- wide choice of beer
- spirits and liqueurs
- candlelight
- soft music
- canned / piped music / muzak
- undercooked × overcooked
- tough × tender

- lean × fat
- slow × good service
- inedible / unpalatable food
- cafeteria
- steak house
- grill room
- snack bar
- coffee-shop
- tearoom
- takeaway restaurant (GB) / carryout (US)
- pub
- refectory
- landlord (GB)
- inn × bar × night club
- wine bar
- waiter / waitress

- head waiter
- barman (GB) / bartender (US)
- barmaid
- chef
- tablecloth
- table mats
- napkins
- to lay / set the table
- to clear the table
- cutlery
- sugar tongs
- cups
- saucers
- plates
- teaspoon
- sugar bowl

- milk jug
- beer mug
- wine glass
- cruet (GB)(old-fashioned) / salt and pepper shakers (US)

In a restaurant

- to ask the waiter for the menu
- to order an appetiser / an hors d'oeuvre (starter)
- to clear the table
- the main dish / course
- vegetables / extras (GB)
- side orders (US)
- dessert / pudding (GB)
- something to drink
- to ask for the bill (GB) / the check (US)

JJ'S DINER

M E N U

STARTERS

MAIN COURSES

SIDE ORDERS

DESSERTS

1 Here are some of the dishes currently found on menus on both sides of the Atlantic. Ask your teacher for help and decide whether the following dishes are on the American menu (on the left) or on the British one.

BBQ Chicken Wings
Spaghetti Bolognese
Prawn Cocktail
Baked Potatoes
Apple Tart and Custard
Nachos
Chili Cheeseburger
Banana Split



Menu



The Tudor Nook Starters

Main courses

Vegetables / Extras

Puddings



Fillet Steak with
Mushrooms and Onion
Rings
Chips
French Fries
Paté and Toast
Chef's Salad
Caesar Salad
Chocolate Mousse

Roast Duckling in
Orange Sauce
Philly Steak and
Cheese Sandwich
Jacket Potatoes
New York Sirloin
Steak
Apple Pie and Ice
Cream

SPECIALITIES OF BRITISH AND AMERICAN COOKING

2 In small groups, act out a scene at a restaurant. One person should be the waiter, while the others are the customers.



3 What is on a typical menu in a restaurant in your country? Work in small groups and write such a menu.



4 Choose one of the dishes and describe the things you can recognize. Your partner must guess which picture you are describing. Then try to agree on what the remaining things are.

Example:

I think it could be a bowl of soup.

There is something like pasta next to...

The thing at the back reminds me of...



Specialities of British and American Cooking

cuisine / cooking
junk / fast food
hamburger with french fries (US) / chips (GB)
hot dog
steak
T-bone
sirloin
fillet
rump
barbecue
pizza
haggis
fish and chips
roast chicken / turkey
Yorkshire pudding
Cornish pasty
Irish stew
roast beef
leg of lamb
Sunday joint / roast
lamb / pork chops
ready-to-cook

ready-to-serve
convenience food
TV dinner
cook-chill food
spare ribs
Coffee
black coffee
coffee with cream
espresso
cappuccino
caffeine
decaffeinated coffee
"real" or instant
filtered
percolated
Turkish
coffee mill / grinder
coffee machine (GB) / coffee maker (US)
coffee grounds
ground coffee

Tea
"put the kettle on"
kettle for boiling water
teapot rinsed with hot water
a teaspoonful for each cup and "one for the pot"
an excellent brand of tea
Darjeeling
Earl Grey
China

Soft drinks
plain water / tap water
mineral water
lemonade
apple cider (US)
pop
orange squash
ginger ale
soda × soda water
milkshake
malted milk
malt

fruit juice
mixers
teetotaler

Alcoholic drinks
hard drinks / spirits / liquor (US)
liqueur
scotch on the rocks
whisky (GB) / whiskey (US & Irish)
beer and ale
bitter
lager
brown ale
stout / Guinness
"pint"
"real ale"
cider
wine
sherry
ice cube
cocktail drinks
short (GB) / shot (US)
to toast / drink sb's health

Food for Thought

English food has become, over the years, a byword for mediocrity, for vegetables cooked to a mush, for tasteless pies containing unmentionable bits of animals, for soggy, greasy chips, sad salads, and for starch, sugar, and bread with everything. The proverb “the way to a man’s heart is through his stomach” probably owed as much to slow death by cholesterol poisoning as it did to cuisine as a courtship accessory. But like so much of the world’s view of Britain, it reflects a reality long dead, a mirror on an empire so long gone that few young Britons today even know it existed.

One of the problems of taking over half the world is that you have to fight for it. This puts men in the army, women in the factories, and an awful lot of pollution in the rivers. Plus people tend to fight back, and a classic way to attack an island (like Britain) is to blockade it – stop its food supplies getting through. So, for a couple of hundred years, British men had to be content with the foul compromises that make up boarding school and armed services food, and the ten per cent of the 20th century devoted to world wars was marked by an inclination to eat nearly anything, as long as the taste had been boiled out of it. Thus, the world view of English food is based on a certain amount of fact. At its worst, it is as boring, unhealthy, and tasteless as an afternoon in a cigarette factory.

However, one of the advantages of having occupied half the world is that half the world now occupies you. Restaurants and takeaways offering variations on the delicious cuisines of India and China have nearly ousted fish-and-chip shops from the side-streets of Britain’s towns, although in the high streets the Great American Hamburger and its cousins continue to franchise their own versions of cardboard cuisine for the uneducated palate. And as people grow up in multiracial environments and go abroad for their holidays, so the English are learning to appreciate decent food.

True or false – give reasons for your answers.

- 1 English women tried to poison their men with cholesterol.
- 2 Everyone is still proud of the British empire.
- 3 Boarding school food is delicious.
- 4 All people who say English food is bad are right.
- 5 All Indians eat fish and chips.
- 6 The author likes hamburgers.
- 7 English people eat carp.
- 8 Britain grows lots of lentils and nuts.



And the curious thing is that we had it all the time; we just weren’t cooking it right, or we had forgotten it could be eaten at all. Thirty or more species of edible and delicious fish are common round the British coast, with another 20 or so nearly completely ignored in the fresh water, including the incomparable eel and the succulent fat carp. What tastier dish than a fast-poached salmon can grace the table at a wedding reception? Our pastures thrive in the famous English rain. Roast lamb with a hint of herbs, perhaps rosemary or thyme, served with baked potatoes and lightly steamed greens, is nearly enough to make me fly home from Brno for Sunday dinner. And, given that noone introduces lentil or nut sanctions, the British vegetarian can feast on some of the most tasty plant products in the northern world.

In fact, the whole situation leads to some awfully politically incorrect conclusions. It seems to me that the more warlike a nation, the less it appreciates its food. Think about it. Now the sun has long set on Britain as a world warrior, perhaps we can settle down to more simple pleasures, like eating well.

TL 1998

FOOD – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

I Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

- When asked for his _____ for happiness, he gave a very short but sensible answer: work and love.
a receipt
b prescription
c metaphor
d recipe
- A good image is one of the most vital _____ for business success.
a ingredients
b examples
c preservatives
d recipes
- My blood _____ at the sight but I dared not speak.
a thickened
b fried
c boiled
d simmered
- He told us how a _____ from his father helped rescue his marriage.
a beating
b stew
c mixing
d roasting
- This is another _____ scheme that is not going to work.
a half-baked
b self-raising
c high-fibre
d ready-to-serve
- She kept _____ me about what I knew.
a stirring
b frying
c grilling
d stewing

II Put the following words in the right gaps.

INGREDIENT ROOTS HOP CINNAMON
ALCOHOLIC ORANGE NUTMEG PEACH
CLOVES

Bitters are prepared according to secret recipes using bitter herbs, leaves, fruits, seeds, or 7 _____ and sometimes alcohol or sugar. The taste is imparted by substances such as 8 _____ peel, gentian root, rhubarb root, 9 _____ flowers, and quinine. Aroma is provided by juniper, 10 _____, caraway, anise, 11 _____, camomile, 12 _____, and other flavouring agents. Bitters are usually named according to the 13 _____ giving the predominant flavour, such as orange bitters and 14 _____ bitters. The 15 _____ strength varies but is generally about 40 percent by volume.

III One of the following words can always be used in the set of three sentences.

SPICE (a) FLAVOUR (b) BITTER-SWEET (c)

16

We're simply not the _____ of the month, but our turn will come again.

You should try for yourself. Then you'd get the _____ of it.

They have a delicate _____ like that of hazelnuts, and can be eaten raw or fried.

17

_____s are important in Indian food for their qualities as a digestive as well as their taste.

Variety is the _____ of life.

At the time, there was a lot of interest in both of us from Italian clubs, and that added _____ to the game.

18

At 30, George will have the best part of his career still ahead of him, decades that are sure to be filled with more _____ ballads and funky dance numbers, for the man is a virtuoso of pop music.

When I saw my childhood home, it brought back _____ memories.

This is a witty and _____ tale of love and marriage spun from the threads of the three characters, in their respective voices.

IV Complete the following expressions with either BITTER (a) or SOUR (b).

19 to the _____ end

20 the wine was _____

21 a _____ pill to swallow

22 their marriage turned _____

23 a _____ disappointment or experience

24 a _____ easterly wind

25 to be _____ about the way sb has been treated

26 the relationship was going _____

27 it is going to leave a _____ taste

28 general suspicion continues to _____ the atmosphere

29 perhaps that was _____ grapes

30 the argument became more _____

FOOD – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Complete the sentences with the appropriate word.

- 1 It's a stressful job, and unless you are very careful, it's a sure _____ for disaster.
a bet
b taste
c prescription
d recipe
- 2 This new proposal was just a _____ version of his earlier suggestion.
a watered-down
b stewed
c dissolved
d blended
- 3 He escaped the _____ atmosphere of their crammed flat.
a kitchen
b unsaturated
c pressure-cooker
d cooking
- 4 I helped him once again - I should have let him _____ in his own juice.
a baste
b marinate
c stew
d bake
- 5 It has brought the present crisis to _____.
a boiling point
b freezing point
c point of view
d dew point
- 6 The police _____ him for hours.
a simmered
b grilled
c scrambled
d boiled

Put the following words in the right gaps.

THYME FOOD ROSEMARY GINGER ARTIFICIAL
VANILLA ALCOHOL CELERY LEMON

Flavourings are any of the liquid extracts, essences, and flavours that are added to foods to enhance their taste and aroma. Flavourings are prepared from essential oils, such as almond and lemon; from **7** _____; from **8** _____ by extraction; from mixtures of essential oils and synthetic organic chemicals; or entirely from synthetic chemicals. Water is added and sometimes certified **9** _____ colour as well. Extracts, essences, and flavours employing only natural flavouring agents are called pure; those employing synthetics are called imitation or **10** _____ flavourings.

Essential-oil extracts are prepared by dissolving an essential oil in **11** _____ of the proper strength, adding water and, where desirable and permitted by law, a small amount of certified food colour. They include almond, anise, **12** _____, cassia or cinnamon, clove, **13** _____, nutmeg, orange, **14** _____, savoury basil, sweet marjoram, **15** _____, and wintergreen.

One of the following words can always be used in the set of three sentences.

JUCY (a) PEPPERY (b) SALTY (c)

16

And there it was, my *soufflé de moules au thym citronne*, the most perfect creation, fractionally _____ but cloud-like with mussels small and plump and juicy tucked inside.

Out on the coast, where you'll be buffeted by _____ sea breezes, there are panoramic views to savour at every turn.

His vocabulary includes some quite _____ language.

17

Its comforting and _____ aroma has a warming action on the mind and body - helping to relax and ease nervous tension and stress.

_____ cresses and chives are thrown at the last minute into a risotto with white wine and baby leeks. According to Michael Jackson, an expert who knows more about malt whisky than is good for him, Glendibble has a _____ character which explodes on the palate and makes your temples steam.

18

Of the remake of the 1982 French cult classic, *The Return of Martin Guerre*, Gere says: 'We wanted to make something more emotional and _____.' Think of hot sunshine, _____ oranges, tart limes, and Aegean blue, and you have a perfect holiday. But if you like _____ Tuscan soups served just warm; deep-fried artichokes and courgette flowers; flat, crisp pizzas with melting cheese and herbs; and fish and meats from the grill, this is definitely the place for you.

Complete the following expressions with either SWEET (a) or SOUR (b).

- 19 Illusions of youth have turned _____ on his tongue.
- 20 to have a _____ tooth
- 21 Do tip the barman to keep him _____.
- 22 as bitter as the _____ after-taste of bad wine
- 23 She tutted. She had a pleasant face but she looked quite _____ now.
- 24 My grandparents were very _____ to me.
- 25 She'll go her own _____ way.
- 26 The milk has gone _____.
- 27 Try not let them _____ your day.
- 28 Look at that kitten. How _____!
- 29 a sack of _____ potatoes
- 30 He's a little sad but not _____.

SHOPPING

STOP POURING YOUR MONEY DOWN THE DRAIN!

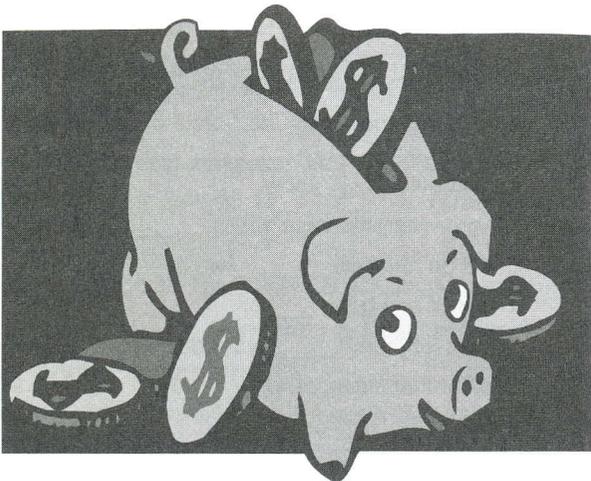
A little extra money. That's what everybody wants, right? Just a little extra cash to spend on a vacation or a special something for the house. For most people, however, just paying for the regular bills and household shopping takes up every penny of their wages or salary. Well, take another look at those bills and receipts, and you'll see a hundred different ways to save money, BIG MONEY, just by being a little bit more careful in your household shopping.

For most people, the biggest drain on the household budget is food. Just buying a little box of cereal or some rice for the house can pump up your shopping bill by an incredible amount. One of the ways to counter this is by forming a buying club and buying in bulk. Buying clubs are groups of people who get together and buy directly from the large wholesalers who sell food to such places as restaurants and bakeries. These distributors only sell in very large quantities, and most people don't need a hundred pounds of rice. That's why people form clubs, two or three households which split up the goods between themselves. You can't get everything from a wholesaler - only non-perishable goods like grains,

tinned goods, and pastas. But you can stock your pantry for as little as half the price you would pay in a large supermarket.

The number one rule for anyone wishing to save money is - *never* buy anything new, unless you absolutely have to. Every day our society throws away everything from clothes to household appliances which are perfectly usable, simply because somebody wants the newest model or the latest fashion. Of course, you don't have to go searching through the dump. But you can find perfectly good clothes at second-hand shops, tools and equipment at flea markets, and appliances and furniture at charity organisations like the Salvation Army. At these places, you can not only get a good deal, but support a good cause as well. You must always be careful to buy quality goods, and not just something that will break down on you in a few weeks.

If you decide that you want to treat yourself and buy something new, there are still ways of saving money. Never buy anything until you have shopped around and compared the prices a little. The end of the year, when most shops hold clearance sales to make room for the new year's models, is the best time to get a great deal on new goods. Reject shops sell slightly damaged goods which, except for minor imperfections, are just like new except at almost half the price. For an even better deal, ask the clerk if you can buy the demonstration model. If it's been used, even only once, it can't be sold as new at a new goods price. So throw out all of those old bills, get out your newspapers, and while you're looking for sales, take a look at the travel section too. You'll soon have enough money for that vacation you've been dreaming of.



1 What is the difference between these places to shop? What are each of them best for? What are some of their drawbacks?

supermarket
corner shop
street market
second-hand shop

2 What do you spend the most money on? Is there any way you could spend less money on those things?

Discuss ways to save money on the following things:

food
entertainment
clothes
household appliances
furniture

3 Read the text and decide on titles for each paragraph and write them in the spaces provided.

4 Find a word in the text for each of the following:

- a constant outflow, withdrawal, or expenditure
- the amount of money that you have to spend
- an agent who supplies goods in bulk
- the occupants of a house regarded as a unit
- subject to speedy decay
- a device or piece of equipment used for a specific task
- a place for depositing rubbish
- an institution or organization for helping those in need
- shops with sub-standard goods
- a slight fault or blemish

5 Here are the answers to some questions about the text. Try to guess what the questions were.

Because they spend all of their money on bills and household expenses.

To bakeries and restaurants.

No, it would be too much food.

Never buy anything new.

Because they get tired of them and want something new.

You get a good deal and help a good cause.

To make room for the new models.

Because it has been used in demonstrations.

Going Shopping

shop assistant (GB)
sales clerk / salesman,
saleswoman (US)
attendant
shopkeeper
cashier
customer
shopper
consumer
hard / difficult to please
shopping area / precinct
supermarket
hypermarket
superstore
shopping list
to shop for st
a good shop for (e.g. glass)
shopping centre
shopping mall
arcade
marketplace
cash and carry
market
market stall
covered market

flea market
auction
jumble sale (GB)
car-boot sale (GB)
garage sale (US)
junk shop
second-hand shop
reject shop
factory shop
catalogue shop
mail order / catalogue shopping
cardboard box
string bag
to do some shopping
to go window-shopping
to be looking for st
to be trying to find st
to have run out of st
to be out of st / out of stock
to shop around
to chase around the shops
to call at
it's hard to get
it isn't available

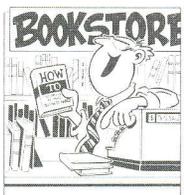
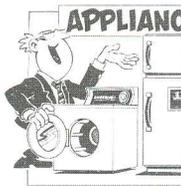
in great demand
in short supply
sold out
supply × demand
to come across st
(shop) window
to dress a window
window dresser
counter
row of shelves
deep-freeze counter
trolley (GB) / cart (US)
(wire) basket
cash-desk / till
queue (GB) / line (US)
to queue up for (GB) /
stand in line (US) /
line up (US)
shoplifter
pickpocket
shop detective
to purchase
opening hours
business hours
to stay open

to close
early closing day
to take st back
shop (GB) / store (US)
department store (Harrods,
Selfridges, Tesco, C&A)
discount store
corner shop
village shop
chain store

Notices

STOCKTAKING (GB) /
INVENTORY (US)
BACK IN A MOMENT
LUNCH HOUR
CLOSING-DOWN SALE
SHUT FOR REPAIRS
THIEVES WILL BE
PROSECUTED
BEWARE OF PICKPOCKETS

SHOPS



1 What is your favourite shop? What kind of things do they sell there? If you could open a shop, what kind of shop would it be?

2 Match the items on the left to the place where they can be found on the right. Each place can only be used once.

basketball
 bottle of whisky
 CD player
 fresh cod
 frozen pizza
 greeting cards
 guide book
 hammer
 holiday house
 magazine
 nails and screws
 new boots
 perfume
 pipe rolls
 sandwich
 sofa
 steak
 sweets
 tofu

?

travel agent's
 estate agent's
 delicatessen (deli)
 health food store
 butcher's
 baker's
 confectioner's
 seafood shop
 shoeshop
 chemist's
 stationer's
 newsagent's
 ironmonger's
 D.I.Y. store
 off-licence
 supermarket
 bookstore
 furniture store
 sporting goods store
 hi-fi shop
 tobacconist's

Shops

Food

grocer's
 whole food store / health food shop
 greengrocer's
 dairy / milk-shop / milkman / milkround
 confectioner's / sweetshop / candy store (US)
 confectionery / sweets
 fishmonger's: wet fish (GB) / seafood shop (US)
 corner shops

Other shops

haberdasher's
 jeweller's
 optician's
 dispensing chemist (GB) / pharmacy (US) / drugstore (US)
 florist's / flower-stand

bookshop (GB) / bookstore (US)
 second-hand bookshop (GB) / used books (US)
 record shop
 newsagent's / news stand
 ironmonger's (hardware)
 electrical appliances, hi-fis, CD players, VCRs
 glassware
 china shop
 antiques
 gift shop
 D.I.Y. (do-it-yourself) shop: tools, appliances, materials
 toy shop
 camera shop
 sporting goods / sports goods

SHOPPING AROUND

1  Listen to the following four dialogues and decide where they are taking place and what kind of relationship the speakers have.

2 For each of the four dialogues, first describe the problem the characters have, then say whether the statements that follow are true or false.



Dialogue 1

- ◇ Shoppers can get a better price at the hypermarkets because they can buy goods in bulk.
- ◇ Joe is a regular shopper who just buys odds and ends at the store.

Dialogue 2

- ◇ The speaker can't afford the product until the sale begins.
- ◇ The saleswoman offers to sell her the product even though she doesn't have all of the money to pay for it immediately.

Dialogue 3

- ◇ Lee thinks she got a good deal on her computer.
- ◇ She paid more money for a better warranty.

Dialogue 4

- ◇ The shop doesn't usually have the model the customer is looking for.
- ◇ The shop assistant suggests mail order because she doesn't want the customer to go to another shop in town.

Shopping Around

fixed prices
fluctuating prices
bargain
wholesale price
retail price
to buy in bulk
pricelist
inexpensive / cheap / reasonable
moderate
expensive
dear but worth the price / money
prices have gone up / risen
gone down / fallen
family budget
to be able to afford st
affordable

Payments

It's beyond my means. (old-fashioned)
I can't afford it.
purse (GB)
wallet (GB) / billfold (US)
(small) change
(bank) note (GB) / bill (US)
to short-change
to take in / cheat
to rip sb off
ripoff

to save money on to pay
in cash
by cheque
by credit card
put it on the plastic (coll.)
to leave a deposit
to lease / rent-to-own (US)
monthly instalments
to be broke

Reductions

to get a discount
to sell at a reduced price
cut-price goods
imperfect goods / seconds / factory rejects
summer / winter sale
the January sales
closing-down sale
clearance sale
special bargain
big spender
extravagant
thrifty
mean with money (GB) / tightwad (US)
to go on a shopping / spending spree
shop till you drop

Quality

quality goods
first-class goods
brand-new
used
shop-soiled
slightly damaged
demonstration model
display item
guaranteed
inferior goods
faulty goods
to take st back
receipt
to ask for a refund
consumer rights
to get your money back
to be offered credit

Packaging

wrapper
economy size
tin (GB) / can (US)
jar
bottled × draught beer
canned beer
foam packing
packet of biscuits
box of chocolates
crate of drinks
case of wine
shrink-wrapped / vacuum packed
carton of milk

Hairdresser

to have an appointment
to have one's hair done
to have a trim
to shampoo
hairdo
permanent wave(s) / perm
curlers
styling rods
hairclip
hairpin
lacquer / hair spray
hairdryer
blow dry
to dye
to bleach or tint one's hair
highlights
colour rinse
crew cut
nail polish
manicure
to have one's nails done

Miscellaneous

beauty parlour
cobbler / shoemaker
heel bar (GB)
laundry / launderette
dry-cleaner
(radio, TV, cycle, etc.) repair shop
"While-U-Wait"

Trade, advertising

foreign trade
home trade (GB) / domestic trade (US)
exports × imports
to export or import
manufactured goods or raw materials
to do business with sb
competition
trade fair
exhibition ground
to exhibit
an exhibit
on display
on show
on the stand
advertisement / advert / ad
commercial
to advertise
sales gimmicks
hoarding (GB) / billboard (US)
posters
irresistible
folder
leaflet / flyer
handout
fly-posters × sky advertising
to do st on the fly
to do st on the sly
promotional gifts
sponsorship

SHOPPING – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

The following expressions have been jumbled. Put them back into the right places in the sentences below.

MONOLITHIC JUMBLE HYPERMARKET SALE CHAINS SUPERMARKET
HYPERMARKET TROLLEY STREET WHOLESALE MARKET PRICES

- 1 Mass distribution has changed all that. Today, the approach to a French country town is all too often dominated by a _____, with an immense car park, while many of the smaller stores have closed down.
- 2 The existing law limiting the expansion of _____ has not been effective.
- 3 Dear Father Simon, forgive me, I have sinned. It was twenty years ago when I was chorister and our parish church had a coffee morning and _____ to raise funds for the church spire.
- 4 One woman, pushing a huge _____ full of clothes, yelled: 'Nobody's stopping me. It's free.'
- 5 A decree issued by the Soviet President, Mikhail Gorbachev, allowed companies to set their own _____ for the next year.
- 6 Don't miss the chance to pick up a bargain in our bustling covered _____! Open daily from 11.

Fill in the missing words.

Harrods, Ltd., in London, the famous 7 d_____ store was founded by a miller, Henry Charles Harrod, as a 8 g_____ store in 1849. The 9 e_____ expanded in the late 1800s, and many new departments were added. It is considered the United Kingdom's best department 10 s_____.

Although the store still provides 11 g_____ food items, its current emphasis is on high-fashion clothing. Over the years, Harrods made innovations in many areas of store operation. In 1884, 12 c_____ desks were placed at convenient points to take 13 c_____ payments; most large 14 r_____ were using mechanical devices or runners to move customers' money and change between 15 c_____ and a central 16 c_____ station. The following year the store allowed limited 17 c_____ to approved customers.

Match the words on the left with the goods on the right. Use each word once only.

- | | | | |
|----|----------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 18 | a can / tin of | a | chocolates |
| 19 | a bar of | b | film / toilet paper |
| 20 | a roll of | c | cards / cigarettes (US) |
| 21 | a pack of | d | soup / cigarettes / razor blades |
| 22 | a box of | e | pearls |
| 23 | a packet of | f | beer / fish |
| 24 | a string of | g | soap / chocolate |

Change the incorrect word in the following phrases.

- 25 I'll take it. Could you sort it up, please?
- 26 Try it without destination, just on trial.
- 27 Is anyone tending you?
- 28 Just staring, thanks.
- 29 We have gone out of that item.
- 30 I'll let it up to you.

SHOPPING – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The following expressions have been jumbled. Put them back into the right places in the sentences below.

DISCOUNT MALLS PRICES SHOPPING SMALL MAIL SHOPS SALE
ORDER PRICE RETAIL CLEARANCE

- 1 Hypermarket distributors face tough competition from specialised chain stores which can match their _____.
- 2–3 Inspired by the huge _____ of the United States, the French hypermarket not only offers cut-rate prices that _____ cannot match, but also cheap restaurants, clowns, pony rides and cinemas – everything one might need to enjoy a weekend.
- 4 Passengers will be able to make phone calls, receive faxes and phone messages, shop by _____ and even play computer games.
- 5 The monthly _____ index is a lagging indicator of inflation, as well as an imperfect one.
- 6 A _____ is a sale in which the goods in a shop are sold at reduced prices, because the shopkeeper wants to get rid of them quickly or because the shop is closing down.

Fill in the missing words.

Computer technology has had a significant impact on retail stores. All but the smallest shops have replaced the old-fashioned cash **7** r_____ with a terminal linked to a computer system. The terminal may require that the **8** c_____ type in the code for the **9** i_____; but more and more frequently the **10** c_____ counter includes a bar-code scanner, a device that directly reads into the computer the universal product **11** c_____ (UPC) printed on each package. The cash-register **12** r_____ can then include brief descriptions of the items purchased (by fetching them from the computer database), and the **13** p_____ information is also relayed back to the computer to adjust the inventory immediately. The **14** i_____ system can easily alert the **15** m_____ when the supply of some item drops below a specified threshold. In the case of **16** r_____ chains linked by networks, the order for a new supply of an item may be automatically generated and sent electronically to the supply **17** w_____.

Match the words on the left with the goods on the right. Use each word once only.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| 18 | a tube of | a | jam |
| 19 | a bunch of | b | wine / milk / beer / whisky |
| 20 | a jar of | c | bread |
| 21 | a pad of | d | writing paper |
| 22 | a loaf of | e | flowers / bananas / grapes |
| 23 | a carton of | f | milk / fruit juice |
| 24 | a bottle of | g | toothpaste |

Change the incorrect word in the following phrases.

- 25 Have you got a tie to snatch?
- 26 Does the display price conclude VAT?
- 27 Would you like to pretend the guarantee?
- 28 Are you being listened to?
- 29 What taste do you take?
- 30 Could I have a cook at that one?

CLOTHES

1 Look at the vocabulary in the box below and try to sort it out according to the season and occasion on which these pieces of clothing are worn. Make lists under the suggested headings:

casual clothing	formal clothing	special occasions

spring	summer	autumn	winter

Clothes

knitwear
 underwear
 pyjamas (GB) / pajamas (US)
 knee socks
 jersey / jumper / sweater (US) / pullover (GB)
 cardigan
 shirt
 T-shirt
 sweatshirt
 slacks / trousers (GB) / pants (US)
 dressing gown (GB) / housecoat (US) / bathrobe (US)
 coat
 trench coat
 winter coat
 overcoat
 raincoat / mac / mackintosh
 anorak
 parka

Ladies' Wear
 lingerie
 night-dress(GB) / nightgown (US)
 bra / brassiere
 knickers (GB) / panties (US)
 slip
 petticoat / half-slip (US)
 stockings
 suspender belt / garter belt
 tights (GB) / pantyhose (US)
 blouse
 twinset
 separates × suit
 culottes
 leggings
 fur coat
 evening dress
 strapless dress
 ball gown

Men's Wear
 vest (GB) / singlet (GB) / undershirt (US)
 tank top
 underpants / pants (GB)
 boxer shorts
 long johns
 knickerbockers
 blazer
 jacket
 sports
 Norfolk
 leather
 dinner (GB) / tuxedo (US)
 smoking
 waistcoat (GB) / vest (US)
 lounge suit (GB) / business suit (US)
 evening trousers
 morning suit
 bow tie and tails / white tie and tails



2 Describe what one person is wearing. Your partner should find that picture. Is anybody wearing anything that you have not found in the list on the preceding page?

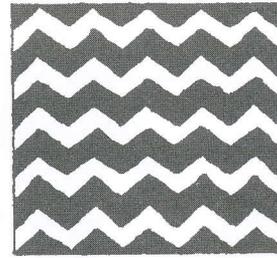
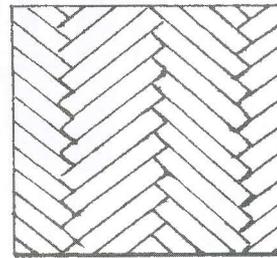
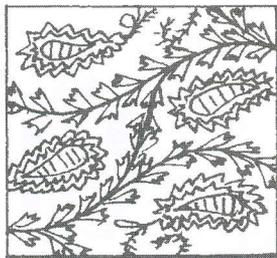
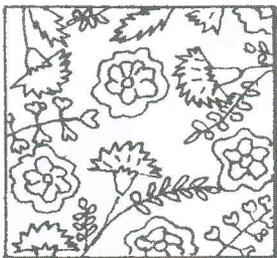
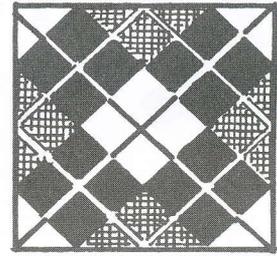
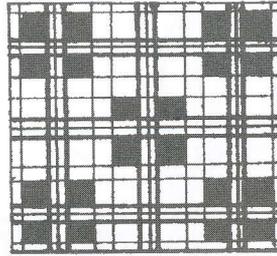
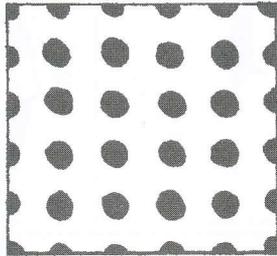
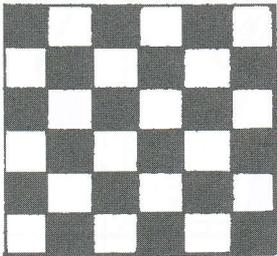
When using adjectives pay special attention to their order – see the following page.

MATERIALS, COLOURS, AND PATTERNS

1 When using adjectives to describe things, be careful to pay special attention to the sequence the adjectives have to go in. Take a look at the table below. As a rule, your opinion comes first.

Your Opinion	Size / Fit	Age	Colour	Pattern	Origin	Material	Style
casual	tight	new	crimson	plain	Italian	silk	V-neck
semi-casual	baggy	old	maroon	striped	French	corduroy /	crewneck
formal	loose		tan	floral	Spanish	cord	poloneck
elegant	light		lime-green	polka-dot	Taiwanese	velvet	turtleneck
beautiful	lightweight		amber	speckled	English	flannel	cowneck /
comfortable	strong		fawn	chequered	American	denim	hooded
tacky	thick		turquoise	tartan	Indian	satin	full
trendy	thin		purple	batik	Chinese	brocade	pleated
stylish	heavy-duty		mauve	tie-dyed	Japanese	lace	knee-/calf-/full-
old-fashioned	heavy		aqua(marine)	paisley	Mexican	wool	length
gaudy			faded	argyle		polyester	single-breasted
second-hand				herringbone		suede	double-breasted
worn-out				zig-zag		leather	long-sleeved
shabby						fur	short-sleeved

2 What are the patterns below called?

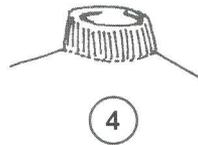
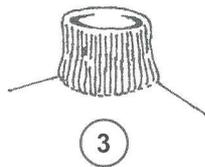
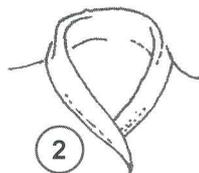
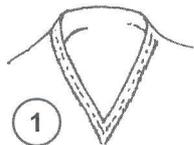


3 Match the names of the following materials with the corresponding ends of sentences.

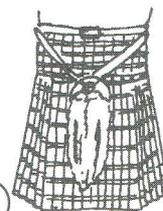
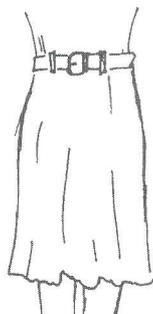
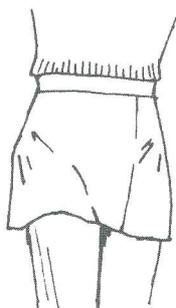
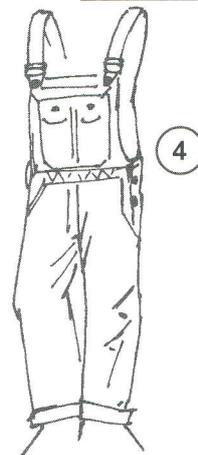
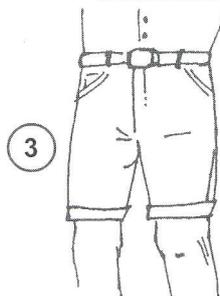
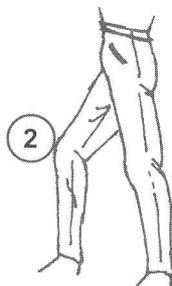
- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 Polyester | (a) is the material jeans are made from. |
| 2 Leather | (b) underwear is very sexy. |
| 3 Denim | (c) pyjamas are my favourite because they are so warm and comfortable. |
| 4 Flannel | (d) is a synthetic fibre and doesn't let your skin breathe. |
| 5 Silk and lace | (e) is a very controversial issue these days. |
| 6 Wool | (f) needs to be oiled periodically. |
| 7 Fur | (g) is warm and fuzzy but cannot be washed in the usual household washing machine. |

DESCRIBING CLOTHES

1 Name these types of collars and necks using the words from the box below.



2 Name these types of trousers and skirts using the words from the box below.



Describing Clothes

Neck

V-neck
round neck
square neck
crew neck
polo neck (GB) / turtle neck (US)
cowl neck
hooded neck
shawl neck

Collar

separate
collar stud
button-down
Eton
turn-up

Skirt

full
pleated
miniskirt
knee- / calf- / full-length
kilt
slit / with a slit

Suit

single-breasted
double-breasted
turnups
3-piece

Sleeves

rolled up
raglan

wide armholes
cuffs

Trousers

slacks / pants (US)
jeans
stone-washed
faded
patched
torn / ragged
stretch
cut-offs
shorts
flares / bell-bottoms
drainpipes

"bib and braces" /
overalls (US) / dungarees (GB)

Miscellaneous

handkerchief / hankie
tissues
scarf
bodysuit
tunic / overshirt
fully lined
loose fit(ing)
elasticated
toiletries / personal care products

FOOTWEAR

1 Which part of the shoe do the words go with?

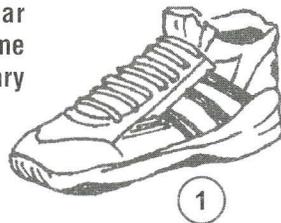
- heel
- toe
- sole
- strap
- buckle
- lace



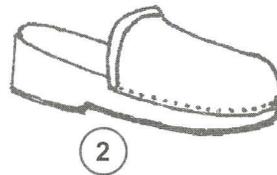
2 Look at the different kinds of footwear. Match the names and the pictures.

On what occasions do you wear them? Talk about them using some of the adjectives in the vocabulary box below.

trainers



hiking boots

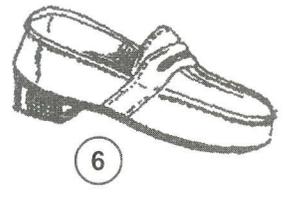
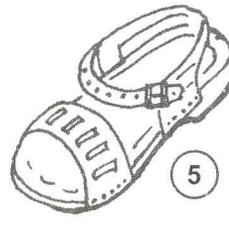
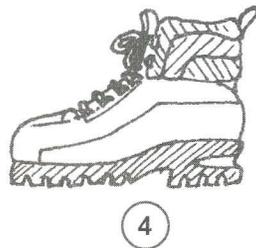


stiletto

loafers

sandals

clogs



Footwear

shoelaces
court shoes
sandals
slippers
moccasins
pumps
brogues
lace-up shoes
slip-ons
boots
Wellington boots / gumboots
galoshes
sneakers (US) / plimsolls (GB)
/ trainers (GB) / tennis shoes / running shoes
gymshoes
ski-boots

hiking boots
patent leather shoes
to fasten / do up your shoes (GB) / tie (US)
to undo / untie
to try on
to be a size too big × too small
to put shoe polish on
to clean
to polish / shine
to brush
to slip on / put on
to slip off / take off
to change
to wear down / out
to wear through
to fix / mend / repair

to sole
to heel
loafers
clogs
walking shoes
sports shoes
stilettos / high heels / high-heeled
flat / low-heeled
pointed
fashionable
platform
ill-fitting × comfortable
tight
suede
strong / thick / heavy-duty

DRESSING AND UNDRRESSING

1 Fill in the gaps in the following sentences using the verbs on the right in the correct form.

- 1 She went into the bathroom, turned on the water in the shower and then _____.
- 2 Mark always brushes his teeth and eats breakfast before _____ in the morning.
- 3 She quickly _____ the child.
- 4 I thought the shoes were actually the right size, but when I _____ them _____ I realised they were too tight.
- 5 Last Halloween I _____ as the Queen.
- 6 This dress used to _____ me, but now I've put on so much weight that it really needs _____.
- 7 Whenever I get to the office, I _____ my coat, _____ my tie and _____ my sleeves.
- 8 I bought this great dress at the second-hand shop, but it's too loose and too long - it needs _____ and _____.
- 9 She took off her muddy boots and _____ some warm slippers.
- 10 When he comes home from school, John _____ his school uniform and _____ normal clothes.
- 11 That orange sweater really _____ with this red skirt.
- 12 I don't think that make-up really _____ you.
- 13 How tacky! That girl's outfit _____ her boyfriend's.
- 14 These jeans don't fit me any more. I've _____ them.

- to match
- to take off
- to put on
- to change out of
- to change into
- to try on
- to fit
- to grow out of
- to roll up
- to let out
- to take in
- to get dressed
- to suit
- to dress
- to take up
- to dress up
- to clash
- to get undressed / undress
- to loosen

2 Say what usually happens in the following situations. Use as many of the verbs from the above exercise as possible.



in the morning
getting ready for school or work

in a clothes shop
choosing and buying new clothes



at the tailor's / dressmaker's
after putting on weight



at the tailor's / dressmaker's
after losing weight

SPORTSWEAR AND WORKING CLOTHES

1  You are going to hear a fashion model's answers in an interview. Before you listen, read the statements on the right and mark them true or false, according to your expectations.

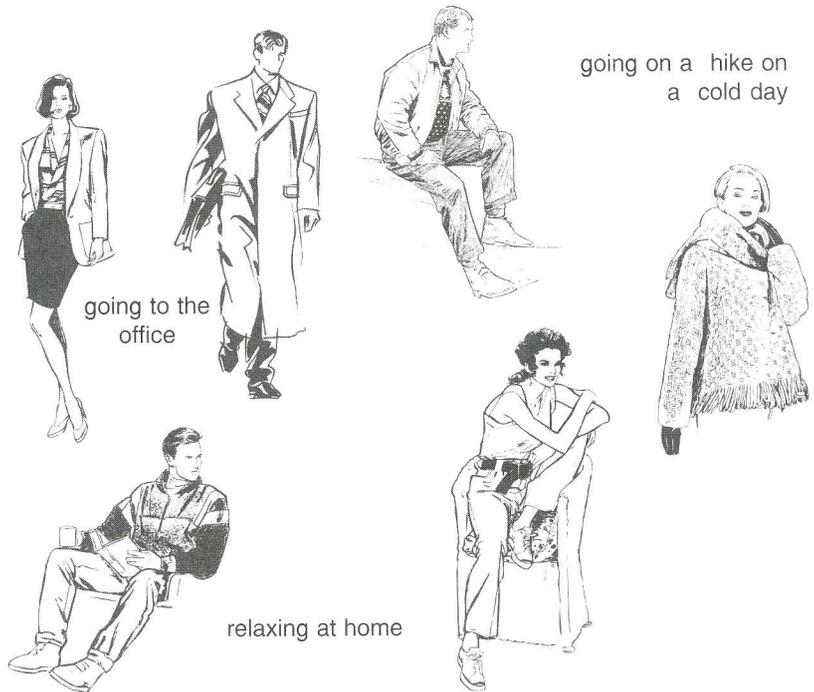
Can you work out what questions the interviewer asked her?

Then listen and check your answers.

- 1 When she was younger, the speaker never thought of herself as very beautiful.
- 2 She got her first job modelling because her uncle was the cameraman on the photo shoot.
- 3 She says that the pressure to keep thin is so high that it pushes some models to do dangerous things to keep their weight down.
- 4 She says that keeping thin is hard work but she does it because it's all part of the job.
- 5 She likes doing photo shoots in exotic locations because she gets to see some interesting places.
- 6 She prefers fashion shows to photo shoots.
- 7 She loves the feeling of finishing a show without anything going wrong.
- 8 She finds fashion shows very stressful but she likes doing them anyway.

2 Match the clothes in the columns below to the people in the pictures on the right. (Where necessary, use other expressions for ladies' wear):

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| baseball cap | silk shirt |
| trench coat | jeans |
| winter coat | argyle socks |
| thick wool socks | undershirt |
| hiking boots | T-shirt |
| long johns | boxer shorts |
| paisley tie | cap and gloves |
| corduroy trousers | sports jacket |
| jumper | underwear |
| sweatshirt | leather loafers |
| sweatpants | |



Sportswear and Working Clothes

(running, tennis, etc.) shorts
 tracksuit
 jumpsuit
 sweatsuit / shell suit
 leotard
 ski suit
 ski jacket
 ski pants
 ski gloves
 swimming trunks
 one-piece / two-piece bathing suit / costume

swimsuit
 bikini
 bathing cap
 wetsuit
 headband
 anorak / parka
 down jacket
 hooded jacket
 camouflage jacket / camo
 rain jacket
 cagoule (GB)
 apron

oilskins
 waterproofs
 gaiters
 safety boots
 safety helmet
 goggles
 face mask
 hair net
 wristbands
 padded jacket
 pads
 jockstrap

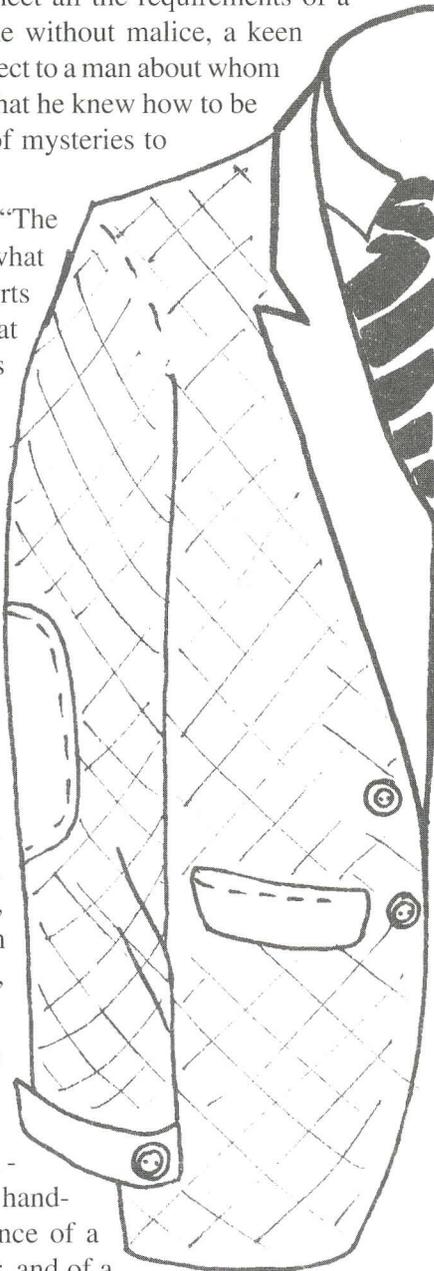
CLOTHES MAKE THE MAN

The Jacket

Which clever student first nicknamed our English teacher is lost in the myths and legends of a school full of stories, but he made it meet all the requirements of a good nickname: it was a joke without malice, a keen observation, and a nod of respect to a man about whom we understood little, except that he knew how to be alone, which is the deepest of mysteries to most teenagers.

We used to call him “The Jacket”, because no matter what else he wore, his tweed sports jacket spoke for him. It was at least as old as he was, 40 years or more, and both garment and wearer seemed made of the same stuff: roughly spun, prickly, coarse wool, tightly woven and hung into a form that recognised neither time nor fashion. It had lost all shape long ago, which was just as well, because so had he. Nearly-naked suede at the elbows and cuffs shone a story of long hours at desks, while the curious and observant might notice a dark, oily stain on the right forearm, the mark of an ancient shotgun slung there for long, thoughtful walks.

For those brave enough to get close to him - or lucky enough, since he was a true and affectionate friend - the jacket smelt of dog and hand-rolled cigarettes, of an absence of a raincoat, of spent gunpowder, and of a sweat that had nothing to do with dirt. The jacket was, or had been, a mixture of dark, muddy brown and stormy sunset red, which matched his windburnt face perfectly. And it used to smile with him, for when his face relaxed and his eyes lit up, his shoulders too would lose their usual tension and drop for a moment, so man and jacket would greet you, as honest as a scrap of wool stirred by the breeze on a thorn-bush.
TL 1995



1 This is a story in which one piece of clothing tells us a lot about one man. Read it first and then look at the tasks below.

2 From the following list, choose three words or phrases that can be used to describe both a kind of cloth and a person.

- old coarse woven
- roughly spun
- affectionate prickly naked

3 Find a word that means:

- 1 nastiness, nasty intentions, meaning to hurt
- 2 sharp, intelligent
- 3 piece of clothing
- 4 completely without hair, or without clothes
- 5 very old
- 6 completely finished, used up to the point that it has no more power
- 7 stress, tightness
- 8 moved gently

4 Answer the following questions.

- 1 Does the writer like his English teacher?
- 2 Is it easy to get to know the English teacher personally?
- 3 Is the English teacher well-built?
- 4 Do you think he is, or has been, married?
- 5 Does he smile a lot?

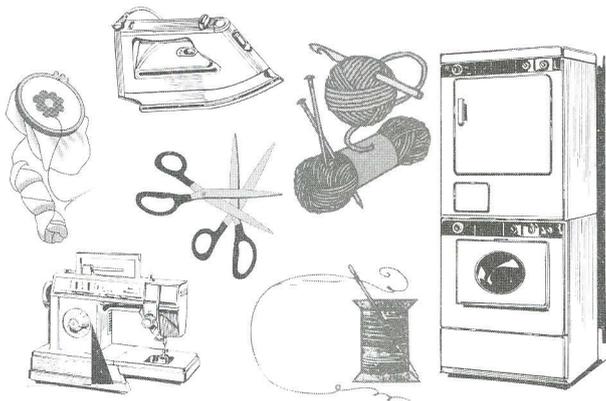
5 Write a similar paragraph that starts:

If one piece of clothing told me everything about him/her, it was his/her.....

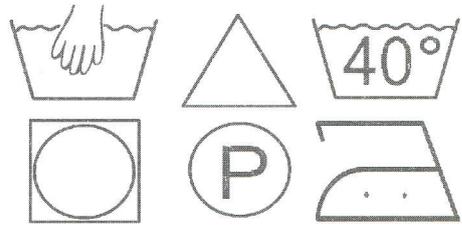
6 Read the following questions and say a few words to your partner about each of them. Use the words from the vocabulary section at the bottom of the page.

How fashion-conscious are you? Talk about your own clothes.
 How do you choose your own clothes?
 Do you read fashion magazines?
 Do you buy clothes for yourself only or for other people too?
 Where do you buy your clothes?
 Have you ever tried making your own clothes?
 How do you take care of them?
 How about clothes repairs and alterations?

7 How are the following things and machines connected with clothes? Can you think of any others?



8 Washing instructions. Using some of the words below, describe what the following symbols mean. Explain all the other expressions.



lukewarm	to hand wash × machine wash
to tumble-dry	
to rinse	to hang out the laundry / washing
to starch	to drip-dry
to dry-clean	to line-dry
to bleach	to shrink
colourfast	preshrunk
to wash separately	to stretch
to crease × be crease-resistant	to iron

9 Now go through the above expressions once more saying which material or part of clothing they are typically connected with.

Clothes Make the Man

Fashions

in vogue / fashionable
 to come into / go out of vogue / fashion
 to be "in" × be "out"
 to follow fashion
 to be fashion-conscious
 fashion designer
 fashion show
 model
 to do modelling
 haute couture
 couturier / dressmaker
 tailor-made × off-the-peg (GB) / rack (US)
 designer clothing
 trendy
 to buy second-hand
 charity shops / thrift shops

Making and mending

vital statistics
 tape measure
 recycling centre
 hand-me-downs
 to hem
 to sew
 sewing machine
 needle and thread
 thimble
 to work to a pattern
 to cut out (a garment)
 badly × well tailored
 to stitch × unstitch
 to drop a stitch
 take up or let down (a hemline)
 to take in or let out (waists)
 to alter
 to wear thin / down / out

to darn socks
 to patch the elbows
 to iron
 to do the washing
 washing machine
 to dry
 to tumble-dry
 tumble-dryer

Needlework

embroidery
 to embroider
 to crochet
 hook
 to knit
 knitting needles
 knitting machine
 knitting pattern
 to make lace

CLOTHES – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Complete the following sentences containing idioms with the names of colours.

- 1 He claimed he had seen the agreement in _____ and _____.
- 2 They have been given the _____ light to start the new project.
- 3 I always feel _____ when it's cloudy and rainy.
- 4 It's much better for you to be in the _____ than to be in the _____, having lots of debts to pay back.
- 5 The police caught him _____-handed.
- 6 Bankers, lawyers, doctors, teachers and people who work in offices are called _____-collar workers.
- 7 The Parkers finally sold their old car. It was so huge and cost so much to run and maintain that it became a _____ elephant for them.
- 8 I don't often get a chance to see my friend. He lives so far away – I only see him once in a _____ moon.
- 9 Whenever you say that phrase I see _____. I get so angry!
- 10 They were all jealous of him. He got so much money, much more than anyone else, they were _____ with envy.

Read the following text and put the expressions into the gaps.

METAL NEEDLES WEAVING STITCHING CLOTHES MAKING SEWING MACHINE CLOTHING

The contemporary system of industrialized clothing production did not exist before the mid-19th century. Although important advances in the mechanization of spinning and **11**_____ had taken place during the previous centuries, **12**_____ continued to be a hand skill. Except for the introduction of **13**_____ in the Middle Ages, no new technology was successfully utilized until Isaac M. Singer designed a treadle-powered **14**_____ in 1851. At first his machines were used only for straight-seam **15**_____, and all other work continued to be performed by hand. Gradually other machines were introduced. By the end of the 19th century the basic conditions and technologies for the creation of a giant **16**_____ industry were present.

Match the adjectives with the two nouns – CLOTHES (a) and SHOES (b).

17 crumpled **18** torn **19** ballet **20** second-hand **21** platform **22** court

Match the following clichés and proverbs with their definitions.

- | | | | |
|-----------|---|----------|--|
| 23 | to pull the wool over someone's eyes | a | crazy |
| 24 | to keep st under one's hat | b | to deceive someone |
| 25 | to cast pearls before swine | c | immediate action prevents a bigger problem later |
| 26 | It's better to wear out than to rust out. | d | with a comfortable, giving texture |
| 27 | A stitch in time saves nine. | e | it's better to work until you die than to be idle just because you are old |
| 28 | as soft as velvet | f | strong, able to endure a lot of hardship |
| 29 | as tough as (shoe) leather | g | to waste something good on someone who does not care about it |
| 30 | as mad as a hatter | h | to keep st secret |

CLOTHES – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Complete the following sentences containing idioms with the names of colours.

- 1 Suddenly, out of the _____ I got this splendid idea to write a letter to her.
- 2 Why do you think _____ humour is so popular?
- 3 The truth sometimes hurts, but a _____ lie never hurt anybody.
- 4 Her vegetable garden and her flowers always look great – she has _____ fingers.
- 5 Tom's really got brains, he is a guy with a lot of _____ matter.
- 6 All the _____ -collar workers in the factory went on strike.
- 7 When he got the letter asking for a large sum of money and threatening him to make his love affair public, he knew he was being _____ mailed.
- 8 If you want a better price, you have to buy your cigarettes on the _____ market.
- 9 You would have hoped not to have to deal with so much _____ tape when applying for that job.
- 10 She is an incurable optimist and sees the whole world through _____-coloured glasses.

Read the following text and put the expressions into the gaps.

DESIGNERS HAUTE COUTURE CLOTHING DRESSMAKERS READY-TO-WEAR FASHIONS

Germany produces about one-quarter of the total clothing output in Western Europe. Italy still maintains large numbers of tailors and **11** _____, and its ready-to-wear industry is large – second only to Germany's – and much of its production is sold outside the country. In France, the couturier houses continue to set trends, but most of the **12** _____ sold is ready-to-wear. In 1970, the French government built a large glass exhibition hall on the edge of Paris, the *Salon du Pret-a-Porter* (meaning ready-to-carry or **13** _____) to accommodate the growing industry of ready-to-wear clothing. The elegant **14** _____ house is giving way to the work of **15** _____ whose output is sold to boutiques and department stores and purchased by women who care about clothes of designer quality, even if they have neither the time nor the money to buy couturier **16** _____.

Match the adjectives with the two nouns – TROUSERS (a) and SKIRT (b).

- 17 baggy 18 pleated 19 flared 20 full 21 tight 22 slit

Match the following clichés and proverbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 23 A wolf in sheep's clothing. | a conceited |
| 24 All that glitters is not gold. | b a dangerous person pretending to be harmless |
| 25 You can't make a silk purse of a sow's ear. | c to be dressed in a jacket or sports jacket and tie (for men) |
| 26 Tied to one's mother's apron strings. | d from poverty to wealth |
| 27 put a sock in it | e an informal (rude) way of telling someone to shut up |
| 28 too big for his boots | f overly dependent on one's mother |
| 29 from rags to riches | g a warning: although something is attractive, it needn't be genuine or valuable |
| 30 to wear coat and tie | h You cannot make someone more refined than he or she is by nature. |

THE SOCIAL WHIRL

1 Do you prefer to spend your evenings and free time at home, or do you prefer to socialise? How often do you entertain friends at home, or do you prefer to go out with them?

What was the last party you went to like?

2 You are throwing a party. In small groups discuss the details (food/drinks, place, time, clothing, invitations, etc.).

Now phone your friend to invite him/her. Be ready to answer a lot of questions.

The Social Whirl

to relax and do nothing
to gossip with friends on the phone
to attend evening classes
to take dancing / music lessons
to go out for the evening
to have visitors
housewarming party
dinner party
cocktail party

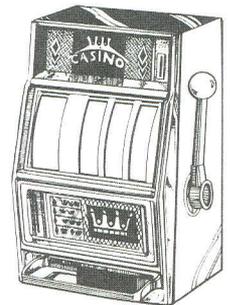
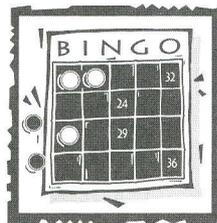
hen party (GB)
bridal shower (US)
baby shower (US)
bachelor party
big, noisy party
to drop in on sb
to pop in for a drink
to go out for a drink
to go down the pub / boozier (GB)

to take in a night club
ballroom dancing
dinner dance
country dancing
square dancing
to have a special treat
to go jogging
to walk in the forest
to get out of town

GAMES OF CHANCE

1 Gambling is a favourite pastime all over the world, and possibly the only hope of big money for many poor people. It is also a dangerous addiction. Where does one draw the line? Discuss.

2 Have you ever tried playing any of these? Which of them do people spend most money on? Why is it so easy for some people to get hooked on them?



Games of Chance

Games

gambling
betting on the horses, dogs,
etc.
poker
pontoon
blackjack
(Russian) roulette
chemin-de-fer
die / dice
craps
lottery
football pools

People / places

dealer
casino
amusement arcade
betting shop

Equipment

fruit machine
slot machine

Miscellaneous

to play for money
bank
to break the bank

jackpot

to do the pools
to come up on the pools
to know the odds
to get into debt
to play to a limit
to cover bets
to lose one's shirt
to hustle
to cheat

JOB

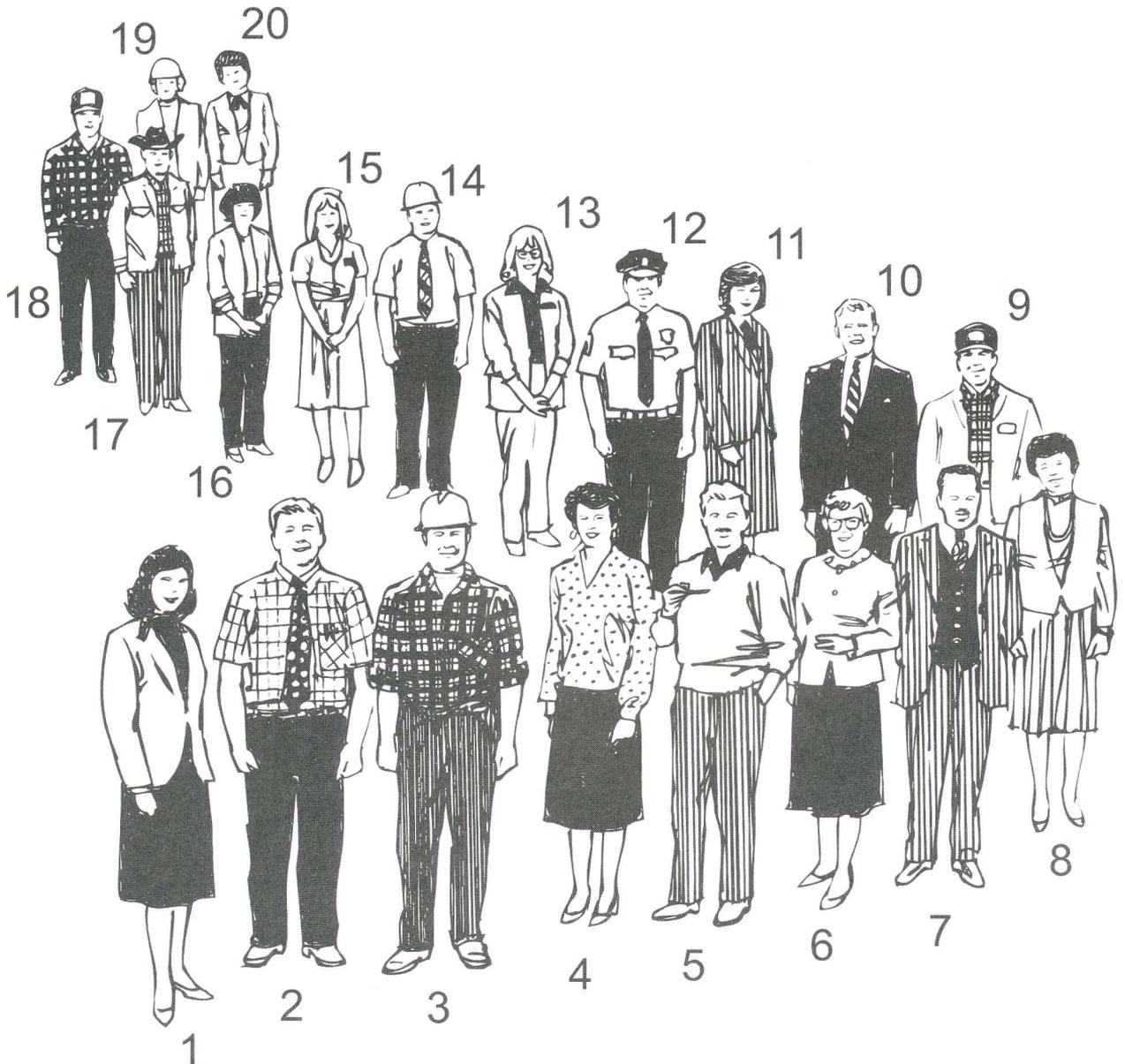
1 Look at the drawings of people. What do you think they do for a living?

2 What is the place where they work called? Think of the advantages and disadvantages of various jobs.

3 Which of them are blue-collar workers and which are white-collar workers?

4 Which of their jobs is, in your view, the best and which is worst? Give reasons.

N.B. Specific job / occupation lists can be found under the relevant subject headings, i.e. look for 'glazier' under 'Home', 'surgeon' under 'Health', etc.



1 Fill out the job application below.

JOB APPLICATION

Personal Information

Surname: _____

Title: _____

First name(s): _____

Date of birth: _____

Address: _____

SSN: _____

Telephone number: _____

Sex: Male / Female

Education

Name and address of school

Period of study

Qualification
Degree received

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

Work History

Name and address of employer

Period of employment
and reasons for leaving

Description of your duties

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

Citizenship status: _____

Languages: _____

References: _____

Do you hold any positions in any organisations or clubs? _____

Have you committed any crimes within the last five years? _____

How did you hear about this job? _____

Write a short description of yourself, including any special skills and qualities you have which might prove useful in this position, and explain why you want to work for us.

2 Look at the following **JOBS WANTED** ads.

What kind of person would be most interested in each of the following jobs?

What kind of background and personality would they have?

Which one would you rather do and why?

3 With a partner, write a dozen or so questions that you might ask as an employer or interviewee for one of the advertised positions.

Then go to other pairs and interview or be interviewed for the job you have chosen.

4 Imagine that you have had an interview for a new job and want to tell your friend or family about it.

Sum up briefly what has happened and who said what. State your own opinion.

ITEMS FOR SALE

Microfilm to the States. Street view. 1/4, 1/2, 3/4 inch. 1000 pages. 1000 photos. 1000 slides. 1000 prints. Call 222 22 22

PERSONAL ASSISTANT TO SALES MANAGER

Highly experienced legal officer and secretary to a senior manager in a large firm. Must be fluent in English and French. Please send CV and salary requirements to: **LEGAL OFFICE**, 1000, 1000, 1000.

AMERICAN PUBLISHING COMPANY

seeks bilingual assistant to set up a circulation office in Brno. The successful applicant will be working mostly on their own from home, so initiative and responsibility are a must. Applicants must have excellent computer skills, especially in spreadsheet and editing programs and on the internet. Occasional business trips to our central office in Boston may also be required.

MANAGING DIRECTOR

World-Link, an international telephone company, is seeking a highly motivated managing director with telecommunications experience to manage our operations in Paris. The successful candidate will be responsible for operating a satellite office in Paris. Duties include addressing business opportunities, developing pricing strategies, completing sales forecasts, and all other aspects of operations. Requires strong knowledge of international business practices and accounting and 5 years directly related job experience.

TOUR GUIDE NEEDED

Happy Holidays Travel Agency is looking for tour guides to lead tours throughout the Czech Republic, Slovakia, and Hungary. All applicants must have an extensive knowledge of the region's history, good organisational skills, a friendly personality, and speak fluent English and/or German. Tours last anywhere between two days and two weeks, so all applicants must be prepared to travel extensively.

PERSONAL ASSISTANT TO SALES MANAGER

Euroheating, an established firm dealing in radiators throughout Europe, is now looking for someone to assist the manager of our foreign sales department. If you have some previous secretarial and/or clerical experience and have basic computer skills and a good telephone personality, please send us a short letter and your CV. A basic knowledge of German and Italian or French is also required.

Looking for a Job

situations vacant ads (GB) / want ads / job listings (US)
 word of mouth
 job centre (GB) / employment office (US)
 application form
 curriculum vitae (CV) / resumé
 shortlist
 to be shortlisted for
 school-leaving certificate
 state exam
 advanced (A) levels

GCSE (GB) / high school diploma (US)
 degree
 doctorate
 apprenticeship
 special skills training
 qualifications
 experience
 computer-literate
 employment history / record
 interview
 entrance examination
 references

Languages
 elementary
 intermediate
 advanced
 fluent
 bilingual
 "I can get by in ..."
 "My spoken ... is quite good, but I can't write it."

TYPES OF JOBS

1 Using some of the expressions in the box below, try to complete the following sentences:

- 1 Mary is working at the post office at the moment. It is only a(n) _____ job until the end of the holidays.
- 2 What company does Jean work for? She doesn't. She is _____.
- 3 My dad is a(n) _____ . He works in a cement factory.
- 4 Young men in some countries have to do _____ at the age of 18.
- 5 Peter works for the government. He's a(n) _____ .
- 6 He was very ambitious and eventually ended up in control of the _____ .

2 Read the following text and name the various jobs that are described in it. Can you add any more useful advice? Have you ever tried a similar project – perhaps as a summer job?

Creating Your Own Job

Some people may not want to spend time writing off speculative letters or phoning around potential employers asking for a job that may not exist. The alternative is to make a job for yourself, by creating a service which people in your local area might be willing to pay for. Window-cleaning, car-washing, housework and baby-sitting are a few of the most obvious odd-jobs, and there are many more. Below are some questions to ask yourself before turning self-employed:

1. What do people want? You can find this out by (a) asking neighbours, (b) reading local papers, (c) looking at advertisements in local shops.
2. What can I offer? It is surprising how many different things most of us can turn our

hands or minds to. It may well be that a hobby or spare-time activity can be turned into a moneyspinner. Some suggestions:

carpentry: simple woodwork, mending gates, making/putting up shelves.

cooking: lunch and dinner party catering or sandwich-making.

cycling: bicycle repairs (highly recommended), courier (suitable for anyone with a mountain bike and living in a big city).

gardening: grass-cutting, weeding, pruning.

knitting: making jumpers, cardigans, etc. on commission.

music: busking, playing in pubs, being a DJ.

sewing: dressmaking, repairs and alterations, cushion-making.

walking: dog exercising, tourist guiding, shopping for the elderly.

3. Who wants me? After you have identified the job you can do and for which you think there will be a demand, you need to publicise your services. The best way to start is with advertisements in local shops (which are very cheap) and, if you can afford it, in your local newspaper. It will also be useful to run off a handbill and distribute it locally.

The principal feature of successfully creating a job yourself is your reputation. If you impress someone with your hard work, promptness, and efficiency, they will tell others.

Types of Jobs

family business
on the land (agricultural)
manual
casual
skilled × unskilled labourer
shift-worker
white-collar × blue-collar ×
pink-collar × hard-hat
workers
office-worker
sedentary job
professionals (doctors,
lawyers)

civil service
civil servant
domestic servant
armed services
to do one's national / military service
conscription (GB) / draft (US)
conscript (GB) / draftee (US)
alternative service
re-enlistment
volunteers / enlisters
managerial
sales representative / traveller in st
vocation × job

artist
self-employed
freelance
full-time × part-time
regular × seasonal work
permanent × temporary job
temp
sideline / second job
moonlighting
voluntary
charity

KEEPING A JOB

1 What do you consider to be a good job? What things are most important to you in a job? Would you rather have job satisfaction and lower pay or vice-versa?

2 Study the words below and then read the dialogue on the right and fill in the missing words.

qualifications
 expense account
 workaholic
 retraining
 pension
 slave-driver
 responsibility
 perks
 initiative
 working environment
 career change
 sick pay
 overtime
 promotion
 self-motivated
 stressful
 company car
 passing the buck
 health scheme
 travelling expenses

3  Now listen and check your answers.

4 In the dialogue, Fiona's friend tells her that she can still fulfil her dreams. In pairs, list all of the reasons why she shouldn't leave her job.

- J: Hi Fiona. What's wrong? You look a little down.
 F: Yeah, it's my job. I really don't know what to do.
 J: Why? I thought you were really happy with it.
 F: Well, in many ways it's a great job. It definitely has a lot of 1 _____. I have a 2 _____ I can use at any time, and I have an 3 _____ I can use to pay for my 4 _____. The job offers a great 5 _____ with full 6 _____ when I get ill. And there's a good chance of 7 _____ if I stay with the company for a few years.
 J: It sounds great! So what's the problem, then?
 F: Well, I'm just not satisfied with the job. I have to travel a lot, so I'm always away from Dan and the kids, and when I am here I always have to work 8 _____ so I don't get a chance to see them much either. It's also a very 9 _____ job, and everybody in the office is feeling it, so it's a pretty tense 10 _____. The boss is a 11 _____, which doesn't help. He just walks around yelling about how we all have to show more 12 _____, take more 13 _____ for things instead of 14 _____, be more 15 _____, and all of those things. He can be a real 16 _____ sometimes. But most of all, I'm just sick of selling computers. I want to do something else with my life.
 J: Like what?
 F: I really want to be a teacher, but I'm not a young girl any more, and I'm afraid that it's a bit late to be thinking about a 17 _____ at my age.
 J: Yeah, but what are you going to do – stick with a job you don't like until you get your 18 _____? If I were you I'd leave and find something you like doing better.
 F: I know, but how can I do it? I can't go back to school at my age.
 J: Well, you might not have to do a full degree. You've got "A" level history, haven't you? You should see if that's enough to get a job teaching history somewhere. And even if you do have to do some 19 _____, you could go to evening classes before you quit your present job and get all of the 20 _____ you need.
 F: You know, maybe you're right. I'll have to give it some thought.

Keeping a Job

prospects (of promotion)
 in-service training
 day release
 health scheme (GB) / health plan (US)
 company facilities
 the perks of the job / fringe benefits
 staff discount on products / services
 maternity leave
 maternity grant
 holidays × unpaid leave

sabbaticals
 regular × irregular hours
 flexitime
 fixed × flexible hours
 to work shifts
 to clock in × out
 to share a job
 diligence
 enterprise
 obedience

punctuality
 procrastination
 laziness
 to pass the buck × accept / take responsibility
 self-motivation (a 'self-starter')
 individuality × sociability
 ethical × unethical business practices
 environment(ally)-friendly products

LEAVING AND LOSING A JOB

1 Match the newspaper headlines below to the articles they are for. Then finish the articles. There is one extra headline you do not need to use.

1 SOCIAL PROGRAMS ARE READY FOR AN OVERHAUL

2 THE GLASS CEILING IS STILL INTACT

3 MEXICAN SHIFT BRINGS UNEMPLOYMENT FOR AUTO WORKERS

4 LABOUR-MANAGEMENT BATTLE REACHES A HIGH LEVEL

5 SMALL TOWNS ARE HIT HARDEST BY THE EFFECTS OF THE RECESSION

a A recent survey showed that, despite twenty years of anti-discrimination legislation, women are still having trouble reaching the highest levels of the business world. The survey stated that the main causes of this problem are...

b Union leaders for the United Farm Workers said yesterday that the union would go on strike if three major fruit companies did not give in to their demands. Among other things, the workers are asking for...

c The MBW plant in Patrola provides work for many of the 25,000 people who live here. But this Friday evening, the whistle will blow for the last time. Like many big companies, MBW has decided to move its operations to Mexico in order to...

d Government advisors worked around the clock to prepare a budget that would balance the social programs needed to deal with the recession with the reduced income from taxes that the recession has brought about. Some of the main concerns had to do with...

Leaving or Losing a Job

Leaving a job

to give notice
to take voluntary redundancy
to take early retirement

Unions and strikes

to take industrial action
trade unions
union membership
union dues
union representative
to go on strike / strike
to be on strike
to strike against × for
to come out in sympathy
closed shop
picket (line)
talks / negotiations can be
successful
stalled
deadlocked

conditions of employment
wages keeping pace with inflation
index-linked earnings / pensions
management lockout

Losing a job

probation period
short-term contract
to be laid off
to be given notice / get the sack /
to be fired
to be made redundant (GB)
redundancy payment (GB) / severance
pay (US)
lump sum
the golden handshake
retraining scheme
on social security / income support /
on welfare (US)
(difficult) to make ends meet
sickness benefits
to be on disability (US)

to sign on (for social security)
unemployment benefits / dole (GB)
on the dole (GB)

Personal factors

incompetence
bad quality control
low commission
lack of support from colleagues

External factors

lack of opportunity
passed over for promotion
corruption in high places
stress
bad working environment
unsociable hours
recession
sexual harassment
sexual discrimination
the glass ceiling
declining economic situation

BANKING AND FINANCE

1 Look at the following story and put the paragraphs in the correct order.

CAUGHT IN THE CREDIT TRAP

a It all sounded too good to be true, so I immediately signed up. I closed my account at my old bank and opened up a new one at “High Street International”, one of the banks affiliated with the Unicard. I had a current account for my everyday purchases and a high-interest savings account for any money I could manage to put aside.

b Then Christmas came round, and I went on a mad shopping spree, buying expensive presents for everybody on my credit card. Everybody in my family was extremely impressed by how nice Santa Claus was to them that year, and my girlfriend especially loved the expensive gold necklace I bought for her. Nobody bothered to ask how I could afford such nice gifts, so I didn’t worry about it either.

c The Unicard was far more than just a credit card, he claimed. It was also a cash card which could be used at cash dispensers all over the country to make withdrawals and deposits without having to deal with a real bank clerk. What’s more, it was also a direct debit card which could be used in most shops to pay directly from my bank account instead of paying in cash. And, of course, it was also a conventional credit card with, wonder of all wonders, a 1,600-pound credit limit.

d I got my first (and last) credit card when I was at university. I walked out of the college bookstore one day to find a whole crowd of young salesmen trying to sign up students on the new Unicard program. This new card, as a smart young man told me, was soon

going to replace all other forms of currency as the world’s main method of buying and selling goods and services.

e The fun all ended one afternoon when a man from the Unicard Collection Agency arrived at my house and, informing me that my credit limit was used up and my cheque account was severely overdrawn, demanded that I pay him immediately. When I told him that I couldn’t, he ripped up my beloved Unicard and immediately proceeded to repossess all of the presents I had bought for people. My girlfriend was so upset at losing the gold necklace that she dumped me, and my parents had to foot most of the bill for my shopping spree. What’s worse, my credit is now ruined, so I will never be able to take out a student loan to continue my studies, a car loan to buy a new car, or a mortgage to buy a new house. But I still have my Unicard, taped back together and encased in glass on my desk, as a reminder to never, ever get another credit card as long as I live.

f Then the trouble started. I had never been any good at balancing my chequebook, and before I got my Unicard, I had always just taken money out of my account until the cash machine told me I had none left. But with my new account, any overdrafts were automatically paid for out of my credit account. My bank statement was so confusing that I had no idea this was going on, and I spent money right and left, quickly getting myself into debt.

2 Choose the word for the following definitions and explain the meaning of the other expressions.

- 1 Take back goods which were bought on credit but not paid for in the agreed time.
a) sign up b) overdraw c) repossess d) afford
- 2 Stop doing business with a bank.
a) open an account b) get oneself into debt c) make a withdrawal d) close an account
- 3 Take more money out of your bank than you actually have in your account.
a) overdraw b) charge c) take out a loan d) affiliate
- 4 Keep track of all of the money you take out of your account.
a) automatically pay b) make a deposit c) receive your bank statement d) balance your chequebook
- 5 The account you use for most transactions.
a) current account b) high-interest account c) credit limit d) savings account
- 6 To pay for something.
a) open an account b) make a deposit c) foot the bill d) withdraw cash

3 In pairs, choose one of the paragraphs and act out one of the conversations that might have taken place in it.

4 Summarise each of the paragraphs or write a topic sentence for each of them.

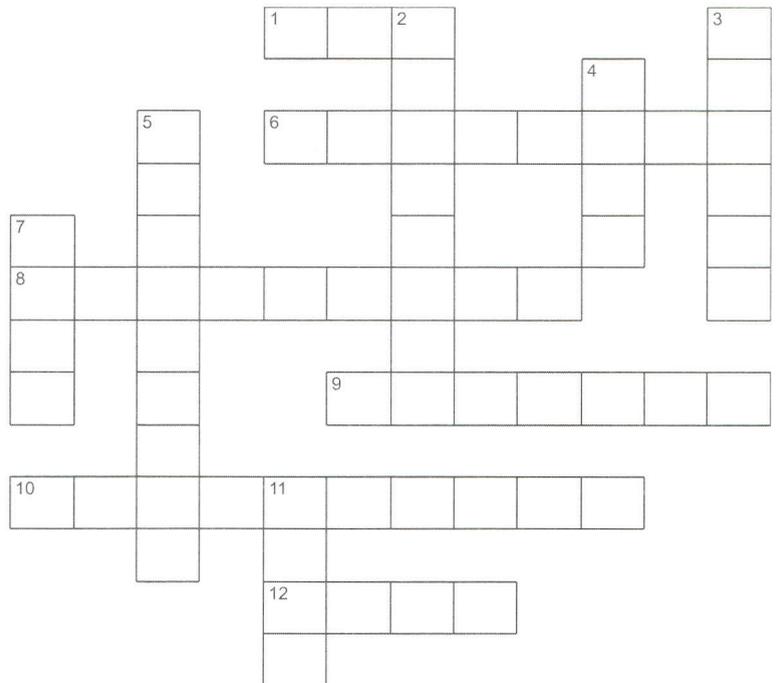
5 Here are a few idioms in context. Try to match the columns.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>A My aunt is a wealthy miser. I keep telling her:...</p> <p>B Fred put his money in a new bank that pays more interest than his old bank, saying:...</p> <p>C Jane shops very carefully to save a few pence on food, then charges the food to a charge card that costs a lot in annual interest. That's being...</p> <p>D Why do you work so hard to make money? It will just cause you trouble:...</p> <p>E Child: Can I have ten dollars to go to the movies? Father: Ten dollars?!...</p> <p>F If the bank goes broke, don't worry. The government will...</p> | <p>1 penny wise, pound foolish.</p> <p>2 Money doesn't grow on trees, you know!</p> <p>3 (The love of) money is the root of all evil.</p> <p>4 A penny saved is a penny earned.</p> <p>5 You can't take it with you.</p> <p>6 foot the bill.</p> |
|--|--|

6 Try this crossword.

Across	Down
---------------	-------------

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. automatic teller machine</p> <p>6. (formal) to buy sth</p> <p>8. a sum of money lent to sb by a bank, allowing them to spend more money than is in their account</p> <p>9. to put money into a bank, esp so that it can gain interest</p> <p>10. the action of removing money from a bank account</p> <p>12. an organization or a place that provides a financial service</p> | <p>2. a sum of money lent by a building society, bank, etc for buying a house or other property, the property being the security</p> <p>3. a special printed form on which one writes an order to a bank to pay a sum of money from one's</p> <p>4. money in coins or notes</p> <p>5. money charged for borrowing money, or paid to sb who invests money</p> <p>7. a thing that is lent, esp a sum of money</p> <p>11. a sum of money owed to sb</p> |
|---|--|



Banking and Finance

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>credit bank</p> <p>high street bank (GB) / local bank (US)</p> <p>private bank</p> <p>building society (GB) / savings and loan (US)</p> <p>to go bankrupt / fail / declare bankruptcy</p> <p>cheque (GB) / check (US)</p> <p>current account (GB) / checking account (US)</p> <p>deposit account</p> <p>savings account</p> <p>to open × close a bank account</p> <p>high interest account</p> <p>ethical investments</p> <p>cash machines</p> <p>ATM / cash dispenser</p> <p>to put money into the bank / make a deposit</p> <p>to draw / take money out / make a withdrawal</p> <p>to credit × debit an account</p> | <p>interest (rates)</p> <p>mortgage</p> <p>bank loan</p> <p>bank manager</p> <p>bank clerk (GB) / teller (US)</p> <p>overdraft</p> <p>overdrawn / in the red</p> <p>bank charges</p> <p>money-changing counter / bureau de change</p> <p>bank holiday</p> <p>to make out a cheque to</p> <p>cheque card</p> <p>credit card</p> <p>standing order</p> <p>statement of account / bank statement</p> <p>home banking</p> |
|--|---|

WORK & LEISURE PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Complement the following verbs with either **MONEY** (a) or **PRICE** (b) and use them in sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 to use | 8 to replace the _____ |
| 2 to accept a _____ | 9 to return |
| 3 to cost | 10 to reduce a _____ |
| 4 to ask for the | 11 to borrow |
| 5 to refund | 12 to lend |
| 6 to get one's _____ back | 13 to agree a _____ |
| 7 to vary in | 14 to transfer |

Sort these expressions into two groups – under number 15 those which collocate with **PRICE** and number 16 those with **MONEY**.

wholesale
discount off the
retail
drop in
extra
official

prize
competitive
amount(s) of
pocket
..... adjustment

15

16

Talking about money. Fill in the missing words.

- 17 'Million' is sometimes abbreviated to 'm', and 'billion' to 'bn'. Similarly 'K' and 'k' are sometimes used as abbreviations for 'thousand' when people's s_____ are being mentioned. eg.: Sales Manager, £30K + bonus + car.
- 18 When saying aloud an a _____ of money that consists only of pence, you say the word 'pence' or the letter 'p' after the number.
- 19 'How m_____ did you have to pay?'—'Eight quid'.
- 20 You don't have change for a ten-pound n_____, do you?
- 21 He rattled the loose c_____ in his pocket.
- 22 Farmers s_____ more than half a billion pounds per year on pesticides.
- 23 He o_____ some '10 million pounds' worth of property in Hampstead.
- 24 Americans use the word 'b_____' to refer to paper money. "The man put a five-dollar b_____ on the counter."
- 25 In informal speech, 'buck' is often used instead of 'd_____'. I got 100 bucks for it.
- 26 The rate of e_____ while I was there was almost 50 crowns to the pound.
- 27 You have to travel abroad to make b _____ money.
- 28 He d_____ to get danger money for that job.
- 29 It no longer provides v _____ for money.
- 30 How much m_____ have we got to play with?

WORK & LEISURE AND MORE PRACTICE...

Complement the following verbs with either MONEY (a) or PRICE (b) and use them in sentences.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 to (help) raise | 8 to earn |
| 2 to give access to | 9 to spend one's |
| 3 to run out of | 10 to waste |
| 4 to put up a _____ | 11 to sell (out) at a _____ |
| 5 to pay a _____ | 12 to lose |
| 6 to make | 13 to save |
| 7 to obtain st at a _____ | 14 to withdraw |

Sort these expressions into two groups – under number 15 those which collocate with PRICE and number 16 those with MONEY.

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| range | reductions |
| hush- | easy |
| exorbitant | tag |
| order | group |
| of shares | a worth paying |
| stability | |

15

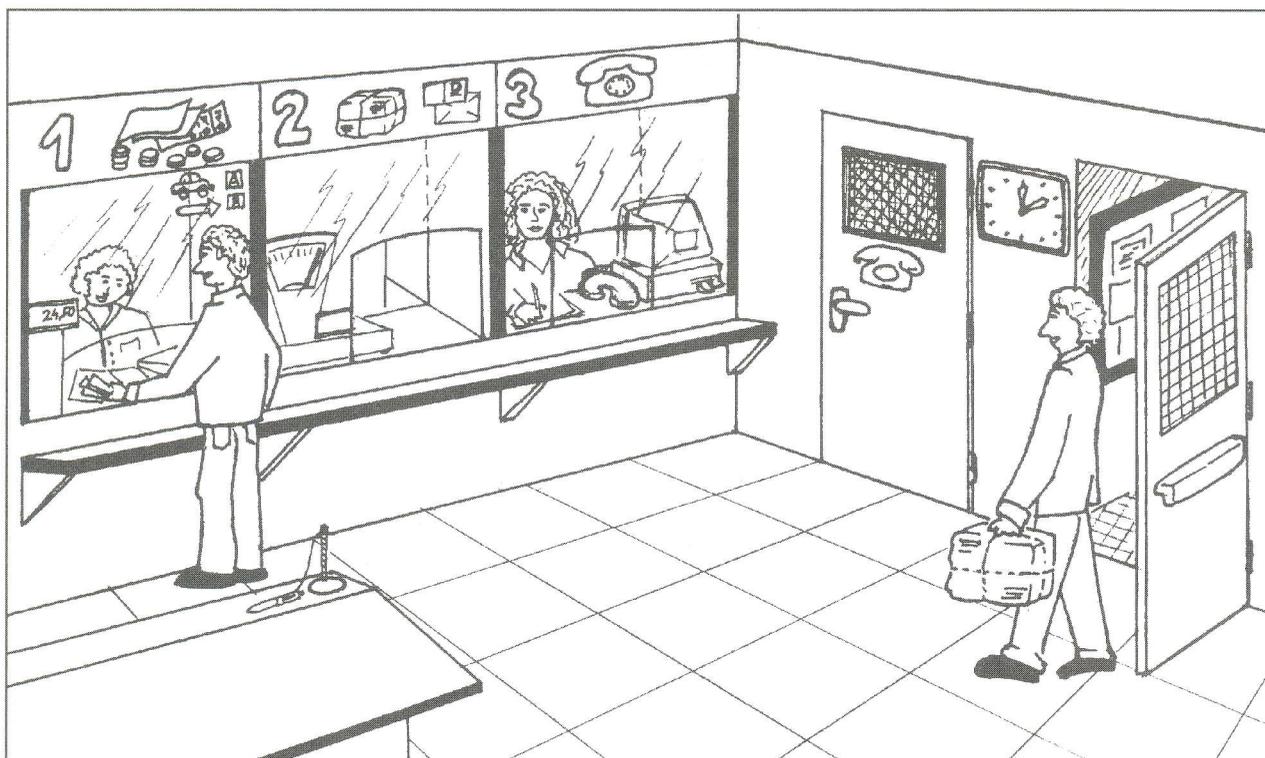
16

Talking about money. Fill in the missing words.

- 17 Several people paid on the spot in new n_____.
- 18 You should make sure that you have a ready supply of c _____ for telephoning.
- 19 The machine wouldn't take 10p p_____.
- 20 'Per annum' is sometimes used instead of 'per y_____'.
21 I had just that – a dollar bill, a quarter, two d_____, a nickel, and three pennies.
- 22 When saying aloud amounts of money, you always say the word 'c_____'. You never say 'c'.
23 You can't find another room at this hour in this town for l_____ or money.
- 24 Those four books cost a pound e_____.
- 25 Hush m_____ is money that is given to someone to persuade them to keep something that they know secret.
- 26 A country's money m_____ consists of all the institutions such as the government and commercial banks that deal with short-term loans, capital, and foreign exchange.
- 27 Now that their children are working as well, they must be r_____ in money.
- 28 They indulged all three children with plentiful s_____ money.
- 29 The i_____ rate is 8 per cent at the moment.
- 30 Many people think that money can b _____ you anything.

COMMUNICATION

Look at the picture and describe what you can see, using the vocabulary from the box below. Then prepare at least three questions to ask your classmates about the particular services.



Post Offices and the Services They Provide

post office
sorting office
sub-post office
post counter / village shop (GB)
postal clerk
postmaster / postmistress
postman (GB) / mail carrier (US)
Post Office Box / POB
poste restante (GB) / general delivery (US)
parcel post
counter
window

to keep × lose one's place (in a queue)
post van (GB) / mail truck (US)
public telephone
fax
coin-operated phone × card phone
postal order (GB)
pension payments
unemployment benefit
road tax renewal
bill payments
savings account

POSTING LETTERS AND PARCELS

1 Read the following information pamphlet and fill in the blanks with the kinds of post below.

- a Parcels
- b Recorded delivery
- c First class letters
- d Registered post
- e Express letter
- f Second class letters

2 You have bought some fine cut glass which you want to send to your friend in Venezuela. Here are the steps you need to take in order to pack it safely. First match the two parts of each step and then put the steps in the correct order.

3 What other precautions could you take to make sure the package gets to its destination safely?

ROYAL MAIL SERVICE



Inland

1. _____ are usually delivered on the next working day after collection, except those collected on Saturdays, as there is only one delivery as opposed to two on other days.
2. _____ are usually delivered on the third working day after collection, except those collected on Saturdays.
3. _____ provides evidence of posting, a signature on delivery and special handling arrangements for first class letters, including compensation for loss or damage to letters.
4. _____ provides evidence of posting and a signature on delivery for both first and second class letters, but without any compensation for loss or damage.
5. _____ is a service which guarantees that first class letters be delivered on the first working day after posting or your money back.
6. _____ should be properly packaged and clearly marked if they contain any fragile contents.

International

Compensation for lost or damaged goods will be provided only if the Royal Mail Service is to blame. Be sure to observe all tax, sanitary, and legal protocols for parcels sent abroad.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| Close the box using | with crumpled newspaper. |
| Line the box | on the side of the box. |
| Gently put the cut glass | in brown paper. |
| Write your return address | in the upper left-hand corner of the box. |
| Find | of string around the box. |
| Wrap the box | strong packing tape. |
| Write FRAGILE | is totally surrounded with crumpled newspaper. |
| Write the mailing address | in the centre of the box. |
| Make sure the crystal | into the box. |
| Tie a piece | a large cardboard box. |

Posting Letters and Parcels

pillar box (GB)
 letter box (GB) / postbox (GB) / mailbox (US)
 first class post / mail (US)
 second class post / mail (US)
 registered post (for valuables)
 recorded delivery (for important letters)
 express letter
 teletmessage (replaces telegram)
 jiffy bag / padded envelope
 packet

package
 parcel
 string
 sealing wax
 air mail
 aerogram
 stamp
 postmark
 franked envelope
 window envelope
 cancelled stamp
 commemorative issue

stamp collector / philatelist
 postal rates / charges
 printed matter rate
 to weigh a letter / parcel
 scales
 to insure the contents
 sellotape
 to tie with string
 fragile
 handle with care
 this side up
 urgent
 please forward to

LETTERS

1 Below are the texts of two letters, one formal, the other informal. Sort them out and put them in the correct order. Write at least one of the letters into your exercise book. (NB: A colon is used in the U.S. – Dear Sirs:)

- Dear Sirs
- Hi Christina
- I look forward to your reply.
- Please send me some information about the most important sites and museums, as well as a tourist map of the city that includes public transport routes.
- Guess what? I'm going to be in town sometime in late April.
- I am writing to enquire about tourist information on your city.
- It doesn't have to be anything too big – maybe just a list of the things that are worth looking at, and maybe a tourist map if you have one.
- I don't know anything about the city, so could you do me a favour and pop some information in the mail for me?
- I will be visiting your city in late April.
- Oh, yeah! If you know the names of any good (and cheap!) hotels in the area, please send those as well.
- Patrick McCully
- I can't wait to see you!
- Any information about accommodation would also be appreciated.
- Yours faithfully,
- Pat
- Love,

Dear Sirs

Hi Christina

2 What information do you usually find in the grey tinted panels? Talk about various layouts of letters that you have come across. If you are not sure what is right and wrong, ask your teacher for advice.

Letters			
personal letter	postcard	Receiving / replying to post	C.O.D. (cash on delivery)
business letter	to correspond with	stamped addressed envelope	excess postage
love letter	pen-friend / pen-pal	(s.a.e.)	R.S.V.P. = please reply to an
poison-pen letter	stationery	to sign for st	invitation
to drop a line to	to make a draft (rough copy)	proof of identity	first post
to keep in touch	to make a fair copy	return to sender	second post
to put st in writing	greeting	return address	
to seal a letter	letterhead	not known at this address	
quick note	enclosures		

THE TELEPHONE

1 Fill in the gaps with a suitable word.

BT Chargecard is easy to use

BT Chargecard calls are easy to 1 _____. Simply 2 _____ the free access code for the country you are in and you will then be asked to enter your account 3 _____ and PIN. Then just enter the telephone number you wish to 4 _____. It's that easy.

You'll always hear a familiar voice

Wherever you are, when you use the BT Chargecard you will always be able to communicate in English, which means no problems with operators who don't speak your 5 _____.

Charge your calls to your credit card

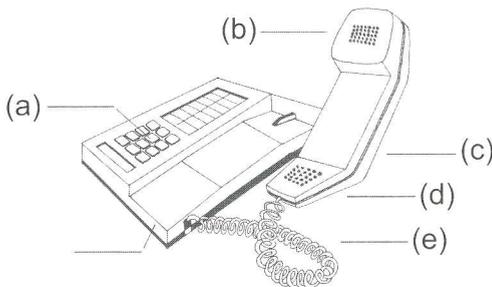
All the 6 _____ that you make with your BT Chargecard will be itemised on a separate statement for you to easily review. The total of your call charges will then appear on your monthly credit card 7 _____. You are only billed for the calls you actually make – there are no membership or monthly 8 _____.

Lower costs when you're out and about

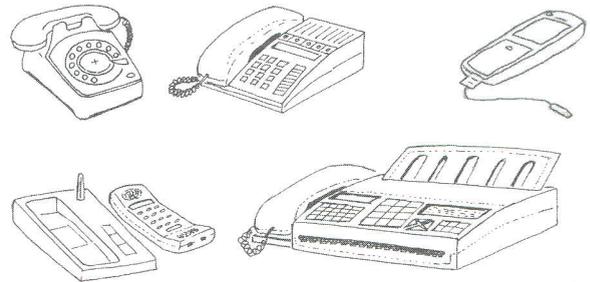
You'll find the BT Chargecard not only easy to use, but money-saving too. Avoid the costly telephone 9 _____ often charged by hotels by billing your calls to the BT Chargecard instead. That way you'll get the benefit of BT's competitive international 10 _____.



2 Now describe the different parts of the phone.



3 Look at the pictures and describe them. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each type of phone? Which situation is each one most suitable for?



The Telephone

telephone set
receiver
earpiece
mouthpiece
remote microphone
mike / mic
answerphone / answering machine
telephone
rotary × push-button
car
mobile / cellular
portable / cordless
ex-directory number (GB) / unlisted number (US)
telephone directory / book

yellow pages
operator
directory enquiries
automatic dialling
last number redial
dialling tone
to dial a number
ringing tone
engaged tone (GB) / busy signal (US)
number unobtainable
to be cut off / be disconnected
to have a bad line / a bad connection
local call × trunk / long distance call
extension (number)

to reverse the charges (GB) / call collect (US)
international code × area code × local code
to answer the phone
'Wrong number.'

Modern developments
facsimile (fax)
to fax someone
modem
e-mail
datalink
videophone
digital information transfer

USING THE TELEPHONE

1 The texts to three different telephone conversations have been scrambled together. Sort them out into the three conversations. Then put them in the right order.

-  Hello, Taylor Residence.
-  Does he have your number?
-  Hello. Can I speak to Mary, please?
-  Sure. Could you just tell him that Jane called and ask him to call me back when he gets out of the shower?
-  Oh well, maybe we can see it some other time.
-  That'd be great. Maybe some time next week, O.K.?
-  That'd be fine. So I'll call you on Thursday, all right?
-  Bye bye.
-  Hello. 276964.
-  O.K., I'll let him know you called.
-  Oh, yeah! I'd completely forgotten. I'm sorry, I can't make it tomorrow. I've got a lot of work right now.
-  Hello. Could I speak with John, please?
-  Yes, I'd like to speak to Mr. Smith, please.
-  Thank you. Bye.
-  Bye.
-  Yes, I think he does.
-  No, that's all right. I'll try again later. Thank you.
-  Great. Talk to you on Thursday, then. Bye.
-  Hello. Bernstein Bank. May I help you?
-  This is Mary speaking.
-  Hi, Mary. It's David. I was just ringing to make sure that we're still on for the cinema tomorrow.
-  Goodbye.
-  Hold on one second. I'll see if he's in. *Pause.* I'm sorry, John's in the shower right now. Can I take a message?
-  Hold on, I'll put you right through. *Pause.* I'm sorry. Mr Smith is in a meeting right now and can't come to the phone. May I take a message?
-  Bye.

2  Listen to the recording and check your answers. Can you tell which of the speakers are British and which are American?

3 In pairs, act out the following telephone conversations.

Jo calls Pat and invites him to a concert. Pat accepts.

Sophie calls the telephone company to complain about her bill. She reaches a secretary who tells her that the manager of the complaints office is having his lunch break and won't be back for an hour.

Conversation 1

Hello, Taylor Residence.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Conversation 2

Hello.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Conversation 3

Hello. Bernstein Bank. May I help you?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Ben calls his piano teacher to say that he can't come to his lesson this week because he is ill. She too is ill and her husband takes the call. He is more than curious that both his wife and Ben are ill with the same thing.

COMPUTERS AND THE INTERNET

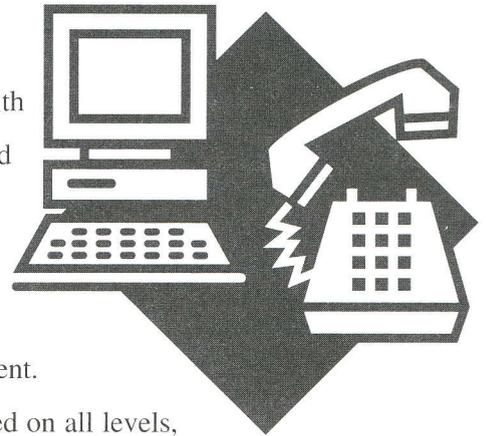
1 Discuss the meaning of the words on the left. Then read the text and fill in the gaps.

transfer of funds
retrieval of information
sound
CD-ROM
networks
laptop
personal computers
automatic teller machines
telephone lines
networking

By 1990, personal computers had become small enough to be completely portable; they included **1** _____ computers, notebook computers, and pocket or palm-sized computers. Multimedia personal computers equipped with **2** _____ players and digital sound systems allowed users to handle animated images and **3** _____ (in addition to text and still images) that were stored on high-capacity CD-ROMs.

4 _____ were increasingly interconnected with each other and with larger computers in **5** _____ for the purpose of gathering, sending, and sharing information electronically. Computer networks are collections of computers and intelligent peripheral equipment (e.g., **6** _____ and point-of-sale terminals equipped with microprocessors) that are interconnected by **7** _____, microwave relays, and other high-speed communication links for the purpose of exchanging data and sharing equipment.

8 _____ has been developed on all levels, from local to international, in diverse sectors of society. Examples are networks used by government organizations for rapid **9** _____ from databases at central locations and those used by banks and retail merchants for the **10** _____ or credit verification.



2 What do you understand by these words? What are they describing?

the Internet
the information superhighway
cyberspace
the world-wide web
(at)
computer nerd

3 Read the following article and match the appropriate title to each paragraph. One of the titles does not fit any of the paragraphs.

- a Who's logging on and why
- b New technology brings new problems
- c From factories to the PC
- d Information overload
- e Getting wired into the information superhighway
- f Living your life on the web

4 Match the following things to their uses on the right.

mouse
monitor
modem
cursor



- the screen where information appears
- allows computers to connect to the Internet through a phone line
- used to highlight or select information on the screen
- used to move the cursor around on the screen

5 Use the information from the article and talk about the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet.

In pairs, talk about what the missing paragraph could say.

1

The late twentieth century has been dubbed the end of the Industrial Age and the beginning of the Information Age, where computers and scientific know-how are the most important keys to survival. More than any invention since the steam engine, the computer has revolutionised the way we work, play, and live. Nothing exemplifies this more than the so-called "information superhighway", otherwise known as the Internet.

2

The Internet is a world of its own, a huge universe of shopping malls, libraries, entertainment centres, and even clubs and discos that exists only inside a group of interconnected computers. Using any simple personal computer and a modem, we can log into the net and do almost anything. Go to the travel section and you can browse travel brochures and book a complete holiday from the comfort of your living room. Your morning paper no longer comes to your doorstep; rather, it comes to your monitor, as papers from all over the world transmit their daily editions to your e-mail account. And if there's anything in the paper that you feel like talking about, anything at all, just plug into one of the on-line chat rooms, where people have discussions about anything, from movies to politics and religion.

3

Sounds great, right? So why does anybody ever leave the house any more, if everything can be done on the computer? As anybody who has gone through the experience of trying to find something on the Internet can tell you, surfing the information superhighway is not always that easy. The biggest problem is one of speed. Right now, most people use a modem to connect their computers to the Internet via the telephones. The only problem is that telephone wires can only transmit

a certain amount of information at any one time, and that amount is really too small for the huge files and graphics that are often sent back and forth between computers. Researchers are now looking at different ways to link computers, such as television cable wires and even the electrical wires that bring electricity to people's houses.

4

But even when the problem of speed has been solved, the Internet will still be an incredibly confusing place. This is because there is simply so much information out there. Anyone who is looking for information on, say, a cultural festival in Malaysia may have to wade through hundreds of files on anything from the Malaysian economy to travelling in Malaysia to Malaysian universities before they find the information they are looking for.

5

Despite these problems, millions of people log onto the Internet every day. Some are experts who know exactly what they want and log on and off in a matter of minutes. Then there are the "Internet junkies", people who spend countless hours glued to the computer terminal, using their mouse and cursor to peek into every corner of cyberspace and send e-mails to their fellow junkies. But most people who use the net do so not to buy things, but just out of curiosity, just to find out what's out there.



COMMUNICATION – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

I Match the questions with probable answers on the right.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 He's not available. Can I take a message? | a Yes, please, can he tell Mrs. Edington to get in touch with me. |
| 2 Who's calling? | b This is Mary Hopkins speaking. |
| 3 Do you wish me to page Mr. Smith? | c I would be happy to try to answer your question. |
| 4 Can you hold? | d No, I have to get back to my work. I will call again later. |
| 5 Hang on a moment. | e Yes, please. Tell him it's urgent. |
| 6 Is there anyone else who could help me? | f That's not possible. |

II Which of the following expressions in each line does NOT collocate with the word on the left?

- 7 COMPUTER — ... is down, personal, home, to peek, to use, ... has crashed, to hack into
- 8 INFORMATION — ... superhighway, to solicit, to withhold, to volunteer, access to, flow of, ... technique

III Choose the verbs that go with the following nouns: CALL (a), LETTER (b), PARCEL (c) and use them in short sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 9 to make | 15 to drop _____ in the post |
| 10 to address | 16 to stamp |
| 11 to deliver | 17 to seal |
| 12 to put through | 18 to (un)wrap |
| 13 to wait for | 19 to receive |
| 14 to return sb's | 20 to take |

IV Put each of the following words or phrases into its correct place in the passage below.

LABELS POSTAL REFORMS CIVIL SERVANT RELEASED COLLECT A TAX REIGNING
MONARCH ADHESIVE POSTAGE STAMP KNIGHTED NAME OF THE COUNTRY STAMP

The idea for the adhesive postage **21** _____ was first suggested by the English schoolmaster and **22** _____ Rowland Hill as one of the many **23** _____ in Great Britain in 1837. Hill's conception, for which he was later **24** _____, was derived from similar **25** _____ that had been issued almost a century earlier in many parts of Europe to **26** _____ on newspapers. Through Hill's efforts, on May 1, 1840, Great Britain **27** _____ the world's first officially issued **28** _____, a one-penny denomination universally referred to as the Penny Black. The stamp featured a portrait of Queen Victoria, which established a postal precedent in Great Britain; since that time, all regular-issue stamps have portrayed the **29** _____. Moreover, like the Penny Black, no subsequent British stamp has been inscribed with the **30** _____.

COMMUNICATION – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Match the questions with probable answers below.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 I need some stamps, please. | a That should arrive on Tuesday. |
| 2 I'd like to buy a book of stamps, please. | b Five, ten, or twenty pounds? |
| 3 Do you have any envelopes I could buy? | c Please, print legibly. |
| 4 How long will it take to get there? | d First or second class? |
| 5 Can I have a change-of-address form? | e Any particular style? |
| 6 I'd like to pick up a package. | f Can I see some ID (identification)? |

Which of the following expressions in each line does NOT collocate with the word on the left.

- 7 COMPUTER — laptop, to operate, ...-educated, ... age, ... programmer, ... studies, to run something through, ... error
- 8 INFORMATION — to sum up, relevant, crumbs of, snippets of, lack of, millions of, make ... available, to sieve

Choose the words that go with the following nouns: CALL (a), LETTER (b), CORRESPONDENCE (c) and use them in short sentences.

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 9 business | 15 chain |
| 10 poison-pen | 16 collect |
| 11 emergency | 17 long-distance |
| 12 love | 18 voluminous |
| 13 extensive | 19 regular |
| 14 brief | 20 open |

Put each of the following words or phrases into its correct place in the passage below.

INTERNATIONAL MAIL ESTABLISHED TECHNICAL ADVICE TRANSPORTATION POSTAL SERVICES
PARCEL CHARGES INTERNATIONAL MONEY ORDERS POSTAL LETTER MAIL

The Universal Postal Union (UPU) was 21_____ in 1875 under the Universal Postal Convention of 1874. It became a specialized agency of the United Nations in 1948. The UPU's permanent headquarters are in Bern, Switzerland. It provides information and 22_____ to assist cooperating nations in improving their 23_____ . In 1994, it had 186 members.

Each country, under the 24_____ convention, pays 25_____ charges to members who carry 26_____ across their borders. The 27_____ are determined by the UPU.

The original treaty applied only to 28_____ ; other postal services, such as 29_____ post and 30_____ , have been regulated by supplementary agreements.

ESSAY PREPARATION

Depending on the topic of the essay, go to the appropriate page and write down four or five nouns you think you will use to write about the topic. Then, using the box on the respective page, a dictionary of collocations or a corpus, look up the verbs, adjectives and adverbial or any other useful phrases that you will need to express your ideas.

Example: My favourite dish (a recipe)
Go to p. 35 – Cooking

The nouns:

bowl

adjectives: large, small, medium-sized, soup, mixing, sugar, soup

verbs: put / place in ... / into ..., pour into ..., mix, beat, stir, mash

adverbials: stir until smooth / together

useful phrases: to transfer to a mixing bowl, to place the bowl in hot water, to combine all the ingredients in a bowl

eggs

adjectives: beaten, raw, fresh, free-range, whole, finely-chopped

verbs: add, beat, whisk, separate

adverbials: cook until firm, whisk / beat until stiff

useful phrases: egg whites, egg yolk, egg mixture, hard-boiled egg

pan

adjectives: frying, large, shallow, wide, covered, non-stick, heavy(-based)

verbs: put st in ..., remove from the heat, place over the heat, heat the pan

adverbials: lightly grease a roasting pan, until the mixture begins to thicken

useful phrases: seeds roasted to gold in a pan without oil, fry the cutlets until golden brown

oven

adjectives: gas, electric, pre-heated, microwave, moderate, hot

verbs: heat, cook in ..., reduce to ..., bake in ... for

adverbials: to bake uncovered, to cover tightly, under the grill, straight from the oven

useful phrases: set the oven at gas mark x, pre-heat the oven to x degrees, to warm in a moderate oven before serving

Prepare the following topics in the same way:

The most unpleasant person I have ever met (p. 7)

Love story (p. 11)

Young people in the Czech Republic (p. 13)

When should people get married? (p. 14)

My ideal home (pp. 18–21)

Should fast food be banned? (pp. 33–34)

Chain stores or small shops? (pp. 43–45)

What clothes should a student coming to the Czech Republic between February and May pack? (pp. 48–55)

My typical working day, and one of my weekends (p. 60)

Some of the pros and cons of modern communication (pp. 75–78)

TOWN & COUNTRY

THE MODERN VILLAGE

1 In your country, what image do people in the cities have of people who live in the countryside? Do the two groups like each other?

2 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of living in the city versus living in the country.



I've lived in this little village all my life. I was born in the house I now live in, I went to school at the little school over there when it was just a one-room school, and after the war, I came back to raise my crops and my family like

my father did and his father before him. You see, I like this life. I've seen what life in the city is like, so I'm not just some ignorant country boy. *I don't want to change.* I'm a farmer, and that's all I ever wanted to be.

Unfortunately, it seems that these days if you don't go to change then change will come to you, and that's exactly what's happened here, in this village. You see, it seems rents are getting a little too high over there in the city, so those rich folks have all decided to come out and live in the village. I suppose they think it's quaint. They like the small town charm of the place and the peace and quiet.

What they don't seem to understand, however, is that by moving out here they're ruining everything they find quaint about these villages. This little town has doubled in size over the last ten years, as all of them folks come out here to build their big, fancy



houses. And they use up so much land! I've seen so much good, arable land get developed over, just so some rich doctor or computer programmer can have a second home for weekends and summer.

The facilities here just weren't designed for this many people. There's only one road that comes into the town, and it's just a little two-lane road that winds its way past the chapel, then through the town square. Well, it just can't handle all of the traffic that goes through here on weekends now, and on some Sundays you have to go through hell and back just to get to church. The same thing goes for our town store and the school.



But the worst part is that with all of these rich people coming in here, the price of everything has gone way up, especially housing. Landowners are seeing that they can get more money by renting or selling to people from the city, and now youngsters from

good farming families don't have a place to move out to when they get married, just so some city-slicker can have a second home. It makes me sick, I tell you. I say, let the city folks stay in the cities, and leave the country to us!

3 Read the text and answer the questions below.

Find a word that means the following:

- attractive in an old-fashioned way
- appeal, attraction
- grew larger
- good for farming
- built over
- establishments that provide basic services for a place or activity
- follows a twisting course

In your own words, discuss in pairs.

- a How does the author feel about his home and his lifestyle?
- b How does he feel about cities?
- c Why are more people moving from the cities to the country?
- d How has this affected farming in the area?
- e How has the village changed since people from the cities started moving into it?

4  You will now hear an affluent professional who moved to the village from the city talking about what life in the village is like. How do you think his description will differ from that of the farmer?

5 Answer the following questions according to the listening.

What does Billy think about the following things?

- Mark's house
- people in the village
- life in the village

Does Mark agree with him?

6 In pairs, act out a conversation between Mark and the author of the text on the previous page.

7 Listen again and concentrate on the meaning of the following expressions.

- a large wicker chair
- a small shack
- on the outskirts
- in the sticks
- in the middle of nowhere
- a bit of peace and quiet
- a game of darts
- a nice old bloke
- the weirdest thing

Write a short summary of the dialogue using some of the above collocations.

The Modern Village

village shop
general store
smithy
forge
craft workshop
pottery
local industry
traditional craft
church
chapel
kirk (Scots)
vicar
rector
priest

minister
light industry
peace and quiet
slow pace of life
minimal / basic facilities
agricultural wages
labour / labourers
manual
casual
migrant
seasonal
backward areas
retired couples
outsiders

house and grounds
gentry
nouveau riche
country squire
lord of the manor
forester
woodcutter / lumberjack (US)
gamekeeper
poacher
main road
bypass
subsidised development
nimby (Not In My Back Yard)

THE MODERN CITY

1 Describe the nicest neighbourhood in your (nearest) city or town. What kind of people live there? What kinds of houses and services does the neighbourhood have?

Now compare this description to the worst neighbourhood in your town or city.

2 Are there homeless people in your town or city? Where can you find them?

Are there any organizations working to help them?

The speaker in the following exercise has some definite views on the homeless. Many people might disagree; imagine you are one of them and make notes to give an opposing speech.



3  Read the questions below and try to predict the answers. Then listen to the recording and check if you were right.

- The speaker says that homelessness can be blamed on
 - society.
 - the breakdown of families.
 - the economic situation.
 - homeless people.
- He says that homeless people don't have jobs because
 - they're drunk all of the time.
 - they don't want to.
 - they're too dirty.
 - they have mental problems.
- He says that the main thing that annoys him is
 - seeing them sleeping around the train station.
 - being asked to buy alcohol for them.
 - the use of taxes to pay for homeless programmes.
 - that society neglects people with mental problems.
- He says that homeless people with mental problems
 - should be in institutions.
 - put an unnecessary burden on their families.
 - make up only a small percentage of the homeless community.
 - are like brothers to him.

The Modern City

Urban 'geography'

population density
census
seaboard town / coastal town
port × harbour
holiday resort
provincial × industrial town
market town
suburbs / suburban sprawl
ribbon development
built-up area
town centre (GB) / downtown (US)
commercial centre
on the outskirts × inner city
cathedral (makes a town a city)
community church
church hall
community centre
mosque (for Moslems)
temple (for Hindus and mainly Buddhists)
gurdwara (for Sikhs)
synagogue (for Jews)
art-gallery
botanical gardens

amusement park / funfair
busker (GB) / street musician
playground
adventure playground
climbing frame
slide
sandpit
sports complex / centre
gasworks
brewery
cemetery / graveyard
barracks
warehouse
office block / skyscraper
police station / headquarters
multi-storey car-park
out-of-town shopping centre
hypermarket
slum / economically and socially deprived area
shanty town
neglected area / shabby housing
housing estate (GB) / neighbourhood (US)

council estate (GB) / flats / high-rise estate / housing project (US)
graffiti
ghetto
vandalism
green spaces / parks / greenbelt
wide, straight streets × narrow, winding alleys
high street (GB) / main street (US)
blind alley / cul-de-sac
pedestrian precinct

Types / names of streets

avenue
road
alley
lane
row
terrace
embankment (GB) / riverside drive (US)
crescent
boulevard
arcade
square
circus

4 Read the text on the right and find a word that means:

- 1 a major movement of people or animals
- 2 grow
- 3 already partially built
- 4 run away from
- 5 crowded
- 6 change in direction
- 7 things that make you very unhappy
- 8 clean but lifeless
- 9 money and materials
- 10 lack of care

5 Here are the answers to some questions. Try to work out the questions.

- a To find affordable housing.
- b Over the last thirty years.
- c They don't look very nice.
- d Noise, pollution, and violence.
- e Because so many people live in the suburbs and have to use them to get to work.
- f Because they are cheaper and more interesting than the suburbs.
- g Because they have the money needed to deal with the inner city's problems.



RETURN TO THE INNER CITY

Over the last thirty years, a migration took place in most major American cities – a migration away from the inner cities. As cities expanded in both population and size, many people have decided to move away from city centers and out to the suburbs. There were many reasons for this change. Probably the most important was the opportunity of owning a house in the suburbs. Every day construction companies built more tract homes: cheap and often prefabricated houses which, although not very beautiful, were economical and within reach of middle-class families looking to own their own house.

Economic considerations, however, were not the only reasons for the migration to the suburbs. Many people were also trying to escape the negative aspects of the inner cities. They grew tired of living in cramped and expensive apartments, surrounded by noise and pollution. Another major concern was safety. With crime, especially violent crime, on the rise in many American cities, many people decided that the inner cities were not a safe place to live, especially if there were children involved. Thus much of the upper and middle classes fled the inner cities, leaving the poor to inhabit the city centres.

In recent years, however, some American cities have seen a reversal of this trend. As more and more people move out to the suburbs, the freeways and public transportation systems that take these people to their jobs in the cities have become overcrowded, leading to all the miseries of heavy commuter traffic. Many of the suburbs have also become more expensive to live in, while the apartments in the inner cities have dropped somewhat in price. Also, the suburbs can often be sterile, boring places, faceless blocks of tract houses and shopping malls with no cultural life or entertainment. The result of these factors is that some middle-class professionals have started moving back into the city, bringing with them the resources and the initiative needed to revive the run-down city centres and help deal with some of the problems that decades of poverty and neglect have brought about.

WASTE DISPOSAL AND OTHER SERVICES

1 Going through the rubbish, take a look at the contents of one household's dustbin. Which of these items could be recycled, reused, or put to use in a better way than being thrown out?



empty tins of soup
beer bottles
potato peelings
an old ripped shirt
lawn clippings
newspapers
food that has gone off
empty mayonnaise jars
plastic shopping bags
a broken plate
junk mail
plastic bottles

2 How would you expect household rubbish to be different in 1950 and today?

3 What do you think is better for the inhabitants of towns – should services like waste disposal, water supply or fire brigade be private enterprises or is it more advantageous if they are run by local councils or even by the state?

4 The town council of Crustystville is going to debate the following proposal. Does your city offer any of these?

THE TOWN COUNCIL OF CRUSTYSTVILLE

will today hear a motion to rework the Crustystville Waste Disposal Centre to make it more environmentally friendly. Some of the proposed changes are:

1. Placing recycling bins outside the disposal centre.
2. Setting up a recycling centre which would take old furniture & appliances and fix them up for sale later.
3. Making a separate section for wood & garden cuttings, which could be turned into farming products such as mulch or compost.

5 Now take a role card from your teacher and act out the meeting.

Waste Disposal

dustbin (GB) / garbage can (US)
dustbin day (GB) / garbage pick-up (US)
dustman / waste disposal operative (GB) / garbage collector / man (US)
dustcart (GB) / garbage truck (US)
rubbish dump (GB) / tip (US)
to recycle
biodegradable
incinerator
scrap-heap (GB) / junk yard (US)
bottle bank
skip
street cleaners / street sweepers
fly-tipping / illegal dumping
(to) litter
litter-bin (GB) / trash can (US)
toxic waste
waste refrigerants / fluorocarbons
to damage the ozone layer
packaging
plastic bags
styrofoam / polystyrene

Water

town reservoir (the dam is the wall that holds it back)
annual rainfall
drought / dry spell × floods
available reserves
algae bloom
garden hose
hosepipe ban
metered water
waterworks
home filters
sanitation, department of sanitation
drain
gutter
sewer
sewage disposal plant
maintenance personnel in uniform × in plain clothes
rat
vermin
unhygienic conditions
chemical runoff
public lavatories / toilets / conveniences

Emergency Services

to dial 999 (GB) / 911 (US)
fire escape
fire extinguisher
fire brigade (GB) / fire department (US)
fire station
fire engine (GB) / fire truck (US)
siren
ladder
extension ladder
(fire)hose
hydrant
overcome by smoke
(in)flammable × non-inflammable
fire-resistant fabric
fireproof material
local council budget
law enforcement of regulations
not enough inspectors

ASKING AND TELLING THE WAY

1 You are in Prague, crossing Charles Bridge. A tourist asks you the way to the Castle. Give him the appropriate directions.

it's half-way along this street
 close to / next to
 it's still a long way away
 the number three bus goes past it
 straight on
 second left after the lights
 opposite
 pass on your right and you can't miss it
 then ask again
 get on the 16 bus at the square
 get off at the fourth stop
 switch over to / change / transfer (US) to the 73 bus
 cross the bridge / street

2 Choose another city you and your partner know well. Ask him/her to tell you the way to some places there, e.g.

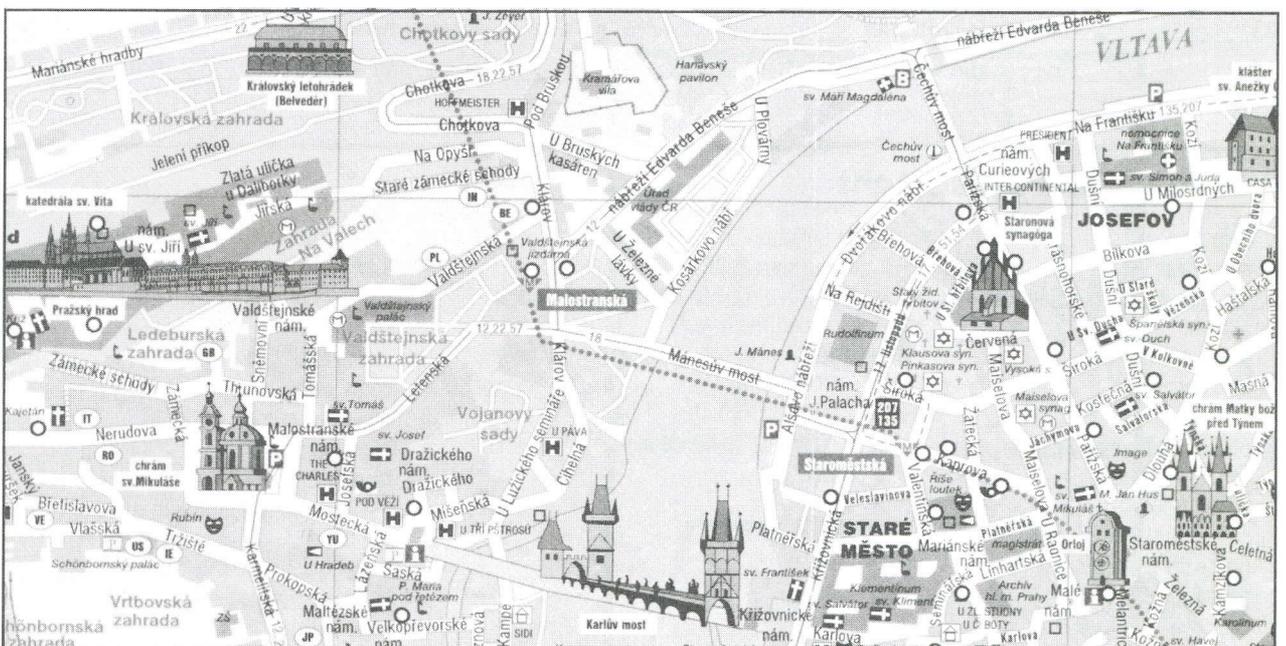
a railway station
 a museum
 a street market
 a department store, etc.

3 Take turns asking the way and giving directions, using the map and the expressions below.

Example:

Is it a long way to...?
Can you tell me the way to ... , please?
Excuse me. How do I get to ... ?
Can you help me, please? I'm lost.
I seem to be lost.
Is this the right way to ... ?
Could you show me on the map where ... is?
Do you know where ... is?
Is there ... near here?

4 Describe the way from your school to somewhere in particular and let your classmates guess where you are going. This is best done in groups of three to five students. The most complicated description is then presented to the class.



CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

1 Read the following story and fill in the correct verb forms.

The story begins one day when Ms Barlow **1** _____ (call) the police and **2** _____ (tell) them that her two sons, aged 8 and 12, **3** _____ (kidnap). She **4** _____ (give) the police a description of the kidnapper and **5** _____ (tell) them that he **6** _____ (use) her car to escape. An extensive manhunt **7** _____ (begin), and the police finally **8** _____ (apprehend) a young man, Mr Houlbrooke, and **9** _____ (charge) him with the kidnappings. The police's case against Mr Houlbrooke was, however, very weak. They **10** _____ (can) only prove that he **11** _____ (see) **12** _____ (lurk) around Ms Barlow's neighbourhood, and there was no sign of the car or the two boys. Mr Houlbrooke **13** _____ (insist) that he **14** _____ (be) innocent and even **15** _____ (produce) an alibi for the time of the kidnapping. What further **16** _____ (confuse) the police was that Ms Barlow **17** _____ (not contact) by the kidnappers and no ransom demands **18** _____ (ever make).

Throughout the ordeal, Ms Barlow **19** _____ (act) strangely, but the police just **20** _____ (think) it was due to the stress she was under. Then, the police got a break in the case. Two fishermen **21** _____ (find) Ms Barlow's car in a river. Inside the car **22** _____ (be) the bodies of the two young boys. At this point, Ms Barlow completely **23** _____ (break) down, and finally **24** _____ (confess) that she **25** _____ (kill) her sons and then **26** _____ (make) up the whole story **27** _____ (cover) it up. She **28** _____ (immediately arrest) and **29** _____ (charge) with two counts of murder, and the charges against Mr Houlbrooke **30** _____ (drop) and he **31** _____ (release) from custody.

At Ms Barlow's trial, the prosecutor **32** _____ (portray) Ms Barlow as a monster and **33** _____ (ask) for the death penalty. Ms Barlow, however, **34** _____ (plead) insanity. Several witnesses **35** _____ (testify) that she **36** _____ (have) a long history of mental instability, and the state psychiatrist **37** _____ (pronounce) her medically incapable of **38** _____ (distinguish) between right and wrong. She **39** _____ (acquit) of the murders of her two sons and **40** _____ (send) to a psychiatric hospital, where she **41** _____ (stay) for two years. Now, only three years after the whole case **42** _____ (begin) and after **43** _____ (serve) no time in prison whatsoever, she **44** _____ (live) in the same house where she **45** _____ (raise), and **46** _____ (kill) her two sons.

Crime and Punishment

mugging	in uniform × in plain clothes	counsel for the defence
no-go area	flying squad (GB)	state prosecutor
"I'm afraid to go out alone at night."	SWAT (i.e. special weapons and tactical squad) (US)	jury
police corruption	arrest / nick (coll.) / collar (coll.) / book (US coll.)	guilty × not guilty
bent coppers	to appear in court	criminal
perjury	the accused in the dock	cell in a jail / gaol / prison
policeman / bobby / copper	magistrate	crime wave
cop	judge	organised crime
on the beat (GB) / on patrol (US)	witness	undermanned
police car / patrol car (US)	lawyer	recruitment
panda car	solicitor	the underworld / professional criminals / crooks
detective	barrister	juvenile delinquents
		hooligans / vandals
		lager louts

2 Match the following names of crimes to their descriptions on the right.

- 1 murder
- 2 blackmail
- 3 robbery
- 4 manslaughter
- 5 drunken driving
- 6 rape
- 7 burglary
- 8 mugging
- 9 assault
- 10 kidnapping

3 Now give the verb used to talk about each crime and the name of the person who commits the crime.

4 In small groups, decide what punishment should be given to each of the criminals.

The following verbs can help you.

- to be sentenced to
- to get a jail sentence of
- to put sb behind bars
- to get away with
- to release sb on bail

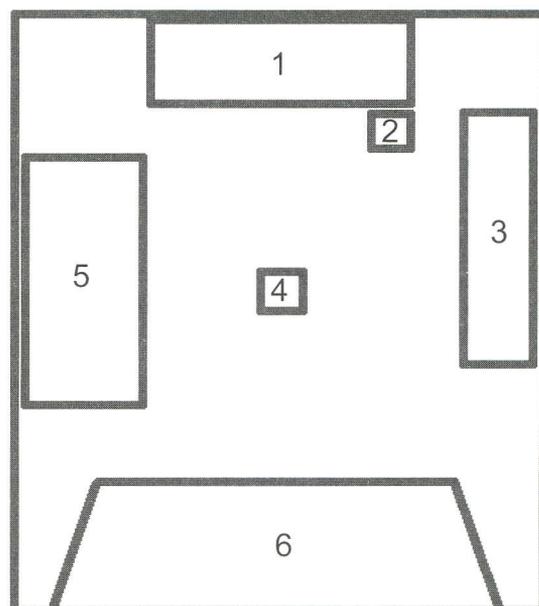
5 Below is a diagram of a courtroom. Say who each of the people are, what they do and where they stand / sit.

- jury
- judge
- public
- barrister
- accused / defendant
- dock
- witness box

You can also use some of the following verbs:

- to be accused of
- to plead guilty
- to defend
- to testify
- to be under oath
- to rule

- a During a fight in a bar, one man unintentionally kills another man. The man who got killed was the one who started the fight.
- b A man goes out on a date with a woman and later forces her to have sex with him.
- c Two men abduct a rich businessman's son and demand one million dollars in ransom for his return. The men are caught and the boy is very scared but not physically hurt.
- d A man comes home to find his wife in bed with another man. He sneaks away, gets a gun, then shoots and kills both his wife and the man.
- e Two men go into a jewellery store and force the manager to give them all of the jewellery in the store. They are caught trying to get away. No one is hurt. Both men have a long criminal record.
- f A man gets involved in a car accident after running a red light. A breathalyser test shows that he has been drinking heavily. Both of the people in the other car are hospitalised.
- g A skinhead beats up a young boy outside a dance club. The skinhead has a history of violent crimes.
- h A young man breaks into an apartment and steals some valuables and a television. No one is hurt. The man is a drug addict and was stealing to buy more drugs.
- i Two men take pictures of a local politician picking up a prostitute. They threaten to release the pictures to the press if the politician does not pay a certain amount of money every month.
- j A homeless man beats up an old man and takes his wallet. The old man is not seriously hurt. It is later shown that the homeless man has serious mental problems.



TOWN & COUNTRY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

I The expressions on the left are used to talk about crime. Match them with their meanings on the right.

- | | | | |
|----|---|---|---|
| 1 | black money | a | a police informer, especially a narcotics agent |
| 2 | black market | b | smuggled, stolen or illegally offered for sale |
| 3 | revolving-door (justice) | c | to steal |
| 4 | a questionable payment | d | to trick |
| 5 | to help yourself | e | cash made illegally or not declared for tax |
| 6 | grifter | f | con man, trickster |
| 7 | to help / assist the police (with their inquiries) (GB) | g | to be in custody for an offence for which you have not yet been charged |
| 8 | bootleg | h | untaxed, unregulated, and often illegal business |
| 9 | narc | i | bribe |
| 10 | to con | j | unduly lenient and ineffective (justice) |

II Insert the following words into the text below.

MISSING PROPERTY WANTED RETRIEVAL STOLEN URBAN DIRECT ACCESS

Police radio-communications systems, which profited considerably from the advances in electronics during and after World War II and from developments in the U.S. space program, also benefited from the development of computers, which made possible the quick **11**_____ of information on **12**_____ property, **13**_____ persons, and other police intelligence. Many **14**_____ centres now use police cars that have **15**_____ to departmental computers and contain equipment capable of receiving printouts of orders and lists of wanted persons or **16**_____. However, the augmented flow of information has placed an added burden on existing communications systems.

III Sort the following verbs into groups according to their meaning. They go together with either the noun **COURT** (a), or with the noun **CRIME** (b).

IV Which of the following verbs can be used with the word **FIRE** (a) and which with the word **WATER** (b)?

- | | | | |
|----|------------------------------------|----|-----------------------|
| 17 | to address | 24 | bring under control |
| 18 | to encourage | 25 | catch |
| 19 | to keep down | 26 | contaminate / pollute |
| 20 | to take sb to | 27 | draw |
| 21 | to hear evidence | 28 | extinguish / put out |
| 22 | to wipe out | 29 | pour |
| 23 | to increase / reduce
a sentence | 30 | spread |

TOWN & COUNTRY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The expressions on the left are used to talk about crime. Match them with their meanings on the right.

- | | | | |
|----|-------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | funny money | a | police officer |
| 2 | private enterprise | b | criminal |
| 3 | rip off | c | cash that cannot be spent openly |
| 4 | copper | d | get undeserved punishment while the culprit goes free |
| 5 | laundered money | e | cheat |
| 6 | black market | f | involving bribery, secret |
| 7 | under the table | g | having a criminal record or be suspected of crime |
| 8 | carry the can / take the fall | h | illegal trading by an employee |
| 9 | known to the police | i | funds improperly acquired made available for open spending |
| 10 | anti-social | j | illegal dealing in restricted goods |

Insert the following words into the text below.

CRIME **FIRE STATIONS** **PATROL CARS** **AIRCRAFT** **TRANSMISSION** **MOBILE**

In a large city, the sources of information that must be fed into the central system are remarkably varied. Police may be on foot or motorcycles, in **11** _____, in patrol boats, or in **12** _____. In addition, the system must encompass links to **13** _____, ambulance services, traffic-control systems, rescue teams, alarm systems, emergency utility services, crime-information systems, and **14** _____ laboratories. A variety of fixed and **15** _____ systems are used, including radios, television (including closed-circuit), telephone, teletypewriters, and facsimile **16** _____.

Sort the following verbs into groups according to their meaning. They go together with either the noun **POLICE** (a), or with the noun **CRIMINAL** (b).

- 17 to combat crime
- 18 to commit crime
- 19 to take to crime
- 20 to reduce crime
- 21 to fight crime
- 22 to perpetrate crime
- 23 to prevent crime

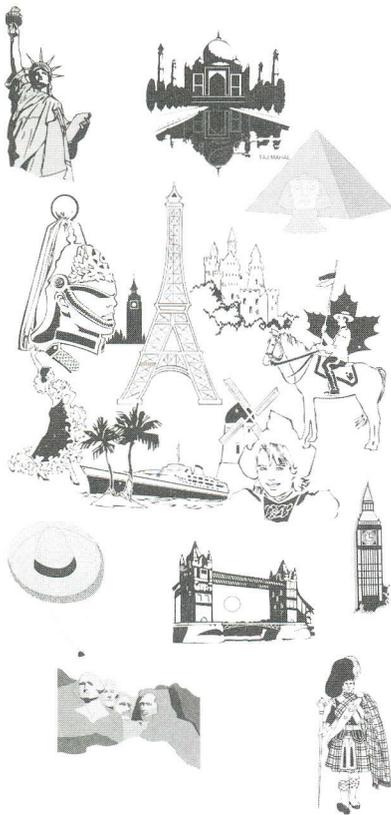
Which of the following adjectives can be used with the word **ROAD** (a) and which with the word **STREET** (b)? If there is an opposite, give the opposite as well.

- 24 back
- 25 country
- 26 dead-end
- 27 major
- 28 private
- 29 quiet
- 30 ring

SIGHTSEEING

1 Which of the following cities is your favourite, or the one which you would most like to visit? List all of the reasons why you'd like to visit that city.

Tokyo New York London
Cairo Prague Paris
Rio de Janeiro Beijing
San Francisco Sydney



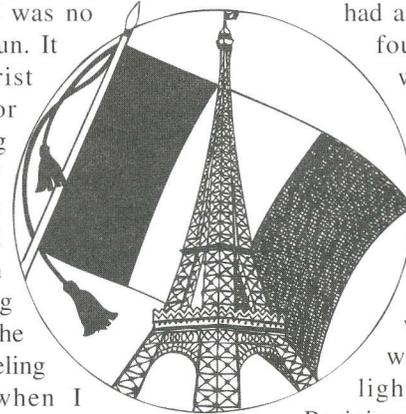
2 How does your home town compare with these cities? Does it have any of the things that these other cities have? Does it have anything special and unique that these cities don't have?

MY FAVOURITE CITY

I first fell in love with Paris when I was backpacking around Europe. It's hard to explain what exactly made me fall in love with this particular city. It wasn't just the typical charm and romance of the place. By the time I arrived in Paris I'd been travelling for a month, so I'd seen plenty of charming and romantic places. As a matter of fact, I was starting to get a little sick of it. I had spent two months dragging myself from one museum or cathedral to another, going through town after beautiful town, until I realised that I was no longer having fun. It wasn't tourist fatigue or becoming desensitised by all of the paintings and churches I'd seen - it was something different. It was the strange, stuffy feeling I would get when I walked down the old cobblestone streets of Venice or Sienna, the feeling that I was walking in a dead city. Even the big capital cities didn't feel as if they had made their way into the twentieth century. They felt more like big museums dedicated to a golden age that had passed and would never return.

Paris, on the other hand, was like a breath of fresh air. It was full of life, teeming with it. It jumped through the window of my hostel every morning, waking me up with the cries of street vendors and rubbish collectors and passers-by. Of course Paris has all of the cathedrals and museums that you would expect from a European capital city. The difference is that in Paris

these things don't stop with the Renaissance. The Parisians have such a sense of style and taste that they've truly managed to blend modern art trends into the classical ones quite beautifully. I remember going into the courtyard of one beautiful old building, the name of which I never knew because, at the beginning of my stay, I had decided to exchange the hostel's tourist map for a regular road map. This building was obviously hundreds of years old, and yet it was filled with modern sculpture and had an incredible modern fountain that sprayed water beneath your feet. The mix of the classical and the modern was breathtaking. I'll never forget it.



The people were wonderful, too, which was quite a surprise, in light of the fact that Parisians have such a reputation for being unfriendly and snobbish. I think that people mistake confidence for snobbishness. Parisians are fiercely proud, not just of living in Paris, but of being Parisian. They aren't just sitting around trying to sell you Eiffel Tower paperweights and cheap souvenirs. They're always on the go, on their way to their jobs and their cultural events and their homes. The city doesn't live for tourism; it has a life of its own. It earns a lot of money from tourism, but you feel like there's so much life and economic activity that if one day all of the tourists stopped coming, Paris would somehow manage. And I bet it would.

PLANNING A TOUR

3 Read the text and find a word that means the following:

- 1 fascination, attractiveness
- 2 extreme tiredness
- 3 to reduce or destroy the sensitivity of
- 4 lacking fresh air or ventilation
- 5 to be full of or swarming with
- 6 to form a harmonious compound
- 7 a feeling of reliance or certainty
- 8 vehemently, very strongly
- 9 to meet one's needs with limited resources

4 Choose the best answer.

- 1 The author feels that Paris is different from the other European cities he visited because
 - a it does not have the old-fashioned charm that the other cities have.
 - b other cities have more cathedrals and museums.
 - c Paris is more of a modern city.
 - d the other cities were not capital cities.
- 2 By the time he arrived in Paris, the author
 - a had become desensitised by seeing too many works of art.
 - b was tired of seeing villages and towns that were only quaint and charming.
 - c was starting to regret taking his trip.
 - d was tired and needed a rest.
- 3 The author feels that Paris' special appeal lies in its
 - a large collection of museums and churches.
 - b economic and cultural life.
 - c modern art exhibits.
 - d vibrant people and atmosphere.
- 4 The writer feels that tourism
 - a is not the main concern of most Parisians.
 - b is not an important part of Paris' economy.
 - c causes more harm than good.
 - d is resented by most Parisians.

1 When you are sightseeing, do you prefer guided tours or going on your own? What are some of the reasons for and against each option? List them below.

Guided tours
For

Individual travel
For

Against

Against

2  You will hear a conversation between Mike, a tour guide, and his friend John. Mike talks about a tour he recently led through Italy. Below are some of the words from the story. Before you listen see if you can predict what Mike is going to say.

disaster Venice gondolas canal
hospital Florence heat pensioners
temper menus hamburgers

How would you describe Mike's tour group? How would you have dealt with the situations Mike talks about?

Sightseeing

driving up prices
foreign currency
souvenir / gift shop
town hall
memorial
monument
fountain
astronomical clock
plague column
ancient
historical
mediaeval
building of historical significance
modern building of particular architectural interest
fine residence
burgher's house
aristocrat's house

convent
monastery
public buildings
streets
narrow
twisty / winding
cobble
remains of old town walls
fortifications
city gate
statue
sculptural group
tomb
catacomb
lookout tower
ruins
historical skyline
cultural heritage
priceless
art / national treasure

Planning a Tour

Preparation
guide book
field guide (to plants or animals)
background research
tourist information
specialist map
reference library
phrase book
local knowledge
route planning

Priorities and objectives
to wander around alone
guide / courier
on a guided coach tour
conducted tour
package tour
party of tourists

national park
arboretum
formal / ornamental gardens
safari park
theme park
Disneyland
stately home (GB) / mansion (US)
off the beaten track
clubland / to go clubbing
red-light area
site of (pre)historical interest
battleground
historical re-enactment
scenic viewpoint / panorama
homes of the famous
reconstruction of past life
overload / tourist fatigue
desensitisation

TOUR SIGHTS

1 Have you ever been to London? If so, talk about the place you liked most. If not, talk about whether you would like to go there, and what you would most like to see if you did.

2 You are a tour guide who has been hired to take a group of pensioners around London for their first time. Usually, your tour would cover the six places below, but because your tour group is a bit older, you will only have time to see four of these places. Decide which places you want to visit, then write your welcome speech to your tour group, in which you tell them about the day's programme. You will find some useful expressions in the box on the following page.

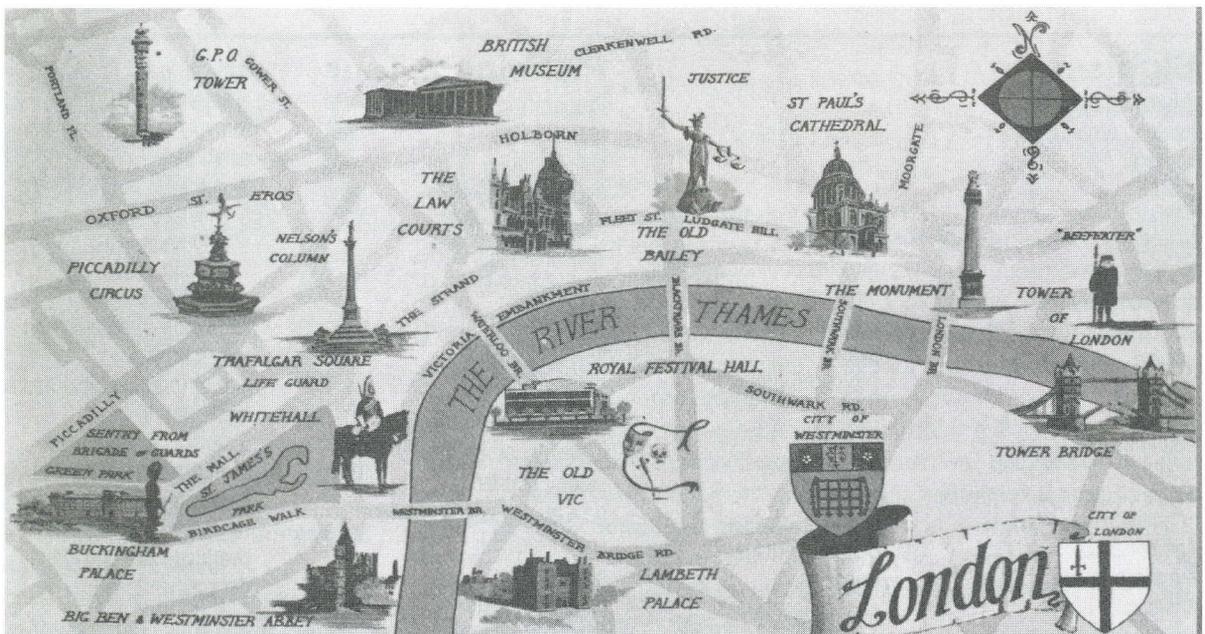
- Big Ben and Westminster Abbey, the most famous church in Britain. Kings and queens crowned here. Most royal weddings take place here.
- Buckingham Palace, London home of the royal family.
- Piccadilly Circus, the hub of London's night life, with good places to shop and eat.
- British Museum, holds some of the world's finest archaeological and ethnographic collections.
- St. Paul's Cathedral, large cathedral with wonderful statues and carvings in stone, wood, and iron.
- Tower Bridge, huge mechanical bridge, built in the late 19th century, which can be raised to allow boats to pass on the river, symbol for all of London.

3 Write a similar speech for a tour of your city or another famous city you know well, using some of the following expressions. Present your speech to the class.

town hall fountain astronomical clock
 plague column palace convent monastery
 abbey fortifications cobbled streets city gate
 catacombs cathedral basilica castle
 arboretum theme park botanical gardens
 red-light district amusement park safari park
 zoo art gallery
 concert hall theatres

4 Your local town council has just announced that it is going to spend more money on tourist facilities such as public toilets, tourist maps, and even a promotional campaign to advertise your city in magazines abroad. Do you think this is a good use of money, or could the money be better spent on other projects?

5 Answer the following questions:
 How has tourism affected your home city or a major city in your country?
 Are there certain nationalities who are better tourists than others?
 What image do people from your country have when they travel abroad?
 What London sights are missing in the picture below?



6 Read through the following guide to Westminster Abbey and find the numbered features on the map.

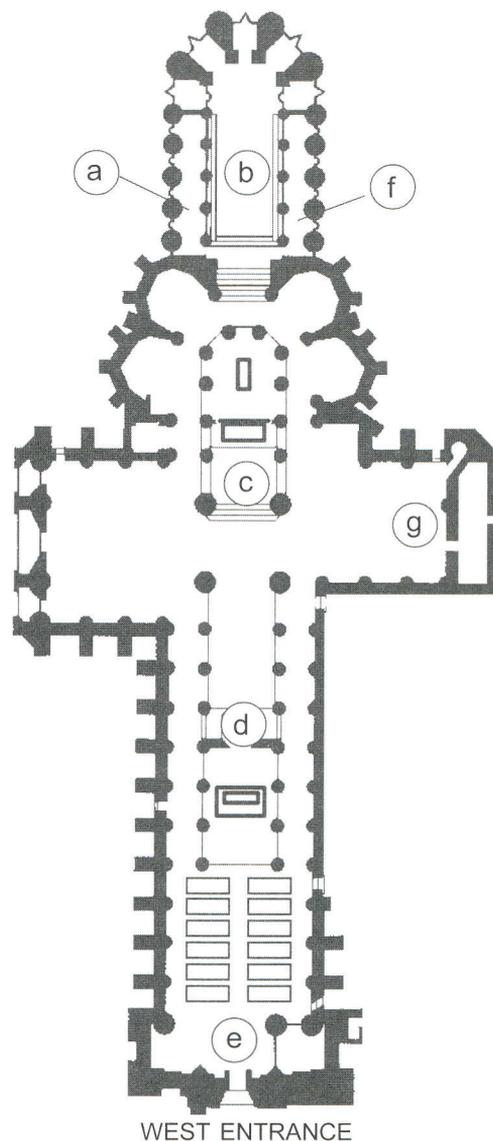
WESTMINSTER ABBEY

Upon entering the Abbey from the West Door, the visitor is immediately confronted by the Grave of the Unknown Soldier (1). Located in the middle of the centre aisle, between the two rows of ancient oak pews, the Grave is a tribute to those that died in the First World War. From this point it is easy to appreciate the great height and proportions of the nave, which was constructed over three centuries.

In the middle of the nave stands the beautiful choir screen, which hides the choir from view during services. The choir screen's exquisite thirteenth century stonework is surrounded by newer neo-Gothic ornaments, which were added in the nineteenth century. Directly above the choir screen is the present organ (2), which evolved from one originally built in 1730. During services, the sounds of the choir and the organ seem to come out of the walls, bouncing off of the vaulting and arches in perfect waves.

One of the Abbey's most striking features is the rose window (3) in the back wall of the south transept. The window's magnificent stained glass has recently been restored, so that its colours now shine as brightly as they did when it was first constructed in the fifteenth century.

Moving past the transepts, we come to the High Altar (4). Behind the High Altar stand beautiful painted panels dating from the thirteenth century, and on the floor is an Italian mosaic of the same date. To the rear of the Abbey, in the Henry VII Chapel, are the tombs of the most famous British Monarchs. The tomb of Elizabeth I (5), on the left of the chapel, is located directly opposite the tomb of her great enemy, Mary, Queen of Scots (6). Finally, in the rear of the Chapel is the tomb of Henry VII (7), upon which sit two small stone angels holding Henry VII's coat of arms between them.



WEST ENTRANCE

Tour Sights

City tour

to take sb round
to start at
through / via
on our way to
to drop in at
to give a place the once-over
to have a quick glance round
pause for refreshment
to take a quick break at
to stop / stay over in
obscure origins
foundation stone
date of foundation

city charter
it dates back to / dates from
to be rebuilt
partly restored
renovated in the Gothic (etc.) style
the original building burnt down
× was destroyed / demolished

Church and cathedral

Orthodox / Protestant / Catholic church
abbey
parish
bishopric
dome
tower × spire × steeple

chancel
belfry
crypt
(flying) buttress
vault
fan vaulting
vestry
choir
nave
aisle
transept
pew
font
pulpit
altar
altarpiece

candlestick
cross
crucifix
stained glass
column
fresco
colonnade
niche
stations of the cross
basilica
rotunda
pilgrimage site
shrine

Styles

late / early
Gothic
neo-Gothic
Renaissance
baroque / Baroque
rococo / Rococo
Romanesque
Art Nouveau
Tudor
Georgian
Regency
Victorian

SIGHTS – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Read the following text and put back the following expressions.

RICH IN DATING FROM BANK HUNDRED SPIRES TAVERNS HOUSING ESTATES

The Vltava River cuts a north-south path through central Prague. On its left (west) bank are located the Royal Gardens, Hradčany (Prague Castle), and the Malá Strana (“Lesser Town”), which is blanketed by gardens and parks. The right (east) 1 _____ of the Vltava is dominated by the Staré Město (“Old Town,” 2 _____ the 12th century) and the Nové Město (“New Town,” 14th century). Both are 3 _____ historical monuments and churches, which account for the description of Prague as the “city of a 4 _____.” The narrow streets, small 5 _____, and cosy restaurants of the older sections contrast with the broad sweep of Wenceslas Square as well as with modern parks and housing developments. New 6 _____, for example (referred to as “towns”), have been built on the periphery to accommodate the majority of Prague’s population.

Two texts from tourist leaflets have been mixed together. Sort them out and provide them with titles.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>7 The Argyllshire gathering has long been one of the highlights of the Highland Games season in Scotland.</p> <p>8 The Royal Palace of Falkland is a 16th-century Renaissance palace, with attractive gardens and the Royal Tennis Court, built as a country residence for the Stewart kings and queens.</p> <p>9 Visitors will see the exquisite chapel, the fascinating Royal Tennis Court – the oldest in Britain – and the Royal apartments.</p> <p>10 Oban Games take place at Mossfield Park, Oban, and start with the traditional march to the Games Field led by the Stewards of the Argyllshire gathering, accompanied by the pipers competing in the light music competitions on the Games Field.</p> <p>11 Mary, Queen of Scots, spent many happy days at the palace playing the country girl in the parkland and woods.</p> <p>12 Today Falkland still prospers while retaining its character, which makes it such a tourist attraction.</p> | <p>13 There are piping and Highland dancing competitions, traditional heavy athletic events, track and field athletics, hill race, tug o’ war competition, fun races, and other attractions.</p> <p>14 A well-thought-out conservation policy has seen a restoration of the palace and the inclusion of craft shops, a weaver’s cottage, tearooms, restaurants and hotels.</p> <p>15 Meals and snacks are available on the field.</p> <p>16 It is hoped that the Golden Lions Team will make a free-fall parachute drop during the Games, weather permitting.</p> <p>17 Falkland is now a conservation area. On a walk through the streets, the visitor will spot many of the features that make the village attractive.</p> <p>18 If you are fond of things truly Highland, you will find them at the Oban Highland Games.</p> <p>19 Admission price includes the programme of events.</p> <p>20 In the town hall, across the street from the palace, an innovative exhibition describes the history of the building.</p> |
|---|--|

Some words have been changed in the following sentences. Find them and replace them with correct ones.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>21 As early as the ninth century, mention was done of a castle in Blois.</p> <p>22 The Count of Blois, who owed Tours and Chartres, rebuilt this castle in the middle of the tenth century.</p> <p>23 In 1230 the heritage was handed over to the Chatillon family who continued the conversion of the castle.</p> <p>24 The earldom of Blois was bought to Duke Louis d’Orléans in 1391.</p> <p>25 The young Duke Charles was caught prisoner by the English.</p> | <p>26 In 1450 he retired to his castle in Blois and organized poetry games in which everyone could take place.</p> <p>27 François Villon came to the yard of Blois and participated in the competition.</p> <p>28 The main wing looks over onto the front courtyard.</p> <p>29 All these buildings, in the same style, were conducted over some ten years.</p> <p>30 The castle was latter the venue for festivals, love stories, endless dramas, and intrigues.</p> |
|---|--|

SIGHTS – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Read the following text and put back the following expressions.

ANCIENT CORE BAROQUE GOTHIC ROMANESQUE CLASSICAL CEMETERY

Prague's architectural treasures range from the 1 _____ (the 10th-century Church of St. George) through the 2 _____ (St. Vitus' Cathedral and Týn Church) to the 3 _____ (the Valdštejn and Clam-Gallas palaces), rococo (the Golz-Kinsky Palace), 4 _____ (the Bedřich Smetana Museum and the Belvedere Palace), and neoclassical (the National Museum and the National Theatre). The Old-New Synagogue and the Old Jewish 5 _____ – Europe's oldest – testify to the strong Jewish tradition in Prague's past life. New buildings have sprung up in and around Prague, but the 6 _____ of the city has been preserved.

Two texts from tourist leaflets have been mixed together. Sort them out and provide them with titles.

- 7 The Isle of Skye is a powerful attraction to visitors from all over the world.
- 8 Many are drawn by its legendary beauty, and some of the wildest mountain and coastal scenery imaginable, while others come in search of family roots – for over the centuries many Gaels have made new lives overseas.
- 9 St Giles is a place to pause and think; a place where the Christian faith is explored and enjoyed; and so it has been for many centuries.
- 10 This is the High Kirk of Edinburgh which has been for over 1000 years the city church of Edinburgh.
- 11 Common to all who visit us, however, is an appreciation of life's finer qualities, in particular the warm hospitality that is traditional here.
- 12 In the Middle Ages it became a collegiate church reflecting the growth of the capital of Scotland.
- 13 In the 16th and 17th centuries, St Giles' was at the centre of the Scottish Reformation, led here by John Knox.
- 14 Skye has suffered Norse invasion, bloody clan rivalry, the ruthless torching of townships and the banishment of their people in crowded emigrant ships.
- 15 In the 19th and 20th centuries, the cathedral was increasingly seen as the national church of Scotland, and its many monuments reflect this period.
- 16 There are usually people available in the Cathedral who can give further information.
- 17 But through it all, Gaels have nurtured a sense of independence – today their language flourishes, and the fragile system of crofting continues to texture the landscape.
- 18 For sheer enjoyment, relaxation, quality accommodation, superb cuisine and warm hospitality, few areas can match Skye.
- 19 No wonder it remains one of the foremost holiday destinations – for people in the know.
- 20 We hope that you will find here help and hope, encouragement and inspiration.

Some words have been changed in the following sentences. Find them and replace them with correct ones.

- 21 The incursions of modern patterns of life have done much to weak the traditional arts, entertainments, and customs of regional and rural Germany.
- 22 Less so in southern Germany, where the older arts and customs have perceived concurrently with a gradual adaptation to a modern, urban pattern of life.
- 23 The young still dance around the village mayrod, but they also dance to the disco beat.
- 24 The woodcarvers, violin makers, and gunsmiths of Upper Bavaria continue, under great economic press, to follow their trades.
- 25 Pheasant women in the Black Forest still wear elaborate costumes known as Tracht on festival days, not to amaze tourists but because they have always done so - yet these are the areas in which the tourist industry is most highly developed.
- 26 Some customs have all but disappeared in the villages: older women seldom bear black dresses and scarves nowadays; and the village men no longer appear in top hat and cutaway for a funeral procession.
- 27 Popular festivals still abandon in the west, southwest, and south, the regions that have clung most to the practices of a traditional, preindustrial age.
- 28 Near-heathen usages such as the donning of elaborate wooden masks during the pre-Lenten celebrations in the southwest remain unaffected in spite of being televised.
- 29 In Roman Empire areas, hundreds of people march in full procession on Corpus Christi Day.
- 30 What is remarkable is not merely that these traditions survive but also that the homelier and less celebrated of them remain truly genuine and naive in their conservancy.

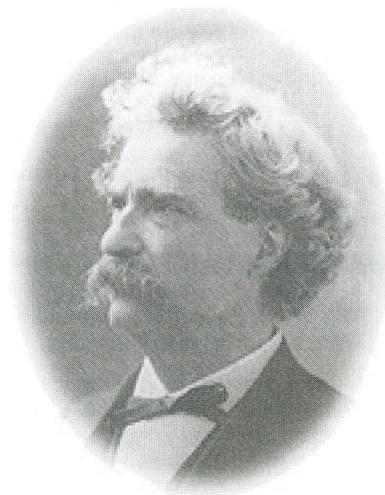
TRAVEL

TRAVEL ABROAD

“Travel is fatal to prejudice, bigotry, and narrow-mindedness...”

Mark Twain

(American writer, satirist and world traveller, 1835–1910)



1 Do you think Mark Twain was right? Explain your standpoint and give some examples.

2 In groups of four, talk about travelling abroad. Speak about your first trips. Find out whose trip was the most interesting.

In pairs, tell your partner about the trip you would like to go for if you had the time and money.

Then tell the other pair what you have learned from your partner.

3 Which of the following expressions can be used when talking about your trip abroad?

In what situations might you come across them?

Travel Abroad

travel insurance / holiday insurance

checklist

passport / means of identification

booked in advance / reserved

cold-weather gear

raingear

swimwear

towel

toilet articles

first aid kit

basic medicines

suitcase × briefcase

holdall

rucksack (GB) / backpack (US)

multipurpose pocket knife /

penknife

walking holiday

to tour by car × by coach × by public transport

package tour

travel literature

brochure

to travel light

to take everything but the kitchen sink

to apply for a passport

high commission

consulate / embassy

visa

entry

transit

exit

multiple entry

restricted

valid for *n* weeks

to be refused a visa

to extend a visa

work permit

alien

customs (inspection)

“Have you anything to declare?”

to smuggle

immigration (control)

dutiable goods

import tax

forbidden exports

inoculation certificate

to change money

bureau de change

rate of exchange

1 Many people are afraid of flying, but is this fear really well-founded? List all of the dangers of flying and the dangers of travelling by coach. Which one is more dangerous?

2 Look at the expressions in the box. Group some of them under the following headings.

airport

plane

3 Read the announcements on the right. In what situations would you hear them? Talk about them and put them into order in the three groups mentioned above.

4 Shut your book and list the steps involved in a flight.



- a "Welcome on board. This is the captain speaking. We are now flying at 15,000 feet. In a short while the flight attendants will be coming round to offer you a drink and some light refreshments."
- b "Would you like a window or aisle seat?"
- c "Yes, you can buy another carton of cigarettes without exceeding your duty-free limit."
- d "We are sorry to announce that flight 157 to Paris will be delayed by thirty minutes."
- e "Please place all metal objects in the tray and step through the metal detector."
- f "Is the purpose of your visit business or pleasure?"
- g "After claiming your baggage at carousel 3, please make your way to customs and passport control."
- h "Sorry about the bumpy ride there, folks. We ran into a little bit of turbulence, but it should be smooth flying from here on out."
- i "Yes, we do have a discount ticket on British Airways, but it leaves on December 15 and not 16."
- j "Please fasten your seat belts and bring your seats to the full upright position."
- k "We are sorry to announce that the flight has been overbooked. If there are any volunteers willing to wait for the next flight, please make your way to the front counter now."
- l "We would like to bring your attention to some of the safety features of this aircraft."
- m "Please have your passports and boarding cards ready as you come to the gate."

Air Travel

national airline
major carrier
charter
budget flight
discount tickets
bucket shop
stand-by
domestic flight
shuttle
club class
business class
economy class
air terminal (in town)
long-term car park
arrival board × departure board
check-in counter
to check in
overbooked flight
boarding card
security check
departure lounge

duty-free goods
to have one's flight called
to board the plane
fasten your seat belts
non-smoking flight
to take off
on takeoff
to be airborne
to climb × lose height
reclining seats
air hostess / stewardess
steward
flight attendants
captain / pilot
cabin crew
smooth × bumpy journey / flight
turbulence
airsick
in-flight entertainment
diverted
delayed
to be held in the stack
on the approach

to land / touch down
transit lounge
baggage (re)claim
to hijack
to be taken hostage
plane crash
mid-air collision

Aircraft

airliner
jet engine
jumbo jet
airbus
fuselage
propeller
turbo-prop
supersonic transport
short-haul transport
light plane
STOL (short takeoff and landing)
helicopter / copter
wings
cockpit

SEA TRAVEL

1 Read the advertisement on the right and fill the gaps using the words below.

cruise sail dock board
cabin suites liner ports
guides land ruins

2 Below are the descriptions of a couple who took the cruise. In pairs, try to think of what they thought of the cruise and some of the things that might have happened to them on the cruise. Then role-play a conversation between them.

Mary Prescott

fell in love with the Greek Islands when she travelled through them as a college student and has always wanted to go back
wants to get into really close contact with the culture and meet the people
hates tourist areas, prefers finding places off the beaten track
had never been on a cruise ship before

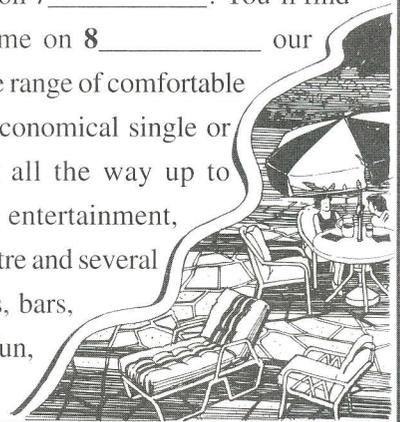
Paul Prescott

has been working extremely hard, just wants to relax on his vacation and enjoy some nice weather
doesn't like hurrying from one hotel to another and trying to deal with people who don't speak English
isn't particularly interested in Greece, but knows that Mary loves it
likes the idea of spending some time on a ship as it reminds him of his days in the navy

WHY WAIT FOR SUMMER TO COME TO YOU WHEN YOU CAN GO TO SUMMER ON A SMOOTH SAILING LUXURY CRUISE OF THE GREEK ISLANDS

Luxury Cruise Lines' spring season has now begun, and we're kicking the year off with a bang with a special offer on a fabulous **1** _____ round the Greek Islands. Come and **2** _____ with us through the beautiful green waters of the Mediterranean, where summer comes a little bit sooner and a whole lot hotter! We'll **3** _____ at **4** _____ on seven beautiful Greek Islands, where our knowledgeable tour **5** _____ will show you timeless Greek **6** _____, romantic wilderness, and exciting cities. Discover the joy of languishing in a romantic waterfall, or shopping in a small seaside open market.

But not all of the action takes place on **7** _____! You'll find everything you need to feel at home on **8** _____ our Luxury Cruise Liner. We have a wide range of comfortable accommodation, starting with the economical single or double **9** _____ and going all the way up to luxurious **10** _____. As for entertainment, each **11** _____ has a fitness centre and several swimming pools, as well as casinos, bars, and showrooms. So come join the fun, and sail off into summer!



3 Now listen to a conversation between Paul and Mary. How close were you to what they actually said?

Sea Travel

Some types of vessel

boat × ship × liner
ocean liner
cruise ship
ferry (boat)
car ferry
RORO (roll on, roll off)
tug
hovercraft
hydrofoil
merchant ship
cargo ship
paddle steamer
launch

yacht
sailing ship / tall ship
sailing boat
lifeboat
fishing boat
pilot boat
Embarkation
port × harbour (GB) / harbor (US)
quay (side)
dock
harbour arm
gangway / gangplank
bonded store / bonded area

not wanted on voyage (about goods)
cabin × double cabin
sleeping berth
stateroom
lounge
to leave on the next tide
to sound the siren

Voyage
rough passage
freak wave
smooth crossing
glass-calm
roll × pitch
huge waves

to be seasick / vomit / throw up
to get one's sea legs
to lose sight of shore
to drop × weigh anchor
to ride at anchor
to moor to a buoy
to change course for
to heave to in a storm
to raise land
to come in to port
to dock at
to lower the gangplank
to disembark
to set foot on dry land

ACCOMMODATION

1 Look at this page from a travel book and say what kind of person each place is most suitable for? Which one would you rather stay at?

Prince Hotel A luxurious hotel situated directly in the centre of town. Spacious rooms, equipped with satellite TV, phones, hydro-massage baths and fully stocked bars. The restaurant is amongst the finest in town, and room service is available 24 hours a day. Friendly receptionists and staff, a wide range of services (including Swedish massage and sauna), and little special touches like a rose on every pillow combine to make this hotel truly the best place in town.

Shining Coast B&B A three-hundred-year old redbrick house located just outside of the centre in a quiet residential neighbourhood. Come in and chat over breakfast with Molly, the owner, or enjoy breakfast in bed. The rooms are small but cosy and decorated with a personal touch from Molly's own family treasures. Good connections to public transport both to the city centre and the beach.

Sheldon International Conveniently located near the train station with free hourly shuttle service to the airport. This comfortable, if somewhat sterile, hotel features tidy and economical rooms, full fax and internet services, and a conference hall which seats 300. The restaurant is open 24 hours, and the hotel also features a cosy tavern and spacious lounge.

Johnson Youth Hostel A lively atmosphere and surprisingly clean rooms make this the best hostel in town. Choose from two-, three-, or four-bed rooms, or take a cheaper bed in the dorms. There's a laundry service available, and a kitchen if you want to save money by not eating out. The cafe serves breakfast until noon and the bar is open all night! A great place!

2 Fill in the missing lines in the following dialogue.

- A** Good morning, Sheldon International. How may I help you?
- B** _____
- A** One moment, please. I'm sorry, I'm afraid we're fully booked on the 15th.
- B** _____
- A** Yes, I'm quite positive. We are hosting a convention that week. But there are vacancies on the 16th.
- B** _____
- A** Fine, the sixteenth then. And will that be a single or double room?
- B** _____
- A** No, I'm afraid all of the rooms with a view of the ocean are doubles. The singles are mostly on the other side, facing the gardens. It's still a lovely view, though.
- B** _____
- A** Fine, a single facing the gardens. And how long will you be staying with us?
- B** _____
- A** OK, I have you confirmed for a single room in the rear courtyard for March 16th. Could I please have your name and phone number?
- B** _____
- A** Fine. Your room is reserved, and we look forward to your staying with us.
- B** _____
- A** We have a shuttle that runs to the airport every two hours. It stops just outside the international terminal.
- B** _____
- A** You're welcome. Goodbye.

3 Now role-play a similar dialogue for one of the hotels described above.

Accommodation

luxury hotel
five-star hotel
family hotel
boarding house
self-catering holiday flat
bed and breakfast (B & B)
youth hostel
backpackers
chalet (GB) / cabin (US)
motel

campsite
washing, cooking, shower etc.
facilities
room and board
full board × half board
self-catering
high season × off-season
no vacancies × rooms free / vacancies
to be fully booked / be booked out
single × double room × suite
penthouse

to check in × check out
to sign the guest book
to fill out a registration form
to call room service
manager
reception clerk
porter
chambermaid
liftboy / bellhop (boy) (US)
doorman / commissioner
concierge

DRIVING

1 Put the following steps to pulling a car out of a parking space in the correct order by numbering the sentences.

- get into the car
- take off the hand-brake
- start the car
- put the car into neutral
- check your rear-view mirror
- put the car into reverse
- put the key into the ignition
- put in the clutch
- put the car in first (gear)
- reverse as far as possible
- indicate
- put on your seat belt
- when there are no cars coming, let in the clutch, step on the accelerator, and pull out

2 Look at the following road signs. Compare them to the road signs in your country and say what they mean.



3 Here are the names of the road signs. Match them with the symbols above.

cyclists only
steep hill
level crossing
no overtaking
no left turn
give way

roundabout
roadworks ahead
no U-turn
no through road
slippery road
stop

4 Draw some more road signs and explain their meanings.

Driving

to start the engine
to look in the mirror
to indicate
to pull away
to put in the clutch
to change gear
to change up × down
to accelerate × decelerate
to put on the brake / brake
to reverse (GB) /
back up (US)
to observe × break the speed limit
to speed
to overtake (GB) / pass (US)
to skid
to get into a slide
to have an accident / crash
minor shunt (GB) /
fender bender (US coll.)

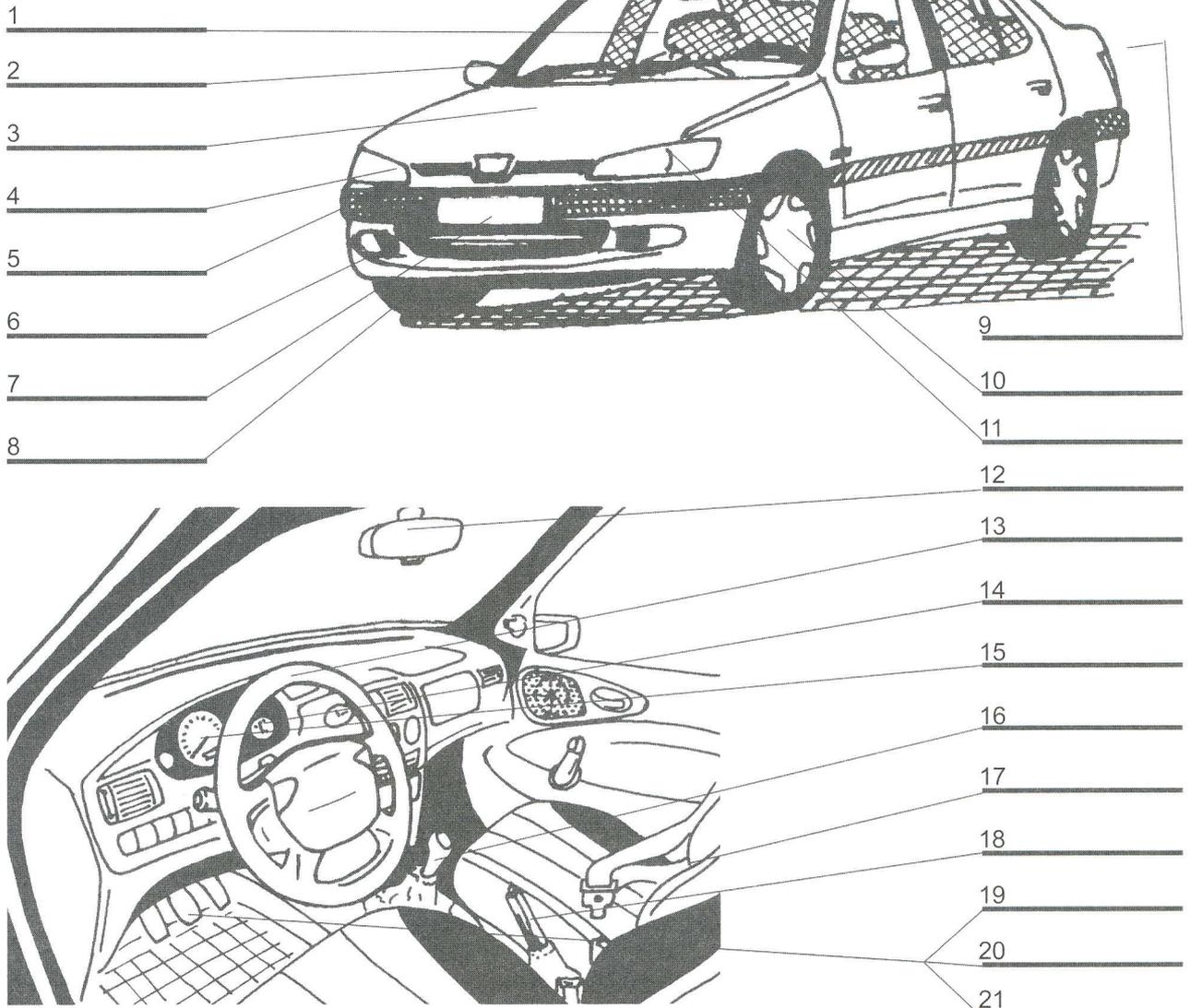
multiple crash
to have a puncture / have a flat tyre (GB) /
tire (US)
to change the wheel
spare wheel
to give someone a lift (GB) /
a ride (US)

Maintenance and breakdown

to service the car
to check and renew when necessary
(sparking) plugs / spark plugs
(contact breaker) points
brake pads × linings
brake fluid
condenser
alternator and starter motor brushes
fanbelt and cambelt
to change the oil
to check the tyre pressures

to top up the battery (GB) /
fill up (US)
toolkit
jack
pressure gauge
footpump
breakdown truck
motoring association (A.A. or R.A.C.)
to run out of petrol (GB) / gas (US)
to have a flat battery / the battery
is dead
to break down in the middle of nowhere
to blow a fuse
brake failure
engine seizure
to overheat (in heavy traffic)
slipping × broken fanbelt
spare parts / spares

1 Label the car using either the British or the American words as indicated below.



The Car (Motor Car/Automobile)

British and American terms for the parts of a car are different.

An oblique (/) indicates the American equivalent, e.g. bonnet / hood

engine / motor
 bonnet / hood
 bumper / fender
 headlights
 rearlights / taillights
 spotlights / headlights
 foglights
 indicators / turn signals
 windscreen / windshield
 (windscreen) wiper
 horn

to hoot / honk one's horn at sb/st
 boot / trunk
 numberplate / license plate
 steering wheel
 mirror / rear-view mirror
 wing mirror / side mirror
 gearlever / stickshift
 four- × five-speed (gear) box
 automatic transmission
 speedometer
 rev counter / tachometer
 bench × bucket seats
 clutch × brake × accelerator / gas pedal
 estate car / station wagon

pickup
 (luxury) saloon
 sports car
 family car
 hatchback
 motor caravan /
 RV (recreational vehicle) /
 motor home
 lorry / truck × van
 articulated lorry ("artic") / semi
 limousine
 four-wheel drive
 front×rear-wheel drive

two×four-stroke engine /
 two×four-cycle motor
 diesel
 disc × drum brakes
 power(-assisted) steering
 air-conditioning
 petrol / gas consumption
 miles per gallon (m.p.g.)

Accessories

towing ball or towbar / towing hitch
 caravan
 trailer
 roof × canoe × ski rack

2 Read the following description of a car. Which one of these four people would it be best suited to?

- a middle-aged businessman
- a family of four
- a farmer
- a university student

FOR SALE: 1999 four-speed Japanese hatchback in good condition. New brakes and clutch. Gets great gas mileage. Body needs a little work. \$1200 o.n.o.

3 Now match the following features to the type of car they are most likely to be found on.

- fold-down back seat
- two-seater
- four-wheel drive
- seats five
- five-speed gearbox
- automatic transmission
- turbo acceleration
- spotlights
- ski-rack
- great gas mileage
- towing hitch
- tow bar
- sunroof
- polished wooden steering wheel
- diesel
- leather upholstery
- childseat
- extra-large body

		
estate car	sports car	truck
<i>fold-down back seat</i>	<i>two-seater</i>	<i>four-wheel drive</i>

4 Now match each of the three cars to one of the remaining three people in Exercise 2 and discuss why these are the best cars for them.

5 What kind of car is most suited to your native country? Discuss the effects of weather, road conditions, the price of petrol, etc.

The Car

traffic regulations
 the Highway Code / Road Code
 T-junction
 hairpin bend
 sharp bend (GB) / sharp curve (US)
 solid × broken × double white line
 speed limit
 inside × crawler × middle lane
 fast / overtaking lane
 hard shoulder
 motorway (GB) / freeway / highway / interstate (US)
 tollroad (GB) / turnpike (US)
 main road / trunk road
 sideroad
 twisting country lane

short cut
 dirt road
 gravel road
 crash barriers
 motorway service area (GB) / truck stop (US)
 petrol station or garage (GB) / gas station (US)
 service station
 roadside restaurant
 transport café
 greasy spoon
 diner (US)
 motel
 drive-in (US)
 lay-by (GB) / reststop (US)
 car park (GB) / parking lot (US)

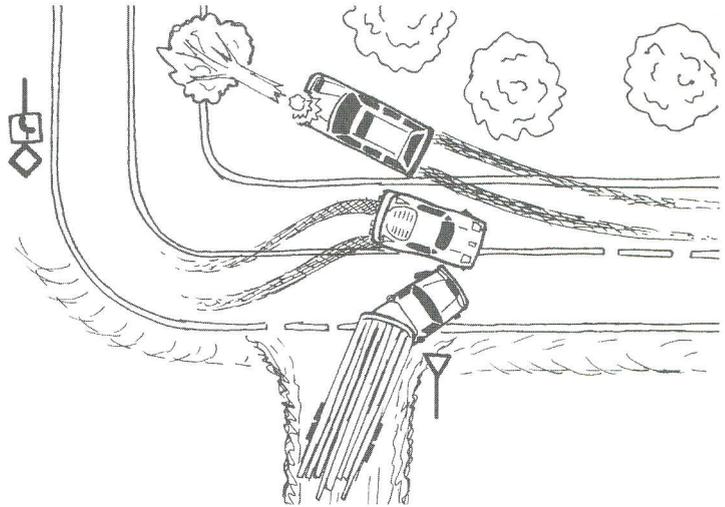
Notices

GIVE WAY (GB) / YIELD (US)
 HALT MAJOR ROAD AHEAD
 ROAD WORKS AHEAD (GB) / ROAD CONSTRUCTION (US)
 DIVERSION (GB) / DETOUR (US)
 NO ENTRY
 ONE WAY STREET
 NO PARKING
 REDUCE SPEED NOW
 LOOK RIGHT
 TEMPORARY ROAD SURFACE
 NO ROAD MARKINGS FOR 3 MILES

ROAD ACCIDENTS

1 Look at the picture of the scene of an accident. One of the vehicles is a sports car, one is an estate car and the third one is a lorry. What do you think happened?

2  Now listen to an eyewitness' report to the police. Were you right? Whose fault do you think the accident was?



3 The following parts of sentences have been extracted from the text. Put them back.

- driving under the influence
- running a few red lights
- insurance
- double-parked
- speeding
- defective brakes
- drunk tank
- ran over
- driving licence
- parking ticket
- clocked me with a radar gun
- had been drinking
- tailgate
- breathalyser
- reckless driving
- pulled over
- thumb a lift
- pulled over by the police

I WOKE UP THIS MORNING IN THE 1 _____ WITH A TERRIBLE HANGOVER AND NO IDEA WHAT I DID LAST NIGHT.

Slowly, as I started to wake up, I began to remember what had happened. Last night was my birthday, so I decided to celebrate by going to the bar and getting drunk. I couldn't find anywhere to park at the bar, so I 2 _____ and went inside. When I came out three hours later I found a 3 _____ on my windshield. Being a little bit drunk, I tore it up and drove away. In front of me was an old car that was driving very slowly, so I began to 4 _____ it, hoping it would speed up. It probably wasn't a good idea, as my car has 5 _____ and I would not have been able to stop if the car in front of me had stopped suddenly. Finally the car 6 _____ and let me pass.

A little bit further down the road, I accidentally 7 _____ a hitchhiker who was trying to 8 _____ . I hope he's all right.

After driving along for another half hour and 9 _____ , I was 10 _____ . They asked to see my 11 _____ and proof of 12 _____ . I asked them why they had stopped me, and they told me that I had been driving at 90 mph. When I asked them how they knew, they said that they had 13 _____ . They then asked me if I 14 _____ . I told them to mind their own business, which made them a little angry. Finally they took me down to the station and gave me a 15 _____ test, which showed that I was well over the legal alcohol limit for driving. I was arrested for 16 _____ , 17 _____ of alcohol, and 18 _____ , and thrown in this room.

I don't think I'll be drinking and driving any time soon. It's not that I've learned my lesson. It's just that they don't have any cars in jail.

Road Accidents

warning triangle
 first-aid kit
 fire extinguisher
 spare bulb set
 certificate of roadworthiness (M.O.T.)
 insurance
 driving licence / driver's license

road tax (GB)
 bald tyres
 defective brakes, steering, etc.
 double-parking
 speeding
 driving under the influence of alcohol
 driving while intoxicated - DWI (US)
 traffic police

breathalyser
 to be pulled over by the police
 "Q"-car (unmarked police patrol)
 radar speed check
 learner (L) plates
 reckless / dangerous driving
 to jump / run the lights / go through a red light
 to tailgate (US) / follow very closely

PUBLIC TRANSPORT

1 Read the following passage about traffic in big cities. Could this letter be talking about the city you live in?

- driveway
- parking places
- bumper-to-bumper traffic
- one-way
- road workers
- commute
- exit
- rush-hour
- fender-bender
- "no left turn"
- congested
- exhaust fumes

Dear Editors,

Like many people, I live in the suburbs and have to
 1 _____ every day to work in the centre. I start work at 8:00
 am, but my day actually starts much earlier than that. At around 6:00, I pull
 out of my 2 _____ to face the horror of 3 _____
 traffic. The next hour is spent crawling through miles of 4 _____,
 filled with all of the lovely sights of a spring morning in the city- two drivers arguing
 at the site of a 5 _____, a construction site filled with
 6 _____ who get paid tax money to sit around drinking coffee, the
 thick haze of 7 _____ choking my lungs.

Finally I see my 8 _____, and I leave the wonderful world
 of the freeway. But the fun's not over yet! Now I get to spend the next hour
 crawling around the 9 _____ maze of downtown streets, a
 nightmare of 10 _____ streets and 11 _____
 signs, fighting with hundreds of fellow commuters over the ten or twelve available
 12 _____. This lovely ritual is repeated twice a day, five days a
 week, all year long.

Surely there must be a better way. Perhaps if we...

2 What can be done about traffic? Take a look at these suggestions, and then write down some advantages and disadvantages for each suggestion. Make sure to mention how you will pay for them.

Build more roads and freeways

Make more car-pool lanes

Make the centre a pedestrian zone

Build more parking lots

Make more one-way streets and

synchronised traffic lights

Improve public transport

Give petrol and fare discounts

to people who use car-pools

Public Transport

local × intercity buses × coaches
 the tube / underground (GB) /
 subway (US)
 automatic turnstile
 ticket machine
 "Mind the gap"
 bus stop
 articulated / "bendy" bus
 fare stage / zone
 request stop
 fares
 flat rate
 per kilometre / mile
 discount fares
 student card / pass
 season ticket
 traffic lights (red, amber, green)
 to jaywalk
 pedestrian / zebra crossing

pelican crossing
 Belisha beacon
 lollipop lady / man
 pavement (GB) / sidewalk (US)
 kerb (GB) / curb (US)
 gutter
 road (GB) / pavement (US)
 subway (GB) / underpass (US)
 cloverleaf junction
 roundabout
 spaghetti junction
 fork
 T-junction
 urban clearway
 underpass × overpass / flyover
 junction / crossroads (GB) /
 intersection (US)
 pedestrian precinct
 sleeping policeman (GB) /
 speed bump (US)

rush hour
 traffic jam / stuck in traffic
 gridlock / complete standstill
 exhaust fumes / pollution / smog
 accident / pileup (GB) /
 car wreck (US)
 to be knocked down by a car /
 to be hit by a car
 passers-by
 to overtake (GB) / pass (US)
 to have one's car towed away
 towaway area / zone
 traffic warden (GB)
 parking meter
 parking ticket
 wheel clamp (GB) / boot (US)
 stiffer penalties for traffic offences
 signal malfunction
 contraflow
 oncoming traffic

TRAVELLING BY TRAIN

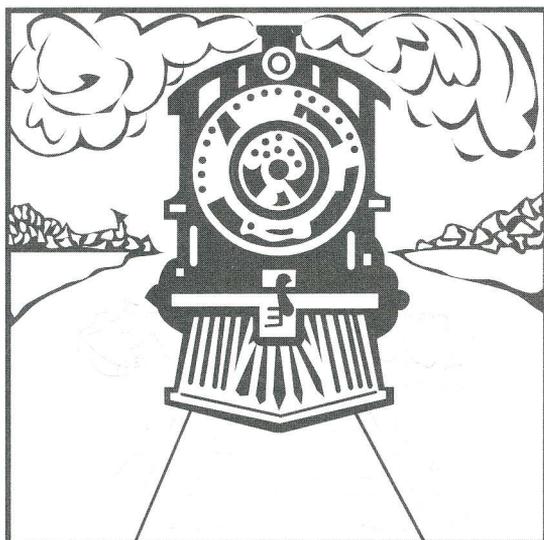
1 Imagine that you and a friend have been planning to travel around Spain and France this summer in your brother's car. Now your brother says that he needs the car and you can't take it. You don't have a lot of money, but you want to make the trip anyway. Read the information leaflet about the Multi-Rail Pass and discuss how you could do it.

Student A

You're really worried about money, so you think the only way to do it is to hitchhike. You've done it before, although on much shorter trips. Anything else is just going to be too expensive.

Student B

You really don't want to hitchhike. It's inconvenient and also really dangerous. You think you and your partner should buy Multi-Rail Passes instead. Try to convince your friend.



THE NEW MULTI-RAIL PASS

Thinking of travelling around Europe this summer? Well, if you are, then the only way to go is on the new Multi-Rail Pass. This pass allows you to travel for free on all major train services in Europe, giving you the freedom to explore what you really want to see.

CHOOSE YOUR OWN PATH

Our unique zone system allows you to pay for just the countries you are going to visit, and not the whole of Europe. After all, why pay for a fare to Moscow if you're not planning on going there anyway. Choose from a one-, two- or three-zone pass, or go for the Europe-wide Pass. Whichever way you choose, it's a bargain.

SAVE ON MORE THAN JUST TRAVEL

With your Multi-Rail Pass you'll also receive, free of charge, the new Euro-Youth Card. This card offers discounts on everything from food to accommodation to museums and cultural events all over Europe.

BUY THE NEW MULTI-RAIL PASS

AND EXPERIENCE EUROPE LIKE

NEVER BEFORE

Travelling by Train

main railway station	passenger train	guard's van (GB) / caboose (US)	ticket inspector / conductor
left-luggage department / office	goods train (GB) /	luggage van	railway police
lost property office / lost and found	freight train (US)	mail van	communication cord /
ticket office / booking office	ticket barrier	carriage / wagon	emergency cord (US)
(automatic) ticket machine	turnstile	sleeping carriage / wagon-lit	diesel engine
single (GB) / one-way	platform	upper × lower bunk	steam train / engine
ticket (US)	announcement	buffet car / carriage /	electric engine
return (GB) / round-trip	newspaper kiosk / stand	dining car	DO NOT LEAN OUT OF THE
ticket (US)	coffee bar	seat facing the engine	WINDOW
to miss one's connection	vending machine	to sit with one's back to the	EMERGENCY USE ONLY
trans-Europe express (T.E.E.)	station master	engine	PENALTY FOR IMPROPER
stopping train	porter	to sit facing backwards / forwards	USE 50 POUNDS
commuter service	engine driver	corner seat	NO ENTRY
sleeper	guard	compartment	NO EXIT
		aisle × corridor	

ON TWO WHEELS OR ON FOOT

1 List the advantages and disadvantages of travelling on two wheels and on foot by completing the following.

When travelling on two wheels / on foot

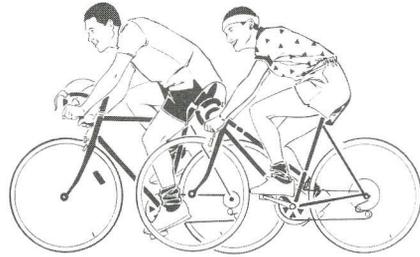


- you can...*
- you must...*
- you needn't...*
- you may...*
- you won't have to...*
- you shouldn't...*
- you are sure to...*
- you mustn't...*
- you are not allowed to...*

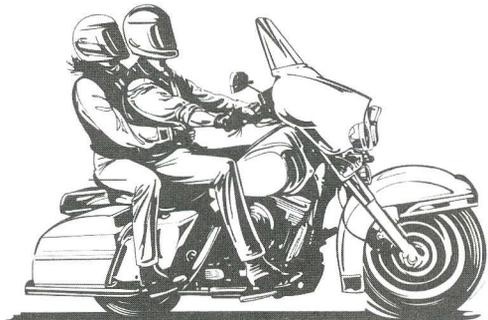
2 Some lines in the following text are without a mistake, others contain one word which should not be there. Find the mistakes.

- 1 More people have come to appreciate it that
- 2 travelling by rail is the easy way to make the
- 3 most of their holiday. By travelling by fast,
- 4 comfortable and frequent trains, combining
- 5 rail travel with walking there and cycling is
- 6 a convenient way to have explore an area.
- 7 This specially produced leaflet introduces
- 8 a choice of scenic walks and cycle and routes.
- 9 The map inside shows the railway network and
- 10 the stations from which walks can be made.
- 11 When you are all visiting the countryside please
- 12 observe the Country Code: Protect the wildlife,
- 13 plants and trees. Help to keep all water clean.
- 14 Take your litter to home. Guard against risk
- 15 of fire. Don't make no unnecessary noise.

3 Imagine that you have a summer job as a guide in a national park. Using some of the language from the preceding exercise, prepare a talk to the visitors, giving them instructions how they should behave.



4 In groups of four plan a trip to the mountains. One of you is quite experienced and should tell the other three what to take with them. You should also consider the most appropriate means of transport and the most suitable accommodation. The "leader" of the group then goes to another group and the members tell the "new leader" about their plans. Finally, everybody jots down the essential information about the planned trip.

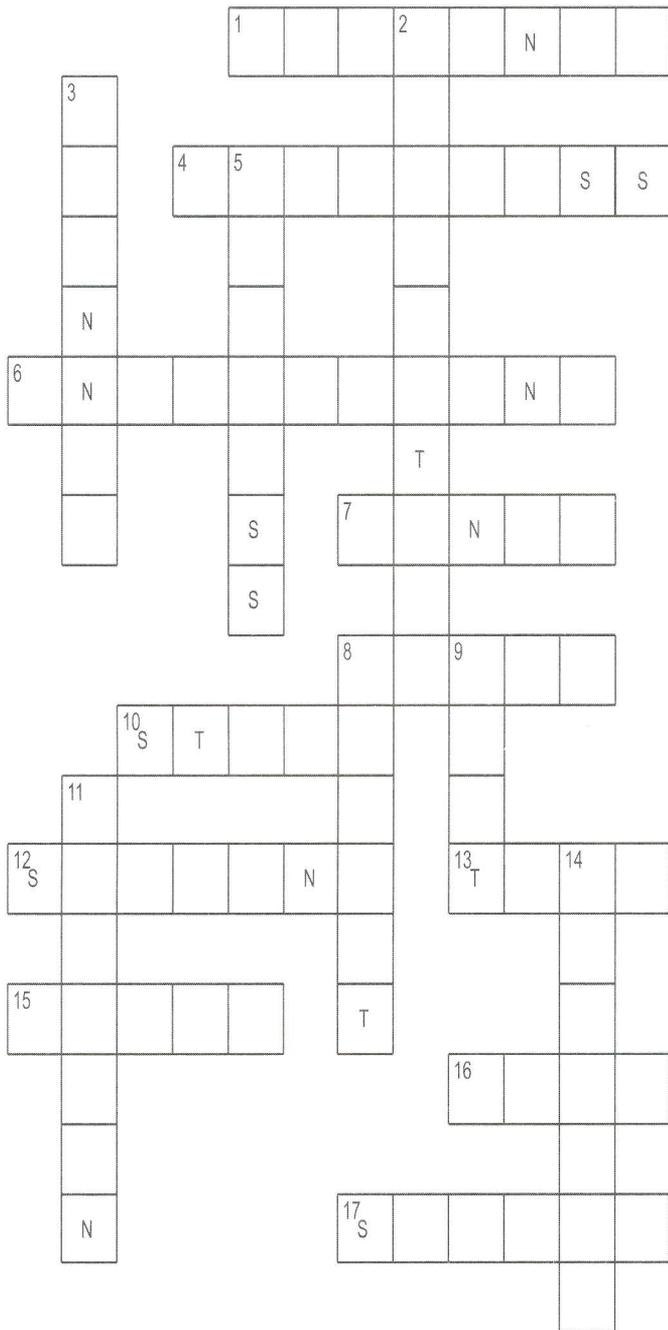


On Two Wheels or on Foot

motorcycle
 pushbike (GB) / bicycle
 saddle / seat
 handlebars
 chain
 pedals
 spokes
 mudguards
 tandem
 pillion / passenger seat
 panniers
 to ride on the crossbar
 to sit side-saddle
 crash helmet
 to walk (in the hills, etc.)
 to trek / hike / backpack (in a wilderness area)
 to hitchhike
 to thumb a lift

to go camping
 to make × break camp
 to pitch a tent
 inner tent × flysheet
 tentpegs
 mallet
 guy ropes
 poles × ridge pole
 igloo tent
 carry mat
 groundsheet × built-in groundsheet
 pup tent
 two-person tent
 sleeping bag
 pressure × gas stove
 to cook over a campfire
 to sleep under the stars

Here are some interesting facts connected with travel. One word has been removed from each sentence to form the crossword.



Across

1. The world's largest ___ is the Boeing 747.
4. When petrol-powered ___ first replaced those drawn by horses, they were called horseless carriages.
6. The Japanese ___ employs uniformed officials with white gloves whose job is to push passengers into crowded trains.
7. One of the factors that brought the United States into the First World War was the sinking of the British ___ Lusitania which was carrying Americans.
8. The largest car and passenger ___ operates between Stockholm and Helsinki.
10. In canoeing, speed racing takes place on ___ water.
12. The fastest ___ boats are catamarans.
13. If a ___ loses its grip on a wet road and rides on a film of water, it is called aquaplaning.
15. The colour of all Model T Fords was ___.
16. slalom racing canoeing takes place on ___ water.
17. In London it is the underground, in New York it is the ___ and in Paris it is the metro.

Down

2. The Rocket steam ___ was designed by George Stephenson in 1829.
3. The engineering project opened in December 1993, shared between Britain and France, is sometimes called the ___.
5. Murder on the Orient ___, the 1974 film starring Albert Finney, was based on Agatha Christie's novel.
8. The first solo transatlantic ___ was made by Charles Lindberg.
9. In 1947, Norwegian anthropologist Thor Heyerdahl crossed the Pacific on the ___ Kon-Tiki
11. The first transatlantic crossing by hot-air ___ was achieved by Branson and Lindstrand in 1987.
14. The world's steepest 'rack' ___ is in Switzerland.

TRAVEL – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

The following expressions are typical of different situations when travelling. Choose from the following categories: a – air travel, b – train travel, c – car travel, d – hiking.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Aisle or window seat? | 9 You missed your exit. |
| 2 Please have your ticket ready for the conductor. | 10 When does the train get in? |
| 3 Can I see your licence? | 11 Is there a layover? |
| 4 What stop are we at? | 12 Have a safe trip. |
| 5 How much hand luggage is permitted? | 13 When does the next train leave? |
| 6 Can you tell me where to get off? | 14 Does this train go to the centre? |
| 7 It's a stone's throw away. | 15 We will begin boarding soon. |
| 8 For your safety, don't lean on the doors. | |

The following expressions connected with transport can be used metaphorically. Choose which sentence they fit in.

ENGINEER WHEEL VEHICLE GEAR BRAKE

- | | |
|---|--|
| 16 An advertisement is not simply a _____ for its message. | 19 There is no use trying to fight inflation through high interest rates which are designed to put a _____ on economic growth. |
| 17 They grease the _____ of the consumer boom by allowing us to buy what we want, when we want. | 20 We go skiing in the mountains each winter. Things get into high _____ there in November. |
| 18 She had _____ that business trip partly to escape from the situation at home. | |

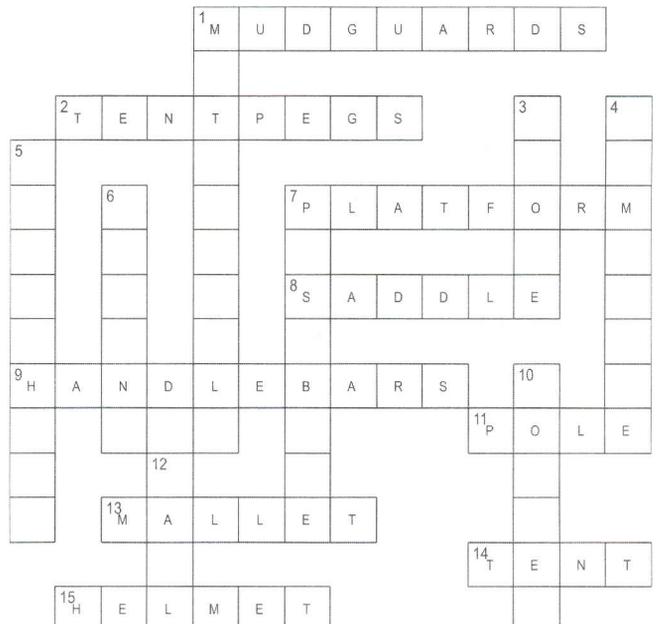
Explain the meaning of the underlined parts of these sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 21 We never even exchanged addresses. It's like that sometimes, when you travel a lot – <u>ships that pass in the night</u> . | 26 When I came back, my car was gone. I had locked it and it couldn't have <u>vanished into thin air</u> ! |
| 22 When in doubt, I <u>follow the crowd</u> . At least I don't stand out like a fool. | 27 Get organised and <u>stop running round in circles</u> . |
| 23 He was getting on my nerves, so I told him to <u>take a hike</u> . | 28 <u>Fools rush in where angels fear to tread</u> . |
| 24 <u>Bad news travels fast</u> . | 29 She likes to <u>fly in the face of</u> standard procedures. |
| 25 Sometimes it is dangerous to <u>hitch / thumb a ride</u> with a stranger. | 30 What are you <u>driving at</u> ? |

Look at this crossword and your partner will look at the crossword on the following page. You have got the 'acrosses' filled in and your partner has got the 'downs'.

Example:

- Can you tell me a clue for number 5?
 What's a clue for number 5?
 Could you explain number 5?
 Give me an explanation for number 5, please.
 Can you say it again?
 Can you repeat what you've just said?
 Could you explain it in a different way?



TRAVEL – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The following expressions are typical of different situations when travelling. Choose from the following categories: a – air travel, b – travel by bus, c – going by train, d – travel by road, e – hiking

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 It's making a funny noise under the bonnet. | 9 How much is the fare? |
| 2 How far away is it? | 10 You missed the turn. |
| 3 Move to the rear, please. There's plenty of room in the back. | 11 Would anyone be interested in giving up their seat in exchange for a free ticket? |
| 4 You should try going stand-by. | 12 Will a meal be served? |
| 5 Which line goes to the Museum? | 13 My battery is dead. |
| 6 Can I reserve a seat in advance? | 14 When you get to the lake, go north. |
| 7 You've got a long way to go. | 15 Is there a dining car? |
| 8 Is this seat taken? | |

The following expressions connected with transport can be used metaphorically. Choose which sentence they fit in.

ENGINE CHAIN PUMP TOP GEAR STEER

- | | |
|--|---|
| 16 Trying to avoid any encounter, we _____ clear of each other for a couple of days. | 19 It makes economic sense to upgrade the existing rail systems rather than _____ money into roads. |
| 17 From that moment on his career went into _____. | 20 The student uprising began the _____ of events that led to the fall of the government. |
| 18 Small businesses are also an _____ of job-creation. | |

Explain the meaning of the underlined parts of these sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 21 He is <u>driving me mad</u> . | ship, but I can't stand it around here any more. |
| 22 I am so busy that I <u>don't know if I'm coming or going</u> . | 27 Learning that one has been totally wrong about something can really <u>take the wind out of one's sails</u> . |
| 23 Just <u>follow your nose</u> . | 28 <u>It is better to travel hopefully than to arrive</u> . |
| 24 She's <u>on the way to</u> becoming a very good teacher. | 29 <u>Travel broadens the mind</u> . |
| 25 They won't get it figured out – they are <u>on the wrong track</u> . | 30 On the last day of school, all the children were <u>walking on air</u> . |
| 26 I hate to be the one to desert / <u>leave the sinking</u> | |

IV Look at this crossword and your partner will look at the crossword on the preceding page. You have got the 'downs' filled in and your partner has got the 'acrosses'. Ask each other for clues.

Example:

Can you tell me a clue for number 2?

What's a clue for number 2?

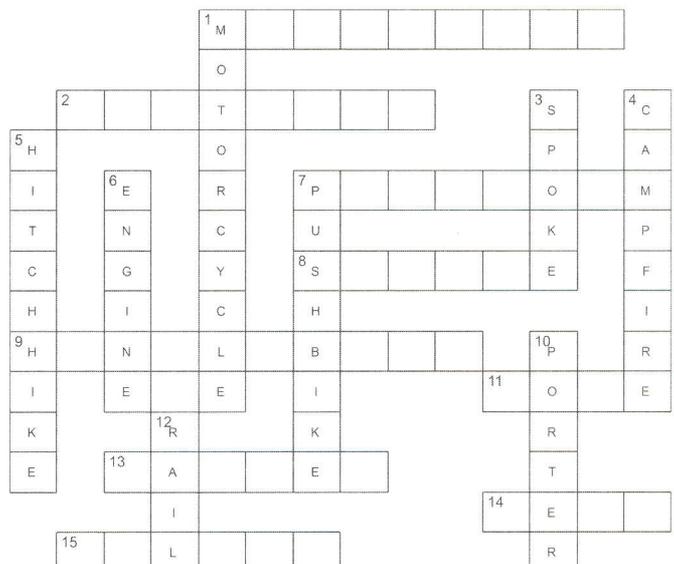
Could you explain number 2?

Give me an explanation for number 2, please.

Can you say it again?

Can you repeat what you've just said?

Could you explain it in a different way?



FARMING

1 Find the following in the picture.

farmhouse	pasture
farmyard	fence
barn	orchard
silo	vegetable garden
pig sty / pig pen	tractor
stable – horses	harrow
loose box	estate car (GB) /
paddock	station wagon (US)
henhouse – hens	lorry / truck
field	ladder

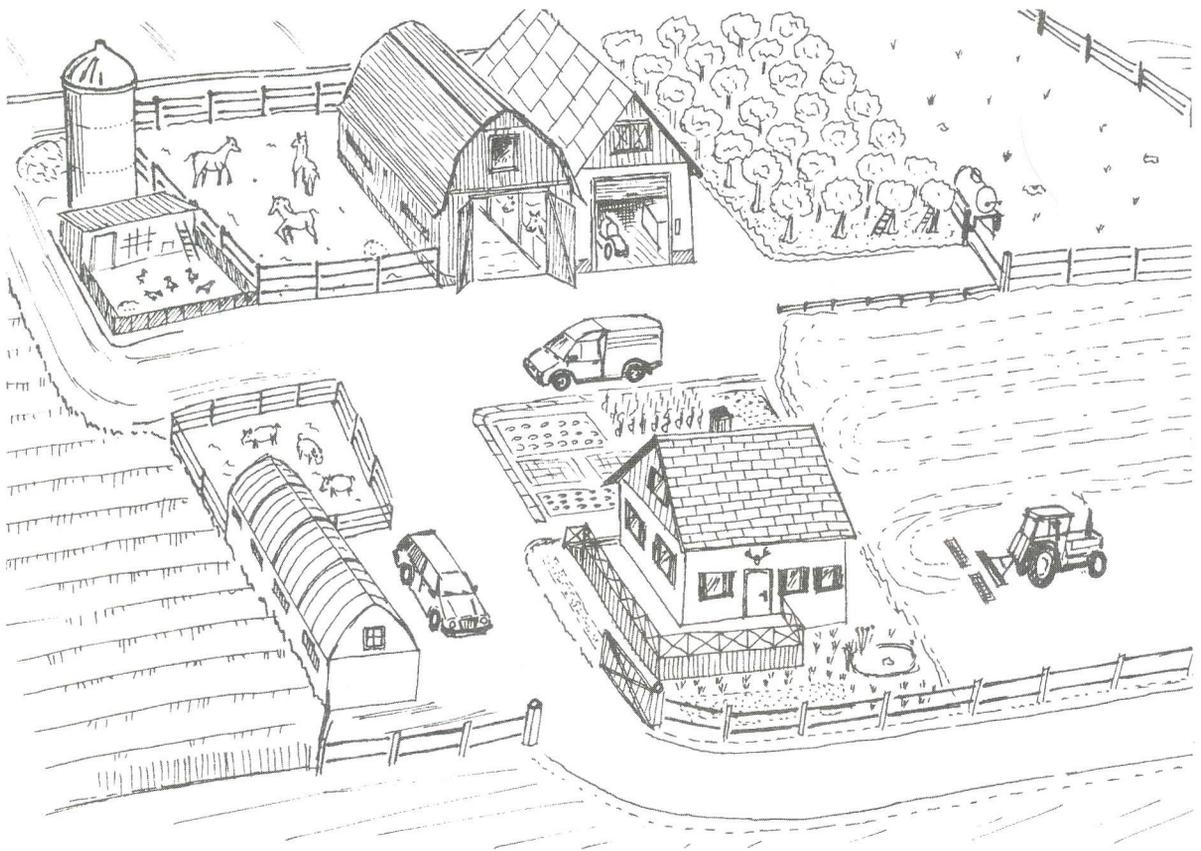
2 Using the following expressions speak about everyday life on a farm.

People on the farm

farmer
landowner
landlord
foreman
tractor-driver
farm-labourer / farm hand
cowboy / cowhand
casual labour
veterinary surgeon / vet
shearer
shepherd

Things to do

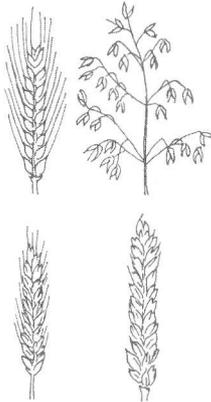
to plough	to graze
to sow	to feed
to reap	to slaughter
to mow	to muck out / clean up
to make hay	to lay eggs
to rake	to collect eggs
to stack	to shear sheep
to store	



Farming

soil	hop garden	allotment	haymaking	Some staple crops	rye	oil-seed rape
earth	vineyard	kitchen garden	haystack		maize / corn	root crops
arable land	vine × grapes	market garden	grain elevator		hops	potato
meadow	wine cellar	standing crops	silo		cattle feed	turnip
cornfield	plot of land	stubble		oats	sugar-beet	

1 What kinds of crops are grown in your country? How are they used in cooking?



2 Read the text opposite and find a word that means:

- to leak down slowly
- to make something unhealthy by introducing harmful substances into it
- financial support from governments
- a law that makes a thing or action illegal
- large shrubs and bushes that line fields throughout Britain
- the removal of soil by wind and water
- the top layer of earth rich in proteins and nutrients
- to remove the water from
- something that can be continued for a long time
- all over Britain

MODERN DEVELOPMENTS

JOIN THE EARTH AND FARMERS' PARTY AND STOP AGRIBUSINESS FROM RUINING OUR COUNTRYSIDE

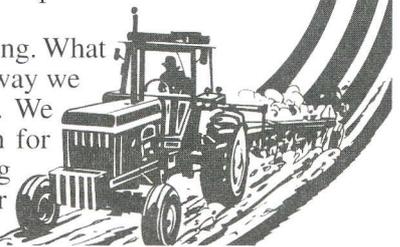
Over the last fifty years, British farming has become increasingly industrialised, run by a small group of powerful corporations and relying on machines and chemicals more than farmers and nature. Our environment and our health are paying the price for agribusiness profits. It's time to put a stop to the destruction of our countryside.

1. The use of chemicals in farming. Too many farms recklessly use dangerous pesticides and fertilisers on their fields. These chemicals often seep down into the groundwater and contaminate nearby rivers and lakes as well as the supply of drinking water. Nitrates from fertilisers are especially destructive, as they cause rapid growth in algae which chokes all other plant and animal life in contaminated streams. We demand a return to the natural system of farming, government subsidies to organic farmers, a ban on the most dangerous chemicals such as DDT and phosphate fertilisers, and strict penalties for farmers who damage the environment.

2. The removal of hedgerows. Hedgerows are a vital part of our ecosystem. They prevent erosion by holding the topsoil down with their roots and protecting fields from the wind, and they provide shelter for the plants, insects and animals which make up our ecosystem. We demand that industrial farms be stopped from removing their hedgerows to make bigger fields.

3. Destruction of wetlands and forests. In their quest for ever larger fields, industrial farms have been draining wetlands and slashing down forests at an alarming rate. Almost 90% of Britain's wetlands have now been drained for use as farmland. This recklessness hurts not only us, but other countries as well, as it deprives migrating birds of their natural resting and feeding grounds. We demand that the government move to protect these sensitive areas.

But these points are just the beginning. What is needed is a complete change in the way we view nature and the world around us. We can no longer afford to take the earth for granted and expect it to keep providing us with healthy food and water no matter how badly we mistreat it. Join us in our fight to make sustainable farming the rule throughout Britain!



Modern Developments

mechanised farming
factory farming
monoculture
collective farming
market gardening
land reform
common agricultural policy (between nations)
General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT)
Common Market (European Union)

government subsidies
overproduction
food mountains
wine lakes
famine
shortage
ecological balance
chemical fertilisers
pesticides
runoff
leaching
organic farming

health foods
cruelty in farming
battery house
battery farming × free range
pellets
complete automation
hormones
steroids
artificial colours
flavourings
pests
parasites

ANIMALS ON AND AROUND THE FARM

1 Look at the pictures and try to name all the animals, using the vocabulary from the box.

2 First work on your own and fill in as many words in the table as you can remember. Then work in small groups. By asking questions try to find out the missing words:

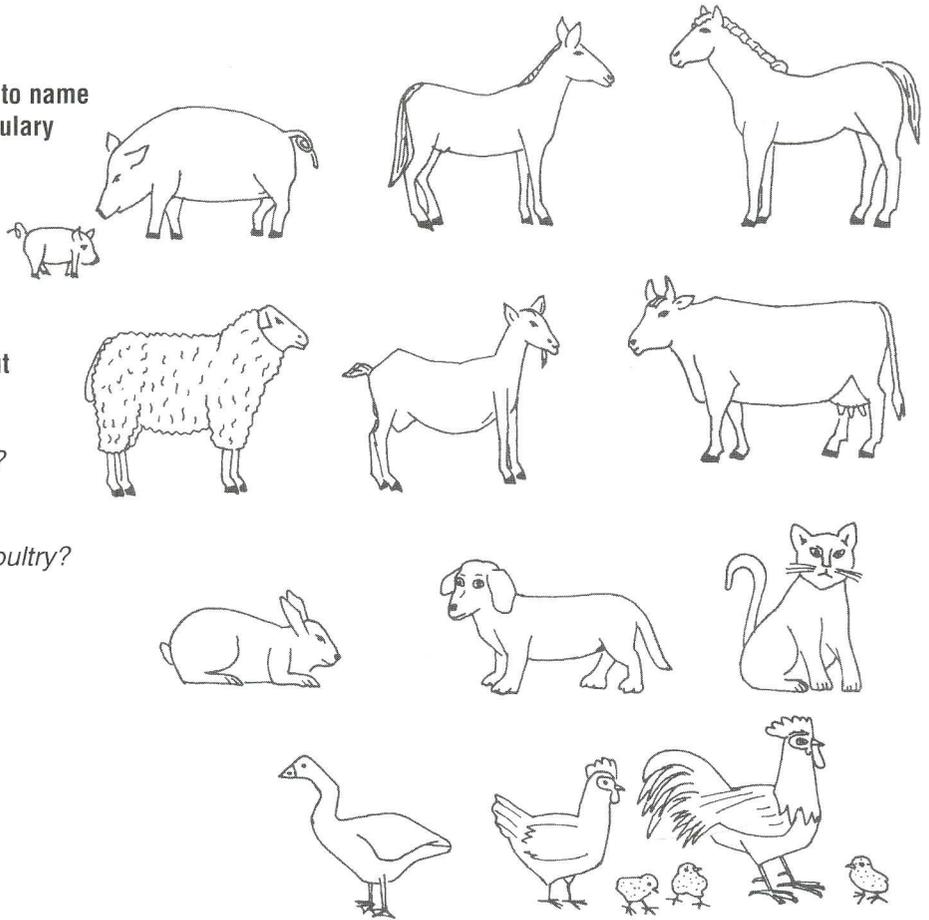
Example:

What do you call male cattle?

What's the English for...?

What's a baby horse called?

Which product is typical of poultry?



Female	Male	Baby	Food products
<i>cow</i>			
	<i>rooster</i>		
		<i>lamb</i>	
			<i>bacon</i>
<i>mare</i>			

Animals on and Around the Farm

cow × bull × calf, *pl.* calves
 heifer × bullock (GB) / steer (US) / ox, *pl.* oxen
 she-cat × tomcat × kitten
 rabbit (in a hutch, for eating, a pet or a wild pest)
 goose, *pl.* geese × gander × gosling
 duck × drake × duckling
 hen × cockerel (GB) / rooster (US) × chicken

pig / hog (US)
 sow × boar × piglet
 mare × stallion × gelding × foal
 bitch / female dog (US) × dog × puppy
 sheep: ewe × ram × lamb
 she-/ nanny-goat × he-/ billy-goat × kid
 watchdog

donkey
 ferret
 pigeon
 fox: vixen × dog-fox
 pheasant
 partridge
 buzzard

THE SOUNDS OF A FARM

1  Match the following verbs with the animals in the table. Note that some animals can have more than one verb.

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| to bleat | to neigh |
| to bray | to purr |
| to cluck | to quack |
| to crow | to squeal |
| to grunt | to yap |
| to hee-haw | to whine |
| to miaow | to whinny |
| to moo | |

2 Think of the sounds the animals make. Fill in the right-hand column and ask your teacher if you need help.

VERB	ANIMAL	SOUND
<i>barks, growls</i>	dog	<i>bow-wow</i>
	cat	
	horse	
	cow	
	pig	
	hens	
	rooster	
	ducks	
	donkey	
	sheep	
	goat	

3 Match the following names of animals with the sounds they make. Some of them may make more than one sound.

- blackbird
- cricket
- bee
- frog
- mouse
- owl
- snake
- hawk
- fly
- sparrow



- buzzes
- chirps
- croaks
- hisses
- hoots
- hums
- sings
- squawks
- squeaks
- twitters

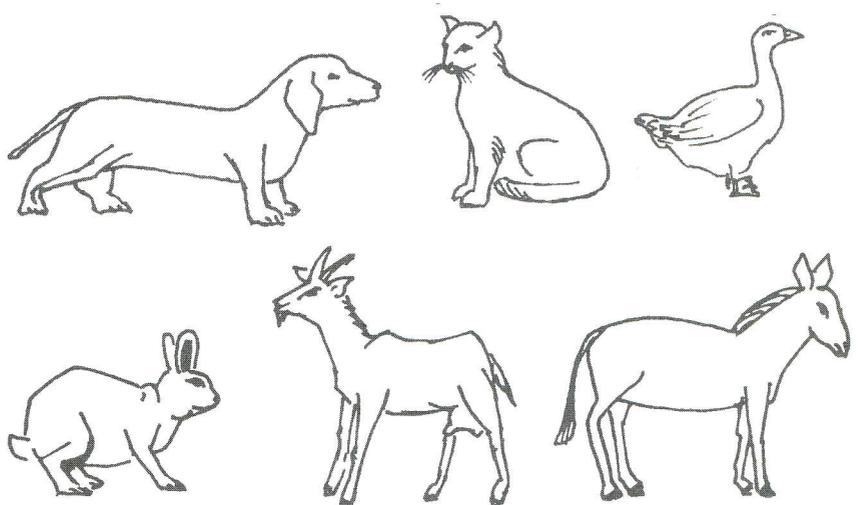
4 Now sing the song!

Old McDonald had a farm
E I E I O
And on this farm he had a dog
E I E I O

With a *bark! bark!* here
And a *bark! bark!* there
Here a *bark!*, there a *bark!*,
everywhere a *bark! bark!*

Old McDonald had a farm
E I E I O

And on this farm he had a cat
E I E I O
etc.



FARMING – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

II Fill in the gaps, using one answer – a, – b, – c or – d.

- 1 Horses were among the last species of _____ to be domesticated.
 - a cattle
 - b pellets
 - c studs
 - d livestock
- 2 A mature male horse is called a _____, or, if used for breeding, a stud; mature females are mares. A castrated _____ is called a gelding.
 - a champion
 - b pony
 - c stallion
 - d paddock
- 3 Young horses (foals) may be known as _____ (males) and fillies (females).
 - a colts
 - b puppies
 - c calves
 - d dray horses
- 4 To enclose land was to put a _____ or fence around a portion of this open land and thus prevent the exercise of common grazing and other rights over it.
 - a hedge
 - b coop
 - c manor
 - d sty
- 5 They followed the coastline southward until they reached a heavily wooded region, perhaps some part of the Gulf of St. Lawrence shore, and settled there to engage in _____, hunting, and fishing.
 - a muckspreading
 - b top-dressing
 - c haymaking
 - d scattering

II Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- 6 _____ the science or art of cultivating the soil, growing and harvesting crops, and raising livestock.
- 7 _____ mate of a cockerel/rooster
- 8 _____ young goat
- 9 _____ an establishment for the sale or distribution chiefly of milk and milk products
- 10 _____ two plants used for making beer
- 11 _____ a planting of grapevines
- 12 _____ a white root crop grown for sugar
- 13 _____ to cut the hair from sheep

III Fill in the right forms of verbs.

The two most significant changes in the pattern of agricultural development since the end of World War II have been the degree to which specialization **14** _____ (adopt) and the increased scale of farm enterprises. Large numbers of beef cattle **15** _____ (raise) in enclosures and **16** _____ (to feed) carefully **17** _____ (balance) rations by automatic equipment. Pigs by the thousands and poultry by the tens of thousands are housed in special buildings with **18** _____ (control) environments and **19** _____ (feed) automatically with complex rations. Dairy herds of up to 1,000 cows are machine-milked in **20** _____ (milk) parlours, and the cows are then individually **21** _____ (identify) and fed appropriate rations by complex electronic equipment. The milk **22** _____ (pass) directly from the cow into refrigerated bulk milk tanks and is ready for immediate shipment.

IV In the following metaphors, names of domestic and farm animals are used; sometimes they change into adjectives or verbs. Some of them are offensive. Decide which belongs where.

- | | | | | |
|--|------|-----|-------|-------|
| | DOG | CAT | HOUND | BITCH |
| | BULL | PIG | SWINE | SHEEP |
- 23 He gave them a _____ish grin and admitted it had all been a bad joke.
 - 24 They were constantly _____ed by photographers; they never had a moment to themselves.
 - 25 You could hardly call him a male chauvinist _____, given all the faith he expresses in women and their abilities.
 - 26 Everybody knew that those foreign exchange fat _____s were making a fortune at the expense of others. (*showing disapproval*)
 - 27 I know he has to make a living but there's no point in having a _____-eat-_____attitude.
 - 28 Life's a _____ and then you die. (*song*)
 - 29 It was a _____ of a job – it took us hours longer than we expected.
 - 30 In a _____ market many people buy shares and values go up.

FARMING – AND MORE PRACTICE...

I Fill in the gaps, using one answer – a, – b, – c or –d.

- _____ are named according to their purpose, as hog _____, dairy _____, tobacco _____, and tractor _____.
a stocks
b barns
c balers
d cages
- Most of the _____ grown in the world is used for animal feed, but a special pure _____ is the source of malt for beer production. It is also used in the manufacture of vinegar, malt extract, some milk-type beverages, and certain breakfast foods.
a barley
b oats
c hops
d corn
- Of the thousands of varieties of _____ known, the most important are *Triticum aestivum*, used to make bread; *T. durum*, used in making pasta such as spaghetti and macaroni; and *T. compactum*, or club _____, a softer type, used for cakes, crackers, cookies, pastries, and family flours.
a sugar
b ice
c wheat
d maize
- _____ are relatively easy to raise in confinement and can be slaughtered with a minimum of equipment because of their size and the many ways in which their carcasses can be processed into food and fat. They are also quite efficient in converting feed to food.
a sheep
b bulls
c pigs
d fowl
- As early as 1936, more than 6,000,000 _____ and sheep were artificially inseminated in the Soviet Union.
a bullocks
b livestock
c cattle
d buzzards

II Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- _____ : an implement used for mowing and composed of a long curving blade fastened at an angle to a long handle
- _____ : birds with a stout body, rather short legs, and smooth and compact plumage; they exist in domestication and in the feral state in cities and towns throughout most of the world
- _____ : domesticated birds kept for eggs or meat
- _____ : an implement used to cut, lift, and turn over soil especially in preparing a seedbed
- _____ : an acute virus disease usually transmitted through the bite of an infected animal and typically characterized by increased salivation, abnormal behaviour, and eventual paralysis and death
- _____ : a planting of fruit trees, nut trees, or sugar maples; also: the trees of such a planting
- _____ : soft moist farmyard manure
- _____ : a young cow; especially one that has not had a calf

III Fill in the gaps with suitable words.

In organic farming, weeds are controlled by intensive cultivation of the soil by specialized machinery; by mulching, where bulky organic material such as hay, **14 s**_____, wood chips, or leaf mold is layered deeply between **15 p**_____ rows and in pathways (mulching also moderates **16 s**_____ temperatures and greatly reduces the need for irrigation). In place of chemical **17 f**_____, organic farming uses massive amounts of organic matter to provide nutrients for **18 c**_____ – much as a forest "feeds" itself with dead trees, fallen **19 l**_____, and the remains of animals and **20 i**_____. Manure from animals is also used, as are fish wastes, seaweed, and **21 c**_____, a rich, humuslike material created when **22 o**_____ material is deliberately allowed to decompose.

IV In the following metaphors, names of domestic and farm animals are used; sometimes they change into adjectives or verbs (some of them are offensive). Decide which belongs where.

WATCHDOG DOG HORSE
HOG SHEEP PIG
TURKEY SWINE CHICKEN

- Don't _____ around, please; this is a serious issue.
- No decent people turned up at the meeting, just a bunch of racist _____. (*showing disapproval*)
- Although I trained for weeks for my first parachute jump, I _____ed out at the last moment. I was just too scared to do it.
- Alien 3 was a complete _____; what a disaster of a film!
- Look at them! Everyone waiting for someone else to be the first to move. Stupid _____!
- Since the financial scandals in the government, a _____ committee has been set up to keep an eye on party contributions.
- "...and there's me with stomach trouble and the bus breaks down. The whole holiday was _____ed by bad luck."
- Hey! Don't _____ all the ice-cream! Leave some for me!

CLIMATE

TALKING ABOUT THE WEATHER

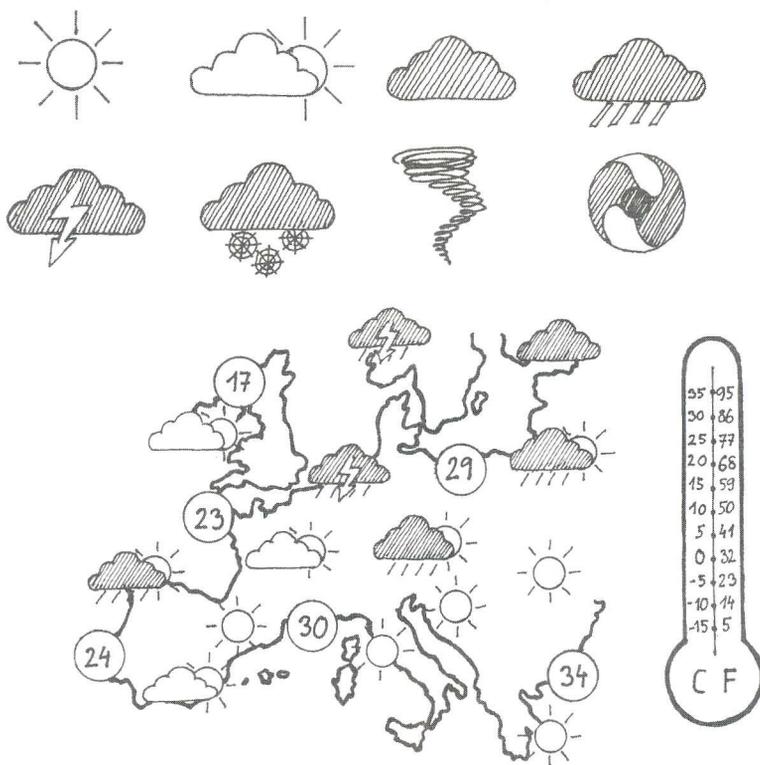
N. B. Weather talk is part of the British "Hello" – a simple "nice", "lovely" or "terrible, isn't it" is enough to satisfy most needs in non-technical company. People who fly, climb, ski, fish or do watersports are, however, more serious about it.

1 What do the following symbols on a weather map mean?

2 In small groups, look at the weather map of Europe and write the weather forecast for tomorrow.

Here is an example:

Here's the weather forecast for tomorrow. It'll be hot and sultry throughout most of southern Europe, with temperatures from the low to mid-thirties. It'll be partly cloudy in Spain, with some scattered showers in the north. Partly cloudy also in most of France and Great Britain, with temperatures going down to the low twenties and even as low as 17 degrees in Scotland. Germany and central Europe will experience scattered showers and temperatures in the high twenties, so it should be pretty humid out there. In the north of Europe, we're expecting steady rain as well as scattered thunderstorms, with temperatures in the high tens. And that's the weather for tomorrow. Thanks for tuning in, and have a nice day.



3 Practise saying the weather forecast using the map on the right.

Talking about the Weather

Weather forecast

temperatures from...to
reaching /
going down × up to
around
in the high × low...s
low lying × hilly areas
prolonged sunshine
scattered showers ×
steady rain
thunderstorms
light to moderate winds

Personal reactions

beautiful / lovely / nice
ghastly / lousy / horrible
cold / freezing
hot / boiling / scorching

General description

fair
bright and sunny
windy
cloudy / overcast
rainy
misty × foggy × smoggy

tropical
temperate
oceanic
continental
insular / island
moist × humid
dry / arid
extreme
(in)hospitable
settled
changeable
unpredictable

Starting a conversation

Nice / Horrible weather we're
having.
Bad weather, isn't it?
Lousy weather, huh?
What a downpour!
Lovely weather for ducks.
Hot / Cold enough for you? (ironic)
It's not the heat, it's the humidity.

4 Match the following sentences to the appropriate reactions and finish them.

“What’s it like out?”

“I think it’s going to clear up / turn out fine.”

“Yesterday was a scorcher.”

“We’re in for rain (a storm).”

“There’s not a cloud in the sky.”

“Lovely day, isn’t it?”

“A bit hot and sticky for me.”

“Looks like rain.”



“It’s not the heat, it’s the...”

“Yes, it’s going...”

“It was over 30 ...”

“Yes, indeed, nice weather we’re...”

“It’s bright and ...”

“The sun is ...”

“It’s raining, windy ...”

“Horrible weather we’re ...”

5 Weather map activity.

Practise your US geography. Below are 20 of the US largest cities. Dots are found on the map locating each of the cities. See how many cities you can identify.

In groups, talk about what the weather is like in some of these cities throughout the year. In which region would you expect snow in winter?

Then put the symbols from the preceding page onto the map and tell someone the weather forecast.

Example:

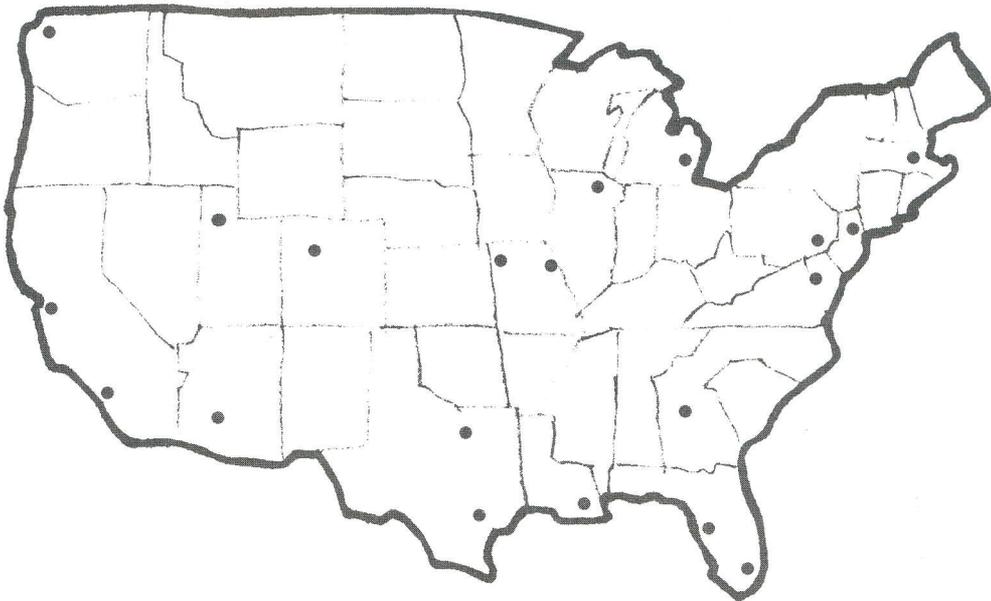
This is the weather forecast for the South...

It will...

The weather will...

A cyclone will move from ... towards ... and along the way it will push warm air in our direction.

Night lows will be between ... and ...



Atlanta
Boston
Chicago
Dallas
Denver

Detroit
Houston
Kansas City
Los Angeles
Miami

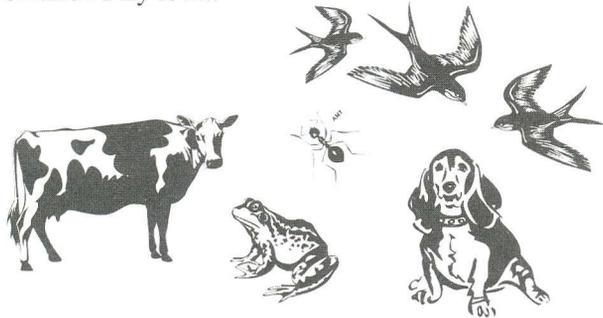
New Orleans
New York
Philadelphia
Phoenix
Salt Lake City

San Francisco
Seattle
St. Louis
Tampa
Washington, D.C.

RAINY WEATHER

1 Many cultures have traditional and sometimes superstitious ways of telling if it is going to start raining soon. Look at the list below and say whether these are used in your country. How accurate are they? Can you add any others to the list?

- Ants move to higher ground.
- A halo or circle can be seen around the moon.
- Frogs start croaking.
- People with “trick knees” start to feel a stiffness in their joints.
- Cows lie down.
- Swallows fly low...



2 Put the following ways of talking about rain in order, from lightest rain to heaviest. Translate them into your own language.

- It's pouring (with rain).
- It's drizzling.
- It's only a few drops.
- Looks like there'll be steady rain through most of the week.
- It's misty out.
- There are some scattered showers predicted for today.



3 Rainy weather can often make people sad or reflective, and they use the weather to describe how they feel. Look at the following expressions and match them to their meanings below, then use them in a short dialogue or story.

- 1 I'm feeling a bit under the weather today.
 - 2 I'll have to take a rain check on dinner tonight.
 - 3 I've been saving this for a rainy day.
 - 4 It never rains, but it pours.
 - 5 I'll do it, come rain or shine.
 - 6 Nice / Lovely weather for ducks.
 - 7 Everything will be as right as rain again.
- a Bad things don't happen a few at a time.
 - b Sick or not well.
 - c Reschedule for a better time.
 - d Reserve something for some future need.
 - e I can't do it now, I'll certainly do it later, regardless of the situation.
 - f Very wet.
 - g As it should be.

4 Use the idioms from exercise 3 in the following sentences.

- a If any of the kids felt a little _____, they were given a medical examination at bed time.
- b Thanks for the invitation, but I'll have to _____ on it.
- c Now that you've won the money, don't spend everything at once. _____.
- d First I had my wallet stolen, then I lost my passport – _____!
- e I'll give you an injection and you'll be _____ in a few minutes.
- f My grandfather gets up at five o'clock in the morning, _____.

Rainy Weather

raindrop
drizzle
it's raining hard / heavily
it's pouring (with-GB) rain
(rain)storm
thunderstorm
(clap of) thunder
(flash of) lightning
forked lightning
sheet lightning

hail
squall
steady rain
rainbow
mist × fog × haze × smog
gap in the clouds
showers and sunny intervals
April showers
to be / get soaked to the skin
to be / get wringing / sopping wet / saturated
wet through

COLD WEATHER

Have a look at the following word map and try to add more words to it. In pairs compare your charts and talk about them. Try to use some of the vocabulary from the box below.

Example:

Cold weather can be quite dangerous because...

I like cold weather because I can go ...-ing.

People should / shouldn't...



Cold Weather

chilly
 frosty
 ground frost
 hoar frost
 icicle
 black ice
 a flurry of snow
 snowflake
 snowstorm
 blizzard
 3 inches of snow in 24 hours
 17 degrees below zero
 freezing point (0°C / 32°F)
 subzero temperatures
 to salt and grit the roads
 snowfall
 snowplough
 snowdrift

powdery snow
 packed snow
 crisp snow
 sleet
 melting / thawing
 meltwater (in swollen rivers)
 spring melt / thaw
 slush
 rivers in spate (GB)
 flash flooding (US)
 a cold snap / a cold spell
 burst pipes
 to shiver
 chattering teeth
 frozen to the bone
 to slip over
 to skid
 to slide (into)

HOT WEATHER

1 Fill the gaps in the text with the correct verb.

replenish
dumped
had
parched
went along
tore
blew
lashed
institute
ripped
reaching
plaguing

2 Find a word that means:

- 1 a prolonged period of abnormally hot weather
- 2 flooded
- 3 a sudden overflowing or influx of water beyond its normal confines, especially over land; an inundation
- 4 extremely and uncomfortably hot
- 5 large natural or artificial lakes used as a source of water supply
- 6 limiting (persons or provisions) to a fixed amount
- 7 the continuous absence of rain; dry weather

GOING OUT WITH A BANG

It **1** _____ to end sometime. And yesterday the heatwave that has been **2** _____ most of England for the last three weeks went out with a bang.

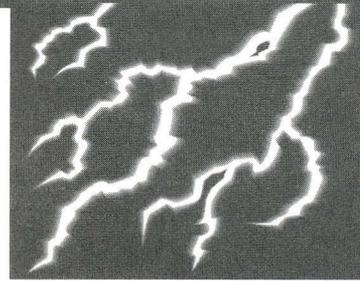
Thunderstorms and lightning **3** _____ the South, forcing families to flee their homes as emergency services were overwhelmed with calls of fires and floods.

The storm **4** _____ across the Channel early yesterday morning, bringing with it high winds, lightning, and rain. Lots and lots of rain. Reports from Essex say that the storm **5** _____ almost four inches of rain on the country, causing heavy flooding throughout the area.

But most of the damage done by the storm was caused by lightning. In London, an end-of-terrace council house was **6** _____ apart when it was struck by lightning, and in Hampshire a thunderbolt **7** _____ a 15 ft hole in the roof of a block of flats. Emergency services were on full alert throughout the day.

The storm follows three weeks of blistering weather that have **8** _____ the countryside and caused serious problems in the cities. With temperatures regularly **9** _____ the mid- to high-thirties, old-age pensioners and people with heart conditions were warned to stay out of the sun during the hottest parts of the day.

Meanwhile, reservoirs were at all-time lows as the lack of rainfall that **10** _____ with the heatwave caused further speculation about whether the authorities would have to **11** _____ water rationing programs to deal with the drought. Authorities now say the heavy rainfall has helped to **12** _____ the water supplies, and no rationing will be needed.



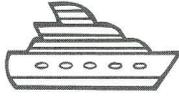
Hot Weather

heat haze
sultry / close / humid
cloudless sky / clear sky
the sun's blazing / beating down / boiling (US)
glare
heat wave
in the shade
to keep to the shadows

shimmering air
mirage / mirror effect on roads
melting tarmac
dust
drought
cracked earth
suntan × sunburn × heat-stroke

WEATHER IN GENERAL

1 What would be the perfect weather conditions for the occasions and activities on the right? What would be the worst conditions for them?



a ski trip
a seaside holiday
a walk in the mountains
Christmas Eve in Europe
New Year's Day in Australia
sightseeing in a city
crossing the Channel
going fishing
flying

2 Match the news reports on the right to the natural disasters they are describing.

hurricane
flood
tornado
landslide
drought
avalanche

3 Write similar descriptions of the following natural disasters and read them out to your classmates.

earthquake
erupting volcano
tidal wave / tsunami
famine
epidemic

4 Which of these natural disasters are possible threats in your country? Tell a partner about a natural disaster that once struck your country.

a Despite efforts by local inhabitants to stem the rise of the river, the North River yesterday broke its banks and spilled into several small towns. Rescuers have been working round the clock to evacuate...

b Local reservoirs are at an all-time low, and citizens in the area have been told to refrain from watering their lawns or gardens. Penalties of up to \$100 have been set for anyone who...

c Two skiers were killed and three others trapped for three hours in the latest catastrophe to hit the Ridgeville Ski Resort this year. Rescuers tried...

d Although it lasted for only thirty minutes, the twister managed to cause several million dollars worth of damage, destroying a number of houses and downing power lines...

e This small town was caught completely unprepared for the mass of dirt and mud that flowed down off the mountains early this morning, burying two houses and a local junior school...

f Residents across Florida have been preparing for this latest storm, which has been working its way up from the Caribbean and is expected to touch down somewhere near Miami at 4:00 p.m. today. Although many people have left, some still say...

5 What kinds of damage do these natural disasters cause? What steps can be taken to protect communities from them?

ATMOSPHERE

1  Everybody hears about global warming and the greenhouse effect, but how much do you really know about it? Take this test and see how well you do!

Then listen to the radio programme on global warming and check your answers.

2 What do you think would happen if for some reason the earth's temperature suddenly increased? What things would change? What things would stay the same?

3 In small groups, discuss what you can do as individuals to prevent global warming. Make a list of suggestions using the following prompts.

unleaded petrol
cycling to work
bottle bank
recycled paper
phosphate-free detergents
CFCs
energy-saving bulbs
plastic bottles and bags
catalytic converter
public transport

TEST YOUR KNOWLEDGE OF GLOBAL WARMING

- 1 True or false: The greenhouse effect has always posed a serious threat to life on Earth.
- 2 Which of these is not a greenhouse gas caused by industry?
 - a carbon dioxide
 - b CFCs
 - c nitrous oxide
 - d oxygen
- 3 True or false: Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) have been banned all over the world because they break down the ozone layer and contribute to global warming.
- 4 Global warming is such a problem that it might cause
 - a a rise of one or two degrees over the next half-century.
 - b large changes in temperature from year to year.
 - c a steady rise in temperature of two degrees per year.
 - d the world to become uninhabitable within two hundred years.
- 5 True or false: Global warming is an established fact that is generally agreed upon within the scientific community.
- 6 Which of these is not a cause of global warming?
 - a The clear-cutting of the rain forests in Central America and other places.
 - b Radioactivity released into the atmosphere by nuclear testing, waste and power plants.
 - c The burning of fossil fuels as an energy source.
 - d The emission of other greenhouse gases by factories.

Atmosphere

the earth / planet earth / globe
northern × southern hemisphere
atmosphere
ozone layer
ionosphere
stratosphere
cosmic radiation
filtration
reflection
cycle of the moon × seasons
new moon
full moon
half moon

wax × wane
equinox
equinoctial storms
gravity
equatorial convection current
oceanic currents (hot and cold)
melting polar icecaps
tropical rain forests
fossil fuel
carbon dioxide (CO₂) build-up
global warming
greenhouse effect
rising sea levels

ultraviolet radiation
skin cancer
atmospheric pollution
sulphur dioxide (SO₂)
nitrous oxides
acid rain
aerosols
refrigerants / CFCs
(chlorofluorocarbons)
el niño

CLIMATE – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Fill in the appropriate terms.

At sea and along adjacent coastal areas, tropical cyclones (1 h _____, typhoons, and willy-willies) can cause great damage through excessive 2 r _____ and 3 f _____, winds, and wave action to ships, buildings, trees, crops, roads, and railways, and they may interrupt air service and communications. Heavy 4 s _____ and icy conditions can impede transportation and increase the frequency of accidents. The long absence of rainfall, by contrast, can cause 5 d _____ and severe dust 6 s _____ when winds blow over parched farmland, as with the “dustbowl” conditions of the U.S. plains states in the 1930s.

Where do the following metaphorical expressions belong?

A HAIL OF / A STORM OF, WET, UNDER A CLOUD, SNOWED UNDER, FROSTY, A FOG OF, LIGHTNING, TEMPESTUOUS, THE CALM BEFORE THE STORM

- 7 There has been _____ criticism (protest, outrage) following the publication of the book.
- 8 She took the news quietly. Was she happy that he was leaving, or was this just _____?
- 9 Politicians sneaked out through a side door to avoid _____ abuse.
- 10 Have a drink to _____ your whistle!
- 11 No-one believed his reason for resigning, so he left the job _____ and has found it difficult to find another one.
- 12 I am constantly _____ with work: there's simply too much of it and not enough time.
- 13 Their relationship can be described as _____ – they're always fighting.
- 14 They were very unwelcome, and a _____ reception was all they received.
- 15 The news was bad, and _____ depression came down on everyone. We were helpless.
- 16 Driving on today's roads requires _____ reflexes.

Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- 17 _____ a very strong wind, capable of damaging buildings and trees
- 18 _____ a hanging pointed piece of ice, formed by the freezing of dripping water
- 19 _____ forms when rapid temperature change condenses water from the atmosphere
- 20 _____ a bank of snow heaped up by the action of the wind
- 21 _____ change to a liquid condition by heat
- 22 _____ covered with cloud; dull and gloomy

Fill the gaps.

- 23 _____ weather we're having.
 - a Nice
 - b Good
 - c Wrong
 - d Horrible
- 24 In the teeth of the _____.
 - a cloud
 - b gale
 - c breeze
 - d flood
- 25 During the _____, the soil was as dry as a bone.
 - a drought
 - b equinox
 - c full moon
 - d ground frost
- 26 The climate is moister here; it's not the heat, it's the _____.
 - a humidity
 - b hot
 - c hail
 - d scorcher
- 27 It never _____ but it pours.
 - a helps
 - b clears
 - c rains
 - d rises
- 28 As the moon waxes and _____, so the height of the tide changes.
 - a wastes
 - b winds
 - c wands
 - d wanes
- 29 Red _____ at night, shepherd's delight. Red _____ in the morning, shepherd's warning.
 - a squall
 - b sky
 - c rainbow
 - d lightning
- 30 Mad dogs and Englishman go out in the noonday _____.
 - a light
 - b suntan
 - c sun
 - d weather

CLIMATE – AND MORE PRACTICE...

I Fill in the appropriate terms.

Weather has a tremendous influence on human settlement patterns, food production, and personal comfort. Extremes of temperature and humidity cause discomfort and may lead to the transmission of disease; heavy **1 r**_____ can cause **2 f**_____, displacing people and interrupting economic activities; **3 t**_____, tornadoes, **4 h**_____, and **5 s**_____ storms may damage or destroy crops, buildings, and transportation routes and vehicles. **6 S**_____ may even kill or injure people and livestock.

II Where do the following metaphorical expressions belong?

THUNDERED, STORMED, WHIRLWIND, THE WINDS OF, HAZY, THE MISTS OF, FOGGIEST, CLOUDED, AVALANCHE, SUNNY

- 7 Not everything is going well. Producers are well aware that in terms of sales, the outlook is far from _____.
- 8 The horses _____ across the valley floor.
- 9 When the European colonists left Africa, the _____ change started to blow.
- 10 Nothing came back clearly. She had a very _____ impression (memory, recollection) of what had happened.
- 11 After only two weeks of a _____ romance they announced their engagement and were married soon after.
- 12 Their names are lost in _____ history, but the legacy of those first settlers lives on.
- 13 We were unprepared for the _____ of mail that came in after the programme; it took months to answer.
- 14 He _____ off to the bathroom and slammed the door behind him.
- 15 I would have liked to have helped but I did not have the _____ idea what he was asking for.
- 16 His face suddenly _____ with disappointment.

III Supply the right words according to the definitions.

- 17 _____ a gentle wind
- 18 _____ very fine rain
- 19 _____ a flash of bright light produced by an electric discharge between clouds or between clouds and the ground
- 20 _____ cannot be predicted
- 21 _____ (of the atmosphere or the weather) hot or oppressive; close
- 22 _____ a very hot day

IV Fill the gaps.

- 23 April _____ bring May flowers.
a swallows
b showers
c colours
d rains
- 24 _____ before seven, rain before eleven.
a Son
b Sleet
c Snow
d Sun
- 25 When swallows fly low, skimming land and water, expect rainy _____.
a year
b wind
c luck
d weather
- 26 We're in _____ rain (a storm).
a for
b from
c forward
d front of
- 27 What a _____!
a snowstorm
b blizzard
c humid
d smoggy
- 28 It's _____ weather for ducks.
a lovely
b badly
c beloved
d winding
- 29 There's not a cloud _____ the sky.
a at
b on
c in
d over
- 30 Every _____ has a silver lining.
a whirlwind
b cloud
c cold snap
d black ice

NATURE

IN THE WILD

1 Read the following information about national parks in the United States. Could any of these be describing a place in your country?

2 In which of these parks would you expect to find the following animals?

ducks coyote egrets
kangaroo rats
horned lizard deer
alligator cougar
bighorn sheep grizzly bear
bald eagle gray wolf
rattlesnakes water
moccasins wild turkey
beaver lizards

Yosemite National Park

Yosemite National Park is located in central California, bordering on the Sierra Nevada mountain range. Its most spectacular feature is the Yosemite Valley, a long gorge carved by glaciers during the Ice Age which contains several splendid waterfalls and cascades. The park contains several groves of ancient sequoia trees. Other forests of pine, fir, and cedar give way to alpine meadows at higher elevations.

Everglades National Park

Everglades National Park in southern Florida is the largest subtropical wilderness and marshland in the United States. Because it contains both freshwater and saltwater areas, its vegetation is lush and diverse. The forest is host to numerous species of palm, cypress, live oak and pine trees. Wild flowers, including orchids and water lilies, also abound in the area. The park has many marked hiking trails and boardwalks to provide easier access to the marshes, as well as five canoe trails.

Death Valley

Death Valley, which got its name from the large number of gold-seekers who died trying to cross it in the 1849 Gold Rush, is the hottest place in the United States. Despite this, the 7,800-square-kilometer desert basin is by no means lifeless. The mountains of the Panamint Range, which borders the desert, play host to thousand-year-old bristlecone pine trees which cling to the rocky slopes. Within the basin itself, a large number of cacti can be found, and scattered springs create marshy oases. Only the desert's lowest areas, which consist of sandy dunes and salt plains, are completely devoid of vegetation.



3 Write a short description of an area in your country that remains a wilderness. Find the correct English names of the main animals and plants. The lists on the following pages are designed to help you.

4 Look at the animals below and say which of them move in groups and which are solitary.

If they do live in groups, what do we call the groups?

What are they called when they are babies?

Are they predators, scavengers, or herbivores?

(Predators hunt; carnivores just eat meat; scavengers are carnivores, but usually eat what predators have killed – e.g. vultures; omnivores eat everything; herbivores eat plants.)

dogs groups - pack - puppy - predator

lions _____

pigs _____

horses _____

ducks _____

bald eagles _____

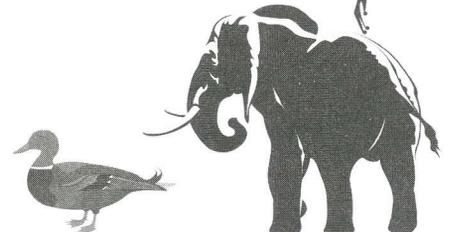
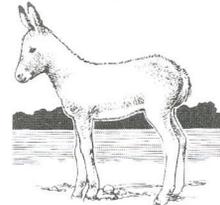
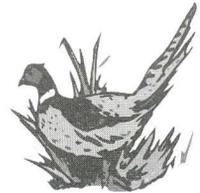
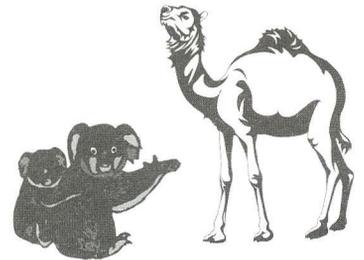
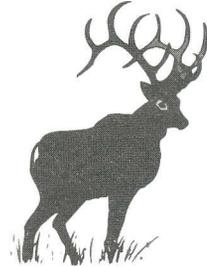
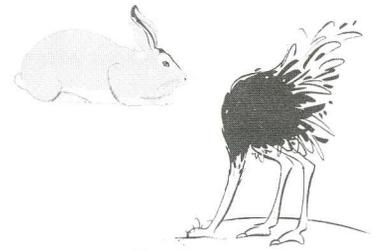
spiders _____

wolves _____

snakes _____

vultures _____

hyenas _____



5 List the names of the animals in the pictures in the table and decide which category they belong to.

ANIMAL	PET	FOOD	HUNT	WILD	WORK
ducks		✓	✓	✓	

Classification of Animals

(N.B. American terms for animals are sometimes different.)

Mammals keep their body temperature constant (they are warm-blooded), suckle their young, and are usually covered in hair. In general, a mammal's "hands" are known as paws, often containing sharp

Some typical wild mammals (the brackets contain male, female, young, and the special name of the home, if any, in that order)

- mouse
- rat
- rabbit (buck, doe, starter, burrow or warren)
- hare (buck, doe, leveret, form); jackrabbit
- squirrel (nest is a drey)
- beaver (lives in a lodge on a dam)
- hamster
- marmot
- mole (makes molehills / moleheaps)
- hedgehog
- bat
- badger (boar, sow, cub, sett)
- stoat
- weasel
- polecat
- marten
- fox (dog-fox, vixen, cub, earth)
- otter (dog-, bitch-, kit, holt)
- wolf, *pl.* wolves (young are cubs)
- wildcat (tom, she-cat, kittens)
- lynx
- red deer
- roe deer
- fallow deer
- chamois
- moose

All deer males are bucks, females are does, and young are fawns.

- bear (young are cubs)
- mouflon (ram, ewe, lamb)
- bison (bull, cow, calf)
- wild pig (boar, sow, piglets)



- Birds**
- nightingale
- blackbird
- thrush
- tit
- robin
- starling
- sparrow
- swallow
- swift
- martin
- finch
- stork
- cardinal



Around fields and copses

- crow
- rook
- jackdaw
- magpie
- pigeon × dove
- buzzard
- kite
- hawk
- falcon
- partridge
- pheasant
- quail
- kestrel
- owl
- lark
- hoopoe
- cuckoo
- woodpecker
- tree-creeper
- nuthatch
- jay



Waterside

- heron
- egret
- kingfisher
- gull
- tern
- duck
- goose, *pl.* geese
- coot
- cormorant
- swan
- wagtail



In the mountains

- raven
- eagle
- vulture
- redstart

claws, unless it has hooves, like a cow or deer. Its covering is known as its fur, pelt or coat. It has forelegs, hind legs and (usually) a tail. Cows have horns on their heads; deer have antlers.

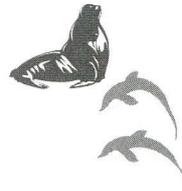
Reptiles are cold-blooded. They are covered in scales, and hatch from eggs, which they lay on land.

- snake
- grass snake
- adder or viper
- asp
- lizards (including slow-worm, a legless lizard)



Some mammals are adapted for life at sea

- seal
- sea-lion
- walrus
- dolphin
- porpoise
- whale



Amphibians are cold-blooded, lay eggs, and pass through several changes of form in water before they become adult, when they can venture onto land.

- frog (eggs are spawn, young are tadpoles)
- toad
- newt
- salamander



Fishes are cold-blooded, covered in scales, and "breathe" water using gills. Most of them have fins.

- In fresh water**
- sturgeon (eggs are caviar)
- salmon
- trout
- pike
- perch
- zander / pikeperch
- eel
- catfish (wels)
- asp
- carp
- roach
- tench
- bream



In salt water

- mackerel
- tuna
- herring



- sardine
- cod
- hake
- bass
- shark
- skate × ray

Shellfish

- shrimp
- prawn
- crab
- lobster
- octopus
- squid
- cockle
- mussel
- oyster
- scallop



Invertebrates are creatures without backbones. They include insects (six legs), spiders (eight legs), and millions of various 'creepy-crawlies'.

- butterfly
- caterpillar
- fly
- moth
- bee
- bumblebee
- ladybird
- mosquito / midge
- wasp
- hornet
- ant
- locust
- cricket
- centipede
- spiders
- black widow
- tarantula
- daddy-long-legs
- slugs and snails
- earthworm
- vermin
- lice
- fleas
- ticks
- cockroaches



THE COUNTRYSIDE

1 Fill in the missing words into the spaces in the text on the right, using the expressions below.

caves and caverns

streams

forests

current

stalactites

cliffs

mouth

meadows

beaches

low tide

source

stalagmites

white water rapids

creek

turns

reservoir

offshore

range of hills

2 If someone loved fishing and seafood, where would s/he be able to gather, trap or catch the following creatures? Match the catch to the place and the equipment on the next page.

FOOD FOR (NEARLY) FREE

Located on the beautiful Northern Coast, Badger Point is every nature-lover's dream holiday destination. The coastline here varies between rocky **1**_____ and sandy **2**_____, both of which are spotted with campsites and lodges. The rocky bottom of Badger Point Bay forms one of the largest systems of tide-pools in the country, and at **3**_____ an incredible variety of anemones, crabs, and other marine life gets trapped in its pockets until the tide **4**_____ again. Just a half-mile **5**_____ lies Badger Island, a haven for marine birds and especially seals.

The Badger River, which empties into Badger Point Bay, has its **6**_____ over two hundred miles away. As it passes through the mountains, it is fed by many **7**_____ and in some places has some exciting **8**_____. At the river's **9**_____, however, the **10**_____ is smooth and even, making it perfect for canoeing or kayaking.

A few miles inland, a **11**_____ rises out of the rolling **12**_____. Within these hills many **13**_____ can be found, filled with **14**_____, **15**_____ and other interesting rock formations. Beyond the hills lies the **16**_____, which was created when Badger **17**_____ was dammed fifty years ago. Surrounding the entire area are lush pine and oak **18**_____.

There is also a three-star hotel on the banks of the lake. So whether you've come to camp, spend a weekend in a lodge, or relax in the luxury of a hotel, Badger Point is the place for you!

mussels
mackerel
trout
salmon
carp
shrimps
cockles / clams (US)
edible crabs
crayfish



PLACE

- 1 Hanging in great bunches from the harbour walls and rocks between the tides.
- 2 Living in the shallow water just below low tide.
- 3 Behind the seaweed in the tide pools, in the rocks around the harbour wall, in deep, rocky water.
- 4 In fresh water, usually still rather than running – the reservoir would be best.
- 5 In fast-running, clean fresh water, or in the estuary.
- 6 Best in fast, clear water, but also stocked in still water like the reservoir.
- 7 Whole beds of them buried in the sand between the tides.
- 8 Only in the cleanest fresh water, most easily caught in small streams.
- 9 In large shoals, often quite close to the shore.

EQUIPMENT

- a a stick and quick reflexes, or a baited, basket-like pot set from a boat
- b rod, line and lots of fishing tackle; sweetcorn or potatoes for bait
- c a big basket or bag and a sharp knife
- d rod, line and lots of fishing tackle
- e a wide-mouthed push-net – little ones for the kids in the tourist shops, big professional ones made by local fishermen
- f bits of meat, a few long nails, a net on a stick and lightning reflexes; or a baited trap
- g rod and line, and/or boat, and anything flashy or shiny for bait – they even snap at bare fish-hooks
- h rod, line, and lots of fishing tackle, although some clever people know how to catch them with their hands (tickle them)
- i hands or little garden fork and a bag

3 What can be gathered / caught by ordinary people in the rivers, coast and countryside in your country? Tell your partner about a trip to the countryside to hunt, catch or gather free food. Don't forget the plants. See p. 136.

TL

Countryside

Hunting and shooting

gun / fishing licence (GB) / license (US)

to go shooting or fishing

fisherman

angler

hunting

shooting

foxhunt

hounds

huntsman on horseback

hunting horn

gundog

to find and retrieve game

ferret to flush rabbits

trap

gin-trap (GB) / spring trap / leg-hold trap

tunnel-trap

to snare

footprints × tracks × traces

field glasses / binoculars

to stalk × lie in wait for

a hide (GB) / a blind (US)

camouflage clothing

a rifle fires a single bullet

a shotgun fires lots of pellets from

a cartridge

to fire at

to hit × miss × wound × kill cleanly

poacher

gamekeeper

Fishing

water bailiff

pond × lake × river fishing

stocked waters

put-and-take fishery

coarse fishing × game fishing

(wet or dry) fly-fishing

fishing tackle

rod

reel

line

weight / sinker

hook

hook, line and sinker

bait

worm

livebait

artificial lures

plug

spinner

fly

to have a bite

to strike

to hook a fish

to play a fish

to land a fish

to catch st on rod and line

net

gaff

trophy

FRIEND OR FOE?

1 Animals are not always what people think they are. With your partner, fill in the table below but leave 'THE TRUTH' empty. Then read text A; your partner should read text B. Tell your partner what you have found out and fill in 'THE TRUTH'.

'IMAGE' means accepted idea – for example, the image connected with 'dog' is 'faithful', 'friendly', 'good company' etc., because these words spring to mind first.

You might find the following structures useful:

Did you know that...?
People think..., but actually / in fact...
It says here that...
I don't believe it!... How interesting!

Really?
No!
Fancy that!
Well, well!



	DANGER TO PEOPLE				IMAGE	THE TRUTH
	lots	some	little	none		
polar bear						
killer whale						
chimpanzee						
dog						
bald eagle						
gorilla						
wolf						
hyena						
pig						
raven						

Text A

Beware of the ... Chimp?

Polar Bear

One of the few animals that will actively and deliberately hunt people, the polar bear can be a menace to Arctic travellers and hunters. Superbly camouflaged and insulated by its white fur, and capable of a good turn of speed over a short distance, it is a master both of the stealthy stalk and the patient ambush.

Killer Whale (Orca)

Although all the whales and dolphins have been getting a good press in recent years, the killer whale still strikes fear into the hearts of those who must live and work on and near the sea around Arctic waters. Intelligent and inquisitive, quite capable of co-operating with others of its own kind to tip up an ice-floe or to herd seals and fish into ambush, it thinks nothing of adding a person to the day's menu, and probably distinguishes him or her from a seal only by taste.

Chimpanzee

Darling of the zoo tea party and Tarzan's sidekick in a thousand TV programmes, the wild chimp can also be a cannibal, murderer and killer for kicks. For example, when a new leader takes over a chimp social group, it systematically

murders the young of the previous leader. Although primarily vegetarians, chimps occasionally go on the rampage for meat, killing the young of other animals – even those of "alien" chimp groups – in grisly fashion, then eating them.

Dog

Dogs kill, maim, and disfigure thousands of people every year, all over the world. The statistics in "civilised" countries, such as Britain, are appalling. The problem seems to be that no politician will risk losing an election to protect people from their favourite pet, and no police officer wants to be seen as a dog-hater. Apart from pet dogs, feral dogs are a menace. These are pets that have run off and bred in the wild, and their colonies are features of the outskirts of most third-world cities. But they're a big problem in America, too....

Bald Eagle

In one of the most unfortunate clashes of fact and stereotype in history, the eagle that symbolises America on flags, coins and banknotes is of a species that often turns to robbery and scavenging to make a living. One of its specialities is chasing fish eagles until they drop what they have caught, then eating it. Benjamin Franklin, a founder-philosopher of the American state, was bitterly opposed to its use as a symbol, and suggested the wild turkey in its place.

Text B

King Kong Cuddles?

Gorilla

The gorilla's reputation has been the victim of two of the least truthful and minimally intelligent groups of people on Earth: Hollywood and white hunters. It is, in fact, a gentle, sociable vegetarian, much given to chewing bamboo by day and building comfy beds for itself and its young by night. Its worst habit is beating its chest and running up to visitors, but if they stand their ground instead of shooting, the gorilla backs down. It's all show.

Wolf

Co-operative hunters that kill only when they need to, look after each others' young and bring food back to the den for mates and young that cannot hunt, wolves might be cited as examples of good behaviour, rather than being systematically hunted for "crimes" they seldom commit. It is an interesting fact that there exists absolutely no scientifically proven evidence that a healthy wolf has ever killed and eaten a person in America, and close examination of evidence in Eurasia proves that this is a very rare event there.

Hyena

Condemned, like many scavengers, to being a symbol of cowardice and underhand practice, the hyena has proved, on closer study of its nocturnal habits, to be a hunter every bit as

formidable and worthy of respect as, for example, a wild hunting dog. Ironically, similar studies of the so-called "noble" lion revealed that it, too, is a scavenger, a thief and coward – if these terms can be applied to animals at all.

Pig

Intelligent, faithful, clean-living and co-operative animals, pigs have been the victims of inter-religious propaganda since the dawn of civilisation. Their alleged filthiness derives in part from an absence of sweat glands, which makes it very difficult to keep cool without wallowing in mud. At various points in history they have been used as forest clearers, seed planters, and pullers of carts. They have also been known to take over from dogs, herding cattle as well as any collie and finding and retrieving game in English forests. To this day, they are used to sniff out truffles – delicious and extremely expensive underground fungi – in France.

Raven

Big, black and mysterious, the raven lives on the border of superstition and fact. A highly intelligent and adaptable bird, it mates for life and exists on carrion and whatever small animals, from beetles to rodents, it can catch. Despite the legends, it kills nothing larger than a rabbit. It is interesting to compare attitudes towards the raven, a black and useful scavenger from the mountains, and towards the swan, a white and thoroughly useless bird that does little but pollute lowland pastures and ponds.

TL

AT THE ZOO

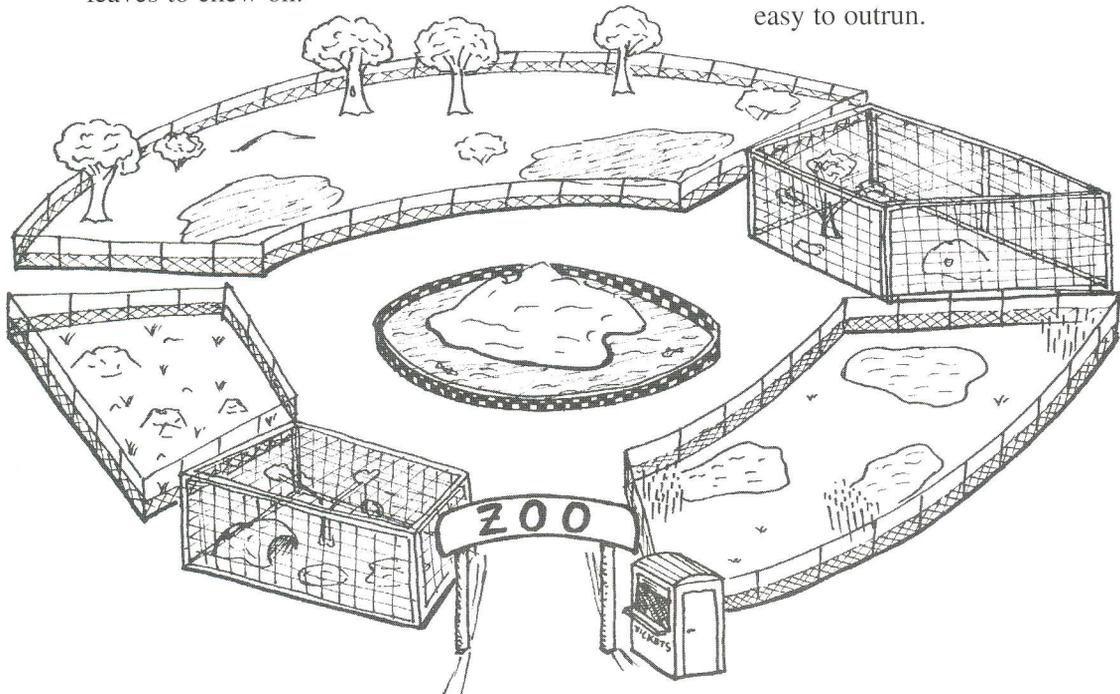
1 Do you have a zoo in your city? What kinds of animals does it have?

2 You have been appointed the zoo keeper of a new zoo. Decide which of the following animals should go in which of the cages or spaces below. Be careful that nobody gets eaten!

If you have difficulties in placing the animals, suggest putting in new enclosures or altering the existing ones.

- Lions** Temperamental carnivores. Will eat any animals they are caged with. Should be isolated.
- Monkeys** Master escape artists. Must be put either into cages or on islands. Very loud and rowdy.
- Giraffes** Very timid and tolerant. Can live anywhere as long as they have some leaves to chew on.

- Parrots and other exotic birds** Must be caged. Need to have silence at night or they won't be able to get to sleep.
- Hippos** Can be dangerous if antagonised but mostly peaceful. Need a nice pond to bathe in. Although they are gregarious, they don't like to share their ponds with any other large animals.
- Leopards** Predators. Very fast, need some room to run around.
- Polar bears** Extremely nasty. Will fight anything, no matter how big. Also very strong, able to tear down fences with their paws.
- Flamingos** Not prone to escape. Need to be in water.
- Zebras** Peaceful and not prone to escape. Need lots of room to run. Very fast.
- Crocodiles** Need shallow ponds to bathe in. Very dangerous if you get too close, but easy to outrun.



At the Zoo

cage
enclosure
confinement
restricted movement
reptile house
big cats
aquarium × vivarium
room to move
feeding time
breeding nucleus

reintroduction to the wild
breeding in captivity
zoo keeper
[animal name] keeper
lion
tiger
leopard
camel
elephant
African
Indian



hippo(potamus), pl.
hippopotamuses or -ami
bison (GB) / buffalo (US)
rhinoceros
giraffe
zebra
grizzly bear
polar bear
koala (bear) (marsupial)
kangaroo
apes × monkeys

gorilla
orangutan
ostrich
penguins
flamingo
crocodile × alligator
lizards × snakes
cobra
python
anaconda

1 Do you have a pet? If you do, tell your partner about the first time you saw your pet. If you don't have a pet, talk about what kind of pet you would most like to have and why.

2 Try to answer the questions below.

Why is the first day you bring a new pet into your house important for the pet?

Is Christmas Day a good day to bring home a new pet? Why/why not?

What can sometimes happen when you give young children pets such as dogs or cats?

Which are the easiest animals to look after? Which ones are the most difficult?

3  Now listen to the recording and check your answers.

4 Certain animals are sometimes associated with certain personality traits. If the following people were animals, what kinds of animals would they be? Why?

- ⊙ your teacher
- ⊙ your mother or father
- ⊙ the leading politicians in your country
- ⊙ your partner or friend
- ⊙ your favourite musician or film star



Pets

he has a way with animals
animal lover
aquarist / fish fancier

Cats

Persian
Russian blue
tabby
ginger / marmalade
Manx
a good mouser

Dogs

pedigree × cross-breed
mongrel
poodle
German shepherd / Alsatian
doberman(n)
pit-bull terrier
fox terrier

labrador
corgi
retriever
dachshund / sausage dog
collie
basset hound
greyhound
spaniel (cocker or springer)
long-haired × short-haired
to take the dog for a walk / a run
to walk the dog
regular exercise
collar
lead / leash (US)
muzzle

Other animals

parrot
budgerigar / budgie
turtle
hamster

scorpion
spider
rat
mouse, *pl.* mice
guinea pig

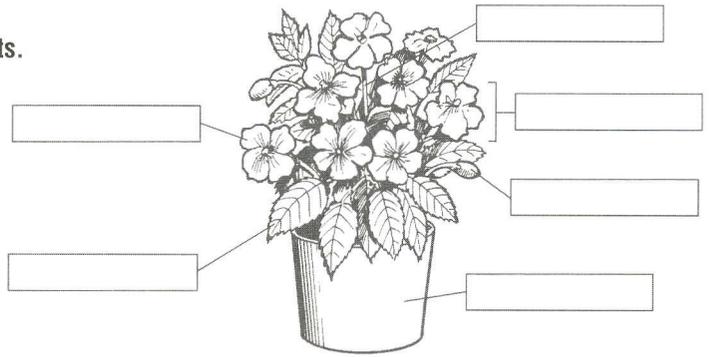
Riding horses

thoroughbred
Arab
hunter
pony
saddle
bridle
bit
girth
stirrups
walk × trot × canter × gallop
pony and trap
trap racing
show-jumping

PLANTS

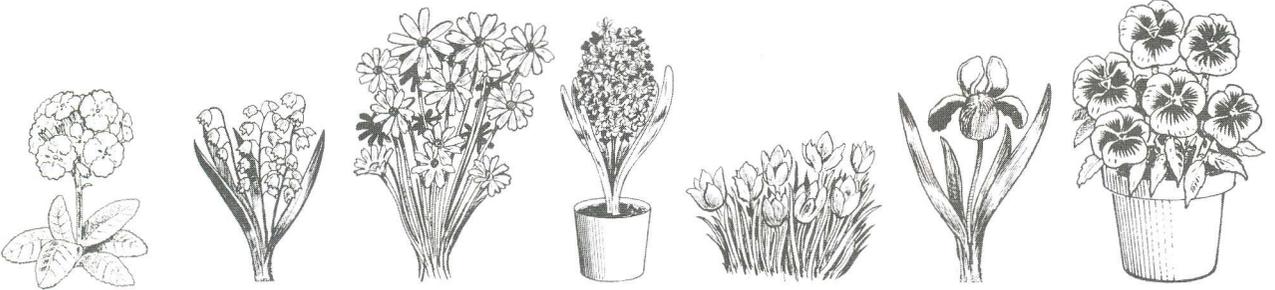
1 Look at the plant and fill in the names of its parts.

- root
- stalk
- leaf, *pl.* leaves
- bloom
- petal
- bud



Patience plant
(*Impatiens Wallerana*)

2 Unscramble the names of the following plants (the first letter is in bold).



pimsorer

ilyl-fo-eth-yalelv

iasdy

nyaihcth

ccosru

siri

sanpy



iyl

sssriuacn

mumsanthechry

lidodaff

putil

Plants

Parts of a plant

stem
flower
pollen
seed
bulb
rhizome
cutting
graft

Flowers

snowdrop
cowslip
foxglove
buttercup
forget-me-not
violet
anemone
bluebells
peony
pinks

carnation

sweet pea
rose
lavender
snapdragon
geranium
poppy
sunflower
cornflower
dahlia

Weeds

nettle
thistle
couch-grass
poppy
cornflower
burdock
dandelion
daisy

Herbs

thyme
marjoram
parsley
sage
rosemary
mint
camomile
chives

Grass

meadow
hay
haymaking
bales
blades of grass
Water-plants
water lilies
waterweed
seaweed

3 Look at the tree and fill in the names of its parts.

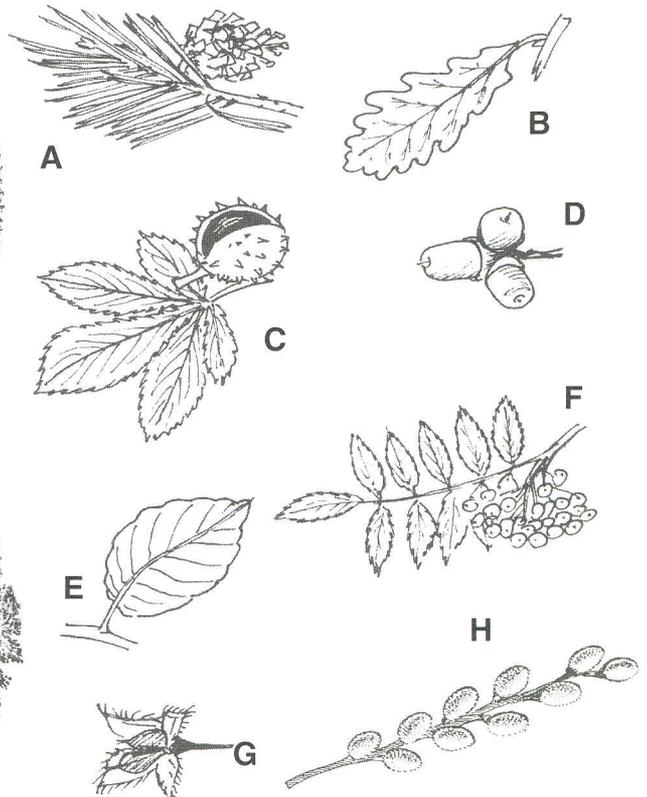
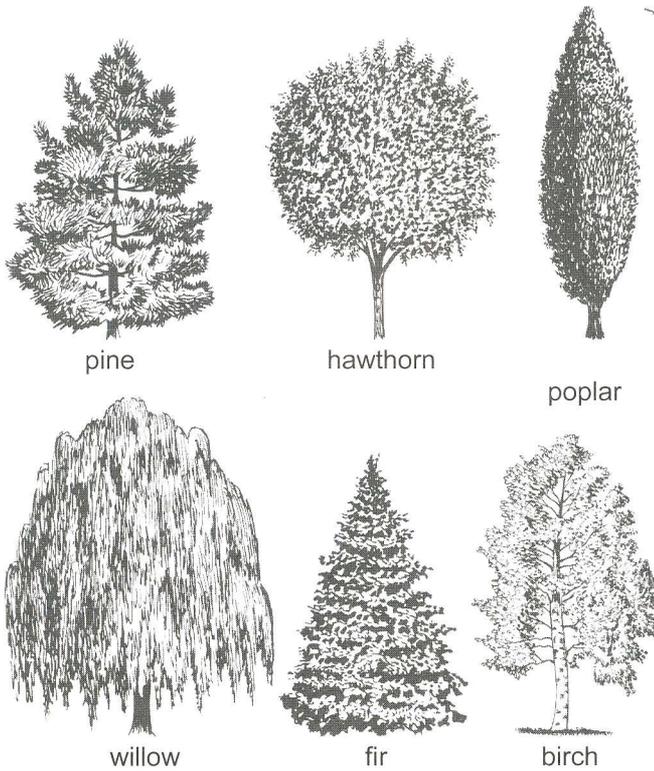
- trunk
- bark
- branch
- bough
- twig
- leaf (pl. leaves) and blossom
- crown



Flowering dogwood
(*Cornus florida*)

4 Talk about the following trees. Where would you find them? What other plants and trees would probably grow in the same place?

5 Look at the pictures and name what you can see in them using some of the expressions below.



<p>Plants The forest evergreen x deciduous coniferous shrub bush stump / stub herb undergrowth brambles rain forest</p>	<p>Some types of tree (fruit / seeds in brackets) pine (cone) fir (cone) larch spruce lime / linden tree hornbeam birch beech (mast) oak (acorns)</p>	<p>maple horse chestnut (horse chestnuts / conkers) sweet chestnut (chestnuts) elm rowan (berries) (weeping) willow pussy willow ash hawthorn (haws)</p>	<p>Mushrooms and fungi field mushroom toadstool morel parasol cep (penny bun) chanterelle oyster mushroom bench fungus honey tuft puffball</p>	<p>death cap destroying angel fly agaric edible x inedible poisonous x deadly poisonous mycelium stem cap gills pores</p>

NATURE – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

I Choose the right expressions and fill in the gaps.

- 1 He was working for the new boutiques and restaurants that were _____ across London.
 - a growing up
 - b flooding
 - c mushrooming
 - d rooting
- 2 Love of money is the _____ of all evil.
 - a stem
 - b source
 - c seed
 - d root
- 3 The affair was deeply _____ in the way the company was run.
 - a rooted
 - b set
 - c cutting
 - d nested
- 4 She _____ into an utterly beautiful woman.
 - a blossomed
 - b bloomed
 - c became
 - d fruited
- 5 After twenty years of _____ searching she returned home.
 - a blooming
 - b growing
 - c fruitless
 - d seaweed
- 6 That project may well come to _____ after all.
 - a flower
 - b fruit
 - c fruition
 - d fun
- 7 The work will _____ for future development.
 - a make hay
 - b dig the ground
 - c lay the ground
 - d cultivate the field
- 8 A _____ of doubt may have been planted in our minds.
 - a corn
 - b grain
 - c seedling
 - d seed
- 9 She could _____ the harvest of her sound training.
 - a gather
 - b reap
 - c mow
 - d receive
- 10 Unexpected work _____ up when it was most inconvenient.
 - a picked
 - b cropped
 - c grew
 - d figured

II Fill in the correct names of plants.

- 11 _____ is the plant that turns moors and heaths purple every August. It is also found in bogs, open woods and on old dunes. White _____ is a variant.
- 12 _____ is a common weed with small grey-blue flowers appearing from April onwards. It can be found in fields, in woods, and in wet places. There is also a garden variety.
- 13 _____ is well-known for its sweet smell. It has pinkish-purple flowers like marjoram and wild basil. It is a low-growing plant and is common on heaths and downs throughout the British Isles.
- 14 _____ was originally found in cornfields but because of modern herbicides its bright blue flowers can nowadays be found mostly only on waste ground.
- 15 _____ is a common weed of lawns and waste places. It has solitary flowerheads on leafless stems. The name derives from “dent de lion” (French for lion’s tooth) which refers to the shape of its leaves.

III The following names of wild animals have been left out of the sentences below. Put them back.

APE RAT FERRET BEAR FOX

- 16 I tried very hard, but I couldn’t _____ the information out of the clerk.
- 17 The money market is a _____ race, and some people who work in it die of the stress.
- 18 You would have to be sly as a _____ to outwit me.
- 19 Careful on Monday mornings! The boss is like a _____ with a sore head.
- 20 I really go _____ over chocolate.

IV Match the names of trees with their fruits or seeds.

21 pine	cone
22 beech	berries
23 oak	conkers
24 horse chestnut	acorns
25 fir	mast
26 rowan	

V Match the following proverbs and clichés with their explanations.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 27 beard the lion in his own den | a to support both sides of the dispute |
| 28 when the cat’s away, the mice will play | b if you wake up and get to work early, you will succeed |
| 29 to run with the hare and hunt with the hounds | c to confront someone on his or her own territory |
| 30 the early bird catches the worm | d when no authority is present, the subordinates can do as they please |

NATURE – AND MORE PRACTICE...

I Choose the right expressions and fill the gaps.

- 1 A call warned police that a bomb had been _____ in a car in the centre of the town.
 - a planted
 - b rooted
 - c pruned
 - d cropped up
- 2 The teaching staff had to _____ the curriculum and the tests.
 - a fertilize
 - b prune
 - c harvest
 - d weed
- 3 The United States emits more _____ gases than any other country.
 - a nature
 - b biological
 - c greenhouse
 - d global
- 4 Suddenly a new idea _____ and we started talking about it.
 - a turned up
 - b cropped up
 - c grew up
 - d set in
- 5 He began to _____ the harvest of his hard work.
 - a dig
 - b feed
 - c sow
 - d reap
- 6 Many firms started _____ employees to cut costs.
 - a shedding
 - b sprouting
 - c flourishing
 - d planting
- 7 I think I'll just rest on my _____ for a time before attempting anything new.
 - a leaves
 - b roots
 - c petals
 - d laurels
- 8 They are enjoying the _____ of success and having a good time.
 - a harvest
 - b spell
 - c fruits
 - d blooms
- 9 Make _____ while the sun shines.
 - a straw
 - b hay
 - c corn
 - d beet
- 10 Everybody is expecting a few green _____ of economic recovery.
 - a shots
 - b springs
 - c stems
 - d shoots

II Fill in the correct names of plants.

- 11 _____ can be told from bilberry by its evergreen leaves, creeping habit, whiter flowers and edible berries which turn red when ripe.
- 12 _____ is widely planted in ornamental waters. Its leaves are small and circular and the big white flowers float on the surface of water. They are related to true lilies.
- 13 _____ has deep scarlet petals, often with a black patch at the base and globular seed-pods; it flowers in the fields from June to the autumn.
- 14 _____ is common in lawns and disliked by many tidy gardeners. It flowers throughout the year except in prolonged hard frosts.
- 15 _____, also called Lent Lily, is the only native British wild narcissus. Wild _____ grow in grassy places, mainly in Southern and Western England, but have been introduced elsewhere.

III The following names of animals have been left out from the sentences below. Put them back.

MOUSE HARE SQUIRREL MONKEY WOLF

- 16 I was not sure what to do. I didn't want to hurt him but I didn't want to be a _____ either.
- 17 This proposal seems harmless enough, but I think it's a _____ in sheep's clothing.
- 18 I have been _____ away a little money each week for years.
- 19 There's been some _____ business in connection with the bank's accounts.
- 20 If you run after two _____, you will catch neither.

IV Sort the following names of trees under the two headings. EVERGREEN (21), DECIDUOUS (22).

larch spruce pine lime fir hornbeam birch beech oak
maple horse chestnut elm rowan willow ash

V Match the following proverbs and clichés with their explanations.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 23 a big fish in a small pond | a have an obsession about something |
| 24 money does not grow on trees | b something you already have is better than to risk losing everything by trying to get much more |
| 25 a leopard cannot change its spots | c the most important person in some small group or community |
| 26 a little bird told me | d immense things can come from small beginnings |
| 27 a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush | e be crazy |
| 28 have bats in the belfry | f it is not easy to get money |
| 29 have a bee in one's bonnet | g one cannot change the basic way one is |
| 30 great oaks from little acorns grow | h a way of indicating that you do not want to reveal who told you something – sometimes used playfully |

EVERYDAY PHRASES

The following phrases are the type of highly colloquial language that one hears every day and needs to understand. Read through the following list of explanations and then try to complete the dialogues using the phrases from the list. Then practise the dialogues in pairs:

- a **For what it's worth** (a phrase added to a piece of information)
- b **You're telling me!** (I know all the truth of what you are saying very well.)
- c **suit yourself** (you can decide to have something you want it)
- d **Take it or leave it** (There is no choice. Take this option or none.)
- e **Stay / keep out of this!** (This does not concern you, so do not get involved.)
- f **we must / should do this again** (sometime) (to indicate that you have enjoyed st)
- g **as we speak** (just now, at this very moment)
- h **when you get a minute / a chance** (introducing a request)
- i **If there's anything you need, don't hesitate to ask** (offering help, usually said by a host)
- j **there you are** (that's the way things are)
- k **Where is the restroom?** (US, asking for a toilet in a public building)
- l **good / nice talking to you** (a polite phrase said at the end of a conversation)

Alice: There's nothing more that can be done. We've done what we could. So

1 _____.

Peter: 2 _____, you are doing great! — Alice: Thanks! It's worth a lot!

Mary: Well, I have to get off. — Paul: 3 _____ . Bye, Mary.

Tom: 4 _____, Mary. — Mary: It's just as much my business as it is yours.

Peter: This food is really terrible. — Paul: Wow! 5 _____.

Mary: I think I will go home. — Alice: 6 _____ – I am staying.

Bob: What a nice evening! — Alice: Yes, it certainly was – 7 _____.

The plane is taking off 8 _____.

Bill: Tom, 9 _____, I'd like to ask you a question.

Peter: 10 _____? — Clerk: Next to the reception desk, on the right.

Eve: I'm sure, I'll be comfortable here. — Jane: 11 _____.

Paul: This is my last offer. – 12 _____.

THE HUMAN BODY

1 How would you describe the typical American man and woman? What do they look like? Do you think this is an accurate description of real Americans?

2 Read the text and then do the exercises below.

Find the word in the passage that means the following:

- 1 without a mark or stain
- 2 large and swelling
- 3 shining in the sun
- 4 the state of being fat
- 5 more healthy
- 6 a hairstyle common among street punks
- 7 ideas
- 8 a girl who behaves in a way usually considered boyish
- 9 losing one's hair
- 10 a large group

3 Find the nouns that go with the following adjectives.

long	sculpted
firm	wide
flat	slim
huge	pierced
tanned	stocky
god-like	short
muscular	double

4 Try to add some nouns to the adjectives in the box.

FIRST IMPRESSIONS

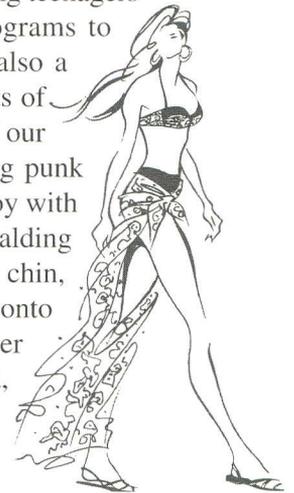
THE IMAGE OF AMERICA



For much of the world, America exists only on the television and cinema screen, and it has a certain image. The American Woman is seen walking on a beach, her toned body only slightly covered by a bikini. She has a perfect hourglass figure, accentuated by her long legs, firm thighs, flat stomach, and huge breasts, all of it wrapped up in a layer of tanned, unblemished skin. Next to her walks the god-like American Man, tall and muscular, his bulging biceps shining in the sun, a slight layer of sweat glistening on his sculpted chest and wide shoulders. This mythical couple seems to appear on every American television show and movie that is broadcast across the world.

In reality, however, America has a much different image, if it can be said to have one image at all. The first surprise is that America is not a slim nation. In

fact, obesity has become such a problem among teenagers that the government has started special programs to make schoolchildren fitter. But America is also a place where there are many different concepts of beauty, so on one street you will not only find our American Woman and Man, but also a young punk with a pink mohawk and pierced lips, a tomboy with short hair and a stocky masculine build, a balding businessman with his beer-belly and double chin, and a whole host of others who never make it onto the television screen. It is just another reminder that, in America as well as the rest of the world, life is much bigger, and much more interesting, than what we see on the television screen.



First Impressions

gorgeous
stunning
handsome
well-built
athletic
pear-shaped

fat / portly / corpulent / well-rounded
obese
gross
dumpy
thin
emaciated

skinny
slim / slender
lithe
dark × light
tomboy
beauty is only skin deep

HEAD AND FACE

1  You will hear a conversation between Ms Begbie, a woman who has had her purse stolen, and a police officer. Listen to the description of the mugger and then match it to one of the pictures below.



2 One of the four adjectives on each line does not collocate with the same noun as the other adjectives. Add the right nouns and write your answers in the table below.

- a even gapped chapped bucked
- b pointed rosy double dimpled
- c straight curly short low
- d dimpled straight Roman hooked
- e oval wrinkled lined slanted
- f arched plucked bushy receding
- g high short low furrowed
- h high-boned rosy pale lank
- i full chapped yellow cracked

3 Look at the other three men in the pictures and match them with the following descriptions.

- slanted eyes
- flat crooked nose
- birthmark under the right eye
- birthmark on one cheek
- beard
- straight nose
- dimpled chin
- scars
- moustache
- thick bushy eyebrows
- pockmarked face
- thin lips
- thick arched eyebrows
- double chin
- round eyes
- round face

a	chapped lips	bucked / even / gapped teeth
b		
c		
d		
e		
f		
g		
h		
i		

4 Think of a famous person (an actor, singer, politician) or a student or a teacher you know. Use the collocations from this and the preceding page to describe them. Write at least two or three sentences, then read them out without saying who the person is. The other students can guess who you are describing.

5 Have you ever had a haircut that you didn't like? Why didn't you like it? What did you do about it?

6  Unscramble the lines in the dialogue on the right and answer the following questions. Then listen and check your answers.

How are Sue and John's new hairstyles different from their old ones?

Why don't they like them?

7 Look at your classmates. Try to describe their faces, using the vocabulary from the box below. Prepare at least three descriptions and let your partner guess who they refer to. Example:

She has got curly auburn hair with a parting in the middle. Her face is round with a high forehead...

- 1
- 2
- 3

- A Oh, it's not really that bad... I mean, maybe when it grows out it'll...
- B Don't even talk about my hat! God, I am so mad I could just scream!
- A Well, you know how John used to have such lovely long hair? Well, he got a new job in an insurance company so he had to cut it off. He wanted it just to be a nice, normal length, with a parting on the side and all that. You know, the businessman look. Well, the barber shaved it all the way off. By the time he realised what was happening, it was too late, so he had to get a crew cut. It doesn't look so bad now that he's grown a moustache and beard, but when he first got it he looked like a skinhead! Not exactly the way to make a good first impression at your new job.
- B It's awful! God! All I asked her for was a trim and a perm. I had a lot of split ends, and I was tired of my fringe always getting in my eyes, so I wanted it a little shorter. But she chopped my fringe completely off, and the sides are too short too. And this perm is so curly that I look like I have an afro! It's terrible!
- A Well, you know, it could be worse. Have you seen John's new haircut?
- B What's the matter? Just look! (*Sue takes off her hat.*) I went to the hairdresser's today and look what she did! She butchered me!
- A Hi, Sue. Nice hat. Is it new?
- B No, why?
- A Why? What's the matter?

Head and Face

Hair	to be thin on top	wart	Eyebrows	Chin
blond	crew cut	mole	straight	long
fair	afro	birthmark	arched	pointed
auburn	dreadlocks	dimple	thick	short
red	mohawk	freckled	thin	chiselled
ginger	parting (GB) / part (US)	lined	plucked	double
brown	Facial hair	craggy	bushy	cleft
black	moustache	wrinkled	Nose	dimpled
grey	beard	fresh × pale complexion	bulbous	Lips
curly	whiskers	Forehead	straight	full
frizzy	goatee	furrowed	hooked	thin
wavy	sideburns	wrinkled	Roman	cracked
straight	Face	high	snub	chapped
mousy	round	low	broken	Teeth
greasy	square	Eyes	flat	even
lank	oval	oval	veined	crooked
dry	aquiline	slanted × wide	drinker's	gapped
full of dandruff	pockmarked	sunken	Cheeks	horsy
plaited	spotty	deepset	rosy	yellow
ponytail	acne	sparkling	high-boned	bad
to be balding / bald	pimples	dull	cheekbone	bucked
receding hairline				

4 Since “body language” and shared feelings can be very vivid, many parts of the human body are used in everyday expressions; find the equivalents of the following idioms in your mother tongue. Which ones are nearly the same in literal translation and which ones are completely different?

- to have a sweet tooth
- to fight tooth and nail
- to have a nose for news
- there was a lump in his throat
- Grandpa is young at heart
- blood is thicker than water
- he was completely tongue-tied
- he opened his mouth and put his foot in it
- he paid an arm and a leg for that car
- he broke her heart
- into the teeth of a gale
- head over heels in love
- don't let him fix the bike; he's all thumbs
- he made a clean breast of it
- I'm all ears
- he's got a level head on his shoulders
- he was only pulling your leg
- it took guts to climb Everest
- he doesn't have the stomach for a fight
- two heads are better than one
- he may be ugly, but he's got a heart of gold

5 Match the following verbs with the respective parts of the body and use them in sentences to illustrate their meaning.

A

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 to clench | a one's arms (across one's chest) |
| 2 to fold | b one's limbs, legs, arms |
| 3 to nod, shake | c nose, one's teeth |
| 4 to pick | d one's legs, fingers, eyes, arms, oneself |
| 5 to rub | e one's shoulders |
| 6 to stick out | f one's eyes |
| 7 to shrug | g one's head |
| 8 to cross | h one's neck, tongue, chest, belly, chin |
| 9 to blink | i one's teeth, hands, fists |
| 10 to stretch | j one's hands, nose, eyes |

B

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 to clean | a one's nose |
| 2 to turn up ___ at | b one's own feet |
| 3 to hold | c a tooth, one's leg |
| 4 to point | d with a finger |
| 5 to snap | e one's nails, teeth |
| 6 to stamp | f one's foot, feet |
| 7 to pull | g hands, one's breath |
| 8 to stand on | h one's brains |
| 9 to rack | i one's shoulder |
| 10 to throw st over | j one's fingers |

Body and Limbs

Shoulders

- wide
- thin
- round
- square

Chest

- deep
- narrow
- pigeon
- concave
- barrel
- flat

Stomach / tummy/ abdomen / belly / gut

- flat
- muscular
- beer
- pot (-belly)
- belly button / navel

Hips

- slim
- broad
- wide

Legs

- thick x thin
- knock-kneed
- bowlegged

Skeleton

- skull
- socket
- sinus
- jawbone
- funnybone
- ribcage / ribs
- breastbone
- collarbone
- spine / backbone
- pelvis

coccyx

- knee cap
- shin
- shoulder blade

Genitals / sex organs

- vagina
- clitoris
- testicles
- penis

Organs, systems and glands

- brain
- heart
- windpipe
- lungs
- blood
- veins
- arteries
- circulatory system
- nervous system

liver

- gall-bladder
- gullet
- stomach
- spleen
- pancreas
- gut
- small intestine
- large intestine
- colon
- appendix
- bowels
- kidneys
- bladder
- tendons
- ligament
- cartilage
- muscles
- hamstring

BODY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Match the expressions on the left with their definitions on the right.

- | | | | |
|----|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | to have a sweet tooth | a | people will tend to be like their ancestors, good or bad |
| 2 | head over heels in love | b | struggle energetically and with great determination |
| 3 | to fight tooth and nail | c | very much in love with someone |
| 4 | to be all thumbs | d | to confess something, to tell a necessary truth |
| 5 | to have an itchy palm | e | to be listening eagerly and carefully |
| 6 | to make a clean breast of something | f | a funny feeling, as if you were going to cry |
| 7 | to get / have a lump in one's throat | g | feel young in spite of the actual age |
| 8 | to be young at heart | h | to tend to ask for tips (placing money in the palm) |
| 9 | to be all ears | i | to have a preference for sweet foods |
| 10 | blood will tell | j | very awkward and clumsy |

Fill in the gaps with suitable expressions.

He was a tall, willowy youth, with long, lank **11** h_____ and a vacant expression.

His **12** m_____ was dry with fear, sweat beaded on his **13** f_____, and his **14** k_____ knocked together.

The human **15** s_____ is badly designed for walking on two **16** l_____, and middle age often brings back problems.

He was an enormous man, with a big beer-**17** b_____, **18** th_____ like tree-trunks and **19** h_____ like hams.

She grew from a skinny, toothy adolescent into a gorgeous young woman with a perfect **20** f_____.

Choose the right meaning of these metaphors.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 21 He has set up a body called the Security Council.
a a community
b an organization
c a business
d a structure | 26 My heart goes out to you.
a I sympathize very deeply with
b I am leaving
c I decided to help
d I feel odd |
| 22 He will head a provisional government.
a execute
b form
c put together
d lead | 27 Let me know if you need a hand!
a someone to help you
b a friend
c an artificial limb
d a new experience |
| 23 Although your heart is breaking, you must face the truth that the romance has ended.
a accept
b tell
c follow
d bring | 28 He is your closest blood relative.
a a person you marry
b your stepbrother
c father-in-law
d next of kin |
| 24 This work has kept his name in the public eye.
a on the radio
b on TV
c in the press
d he was receiving a lot of public attention | 29 What can she do if her husband has no backbone?
a no second job
b no extra income
c is weak and useless
d no backyard |
| 25 He has always had a good ear for accents and dialects.
a good hearing
b good understanding
c ability to interpret and reproduce
d knowledge | 30 I felt in my bones that something was badly wrong.
a sure without a logical reason
b absolutely sure
c at a loss
d a shiver running down my spine |

BODY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Match the expressions on the left with their definitions on the right.

- | | | | |
|----|---|---|--|
| 1 | to have something on the tip of one's tongue | a | two people working together have a better chance of success |
| 2 | to pull someone's leg | b | you had to be courageous to accomplish that |
| 3 | to put one's foot in it | c | to kid, fool or trick someone |
| 4 | it took guts to do it | d | to be generous, sincere, and friendly |
| 5 | to pay an arm and a leg for it <i>or</i>
to pay through the nose | e | to say something insulting, stupid or hurtful that you regret, often by mistake |
| 6 | not to have the stomach for it | f | to be on the verge of remembering, to have just forgotten |
| 7 | two heads are better than one | g | to be very cheeky / disrespectful |
| 8 | it takes some neck / gall to try that | h | just at the worst moment |
| 9 | to have a heart of gold | i | to be unable to do something because you think it is wrong; to lack courage or determination |
| 10 | into the teeth of a gale | j | to pay too much for something |

Fill in the gaps with suitable expressions.

Heavy drinking is a strain on the **11** l_____, **12** k_____, **13** h_____ and mind, as well as being a good way to lose friends.

People in the mountains have short, chunky bodies, and generally smaller **14** e_____.

At the smell of dinner, his **15** m_____ watered and his **16** b_____ rumbled.

He had his **17** t_____ taken out.

She was frozen to the **18** b_____; her **19** l_____ were blue, her **20** f_____ were white, and she shivered constantly.

Choose the right meaning of these metaphors.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 21 The janitor has a skeleton key to all the classrooms.
a key specially made to open several locks
b no key
c old key
d new key | 26 His father shouldered the burden of leadership.
a accepted the responsibilities and problems
b took up
c took over
d gave up |
| 22 I love music. It is in my blood .
a I inherited a violin
b it's part of my nature
c I can't do without it
d I play the piano | 27 Latin used to be the common tongue for much of academic Europe.
a common problem
b lingua franca
c the only language
d official language |
| 23 They worked their guts out from 6 a.m. to 2.30 p.m. every day, often all evening and weekend too.
a start early and finish late
b need much money
c put all available time and energy into working
d forget all | 28 He had a nose for news.
a problems with his nose
b a talent for finding out
c needed more help
d was nosy |
| 24 The government's hands-off policy caused many more problems.
a non-intervention
b big-stick
c short-sighted
d co-ordinated | 29 He also worked as head of modern languages at a London school.
a person in charge
b inspector
c teacher
d played a major role in |
| 25 Take heart , all is not lost.
a don't be light-fingered
b pluck up your courage
c kill two birds with one stone
d don't stick your chin out | 30 There certainly is a large body of evidence to support these claims.
a a strong personality
b large amount of
c need for
d clash of |

HEALTH

ROUTINE ILLNESSES AND ACCIDENTS

1  Listen to the following conversation and fill in the information below.

1. Samantha's illness:

2. Symptoms:

3. How long she's been sick:

4. Medicines she's been taking:

5. Has she been to the doctor?

6. Why/why not?

2 Now complete the dialogue between Samantha and her doctor.

Doctor: Good morning. What seems to be the problem?

Samantha: _____

Doctor: And how long have you been feeling like this?

Samantha: _____

Doctor: Have you been running a fever?

Samantha: _____

Doctor: Any nausea or upset stomach?

Samantha: _____

Doctor: I see. And have you been taking anything for it?

Samantha: _____

Doctor: OK, well, it looks like a minor throat infection, maybe the flu. I'm going to write you a prescription for some antibiotics. Take them three times a day after meals for five days. And I'm going to recommend five days' sick leave. Just stay in bed and get plenty of rest, and you'll be back in shape in no time.

Samantha: _____

Doctor: You're welcome.

Routine Illnesses and Accidents

influenza / flu

sore throat

to sneeze

to blow one's nose

bad chest / cough

something goes down the
wrong way

to choke

to swallow a bone

indigestion / upset stomach

to burp

wind / gas

to fart / break wind

diarrhoea × constipation

food poisoning

being sick / vomiting /
throwing up

he's got a temperature /
fever

loss of appetite

infection

contagious

rash

to squeeze a pimple

hay-fever

allergy

encephalitis

Lyme disease (transmitted by
ticks)

illness / sickness / ailment

earache

headache

migraine

hangover

depression

nervous breakdown

stress-related disease

psychosomatic

diabetes

slipped disc

sciatica

physiotherapy

blister

cold sore

ulcer

mouth ulcer / canker sore (US)

scrapes, grazes and cuts (skin)

sprains and dislocations (joints)

fractures and breaks (bones)

to twist (an ankle)

to pull a muscle

in plaster (GB) / in a cast (US)

to have the tonsils / adenoids
taken out

to have / get something in one's
eye

to cut oneself shaving

to get sunburnt

to peel

Travellers' problems

to take medicine / be on
medication (US)

dysentery

parasites

smallpox

cholera

yellow fever

snakebite

infestation

lice / nits

fleas

typhus

typhoid

hepatitis

jaundice

malaria

tuberculosis

rabies

zoonosis

inoculation

vaccination / jab(s)

injection / shot

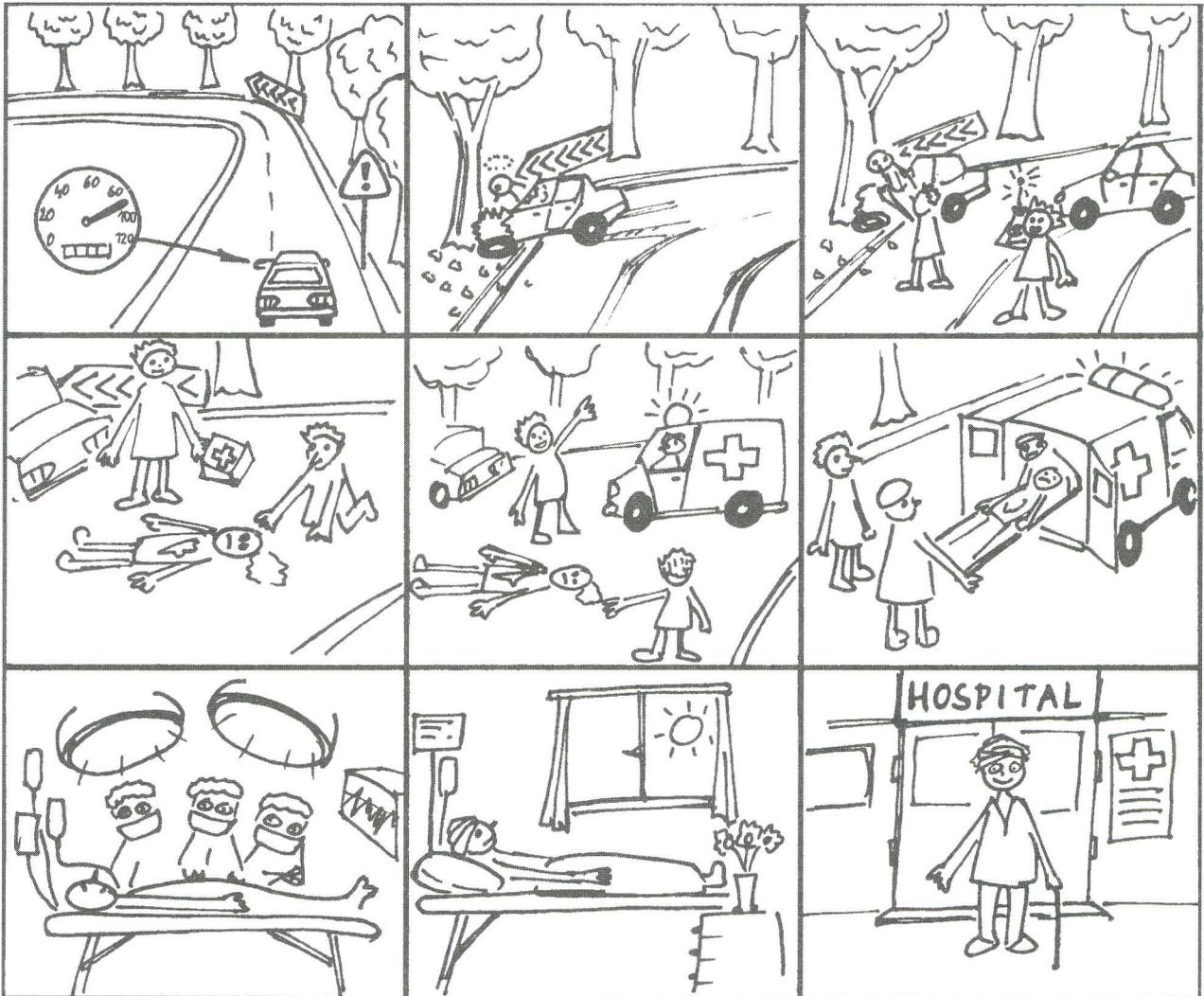
preventive medicine

hygiene

FIRST AID

Look at the following pictures and make a list of words and phrases for each one. Then write the story. You could start like this:

Late one afternoon, Chris was driving on a country road, speeding through the forest when his wife called him on his mobile...



First Aid

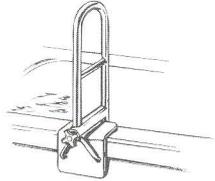
ambulance
 accident and emergency department
 fire brigade (GB) / fire department (US)
 to have an accident
 to be involved in an accident
 minor × major × fatal injury
 cardiac arrest / heart attack
 to give first aid
 to stitch
 to bandage
 to put sb in a splint
 arm in a sling

to staunch the flow of blood / (arterial)
 bleeding
 pressure points
 electric shock
 electrocution
 drowning
 artificial respiration / "kiss of life" /
 mouth-to-mouth
 CPR = cardiopulmonary resuscitation
 concussion
 burn × scald
 stretcher
 bandage

emergency dressings
 sticking plaster (GB) / Band-Aid (US)
 gauze
 cotton wool
 scissors
 tweezers
 safety pin
 tourniquet
 life-support system
 medical insurance

DISABILITIES

1 Which of the following aids for people with disabilities have you seen? What are they called?



Disabilities

blind	mentally or physically handicapped	Braille	crutches
deaf	the disadvantaged / handicapped	closed-caption television	Zimmer (frame)
dumb / mute (US)	in a wheelchair	seeing-eye dogs	white canes
deaf-and-dumb (GB) / deaf-mute (US)	sign language	hearing aids	rumble strip
crippled with rheumatism	to sign	sounding traffic lights	ramps
		text-phones	lifts
		handles	wheelchair lifts

2 For more information on the following text see Exercise 2 on page 152.

If there's one thing I hate more than anything in the world, it's hiccups. They're so annoying. I always get them when I'm out at a pub or after I've had a heavy meal, and once I have them, I can't get rid of them for hours. Or at least, that's the way it used to be, until _____ showed me a fool-proof cure for the hiccups.

We were sitting at the table after having finished a large meal, and I was just about to light a cigarette when it started. My friend, Beppino, smiled and said, "You have the hiccups, don't you?"

"Yes," I replied. "It always happens to me when I've finished eating."

"_____ " offered Beppino.

Yeah, sure, I thought. I've tried everything. There is no cure for the hiccups.

Beppino seemed to see the scepticism on my face. "No, really," he insisted. "_____." Before I could say anything, he rushed into the kitchen and came back with a large glass filled with a delicious red wine he had brought from Italy. "This only works with red wine," he said. "Beer is no good. Too many, how do you say, bubbles, yes?"

"What do I have to do?" I asked, feeling a little bit like a guinea pig in a scientific experiment.

"_____, " instructed Beppino. "_____. Now let it out. Now another deep breath. Yes, good."

I've already tried this, I thought as I repeated the deep breathing five or six times. It always seems like it's helping, but the minute I stop breathing deeply the hiccups come back. I didn't want to offend my guest, however, and I was curious about what he was going to do with the glass of wine, so I continued. After breathing for two or three minutes, Beppino took the glass and said, "Good, now exhale, yes. _____ All of it! DON'T STOP! GOOD!"

Beppino was getting incredibly excited watching me gulp down a half-litre of wine, and I was wondering if he was just pulling my leg. I was also getting so sick that I wondered if Beppino's cure consisted of making me drink so much that I would have to throw up. But I drank the whole glass, gasped for air, and waited. And waited. And waited. It was a miracle! My hiccups were gone!

"You see," smiled Beppino. "It works every time."

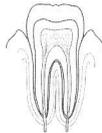
And he was right. Every time.

TEETH AND THE DENTIST

1 Have you ever done a survey similar to the one below? Where would you probably find such a survey? What is your opinion on these surveys? Do they really show the truth?

DENTAL HYGIENE SURVEY

- 1 How would you rate your overall dental hygiene?
 - a excellent
 - b very good
 - c average
 - d poor
 - e terrible
- 2 When was the last time you visited the dentist?
 - a within the last six months
 - b between six months and one year ago
 - c between one and two years ago
 - d between two and five years ago
 - e longer than five years ago
- 3 How often do you brush your teeth?
 - a after every meal
 - b after waking up and before going to sleep
 - c once a day
 - d infrequently
- 4 How often do you floss your teeth?
 - a once a day
 - b every once in a while
 - c hardly ever or never
- 5 How often do you rinse with mouthwash?
 - a every time you brush your teeth
 - b when you wake up in the morning
 - c hardly ever or never
- 6 Do you eat a lot of fried foods or sweets? Yes No
- 7 Do your gums sometimes bleed when eating apples or other hard foods? Yes No
- 8 Are your teeth sensitive to temperature and pressure? Yes No



2 Are you afraid of the dentist? What scares you most? Is there anything you like about going to the dentist?

3 Your friend, who is very frightened of going to the dentist, has to have some major dental work done. Give him some tips about how to relax at the dentist.

4 Put the following sentences in the right order.

- a Primary teeth differ from permanent teeth in being smaller, having more pointed cusps, being whiter and more prone to wear, and having relatively large pulp chambers and small, delicate roots.
- b The first set of teeth are called primary, or deciduous, ones, and the second set are called permanent ones.
- c The primary teeth are shed when their roots are resorbed as the permanent teeth push toward the mouth cavity in the course of their growth.
- d Humans have 20 primary and 32 permanent teeth.
- e The primary teeth begin to appear about six months after birth, and the primary dentition is complete by age 2 1/2; shedding begins about age 5 or 6 and is finished by age 13.
- f Like most other mammals, humans have two successive sets of teeth during life.



Teeth and the Dentist

to study stomatology
waiting room
dental nurse
appointment
oral surgeon
orthodontist
braces
false teeth / dentures
oral hygiene

to brush one's teeth
dental floss
plaque
tooth decay
cavity / caries
drill
filling
extraction
to have a tooth out / have a tooth pulled (US)

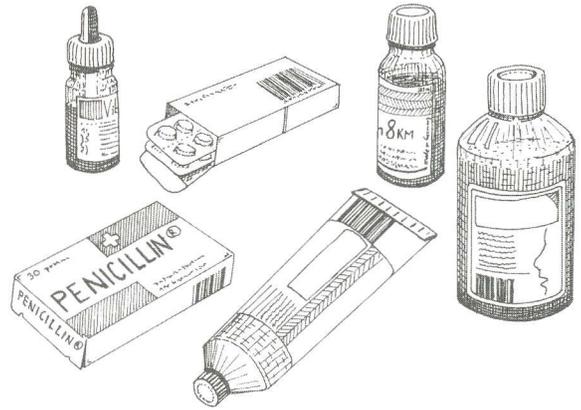
wisdom teeth
gum abscess
to crown a tooth / have a tooth capped
to fit (or be fitted for) a bridge
loose tooth
bad teeth
toothache
pyorrhoea alveolaris
pus

MEDICINES AND TREATMENTS

1 Look at the pictures of medicines on the right. Say what each medicine is, and then make sentences saying when you would use these medicaments. Can you think of any other ways to treat the respective health problems?

Example:

When I have a headache, I take two aspirin and lie down for a while. If I had the time, it would be better to go for a walk instead of taking medicine.



2 Working in pairs, one person looks at this text, and the other looks at the text on page 150. Both texts contain the information that is missing from the other one. Take turns asking each other questions until you have all of the missing information.

If there's one thing I hate more than anything in the world, it's hiccups. They're so annoying. I always get them when _____, and once I have them, I can't get rid of them for hours. Or at least, that's the way it used to be, until an Italian friend of mine showed me a fool-proof cure for the hiccups.

We were sitting at the table after a large meal, and I was just about to _____ when it started. My friend, Beppino, smiled and said, "You have the hiccups, don't you?"

"Yes," I replied. "It always happens to me when I've finished eating."

"I can show you a way to get rid of them," offered Beppino.

Yeah, sure, I thought. _____

Beppino seemed to see the scepticism on my face. "No, really," he insisted. "It works every time." Before I could say anything, he rushed into the kitchen and came back with a large glass filled with a delicious red wine he had brought from Italy. "This only works with red wine," he said. "Beer is no good. Too many, how do you say, bubbles, yes?"

"_____, " I asked, feeling a little bit like a guinea pig in a scientific experiment.

"OK, take a deep breath," instructed Beppino. "Now hold it in as long as you can. Now let it out, good. Now another deep breath. Yes, good."

I've already tried this, I thought as I repeated the deep breathing five or six times. _____. I didn't want to offend my guest, however, and I was curious about what he was going to do with the glass of wine, so I continued. After breathing for two or three minutes, Beppino took the glass and said, "Good, now exhale, yes. Let all of the air out of your lungs. Now drink the wine! All of it! DON'T STOP! GOOD!"

Beppino was getting incredibly excited watching me gulp down a half-litre of wine, and I was wondering if he was just pulling my leg. I was also getting so sick that I wondered if Beppino's cure consisted of making me drink so much that I would have to throw up. But I drank the whole glass, gasped for air, and waited. And waited. And waited. It was a miracle! My hiccups were gone!

"You see," smiled Beppino. "It works every time."

And he was right. Every time.

Medicines and Treatments

prescription
drugs
medicines
pharmaceuticals
pills
tablets
capsules
ointment
lotion
drops
gargle
antibiotics

painkillers
sedatives
sleeping pills
aspirin
penicillin
side-effect
interaction
long-term effect
drug trials / clinical trials
animal testing
allopathic medicine
homeopathic medicine

alternative medicine
herbal medicine
healers
holistic medicine
acupuncture
massage
chiropractic
aromatherapy
osteopathy
hypnosis
meditation

Mental problems / Diseases

neurosis
psychosis
nervous disorder
paranoia
schizophrenia
mania
manic depressive
senility
Alzheimer's disease
tranquilliser
stimulant

STDs AND DRUG ABUSE

1 Sexually transmitted diseases are an emotionally charged issue and people often have quite different views on people who have them than they do on people who have other diseases. What is the attitude of the various segments of society in your country (e.g. religious sectors, the government, schools, etc.) towards STDs? What programs are there to help people who have these diseases or to prevent people from contracting them?

2 In small groups, draw up a proposal for your local government's new campaign to fight STDs. Present this proposal to the class and compare it with other groups' suggestions.

Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs)

venereal disease (VD)	AIDS (Acquired Immune-Deficiency Syndrome)	one-night stand	homosexual
gonorrhoea (the clap / a dose)	HIV (Human Immune-Deficiency Virus)	prostitute / whore	gay
syphilis	safe sex	pimp	lesbian
hepatitis B	condom	passive immunity	epidemic
herpes	promiscuity	help lines	pandemic
fungal infections		sex education	drug addict / junkie
		heterosexual	needle (syringe)

A LIVELY DEBATE ON DRUGS

3 Is drug abuse a serious problem in your country? If so, in what way? What steps are being taken to combat this problem? Are the steps effective?

4 In small groups, read the article and complete the paragraphs with what you think each person might have said.

5 In groups of four, use the information you have come up with to act out the debate.

Last night's televised debate over the drug problem in Britain eventually turned into a shouting match as the participants voiced their strong and often differing opinions on the topic. The debate was called in response to a fast-growing petition campaign in favour of establishing a Dutch-style system of decriminalisation and controlled distribution of drugs.

The campaign's organiser, J.D. Buckley, a psychiatrist who has spent years studying drug addiction, claimed that the "War on Drugs" has failed. Insisting that drug addicts were victims who needed treatment

and not jail sentences, he continuously used Holland as an example of a better alternative, saying that...

Buckley was interrupted several times by Capt. John Stewart of the Liverpool Police Department, who denied that Holland's drug policies had led to less drug addiction in that country. Stressing the danger to the public if drugs should become legal, he ridiculed Buckley's campaign for...

Another participant in the debate was Janet Homely of the Children's Defence League. Homely focused on the message that legalising drugs would send

to children, comparing it to the use of alcohol and tobacco by children and warning that...

A somewhat comical note was struck in the debate when a young man dressed in faded jeans and a tie-dye T-shirt began asking a long and surprisingly intelligent series of questions about marijuana, until finally a chair was brought out for him and he joined the panel of debaters. The young man, Martin Blank, protested that marijuana as well as other "recreational drugs" should not be placed into the same category as hard drugs, insisting that...

Drug Abuse

Hard drugs

opium
morphine
heroin
cocaine (crack) / coke
methylamphetamine (Pervitin / speed)
solvents

Powerful drugs that alter perception and may be very disturbing (hallucinogens)
LSD (acid)
ecstasy (E)
psilocybin (from mushrooms)
liberty cap / magic mushroom
mescaline (from cactus)

Less powerful and dangerous "recreational" drugs

hash
grass / pot / marijuana

Addiction

to shoot up
withdrawal symptoms
to cut back / go cold turkey

methadone
methadone programme
to be addicted to / hooked on

Legal drugs

alcohol
tobacco
prescription drugs

OTHER HEALTH PROBLEMS

1 Read the following comments and say which illnesses or disorders they are describing.

"I'm finally out of the hospital, so I guess that's good. The doctor told me I'll have to wear the cast for a few months, but I already want it off. My skin itches so badly, especially when I start to sweat, and I can't get anything in there to scratch it. And I just can't get used to walking on crutches..."

"Oh, God, it must have been something I ate yesterday, maybe that pizza I had for lunch, but just around five o'clock I started to feel really sick. I just managed to get home from the office and I made straight for the bathroom. I must have thrown up for hours, I thought it would never end..."

"Well, basically I have an imbalance in my blood sugar levels, and it's quite serious. If I don't keep an eye on it and take care of myself, it could be fatal. So I have to test my blood-sugar level several times a day, and then give myself shots of insulin to regulate the level when it gets too low..."

"Well, I got the results of the tests, and it looks like it's malignant, so they're going to have to operate to remove it. But what really worries me is the chemotherapy. And, I mean, I just can't stand the thought of being pumped up with all of that radiation. I just remember my father and how nauseous and weak he felt, and ashamed to go out in public once his hair fell out..."

2 Write some similar comments about another illness and write the name of the illness on the back of the paper. Then pass the papers around the room and try to guess the illnesses from the descriptions.

3 Which of these illnesses are children's diseases? What parts of the body do these illnesses affect? Which of them can you get vaccinated against? Which ones have to be treated only after you are ill with them?

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| constipation | chickenpox |
| scarlet fever | whooping cough |
| pneumonia | typhoid |
| flu | throat infection |
| mumps | diarrhoea |
| cholera | polio |
| tuberculosis | indigestion |
| appendicitis | allergy |
| headache | measles |
| food poisoning | hepatitis |
| | ulcer |



4 Put the following story about a child having tonsillitis into the correct order.

- _____ and I spent the next week at home recovering.
- _____ I first started feeling sick
- _____ My throat felt sore
- _____ and I was having trouble swallowing.
- _____ at school one day.
- _____ My mother let me stay home from school for a few days,
- _____ It wasn't all bad, though – I got to eat all the ice cream I wanted for a whole week!
- _____ but my throat swelled up even further.
- _____ and he said that I had tonsillitis.
- _____ They operated on me the next day,
- _____ We went to the doctor,

5 Which of the following illnesses have you or someone else you know had? Compare your list with a partner and tell each other about how you felt, how long you were ill, etc.

- measles
- mumps
- scarlet fever
- German measles (rubella)
- chickenpox
- whooping cough
- glandular fever / mononucleosis / mono
- diphtheria
- acne
- vitamin deficiency
- appendicitis
- tonsillitis
- polio

PREGNANCY AND CHILDBIRTH

1 Before reading the text about pregnancy and childbirth, try to answer the following questions.

- What cravings do pregnant women sometimes have and why?
- What is the most crucial time of pregnancy for the developing baby?
- How long does labour usually last?
- Match the words on the left to the definitions on the right.

premature baby
contractions
trimester
labour
foetus



a developing baby
tightening of the muscles
of around the uterus
the series of contractions
which pushes the baby
out through the birth
canal
a stage of pregnancy
a baby born early

2 Now read the text and check your answers.

PREGNANCY

A normal pregnancy lasts about 9 months, or 39 weeks, after the beginning of the last menstrual period. Each stage of pregnancy, called a trimester, has its own special characteristics.

The first trimester of pregnancy is the most critical for the developing foetus, because it is during this period that the infant's brain, arms, legs, and internal organs are formed. During this time, some women experience strange cravings for unusual substances such as ice, clay, or pickles; this condition is often related to a lack of iron, as the new baby takes the nutrients it needs to grow from its mother.

As the pregnancy enters the second trimester, (12–24 weeks) these symptoms subside while new ones arise. The most noticeable one is weight-gain; most physicians now approve of a gain of about 9 to 12 kg (about 22 to 26 lb.) by the end of pregnancy. The foetus continues to form

its internal organs and muscles through the second and third trimesters, until it is ready to come out into the world.

Childbirth usually happens after the 36th week of pregnancy. Some babies, however, are born prematurely, or before this time. These babies can often face serious health problems, as they are born before their bodies have fully developed. Childbirth begins with irregular contractions that begin to force the baby out of the uterus and through the birth canal. These contractions, called labour, increase in frequency and intensity as the process continues. First-time mothers are usually in labour for 13 to 14 hours, while women who have previously given birth are usually in labour only 8 or 9 hours.

Finally, the baby is expelled from the womb, usually head first, and starts breathing air, resulting in the baby's first cry, a sound which will become familiar to its parents in the years to come.

CHILD BIRTH

3 In pairs, speak about what you've been told about your own birth or some births in your family.

Pregnancy and Childbirth

conception
she's pregnant
she's expecting (a baby)
maternity clothing
morning sickness
ante-natal clinic / classes
"when are you (is it) due?"
to go into labour

labour pains
to give birth to
to have a baby
postnatal depression / postpartum
obstetrician
maternity ward
natural childbirth
home birth

midwife
miscarriage
abortion
premature birth
Caesarean birth / delivery
forceps delivery
epidural
induced birth
confinement

HEALTH – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Decide which of the following expressions collocates with HEALTH (a) and which with DISEASE (b).

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 to transmit | 7 is failing |
| 2 to have | 8 hereditary |
| 3 chronic | 9 to be in good |
| 4 prone to | 10 susceptibility to |
| 5 fragile | 11 took a turn for the worse |
| 6 to suffer from | 12 to neglect |

These words are used metaphorically in the gapped sentences. Place them appropriately.

INFECTIOUS/CONTAGIOUS ILLS CRIPPLING SICK/AILING UNHEALTHY
SYMPTOMS PARALYSED PAIN

- 13 Organised crime is now taking a(n) _____ interest in computer fraud.
14 Politicians are now being blamed for all the _____ of society.
15 The fact is that we are dealing with a(n) _____ economy here.
16 His speech was a success; and what's more, his enthusiasm seems to be _____.
17 There were other _____ of decline.
18 His economic reforms brought more _____ than progress.
19 Last summer many travel agencies suffered a _____ blow.
20 The latest events left the country with a _____ government unable to react quickly.

Match the following expressions in the left column with their meanings on the right.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 21 PWA | a any taboo medical condition (e.g. truancy) |
| 22 syndrome (e.g. School Phobia Syndrome) | b to feel unwell |
| 23 shrink / head shrinker | c nearly blind |
| 24 visually challenged / handicapped | d cancer (the language of obituary notices) |
| 25 hearing impaired / hard of hearing | e dead |
| 26 feet first | f the consequence of negligence |
| 27 long illness | g psychiatrist |
| 28 (therapeutic/surgical) misadventure | h partly deaf |
| 29 partially sighted | i people living with AIDS, AIDS victims |
| 30 to feel funny / have a funny tummy | j blind |

HEALTH – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Decide which of the following expressions collocates with HEALTH (a) and which with DISEASE (b).

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 to affect | 7 deteriorated |
| 2 broke down | 8 incapacitated by |
| 3 broke out | 9 to be in bad |
| 4 contagious | 10 to look after |
| 5 fatal | 11 to die of |
| 6 to inoculate sb against | 12 to wipe out |

These words are used metaphorically in the gapped sentences. Place them appropriately.

PAINFUL HEALTHY HEADACHE DEADLY BRUISED
FATAL CANCER JAUNDICED

- 13 After his criticism there were also a few _____ egos and broken hearts.
- 14 The concept of equality is the basis of a _____ society.
- 15 I like to cook and I love eating and that's a _____ combination.
- 16 His reports are always accurate and reliable but _____ boring.
- 17 The transition to market economy will be slow and _____.
- 18 We have to fight against racism. It is a _____ sweeping across Europe.
- 19 The biggest _____ for teachers is testing the students.
- 20 What you usually get, is just a _____ view of a society.

Match the following expressions in the left column with their meanings on the right.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 21 happy event | a near death / very old |
| 22 facts (of life) | b to die |
| 23 feed the fishes | c the human process of reproduction |
| 24 one foot in the grave | d the birth of a child |
| 25 smear | e a test for cervical cancer |
| 26 throw up | f a weak heart |
| 27 coronary insufficiency / heart condition | g cancer (medical jargon) |
| 28 Lucy in the sky with diamonds | h haemorrhoids |
| 29 mitotic disease | i to vomit |
| 30 Emmas, piles | j LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide) |

SPORT

1 Are you a sportsperson? Which is your favourite sport?
Interview at least two other people and find out the following information.

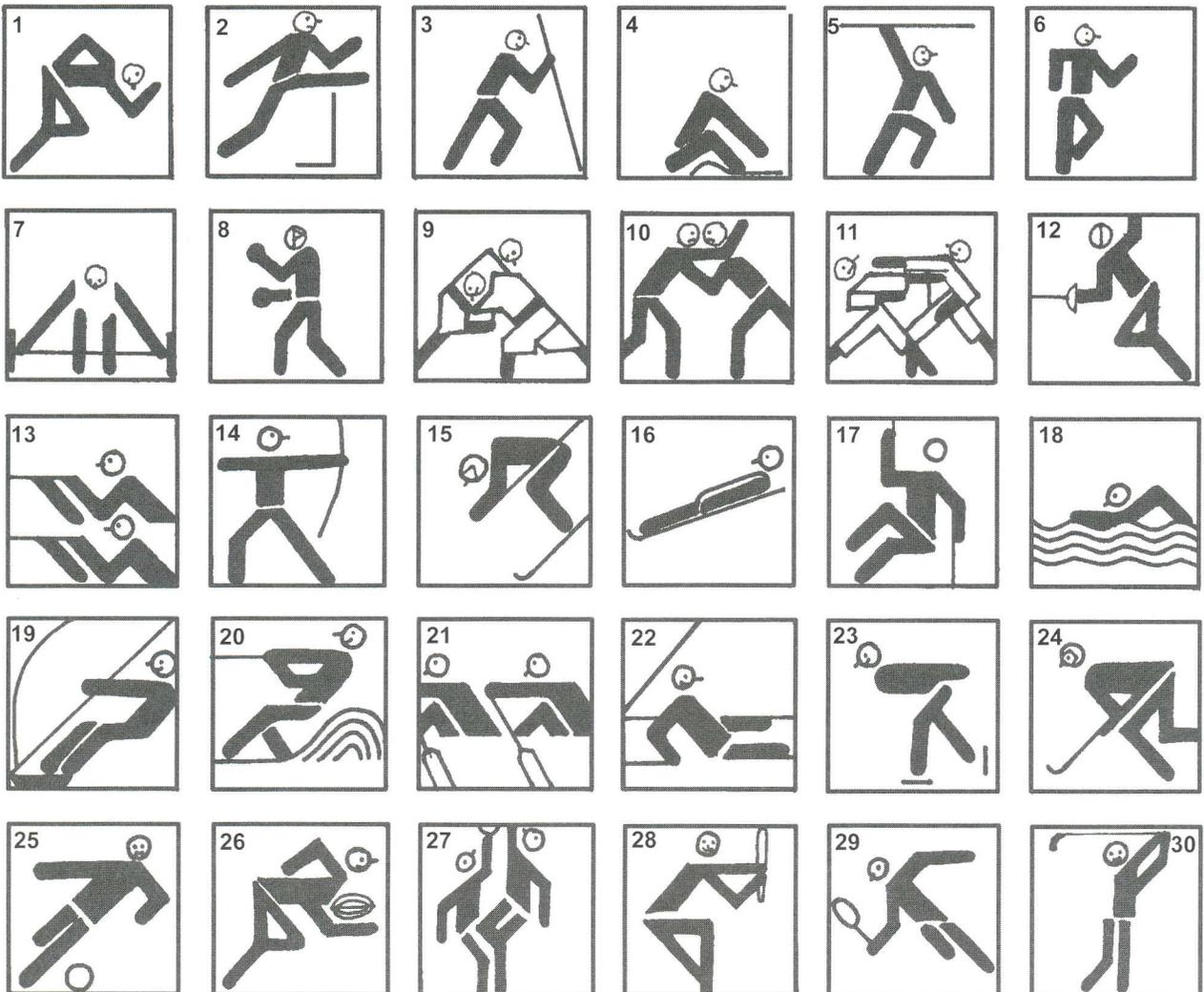
What are their favourite summer and winter sports?

Do they prefer indoor or outdoor sports?

How many hours per week / month do they spend playing them?

What sports do they like watching on TV?

2 Look at the following symbols and give the names of the sports you recognize. Try to find the names for the sports you do not know in English on the following page. Talk to your partner or teacher about those you cannot name.



Sports in the Modern Summer Olympic Games

ARCHERY

to draw a bow
to shoot
bow and arrow
target
bowstring

BADMINTON

to serve
to return
tie-break
badminton court
net
lightweight rackets
shuttlecock

BASEBALL

to hit
to throw
to pitch
to catch
bat
batting helmet
catcher's mask
b. glove
b. field

BASKETBALL

to bounce
to dribble
to travel
to shoot
backboard
b. hoop
net
b. court

BOXING

to punch
to hit below the belt
to throw in the towel
to win on points
b. gloves
b. trunks
ring

CANOING

canoe
kayak
paddles
slalom and wildwater
canoeing and
kayaking
to commit a fault

CYCLING / BICYCLING / BIKING

to race
bicycle / bike
road races
track or velodrome races
off-road mountain bike
races
youth BMX races
helmets
padded gloves and
shorts
stiff-soled shoes
goggles
to ride / cycle

DIVING

to dive
competitive diving
takeoff
springboard
to go diving
to go snorkelling
scuba

EQUESTRIAN SPORTS

horse
rider
dressage
show jumping
and three-day
eventing
obstacles
hurdles
steplechase

FENCING

foil
épée and sabre
mask / visor
to score touches
épée fencing is one of
the five events in the
modern pentathlon

FIELD HOCKEY

ball
sticks
shirts and shorts
or skirts
mouth and shin guards
goalkeepers
face guards
and gloves
umpires
timekeepers and
scorekeepers

GYMNASTICS

sports gymnastics
(men and women):
floor exercise:
mat
knee bend
somersault
cartwheel
handstand
headstand
pommel horse, vault,
rings, parallel bars,
horizontal bar,
uneven bars, balance
beam
rhythmic sports
gymnastics
(only women): mat, rope,
a hoop, a ball, clubs
and a ribbon
floor exercise – judged
on composition and
execution

TEAM HANDBALL

an indoor court game
to throw
pass
dribble
catch
bounce
hold or strike the ball

JUDO

adapted from traditional
Japanese martial art,
means "gentle way"
to throw or pin the
opponent on the mat
to apply holds
4 minutes for women and
5 minutes for men
to score an ippon
jacket
trousers
no socks or shoes
belts of different colours

MARATHON

running event
traditionally the longest
race, 42 km to duplicate
the distance run by
a Greek soldier from the
town of Marathon to
Athens in 490 BC to
bring the news of a
Greek victory over the
Persians

PENTATHLON

originally: jumping,
running, wrestling,
throwing the discus,
and hurling the spear
or javelin
nowadays: the contest
includes pistol
shooting, fencing,
swimming, an
equestrian event, and
cross-country running

ROWING

to pull one oar
to face the stern
to steer the boat
cox(swain)
to pull a pair of oars –
sculling

TARGET SHOOTING

to aim
to fire a pistol / gun
a rifle
bull's-eye
small-bore
high-power events

SWIMMING

swimsuit / bathing suit
bathing cap
goggles
can you do the crawl
breaststroke
backstroke
butterfly
sidestroke
freestyle
starting block
swimming lane
medley race
relay

TABLE TENNIS

table
lightweight celluloid ball
and small rackets
often called bats or
paddles
to hold
to hit
to miss the ball
to touch the net
umpire
net ball

edge ball
strokes
to serve
to return

ATHLETICS (GB) / TRACK AND FIELD (US)

spikes
running shoes
"on your marks, get set,
go!"
on the starting blocks
to jump the gun
inside × outside lanes
dash / sprint
sprinter
hurdling
middle-distance run
distance run
long-distance runner
relay
steeplechase
walk
high jump
pole vault
long jump
triple jump
shot put
discus/hammer/javelin
throw
decathlon and heptathlon

VOLLEYBALL

court
high net
volleyball
to serve
to hit
to return the ball
to rotate / move
clockwise
referee
scorer
umpire
line judges; spikers
blockers – single or
multiple blocks

WATER POLO

to shoot / hold a ball
netted goals
goalie
pool
referee, goal judge
timekeeper
recorder
to impede movement
penalties

WEIGHTLIFTING

to lift metal weights
encased in rubber

barbell – a steel rod to
which plates (also
called disks) of
different weights may
be attached by
means of clamps
called spin-lock
collars

snatch
clean and jerk
different classes
according to body
weight

WRESTLING

freestyle: holds below the
waist and the use of
the legs
Graeco-Roman: tripping,
tackling and using the
legs to secure a hold
are not permitted;
attempt either to
throw the opponent to
the mat or to use
holds to drop him to
the mat

SAILING

sailboat
bow

stern
life-jacket
sailing or running before
the wind
sailing off the wind
fixed keel
mast
wishbone

SOCCER

field (US)
(association) football /
football pitch (GB)
strip
shin-guards
kick-off
direct free kick
to foul
obstruction
penalty
throw-in
goal kick
to dribble
to pass
to tackle
to shoot
to hit the post
crossbar
goalkeeper / goalie
offside
referee
linesmen

Sports in the Winter Olympics

SKIING

Alpine
downhill s.
slalom
giant slalom
combined event
ski boots
bindings
poles
steep slopes
ski-tow
ski-lift
T-bar lift
chair lift
gondola lift
cable car / aerial
tramway (US)
funicular
Nordic
cross-country s.
wax
ski jumping
free-style skiing

snowboarding

BIATHLON

combined cross-
country skiing and
rifle-shooting

BOBSLEDDING

sledge (GB) /sled (US)
twisting courses on
hillsides
glare ice
to push the sledge
forward
to leap into position
to "bob" the sledge
captain
braker

ICE HOCKEY

goal nets
playing area

skaters
long sticks
puck
protective pads
helmets
thick gloves
referee
linesmen
face-off / throw-in
attacking zone
offside
icing
cross-check
hat trick
sudden-death overtime
penalties – holding,
tripping, slashing
with the stick
power play
shoot-out

ICE SKATING

rink

speed skating
skates
skate-guards
figure-skating:
compulsories
individuals
free skating
pairs skating
ice dancing

LUGE

a racing toboggan on
which riders lie on their
backs, descending feet
first

THE OLYMPICS

FROM ATHENS TO LONDON

1 Try to list all of the activities that are part of the Olympics today. Which of them do you think were part of the original Olympics in ancient Greece? Was there anything in the original Olympics that is missing today?

2 Read the following text and match the appropriate title to each paragraph.

- a The rebirth of a tradition
- b War and conflict in the Games
- c The success of the Games
- d Keeping the Games fair
- e Establishing the tradition

3 In the text opposite find a word that means:

- 1 was formed in imitation of
- 2 special importance or prominence attached to st
- 3 identifying divinity or spirituality in nature; pantheistic
- 4 came into conflict
- 5 promote the growth or development of
- 6 transmit by radio or television
- 7 heightening, intensifying or improving the quality
- 8 any of a group of organic compounds with a characteristic structure of four rings of carbon atoms, including many hormones, alkaloids, and vitamins
- 9 have been deprived of
- 10 combined in refusing to join the Games as punishment

1 In 1896, a French nobleman named Pierre de Coubertin welcomed athletes from thirteen countries to compete in the first Olympic Games in Athens. Of course, this event was not the first of its kind. Rather, it was modelled on the ancient Greek Olympic Games held between city states during the 'Golden Age' of Greece. The modern version of the games, however, is very different from the original ones.

2 The original Olympics, in fact, had very little to do with sports at all. Of all the games held throughout Greece, those staged at Olympia in honour of Zeus are the most famous. The records of the earliest Olympics, which took place in 776 BC, show that there was only one sporting event at all: a foot race of about 180 meters. In these early competitions, the emphasis was more on cultural activities such as music and theatre. It was only in the 18th Olympics, when the warlike Spartans began participating, that many sporting activities such as wrestling, discus throwing, and chariot racing began to become more important than the cultural aspects of the competitions. The Olympics continued to play an important role in Greek society until 393 AD, when the Roman emperor Theodosius I outlawed them because their pagan nature clashed with the Christian ideology of the Empire.



3 Today, the Olympic Games have nothing to do with honouring gods. Rather, they are inspired by the ideal that friendly non-violent competition can foster respect and understanding between nations. In some respects, the Olympics have been successful at this. Almost all of the world's countries compete regularly in the event, and every four years the games move to another city, thus allowing its participants to come in contact with different cultures. The Olympics have also become incredibly popular thanks to advances in technology that now allow the games to be broadcast live across the planet.

4 But the games have also had their share of problems. One of them has been the use of performance-enhancing drugs by athletes in the Olympics. To counter this, the International Olympics Committee has set up a team of doctors who check players for steroids and other drugs in their blood. Several athletes have been stripped of their medals because of drug use.

5 The spirit of non-violent competition has also been disrupted by international politics. The PLO murdered Israeli athletes in Munich 1972, and many countries have boycotted the games on numerous occasions: in 1976, thirty-three African countries refused to take part in the Olympics to protest against apartheid in South Africa, and the United States and the Soviet Union traded boycotts in the 1980s, with the US and its allies refusing to participate in the 1980 Summer Games in Moscow, and the USSR and its allies doing the same in the 1984 Summer Games in Los Angeles. These problems just go to show that although the Olympic Games reflect some of our loftiest ideals they also reflect some of our worst conflicts.

WINTER SPORTS

1 How good a skier are you? If you ski, tell a partner about your first time on skis. If you have never been skiing, discuss some other activity that you have learned and the first time you tried it (e.g. surfing, roller skating, riding a bicycle, etc.).

2 Now read the text and fill the gaps with the words below:

slope / piste
skis
hard-packed
lodge
poles
lift
ticket / ski pass / lift pass
snowplough
cross-country
rack
downhill
skiing holiday

3 After filling in the gaps, read the text again and underline words and phrases that you want to remember.

4 Retell the story from the text in your own words. Use as many of the words you inserted as possible.

5 Write a short paragraph (100 words maximum) describing a different first attempt at skiing, using the same vocabulary again. Then read it to your partner.

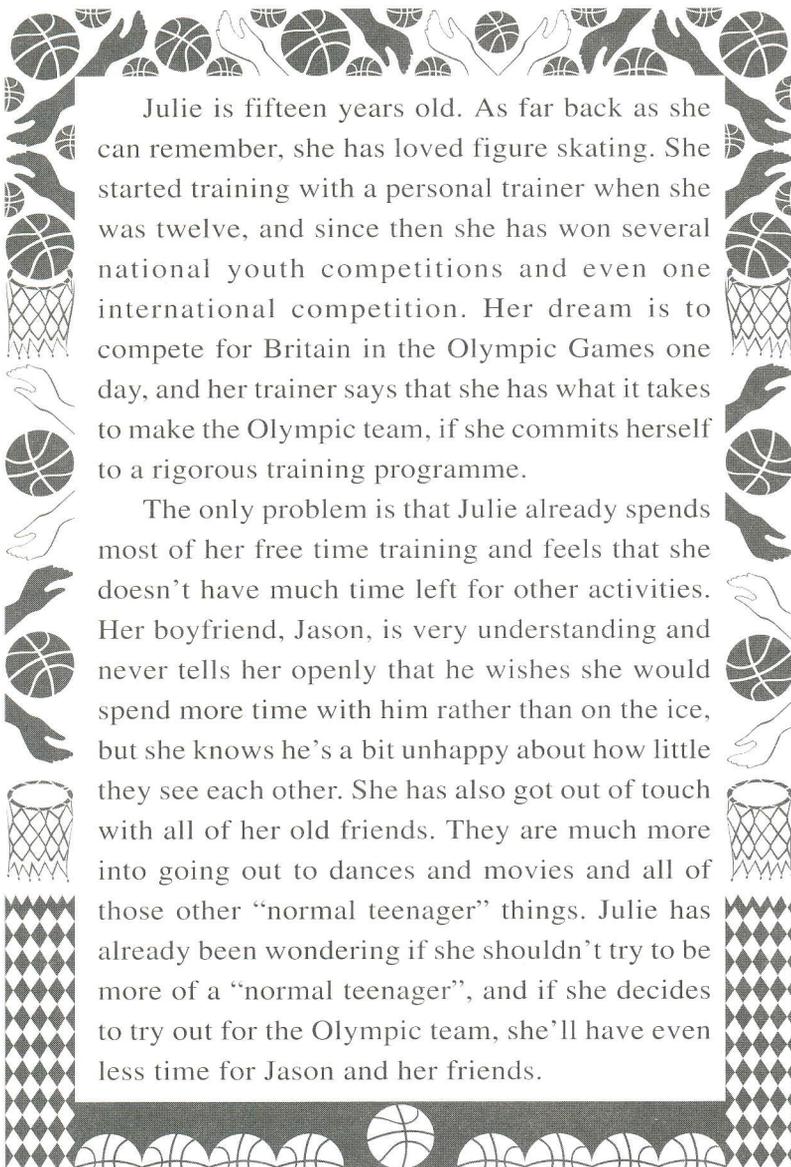
It was about 11 a.m. on a bright February morning when we finally arrived at our ski 1_____, ready for our 2_____. Being terribly excited, I immediately jumped out and started trying to get the skis off of the ski 3_____. All of my friends, however, went to the side of the road and started picking up handfuls of snow, muttering to each other in low voices. As I picked up a handful of snow, I realised why they all looked so worried. It was 4_____, snow that had been melted by a warm spell and then frozen again. Not exactly the perfect conditions for my first attempt at 5_____ skiing.



I was determined to try, however, and a half hour later I was sitting at the bottom of a threatening ski 6_____, trying to get used to standing on skis. My first disaster came at the ski 7_____. I showed the operator my 8_____ and, when it was finally my turn, he grabbed a little rope and shoved it between my legs. I was jerked up the slope, and made it about fifteen feet before I fell off and slid back down to the bottom. It took four embarrassing tries before I finally managed to stay up until the top.

Once at the top, I wished I had never tried. I pushed off, trying to 9_____ as my friends had taught me, keeping my 10_____ pointing inward in a little v, but I instantly realised I had no control over where and how fast I was going. I lost both of my 11_____, hit two trees and one old lady, and fell down countless times before I reached the bottom with a twisted knee and a wide range of bruises and scrapes. My friends encouraged me to keep trying, but I just shook my head and walked off to the pub, stopping to throw my useless lift ticket in the rubbish can. Next time, I thought, I'll try 12_____ skiing instead.

PROFESSIONAL SPORT



Julie is fifteen years old. As far back as she can remember, she has loved figure skating. She started training with a personal trainer when she was twelve, and since then she has won several national youth competitions and even one international competition. Her dream is to compete for Britain in the Olympic Games one day, and her trainer says that she has what it takes to make the Olympic team, if she commits herself to a rigorous training programme.

The only problem is that Julie already spends most of her free time training and feels that she doesn't have much time left for other activities. Her boyfriend, Jason, is very understanding and never tells her openly that he wishes she would spend more time with him rather than on the ice, but she knows he's a bit unhappy about how little they see each other. She has also got out of touch with all of her old friends. They are much more into going out to dances and movies and all of those other "normal teenager" things. Julie has already been wondering if she shouldn't try to be more of a "normal teenager", and if she decides to try out for the Olympic team, she'll have even less time for Jason and her friends.

1 Athletes in many sports such as tennis and gymnastics start training at a very early age and devote a large part of their lives to their sport. What are your feelings on this matter? Should minors be banned from playing in the Olympics and in professional sports?

2 Read the passage and discuss Julie's situation. Is this a common situation in your country? Do you know anyone who is in a similar situation?

3 In groups of five or six, take turns giving Julie advice on what she should do, from several different points of view.

Possible roles: Julie, Jason, trainer, school friend, skating friend, parents, sponsor.

Act out what different combinations of these people might say to each other, e.g. mother – trainer, school – friend – sponsor.

4 Try to imagine that you are a parent of a promising ten-year-old swimmer. Your partner wants her to pursue a professional career. She herself is very fond of competing but has other talents as well. Actually, she is good at almost anything that comes her way...

5 Roleplay a discussion with your partner about your daughter's future.

Professional Sport

sportsman
 sportswoman
 to take part in a sport
 to cheat / not to play fair
 amateur / non-professional
 professional × "shamateur"
 anabolic steroids
 muscle mass
 beta blockers
 to fail a drug test
 mandatory / obligatory urine testing
 to feel part of a team / team spirit
 to win × lose × draw

gold medal
 world record
 champion
 to be a good / bad loser
 coach / trainer
 transfer fee
 qualifying matches
 needle match (GB) / grudge match (US)
 a "friendly" between A and B (GB) / a non-conference match (US)
 home (field) advantage
 unfair advantage
 in the stands
 on the terraces
 hooliganism
 boycott

ban
 suspension
 TV revenues
 exclusive coverage

Giving advice

I advise you to...
 Take my advice and...
 You should / ought to
 You'd better (not)...
 If I were you, I'd...
 Don't ...
 You can't please everybody.
 You need to set your priorities.
 You're burning the candle at both ends.

SPORTS IN ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

Read the following articles about various sports and fill in the names of sports below.

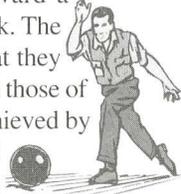
SKITTLES AMERICAN FOOTBALL CRICKET RUGBY GOLF BOWLING BOWLS

1 _____ is a cross-country game played by striking a small ball with various clubs from a series of teeing grounds into a like series of holes on a course. The player who holes his ball in the fewest strokes wins. The game originated in Scotland and has spread from obscure antiquity to worldwide popularity. Its players participate at every level, from recreational _____ to popular televised professional tournaments. Despite its attractiveness, _____ is not a game for everyone; it requires a high degree of skill that is honed only with great patience and dedication, and it requires an investment in equipment and fees that persons of average means may not feel worthwhile. The novice is often discouraged by these factors.



2 The origin of _____ is uncertain. The game was first definitively recorded at Guildford in Surrey at the end of the 16th century, and the first known set of rules was written in 1744. The Marylebone _____ Club, which is the world governing body of the sport, was formed in 1787. It is a game played with bat and ball between two teams of 11 players each on a large field, which centres upon two upright wickets, each defended by a batsman. A bowler throws the ball (with a straight-arm, usually overhand delivery), attempting to put out the batsman by hitting the wicket or in other ways. Runs are scored each time that the batsmen exchange positions without being put out.

3 Lawn _____, outdoor game in which a ball (known as a bowl) is rolled toward a smaller stationary ball, called a jack. The object is to roll one's bowls so that they come to rest nearer to the jack than those of an opponent; this is sometimes achieved by knocking aside an opponent's bowl or the jack. A form of _____ was played in ancient Egypt, and by the Middle Ages the game was well-known in continental Europe. The International Bowling Board, the ruling body of lawn _____, was founded in 1905.



4 The modern sport of _____ at pins probably originated in ancient Germany, not as a sport but as a religious ceremony. As early as the 3rd or 4th century AD, in rites held in the cloisters of churches, parishioners may have placed their ever-present club, or Kegel (the implement most Germans carried for sport and, certainly, self-protection), at one end

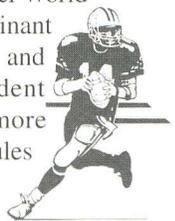
of a runway resembling a modern _____ lane. The Kegel was said to represent the Heide ("heathen"). A stone was rolled at the Heide, and those successfully toppling it were believed to have cleansed themselves of sin. Although the peasants' club evolved into pins, the association remained, and even today bowlers are often called keglers.



5 _____ was played for centuries in public houses or clubs, mostly in western England and the Midlands, southern Wales, and the Lothian region of Scotland. The rules and methods of scoring varied from place to place, but the basic principle of bowling a wooden or rubber ball (weighing about 10 pounds [4.5kilograms]) at nine large, oval-headed pins, set in diamond formation 21 feet (about 6.5 m) away, remained the same.

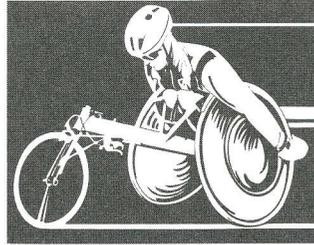
6 According to legend, _____ began in 1823, when, during a game of football at _____ School, William Webb Ellis picked up the ball and ran with it. The run was a clear violation of the rules of the game that later came to be called association football, or soccer; but the illegality proved popular and led to the game of _____, a primarily ball-handling game, as distinct from soccer, a primarily kicking game. In 1846, rules of _____ were published at the school. In 1863, the Football Association (FA) was formed in London, and after a futile attempt to reconcile the rules to accommodate the two games, _____ was left outside the FA.

7 Professional _____ began in the 1890s, but it was not until the rise of television after World War II that it became one of the dominant American sports. A series of deaths and injuries in 1905 prompted President Theodore Roosevelt to call for more changes to make the game safer. Rules were thus created that included the introduction of the forward pass, new formations, and the prohibition of blocking with extended arms. In 1910, the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA) was formed to govern American intercollegiate competition. Postseason, or "bowl," games played between leading college teams, became popular and now include the Rose Bowl (Pasadena, Calif.), Orange Bowl (Miami), Sugar Bowl (New Orleans), Sun Bowl (El Paso, Texas), Cotton Bowl (Dallas, Texas), and Gator Bowl (Jacksonville, Fla.).



THE GAMES PEOPLE PLAY

1 What kind of person would these sports be suitable for?
What personality is not likely to be very good at them?



2 Look at the following words and group them under the sport they refer to. Some words may be used for more than one sport.

- throw-in
- serve
- shoot
- basket
- cleats
- corner kick
- travel
- baseline
- slam
- forehand
- net
- defence × offence
- umpire / referee
- backhand
- goalie

3 In small groups, invent a new sport. Talk about the equipment needed to play it, some of the rules, and how to play it. Then use the space below and write a short description of your sport and present it to the class.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

SPORT – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

The following sentences should be rearranged. Read them and write numbers 1–7 to indicate the correct order. The first is g and the last is e.

- a Participants can display their knowledge of athletes without revealing anything considered private.
- b Games between teams classified as “major football powers” attract nation-wide television audiences that number in the millions.
- c Some football and basketball coaches are paid higher salaries than the presidents of their institutions.
- d College sports, especially football, are conducted in an atmosphere of intense excitement.
- e Expressions from sports are extraordinarily common in everyday American speech. Baseball is probably the source of more idiomatic expressions than any other sport.
- f Sports are a very frequent topic of conversation, especially among males. “Small talk” about sports is safe – interesting, but not too personal.
- g Nowhere else in the world are sports associated with colleges and universities in the way they are in the United States.

Identify the correct collocations using the given words.

FIELD PITCH COURSE COURT RINK POOL

- | | | | |
|----|----------|----|------------|
| 8 | football | 12 | ice |
| 9 | baseball | 13 | volleyball |
| 10 | golf | 14 | tennis |
| 11 | swimming | 15 | roller |

The following expressions, used to talk about sport and games, can also be used metaphorically. According to their meaning, decide in which sentences (16–30) they belong.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| trump card | to gamble |
| keep / play one’s cards close to one’s chest | ranked as favourite |
| unsporting | to be in the running |
| key player | to be out of the running |
| moving the goalposts | to make all the running |
| the odds are | skating on thin ice |
| the stakes | plain sailing |
| to be a gamble | |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 16 The new leader has produced the _____ – reforms in the health-care system. | 24 They were always _____ so that nobody could tell what they actually wanted. |
| 17 He _____, we have no idea what he is up to. | 25 In the competition he was _____ for the job. |
| 18 Marriage is a _____. | 26 This gives you an advantage in the promotion _____. |
| 19 The company _____ all on the new factory. | 27 To be _____ to win this wonderful holiday just fill in the coupon and send it in. |
| 20 He has been _____ and so far he has always got away with it. | 28 This may have put him _____ for the title. |
| 21 It was _____, we had no problems at all. | 29 Women _____ in the demands for change. |
| 22 I found their behaviour _____. They had no reason for doing that to me. | 30 _____ that this is not going to work. |
| 23 Although he has no right to vote, he is a _____ in the scheme. | |

SPORT – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The following sentences should be rearranged. Read them and write numbers 1–7 to indicate the correct order.

- a Read the newspapers or look in the telephone book under the name of whatever sport interests you for things such as ski clubs, walking clubs, fencing, gymnastics, judo, karate, and aerobic classes, ice skating, squash and racquetball clubs, bicycle clubs, bowling clubs, riding groups, and bird-watching clubs.
- b Roller-skating, Frisbee throwing, and kite flying are all popular, especially in parks; one can also find paths for biking, jogging, or walking in these areas.
- c Newcomers to the United States often find it difficult to participate in the particular sports they enjoy.
- d Golf and tennis are very popular.
- e Actually, this need not be so.
- f In addition to private clubs, nearly all cities maintain numerous tennis courts and golf courses which are open to the public for a fee.
- g By knowing where to look, it's possible to find a way to participate in any sport.

Identify the correct collocations using the given words.

	WRESTLER	TRACK	SHOES	RINK	TABLE	HOOP	RACQUET	RING
8	running			12	squash			
9	boxing			13	basketball			
10	skating			14	walking			
11	billiards / pool			15	sumo			

The following expressions, used to talk about sport and games, can also be used metaphorically. According to their meaning, decide in which sentences (16–30) they belong.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| first past the post | play fair |
| outsider | marathon |
| put / lay your cards on the table | own goal |
| to be a pawn in | baiting |
| play someone's game | neck and neck |
| touch base (with someone) | at stake |
| game's up | against all odds |
| good sport | |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 16 Running _____ as candidates were the former Prime Minister and his opponent. | 23 He wants me to _____, but he can forget about it: I'll quit the job. |
| 17 Until the election campaign started, he was an unknown _____. | 24 I am certainly not in the mood to be a _____. |
| 18 Hundreds of jobs were _____. | 25 Always _____ with me, I warn you. |
| 19 He managed to accomplish the task _____. | 26 The meeting was a _____ three-hour session. |
| 20 The existing _____ system of electing the government is considered by many people to be unfair. | 27 Come on, _____, there is no need to hide anything. |
| 21 I need to _____ with him on this matter. | 28 I suppose I'm proving to myself I'm not just a _____ in some financial system; I'm an independent person. |
| 22 Giving that project up would be an _____. It should be promoted and developed. | 29 When the last attempt failed, he realised that the _____. |
| | 30 This racist _____ seems to be going on and on. |

PHRASES AND PHRASAL VERBS

Throughout the book you will find a number of verbs and phrases which are typical of everyday conversation. This page should remind you of some of them. Fill in the missing part and explain the meaning of the short phrases. The phrases have been grouped by topics:

FAMILY

- 1 he takes _____ his father
- 2 go _____ maternity leave
- 3 kiss and make _____
- 4 they go _____ together
- 5 set _____ home / house

HOME

- 1 her career has gone _____ the roof
- 2 take _____ a loan
- 3 take _____ one's shoes
- 4 put _____ a phone jack
- 5 put a ceiling _____ the income of sb

FOOD

- 1 put the kettle _____
- 2 take-_____ (restaurant)
- 3 go _____ for dinner
- 4 the milk has gone _____

SHOPPING

- 1 go _____ a shopping spree
- 2 prices have gone _____ or _____
- 3 I was cheated – they took me _____.
- 4 What size do you take _____ shoes?

CLOTHES

- 1 take care _____ clothes
- 2 take _____ a hemline
- 3 take _____ waists
- 4 go _____ of vogue
- 5 put a sock _____ it

WORK & LEISURE

- 1 make _____ a cheque _____ sb
- 2 make _____ meet
- 3 put _____ a price
- 4 go _____ strike
- 5 take a day _____

TOWN & COUNTRY

- 1 food that has gone _____
- 2 go _____ alone at night

- 3 make _____ a story
- 4 take sb _____ court
- 5 take _____ crime

SIGHTSEEING

- 1 put a spell _____ sb
- 2 take sb _____ st
- 3 make a mention _____ st

TRAVEL

- 1 make your way _____ st
- 2 take _____ the hand-break
- 3 put _____ one's seat belt
- 4 put the car _____ neutral / reverse
- 5 set foot _____ dry land
- 6 put _____ the clutch
- 7 put _____ the brake
- 8 take the wind _____ of one's sails

FARMING

- 1 make hay _____ the sun shines
- 2 a watchdog committee has been set _____
- 3 take st _____ granted

CLIMATE

- 1 take a rain check _____ dinner
- 2 take steps _____ protect communities
_____ st
- 3 It's going to clear _____.
- 4 It's going to turn _____ fine.

THE HUMAN BODY

- 1 have one's tonsils taken _____
- 2 it'll take some neck / gall _____ try that
- 3 put one's foot _____ it

HEALTH

- 1 put sb _____ a splint
- 2 take care _____ sb

MEDIA

NEWSPAPERS

1 How do you feel about the press in your country? Do you feel that it keeps you well informed?

2 Do you have a tabloid press or gutter press in your country? How does it differ from the quality press, both in content and style?

Find a word in the text that means:

- 1 newspapers, usually popular in style with bold headlines and large photographs, having pages of half size
- 2 the state of requiring immediate action or attention
- 3 freelance photographers who pursue celebrities to get photographs of them
- 4 exceeding proper or permitted limits
- 5 the act or an instance of intruding
- 6 the number of copies sold, especially of journals and newspapers
- 7 to institute civil legal proceedings against someone
- 8 people or documents providing evidence that can be relied on
- 9 reporting that inquires intensively into controversial issues
- 10 unknown or undeclared source or authorship

Here are the answers. What questions do they answer?

- a More of an embarrassment than a real problem.
- b Princess Diana's death.
- c Invasion of privacy and personal attacks.
- d To sell the most newspapers.
- e Sue them for libel.
- f They won't want to talk to reporters.
- g The judges.

A RESPONSIBLE PRESS OR LAPDOG JOURNALISM?

Although the tabloid press has long been the subject of scorn and criticism in British society, it was, for the most part, not taken as anything too serious. The sleazy, sensationalised newspapers were seen more as an embarrassment and a minor irritation than a real problem. The death of Diana, Princess of Wales, however, lent a new urgency to the whole issue. A fairy tale created and maintained by the tabloids was brought to a tragic end, at least in part by the behaviour of the *paparazzi*. In the public outcry that followed Diana's death, many called for strong action against the excesses of tabloid reporters and photographers. But how will these actions, if taken, affect British citizens and their right to be fully informed?

Many people agree that the tabloid newspapers often do go too far. Obviously, no celebrity can escape some level of intrusion by the media. However, the tabloid press does not always stop at this. Many celebrities have had to endure public exposure of the most intimate details of their lives, as paparazzi photographers snap shots of them in every imaginable setting. They have also had to endure countless assaults on their reputations, as the tabloid papers report half-truths and dirty rumours as if they were established facts. There are truly no holds barred in the battle to get the largest circulation.

So, what can be done? One way to keep journalists from this type of irresponsible behaviour is through the courts. If a newspaper writes an untrue story about you, or damages someone's reputation by telling lies about them in print, it can be sued for *libel*. Newspapers therefore have to make sure that their stories are based on the facts provided by reliable sources – the people who newspaper writers get their information from. Therefore, if I write a story which accuses an MP of being an alcoholic, I have to have at least one source who will testify that he or she has actually seen that person habitually drunk.

Sounds reasonable, right? Like many well-meaning laws, however, the libel laws can also be abused. The reason for this is that the line between investigative reporting and abusive paparazzi reporting is very difficult to draw. Suppose, for instance, that you were writing a story about the illegal disposal of nuclear waste at a local nuclear plant, and you were basing your story on the information supplied by a member of the plant's management. If your source's employers found out about this, they would most likely sack that person. Your source will therefore want to remain anonymous. If the manager of the nuclear plant takes you to court, however, you might be forced to reveal the identity of your source, who would then most certainly be dismissed. If sources cannot remain anonymous, then people will be much less willing to talk to reporters about sensitive issues. The judges who rule over these cases must therefore be careful that the laws are applied in a way which ensures responsible journalism, while still leaving reporters the freedom to inform their readers about important issues.

3 List the various sections of a British newspaper. Put the sections you think are the most important first, and the ones you find less important last.

4  Andrew and Gary are sitting at a café, reading newspapers. Listen to their conversation and fill in what each of them likes about their newspaper and what they dislike about the other's newspaper.

Andrew	Gary

5 Newspaper headlines have little space to convey their message to the readers. They must therefore use short words in order to save space, while also using colourful words to draw the eye and add interest to a story. Because of this, newspaper headlines have developed a vocabulary of their own. Match the headline words on the left to their more common synonyms on the right.

- | | | |
|----------|--------|--------------------|
| attacks | ? | causes |
| backs | | criticises |
| ban | | rise |
| bid | | prohibit |
| cuts | | supports |
| deal | | disagreement |
| fight | | refuses |
| looms | | bribery |
| plummets | | opposes |
| probe | | reductions |
| quits | | ready |
| rejects | | promise |
| row | | attempt |
| set | | investigation |
| surge | | negotiation |
| talks | | agreement |
| triggers | | is about to happen |
| vow | | falls |
| graft | resign | |

6 Sort the following words into four newspaper headlines. Below are the first lines of each of the articles.

**CIG DRUG VOW BACKS TO QUILTS
SCANDAL GRAFT REVENUES CUTS
TAX OVER PLUMMET PROBE
WELFARE REJECT LOOM DEAL
REBELS KEEP AS BAN FIGHTING
MINISTER TEEN**

After an investigation into drug abuse amongst teens, it was announced yesterday that the government would support the proposed restrictions on cigarette sales.

The Minister of Defence announced today that he would resign, saying that he wanted to focus his full attention on the bribery charges being brought against him.

The government today announced major reductions in welfare spending due to the falling tax revenues brought about by the recession.

Rebel forces in the south of the country rejected yet another proposal to join peace talks with the government, saying that they were preparing another major offensive.

7 Now create a headline and first sentence of your own. Jumble the headline and invite a classmate to unscramble it.

TELEVISION

1 What is your attitude towards television? Complete the survey below, then compare your answers with the rest of the class. In four groups prepare a survey result for the entire class. Then compare your findings.

1	How much television do you watch a day?
	<input type="checkbox"/> none
	<input type="checkbox"/> 2 hours or less
	<input type="checkbox"/> 2–4 hours
	<input type="checkbox"/> 4–6 hours
	<input type="checkbox"/> more than 6 hours
2	What time of day do you usually watch television?
	<input type="checkbox"/> morning
	<input type="checkbox"/> noon
	<input type="checkbox"/> afternoon
	<input type="checkbox"/> evening
	<input type="checkbox"/> late-night
3	How many televisions do you have in your house?
	<input type="checkbox"/> none
	<input type="checkbox"/> one
	<input type="checkbox"/> two
	<input type="checkbox"/> three
	<input type="checkbox"/> four or more
4	Do you watch television while eating dinner?
	<input type="checkbox"/> yes
	<input type="checkbox"/> no
5	Do you have the television on while doing other activities (e.g. homework)?
	<input type="checkbox"/> yes
	<input type="checkbox"/> no
6	From the following list, mark your three favourite kinds of programme and your least favourite.
	<input type="checkbox"/> News / Current affairs
	<input type="checkbox"/> Situation comedies (sit-coms)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Films
	<input type="checkbox"/> Plays
	<input type="checkbox"/> Sports
	<input type="checkbox"/> Quiz shows
	<input type="checkbox"/> Documentaries / Educational programmes
	<input type="checkbox"/> Soap operas
	<input type="checkbox"/> Chat shows
	<input type="checkbox"/> Variety shows
	<input type="checkbox"/> Cartoons
	<input type="checkbox"/> Music programmes
	<input type="checkbox"/> Religious programmes

Television	
the TV set / the box / the tube	remote control
satellite dish	channels
cable	music × news × cultural channels
screen	teletext
controls	TV host
volume	anchor (news)
brightness	host (talk show)
contrast	compere

2 Now write a summary of the survey's findings for your class. Do you think that you are typical of your country? What differences might there be in a national survey?

3 What is "prime time"? Why is it important? What kinds of shows do you usually see during prime time?

4 You have been appointed the head of a new television station: ABC TV. Write out your broadcasting schedule for a Friday night, starting at 7.00 p.m. and ending at midnight.

ABC TV	
FRIDAY	
7.00	
8.00	
9.00	
10.00	
11.00	
12.00	

5 Now compare your schedule with other students'. Give reasons why your station is showing certain programmes at certain times. Whose schedule is better?

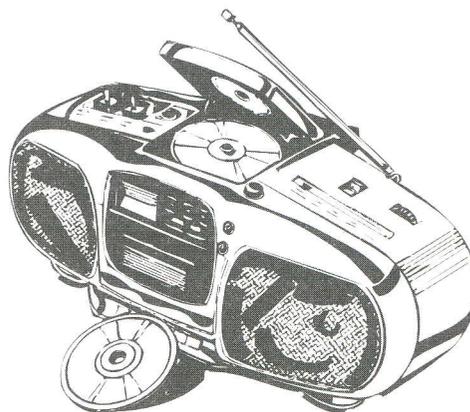
1 Unlike television stations, which usually try to provide a wide range of programmes for everybody, radio stations are often specialised, targeting one specific audience. In the chart below, write the names of four of the major radio stations in your city, then fill in the rest of the chart. (Try to pick different kinds of radio stations! Don't just give four pop music stations!)

	Station name	Kind of programmes	Target audience
1			
2			
3			
4			

2 What do you think of your local radio stations? What things could be improved?

3 Video recorders (VCRs), tape / cassette recorders, compact disc (CD) players and other modern machines that reproduce sound and images have very similar controls. Talk about their functions and how often you use them.

volume
record
play
fast forward
rewind
stop / eject
timer



Radio

broadcasting
radio stations
frequencies
AM (Amplitude Modulation)
FM (Frequency Modulation)
long wave
medium wave
short wave
wavelength
tune in to a station

newsreader (GB) / newscaster (US)
announcer
to host a show
chat-show host
disc jockey / deejay / DJ
phone-in
sitcom (situation comedy)
serial / series
public service radio (US)
panel discussion
competition
live broadcast

live music
The radio set
tuner (hi-fi)
receiver (technical)
bass
treble
graphic equaliser
to turn up the volume
turn it up × down
to switch / turn the set on × off
buttons

knobs
switches
digital display
preset stations
aerial (usually domestic) / antenna (US)
antenna (usually big, commercial) (GB)
interference
static

MEDIA – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Read the following text and put in the nouns and prepositions.

CASE FEATURES PART ALLOWANCES IN FOR ON OVER ON OF AFTER WITH

The shared authorship of news reports is suggested by their reliance on preferred forms of expression, their lack of stylistic idiosyncrasy (even in the reports of named journalists), and their consistency of style 1 _____ long periods of time. Once a publication or channel has opted 2 _____ a particular style, it tends to stay with it, and imposes it vigorously 3 _____ its material. This has particularly been the 4 _____ with the press. It is not difficult to identify certain 5 _____ which characterise certain newspapers. That is why it is possible to parody them so easily.

Probably the most famous journalistic parody of recent years appeared 6 _____ the UK newspaper *The Guardian* 7 _____ 1 April 1978. It reproduced the front pages 8 _____ twelve newspapers (clones of those published in the British Isles), said to have been published that day as 9 _____ of a journalistic merger on the island of San Serriffe – where the custom is evidently to name people and places 10 _____ concepts in the history of printing.

After making 11 _____ for the exaggerations which are part of a parody, a comparison 12 _____ today's papers would show little stylistic difference, despite a gap of over 15 years.

(From *David Crystal: The Cambridge Encyclopedia of the English Language*. Reprinted with permission of CUP 1995)

The following adjectives go together with the nouns (A) ARTICLE and/or (B) HEADLINES. Use them together in sentences.

- 13 to make
- 14 to edit
- 15 to summarise
- 16 to hit
- 17 deals with
- 18 to review
- 19 to publish
- 20 to skim

Read the following article and then suggest the opposites of the underlined words.

A monopoly until 1954, the BBC operates under a royal charter. It is funded from a fixed-term license fee paid by households with a television set. The BBC has four national radio networks.

The BBC has two 21 national television services, which together transmit more than 200 hours a week; both have mixed programmes that are coordinated 22 to avoid conflicts.

There is 23 substantial regional activity in both media. Of the six regions in the kingdom that formerly operated with a fair degree of 24 autonomy, only the “national” regions remain for Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland. 25 In place of the other three 26 regions, North, Midland, and West and South, there are 20 production centres for both radio and television. Regions 27 broadcast their own programmes by 28 opting out of Radio 4 or BBC 1 and using their own section of the 29 corresponding network. Radio Cymru broadcasts in the Welsh language for Wales. There are about 50 30 local FM (VHF) stations.

MEDIA – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Read the following text and put in the verbs and adjectives.

RECOGNIZE PROVIDE APPLAUD CRITICIZE CURRENT SEXIST VIOLENT
CONCERNED RACIST IMPORTANT SUPERFICIAL IN-DEPTH

Some Americans criticize their media, especially television, for being 1 _____ (by showing only white people as responsible, important individuals), 2 _____ (by portraying women as “sex objects” rather than as whole human beings), 3 _____, and inadequately 4 _____ with realizing their potential for educating the public. They 5 _____ the media for providing only 6 _____ treatment of complex topics and events and for distracting Americans from 7 _____ issues. They 8 _____ the non-commercial “public” radio and television networks for at least attempting to provide 9 _____ analysis of 10 _____ issues and “serious” entertainment programs. They also 11 _____ that some newspapers (for example, the *New York Times*, *Washington Post*, and *Christian Science Monitor*) and magazines 12 _____ substantive coverage and commentary on current affairs.

(From Gary Althen: *American Ways*. Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, ME. Copyright 1988).

Read the text and observe the collocations with the the words MEDIA and COVERAGE.

Why do the **mainstream** media **provide** such **partial** and **inadequate** coverage **of** our multicultural society? First, and obviously, the media **are owned** and **controlled by** the powerful and wealthy, whose interests are generally not in sympathy with those on the outside. And, historically, very few people of color and other minorities have been represented on the staffs of major television stations, newspapers, or magazines, making it unlikely that the concerns of their communities would **receive fair** or **adequate** coverage...

If you want **to get your feet wet** but don't know quite what interests you, pick up a copy of the *Utne Reader* at a magazine stand. Every other month, Eric Utne and his staff put together a compilation of articles from the **alternative** media, ranging from “Buddhism American Style” to “Class Bias on Campus”. You'll find lots of information here on alternative sources. Similarly, the magazine *Alternative Press Review*, which calls itself “your guide beyond the **mainstream**”, can help you find **available** periodicals, books and films. And when you're in a large bookstore, browse through the magazine section; you'll probably be surprised and delighted by the wide range of offerings.

(From Ellen Summerfield: *Survival Kit for Multicultural Living*. Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, Copyright 1997.)

Now, give the opposites.

13 mainstream media
14 partial
15 adequate
16 majority

17 fair coverage
18 to be indifferent to st (idiom)
19 alternative sources
20 not to be had

The following adjectives are used with the nouns (A) ARTICLE and/or (B) HEADLINE. Use them together in sentences.

21 banner
22 in-depth
23 sports
24 front-page
25 illustrated

26 libellous
27 exclusive
28 three-part
29 brilliant
30 cookery

CULTURE

GOING TO THE THEATRE

1 Ask two of your classmates the following five questions and write down their answers. If you need a new English expression, jot it down in your mother tongue. Then look at the box on the following page and go through the answers again with your teacher.



How often do you go to the theatre?

.....

.....

.....

Talk about different types of theatres. Why do you like them? Why not?

.....

.....

.....

Describe the parts of a theatre and what we do in the theatre.

.....

.....

.....

Can you name some of the staff and performers?

.....

.....

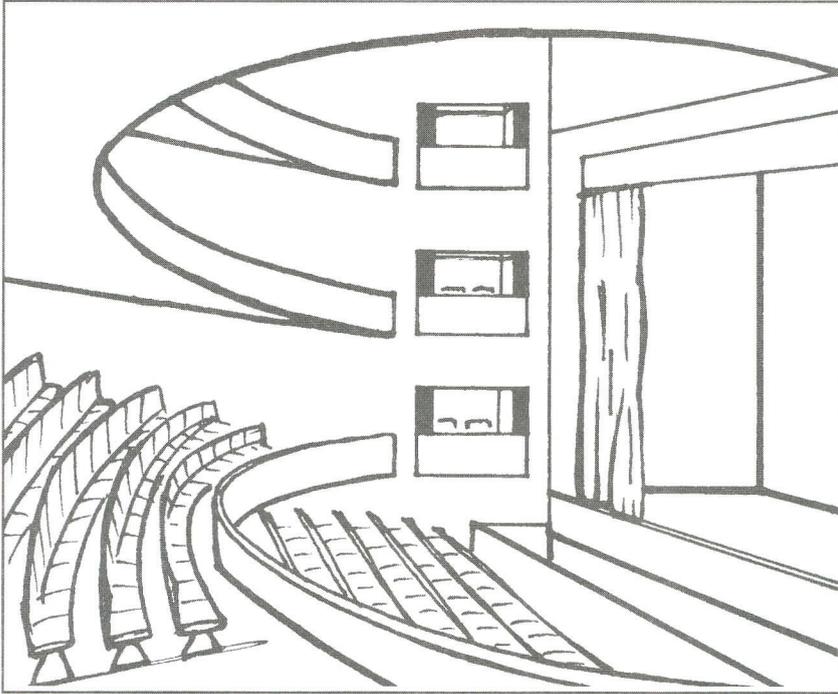
.....

Give names of different types of productions.

.....

.....

.....



2 The following is a list of jobs in the theatre. Say what they do:

director
lead
composer
stage designer
performer
costume designer

producer
stage manager
extras
understudy
prompter
lighting operator
playwright

3 Describe the picture on the left using some of the vocabulary in the box below.

Going to the Theatre

open-air / outdoor theatre
variety theatre
theatre workshop
(to read) posters and bills
newspaper review
box office × ticket / theatre agency
seating plan
in the stalls (GB) / orchestra (US)
box
dress circle (GB) / balcony / mezzanine (US)
balcony
gallery
"in the gods" (GB) / in the nosebleeds (US)
standing room only
sold out / full house
complimentary ticket × backstage pass
cloakroom (attendant)
(to hire) opera glasses
(to buy the) programme
cast list
an all-star cast
lobby / foyer
usher(ette)
latecomers
late seating
auditorium × stage
aisle / gangway
emergency exits
safety / fire curtain
the curtain rises / goes up / opens × falls / goes down / closes
centre stage
(in the) wings

prompt(er)'s box
orchestra pit
trapdoor
stage props
costumes
set
scenery
dressing room
backstage
Personnel
playwright
based on a novel by Kafka
producer
director
conductor
stage designer
costume designer
stage manager
prompter
lighting operator / person
make-up artist / person
stage hand / stage crew
stand-in
to stand in for
understudy
extras
tragedian × comedian
chorus
villain
hero × heroine
to play the part of / role of
the leading part / role
a supporting part
Types of show
rehearsal × dress rehearsal

first night / premiere
evening performance
matinee
gala performance
drama
tragedy × comedy
set
tragicomedy
farce
historical play
one-act play
a play in 3 acts
musical (comedy)
pantomime
variety show
repertory / rep

The performance

five-minute bell
the lights are dimmed / go down
the curtain goes up / opens
acts × scenes
interval / intermission
to stretch one's legs
to play to a packed × empty house
to burst into applause
to clap / applaud
to give a bouquet
standing ovation
to take curtain calls
to have a long run
brilliant × dull performance
failure / flop
to hiss × to boo × to barrack
to have stage fright
"butterflies in the stomach"
to forget one's lines

GOING TO THE CINEMA

1 Types of films.

With your teacher, discuss what each of the following means. Then talk about a film that would fit in each category. Which of these genres do you prefer?

western	romance
war film	horror film
tearjerker	erotic film
thriller	sci-fi film
action film	adventure film
comedy	

2 Separate the following into positive and negative comments.

The leading man gave a great performance as Napoleon.

It was thrilling.

It was boring.

The story was predictable.

The direction was wonderful.

The actor wasn't very convincing.

The story wasn't believable.

I felt the passion.

A total waste of money.

It kept me on the edge of my seat.

I walked out half-way through the film.

It was full of tension and suspense.

A touching story.

A heart-warming film.

A film for the whole family.

The special effects and stunts were great.

3 In pairs, act out a conversation between two critics on a talk show reviewing the following four films. One critic should give each of the films good reviews, while the other should give them all bad reviews.

Battering Ram III – The Last Stand

Joe Redding returns as Mack Bruscadilli, renegade cop ready to take on the Mafia. In this sequel, he joins forces with a Caribbean arms smuggler and a street-wise homeless girl to take on a powerful South American drug cartel. But his battle holds a surprise – his old enemy Manuele De Mingo is alive and well, and looking for revenge. Will Mack get out alive? **R**

The Falling Leaf

Mary Jinter, a successful New York business executive, is pulled out of her world suddenly when she hears that her mother has had a car accident. Leaving behind the world of money and power, she visits her mother and tries to get to know her again. Together, they have to try to face a dark secret that has been haunting the family for years. **PG**

Madball

Joey Rimpley plays the leader of a basketball team which is so bad that no one wants to buy or coach it. Together with his band of basketball misfits, he tries to work out something new - a self-owned, self-coached basketball team. But with a group that can hardly tie its own shoelaces without falling over, will he ever have a chance at reaching the finals? **G**

The Fifth Letter

An intense spy-thriller that takes you across the globe, from Downing Street to Washington to the back alleys of Tehran. An assassin has been called out to eliminate ten of the world's most powerful people: an assassin so deadly that even his employers don't know his face, so cunning that no one can stop him. MI6 agent Jack Dowely and CIA agent Joseph Terreny work together to bring this madman down before he strikes again. **R**

4 Compare Hollywood with the film industry in your country. What kinds of films does your country make? What things do they do better than Hollywood? What things is Hollywood better at?

Going to the Cinema

go to the pictures / movies
 movie / motion picture (US)
 outdoor cinema (GB) / drive-in (US)
 newsreel
 trailers (GB) / previews (US)
 advertisements
 filmed in colour × black and white
 silent movies × talkies (historical)
 subtitles × dubbed
 feature film
 (animated) cartoon
 travel film
 documentary
 western
 slapstick comedy

tearjerker
 happy ending
 remake
 clip
 (world) premiere
 educational
 science fiction
 thriller
 psychodrama
 erotic × pornographic
 romance / love story
 horror
 cops and robbers
 buddy movie
 road movie

art film
 adventure
 war film
 period drama
 to make / shoot a film
 shot
 scene
 close-up × distance shot
 slow motion / slo-mo
 dolly shot
 to pan
 to fade in × out
 in the studio × on location
 sound track
 special effects

to cut / edit
 rushes
 cutting room
 screenplay
 script
 producer
 director
 scriptwriter
 cameraman
 stunt-man
 theme music
 an R-film (restricted)
 a U-film (universal)
 G (general audience)
 PG (parental guidance)

MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

With the help of the lists below, try to identify the instruments in the pictures and sort them into families:



stringed	
wind	
brass	
percussion	
keyboards	

Musical Instruments

Some common musical terms

to read music
note
sharp × flat
to play by ear
to play by heart
staff / staves
scale
harmony
counterpoint
rest
air
tune
melody
bar
melodious ×
discordant
harmonious ×
cacophonous
to play the piano
to practise
to accompany sb on
the piano
arrangement
to tune (up)

to sight-read
to improvise
to sing / play out of tune
music stand
music stool
to have no ear for music
tone-deaf
lyrics (the words of a song)

Stringed instruments

(Usually picked, plucked or strummed with a plectrum)
guitar
mandolin
dulcimer
harp
banjo
balalaika
sitar
(Usually played with a bow)
violin
viola
cello
double bass

Woodwind, wind instruments

flute
piccolo
oboe
clarinet
bassoon
bagpipes
recorder
fife
mouth organ / harmonica
panpipes

Brass instruments

trumpet
trombone
French horn
flugelhorn
bugle
cornet
tuba
B-flat bass / euphonium
mouthpiece × reed
fanfare

Percussion

drum set
drum
bass drum

kettle drum
side drum
snare drum
cymbals
hi-hat
a drum roll
to beat the drum
drumsticks
brushes
bells
castanets
tambourine
triangle
xylophone
vibes (jazz)
Keyboards
piano × grand piano
spinnet
harpsichord
organ
keys and stops
(piano) accordion
Hammond organ
synthesiser
cymbalon / dulcimer

GOING TO A CONCERT

1 Here is a list of kinds of music. Can you add to it? Which ones are your favourites? Which ones don't you like?

- classical
- rock
- pop
-
-

Name all of the instruments likely to be found in each of the bands playing the various kinds of music.

2 What kind of music do you associate with the pictures on the right? Where are you likely to hear such music?

3 What kind of music do your parents (or children) like? How do you feel about it? How do they feel about your music?

4  You are going to hear a father and a son talking about music. Listen and answer the questions below.

- a How does Tommy feel about classical music?
- b How does his father feel about Tommy's music?
- c Was his father upset when Tommy stopped playing the piano?
- d Did Tommy like the concert?
- e Is he looking forward to going to more of them?

5 Role-play a conversation between Tommy and his father in which they talk about how they really feel about the concerts.



Going to a Concert

concert-hall
concert-goer
orchestra × band × group
follower
instrumental × vocal
classical × popular
serious
folk × traditional
jazz (traditional × modern)
orchestral
contemporary × experimental
× new age
electronic / synthesised
blues

rhythm and blues (R&B)
rock'n'roll
heavy metal × hard rock
disco
grunge
punk
techno

Types of classical performance
symphony
chamber
promenade
recital

Types of music
symphony
symphonic poem
concerto
overture
suite
sonata
toccata and fugue
(national) anthem
hymn
lullaby
madrigal
aria
cantata

oratorio
requiem (mass)

Personnel
conductor
soloist
choirs
school
church
university
male voice

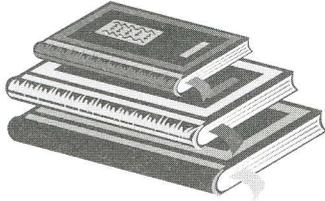
Voices
soprano
alto
mezzo soprano
tenor

baritone
bass
boy soprano

Rock and pop
lead guitarist / singer
rhythm guitarist
keyboards
synthesiser
vocalist
drummer (percussion section)
session musician
brass section

BOOKS AND READING

1 You have just started working at the local library, and it is your job to shelve books that have been returned. Put the following titles into their appropriate categories.



TEACH YOURSELF SWAHILI IN 20 DAYS
FOOT DISEASES SIMPLIFIED
THE HITCHHIKER'S GUIDE TO FIJI
GHANDI – UNAUTHORISED
THE VAMPIRE DENTIST
LOVE IN THE HOT SUMMER
JJ SPANKS, PRIVATE EYE
DANTE'S INFERNO
THE WELL AT WORLD'S END
LIFE'S A JOKE
THE WHITE HOUSE FILES
THE EATER OF STARS
NAPOLEON'S RIGHT HAND



horror story
 fantasy
 biography
 detective story
 humour
 reference book
 guide book
 spy novel
 science fiction
 Mills and Boon
 romance
 classic
 self-help book
 historical novel

2 Here are the beginnings of three stories. Try to match them up and put them in the right order. Then pick one of the stories and say what will happen next.

- After rubbing tanning lotion over her firm thighs, Janet lay down.
- A heavy rain fell on the streets, drenching the shadowy figure that waited beneath the streetlight.
- It was a beautiful day, and the sun was beating down on her creamy brown skin.
- He had just got it lit when a car came speeding around the corner and stopped in front of him.
- Having grown tired of looking out at the quiet stars, Zika Black left the computer monitor and started fixing herself an instant hamburger.
- Suddenly, there was a blinding flash of light, and all of the ship's computers started emitting warning signals.
- It was 3 a.m. Standard Earth Time and all was quiet in the Omega section of the frontier.
- Suddenly a shadow blocked out the sun's rays.
- Looking around nervously, the man tried to light a cigarette with his wet matches.

Books and Reading

Types of book

prose
 poetry
 short stories
 fantasy
 biography × autobiography
 × memoirs
 fiction × non-fiction
 novel
 diary
 detective story
 mystery
 classic
 pulp literature
 atlas
 encyclopaedia
 dictionary
 thesaurus
 reference book
 (academic) textbook
 self-help book
 guide book
 travelogue

manual × handbook

art book

sequel

trilogy

volume

limited edition

Parts of a book

spine × cover × (dust)jacket

flyleaf

publisher's blurb

title

dedication

binding (cloth × leather)

margin

heading × column × line

passage × paragraph

chapter × section × part

footnote × endnote

illustrations × plates × graphics

contents

preface × foreword × afterword

introduction × epilogue

summary

appendix

supplement

bibliography

references

index

Publishing and printing

to submit a manuscript

author's proofs

to publish

printing

to edit

copyright

intellectual property

to pay royalties

first edition

revised and enlarged edition

complete and unabridged

translated by BF

to adapt (for)

printer

distributor

to launch a book / title

hardback × paperback × trade
 paperback

bookshop × antiquarian
 bookseller

booklet / brochure

paperback exchange

to remainder a book

remainder shop

Library

lending library

reference library

to borrow a book

librarian

reading room

periodicals

catalogue × index × card

catalogue

stacks × racks × shelves

listed by author × subject × title

in alphabetical order

arranged by category

library card

overdue book

fine

POETRY

From a Writer to a Student

I've been holding hands with poetry all my life. It's been a very good friend: an inspiration, a refuge, a reality check, a reassurance that I still belong to the human race – and something I've never completely understood. But what is it? Poems come in all shapes and sizes and are written to express all kinds of ideas and emotions. Exactly what separates poetry and prose could be debated endlessly in modern times; the borders become less and less clear as years pass. Generally speaking, most experts would agree that poetry should have rhythm, shape and, very often, rhyme, sometimes in quite complex and repeated patterns.

The first poetry I remember took the form of nursery rhymes: rhythmic, regularly rhyming verses sung or recited by my mother to get me to sleep. I learnt more at infants' school, but the prime poems of childhood were the playground chants that provided the soundtrack for games, often quite grisly little rituals based on the child's view of history – beheadings, battles, political intrigue disguised as fairy-tale. From these to narrative poetry, or ballads – stories told in verse, often with quite strict patterns of rhyme and form – was only a short step. Highwaymen and chase stories, sailing ships and faraway places, life stories and tales of love, they fascinated me for years. Later I was to encounter their ancestors, the earliest known European poems, incredibly long pieces known as sagas, featuring ancient gods and goddesses, and the very first heroes and monsters, even saints and dragons. It seems that, for much of history, if a tale was worth telling, it was worth telling in verse.

Lyrical poems of various kinds carried me through the hormone hell of the late teens and early twenties: short pieces, usually divided into stanzas, that centre around one particular mood or emotion of the poet. They include sonnets, 14-line poems arranged in a strict formula of rhyme and rhythm, often divided into two sections – the first of eight lines, the second of six. In those that Shakespeare wrote, they ended with a pair of rhyming lines that summed up the poet's feelings – and often my own – in a short, perfect, brilliant display of words. For a confused youth trying to come to terms with love, death, war, family politics, and everything else that makes early adulthood so stressful, they were pure medicine. Of course, Old Bill was not the only one to write sonnets. Just about every budding poet has tried, including me. John Donne, one of Britain's greatest early poets, once remarked that anyone can write one sonnet, but only an idiot would write two.

So what do I remember now, what can I quote, in middle age? Snatches of ballads and narrative poems, lots of limericks – five-line nonsense poems, many of them dirty – some of the filthy doggerel that cannot be separated from playing British rugby football, lots of first lines to help me to find favourites in poetry collections, last couplets from a few sonnets, several magic and mystery pieces that have been set to music, and a couple of snatches of '60's free verse. Of my own purple, overwritten, obscure and pretentious output, fortunately, I remember little.

TL 1998

Poetry

epic × lyric	narrative verse	purple poetry
saga	sonnet	dirty / filthy poetry
poem	limerick	poetic licence
line	free verse	to recite
rhyme	nursery rhyme	to chant
rhythm	doggerel	to quote
verse / stanza	ode	to learn by heart
ballad	elegy	budding poet

Below are some of the things the writer in the text remembers. Using the text, try to identify the types of poetry quoted below. Obviously, not all of them can be complete, but there is enough information to help any guesswork.

A

There was a young man of Devizes,
Whose ears were of different sizes,
One was quite small,
And no use at all,
But the other was large, and won prizes.

B

...
The summer's flower is to the summer
sweet,
Though to itself it only live and die,
But if that flower with base infection
meet,
The basest weed outbraves his dignity:

For sweetest things turn sourest by
their deeds;
Lilies that fester smell far worse than
weeds.

C

...
Come close and sleep now
for in the morning
when a policeman
disguised as the sun
creeps into the room
and your mother disguised as birds
calls from the trees
you will put on a dress of guilt
and shoes with broken high ideals
and refusing coffee
run
all the way
home

D

There was a little girl
Who had a little curl
Right in the middle of her forehead
And when she was good
She was very, very good
But when she was bad she was horrid.

E

...
Here comes a candle to light you to bed,
And here comes a chopper to chop off
your head
The last

The last

The last

Man's

Head

F

...
The fox was strong, he was full of
running
He could run for an hour and then be
cunning
But the cry behind him made him chill
They were nearer now and they meant
to kill.

...

CULTURE – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Each of the following groups of phrases have one word in common. Which one is it? Check the meaning of the phrases in a dictionary.

1

to _____ st out
caught in the _____
to clean up one's _____
to get one's _____ together
to put on an _____

2

to play second _____ (to someone)
to _____ about / around with someone or something
to _____ while Rome burns
fit as a _____

3

_____ in the hole
come within an _____ of doing something
have an _____ up one's sleeve
hold all the _____s

4

_____ between the lines
_____ someone's mind
_____ the writing on the wall
_____ someone like an open book

Match the phrases on the left with the meanings on the right.

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------------------|---|--|
| 5 | to face the music | a | to make st more exciting, colourful or lively |
| 6 | trumped-up | b | a lot of excitement for very little reason |
| 7 | instrumental in doing something | c | accept the consequences of one's behaviour |
| 8 | jazz something up | d | without purpose, order, or logic |
| 9 | look to one's laurels | e | false; fraudulent |
| 10 | rest on one's laurels | f | to take care to protect one's reputation |
| 11 | in the limelight | g | to enjoy one's success and not try to achieve more |
| 12 | without rhyme or reason | h | at the centre of attention |
| 13 | reel / rattle something off | i | playing an important part in doing something |
| 14 | much ado about nothing | j | to recite st quickly and accurately |

One of the words in each of the following sentences is wrong. Replace it with one of those provided.

- | | | | |
|----|--|----|---|
| 15 | Don't judge a man by its cover.
a magazine
b woman
c book
d people | 19 | Something is forgotten in the state of Denmark.
a rotten
b changed
c missing
d false |
| 16 | What's in a house?
a name
b girl
c boy
d surname | 20 | Truth is stranger than films.
a footsteps
b story
c fiction
d novels |
| 17 | Lucky at cards, unhappy in love.
a unfaithful
b unworthy
c unlucky
d happy | 21 | Last impressions are most lasting.
a first
b third
c good
d other |
| 18 | Ring down the street.
a door
b chain
c knocker
d curtain | 22 | Genius is one per cent admiration and ninety-nine per cent perspiration.
a reason
b intelligence
c brains
d inspiration |

Try to say the following tongue twisters out loud with a partner.

I think they were thick things with wings and they whistled as they went by.

Fanny Fowler fried five floundering fish for Francis Finch's father.

She stood on the balcony, inexplicably mimicking him hiccuping, and amicably welcoming him in.

Truly rural.

Does this shop stock short socks with spots?

The sixth sheik's sixth sheep's sick.

A big black bug bit a big black bear, made a big black bear bleed blood.

CULTURE – AND MORE PRACTICE ...

Each of the following groups of phrases have one word in common. Which one is it? Check the meaning of the phrases in a dictionary.

- 1
to _____ it by ear
to _____ one's trump card
to _____ second fiddle (to someone)
to _____ possum
to _____ to the gallery

- 2
_____ some business up
_____ someone out of something
_____ something into someone's head
as tight as a _____

- 3
He who pays the piper calls the _____.
to be in _____ with someone
to call the _____
to change one's _____

- 4
to go into / to make a _____ and dance about something
to buy / sell something for a _____
wine, women and _____
swan _____

Match the phrases on the left with the meanings on the right.

- 5 without further ado
6 to beat the band
7 to climb on the bandwagon
8 to march to a different drummer
9 to fluff one's lines
10 to have the gift of the gab
11 to sell like hotcakes
12 Jekyll and Hyde
13 to harp on
14 to blow one's own trumpet

- a very much, very fast, at maximum effort
b to join the crowd
c to believe in a different set of principles
d without further talk / thought
e to be able to use language effectively
f to keep talking or complaining about st
g to speak badly or forget one's lines in a play
h to sell well
i sb with both an evil and a good personality
j to boast, or to praise oneself

One of the words in each of the following sentences is wrong. Replace it with one of those provided.

- 15 The road to heaven is paved with good intentions.
a home
b hell
c Rome
d theatre

- 16 Song is long and life is short.
a art
b death
c hope
d wait

- 17 Life isn't all rum and skittles.
a smile
b water
c beer
d read

- 18 A rose by any other name would sniff as sweet.
a sway
b smell
c seem
d sigh

- 19 A picture is worth a million words.
a thousand
b ten
c hundred
d billion

- 20 Play the piper, call the tune.
a post
b pay
c pride
d poster

- 21 To do a long story short.
a hear
b make / cut
c understand
d want

- 22 It takes three to tango.
a four
b polka
c walz
d two

Try to say the following nursery rhymes out loud.

Pussy-cat, pussy-cat, where have you been?
I've been up to London to look at the queen.
Pussy-cat, pussy-cat, what did you there?
I frightened a little mouse under the chair.

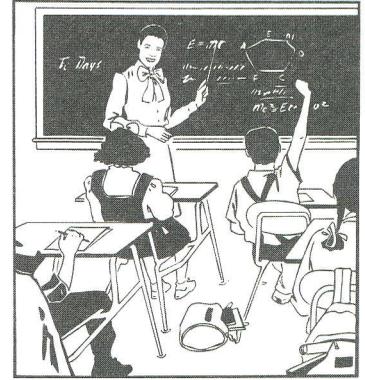
Needles and pins, needles and pins,
When a man marries his trouble begins.
Early to bed and early to rise,
Makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

EDUCATION

STUDYING AND EXAMINATIONS

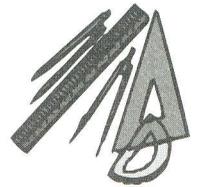
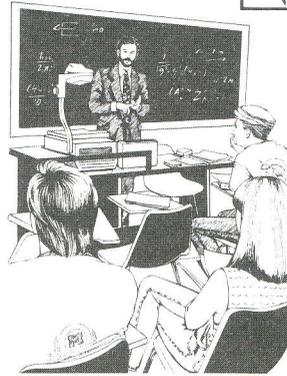
1 In small groups, discuss these questions.

- What kind of student are you? Do you study steadily throughout the year or do you try to cram everything before exam times?
- How do you study? Do you prefer to study alone or in groups? Do you like to study for long periods of time or in small chunks? Do you have any special tips that you could suggest?



2 Listen to the radio programme and answer the following questions.

- What is the secret of being a good student?
- What is the difference between a prepared student and an unprepared student?
- How does a prepared student study?
- How should an unprepared student study?
- What is the danger of study groups?



3 Listen to the radio programme again and finish the sentences below. Then explain their meaning.

- 1 *There is only one issue facing students, and*
- 2 *...students everywhere are busily*
- 3 *You can't expect*
- 4 *...there must be more*
- 5 *I cannot stress enough*
- 6 *...you should always be*
- 7 *...everybody pools their*
- 8 *Of course, you're always at*
- 9 *...you are relying*
- 10 *And for all you students out there, good*

SECONDARY SCHOOL

1 Read the text on the right about secondary school dilemmas. What would you do in these situations?

2 Can you think of any similar school dilemmas that you or a friend have had to go through? What were they? What did you do?

3 Read the text on the right again and highlight all the useful collocations that you want to remember. Then use them in sentences of your own and check with your teacher.



A ➤ You sit down at a desk in class and find a really nice pencil case under the seat. It's just the kind you have always wanted, but your mother refuses to buy it for you because it costs too much. Someone has obviously left it there by mistake. Do you give it to the teacher, leave it where it is, or keep it for yourself?

B ➤ Some of the older kids at school are bullying you. They push you around in the halls during lunch break, and they even knocked you down and stole your lunch money once. You're afraid to tell your parents, because they'd probably make a fuss in front of everyone and make things even worse.

C ➤ There's an exam coming up in your maths class and you know you will do poorly because you have been ill for a long time and have fallen behind. You would ask your teacher if you can take the exam later, but he is the strictest and nastiest teacher in the school, and you're sure he'll say no. As you wait for the teacher to finish talking to another student, you see the answer sheet to the exam lying on the table.

D ➤ You were playing in the gym yesterday when you saw some older children vandalising the locker room. Now the headmaster has called you into his office and accused you of the vandalism. The children who did it are older, bigger, and tougher, and you know that the whole school hates a rat. On the other hand, the headmaster is threatening to call your parents and suspend you from school.

E ➤ Your boyfriend / girlfriend has asked you for help in writing a book report. You start by trying to make a few suggestions, but it soon becomes obvious that s/he hasn't read the book and wants you to write the report yourself.

Secondary School

to teach
to examine
to substitute for sb
to learn
to study
to cram / swot
to memorise / learn by heart
to do one's homework
to make a mistake
to write legibly
legible handwriting
to revise (GB) / review (US)
to cheat
cheat sheet / crib
to copy
to go to school / university
to pay attention
to make / take notes
to write / jot down
to play truant / skip classes / bunk (off)
to take attendance
to mark / grade
to correct
bullying

corporal punishment
to lag / fall behind the class
off the roll
suspended / expelled
private × state schools
public school (GB × US)
parental involvement
parents' meeting
tuition / school fees
grammar school (GB)
high school (US)
secondary school
apprentice school
boarding school
syllabus / curriculum
compulsory subjects
optional / elective subjects
extracurricular activities
break (GB) / recess (US)
classroom
timetable (GB) / schedule (US)
headmaster / headmistress (GB) / school principal (US)

deputy head (GB) / assistant principal (US)
janitor (GB) / custodian (US)
guidance counsellor
notice board (GB) / bulletin board (US)
chalk
locker room
teachers' room / staffroom
headmaster's office
computer room
language lab
gymnasium / gym
cafeteria / lunch room
school report
certificate / diploma
school-leaving examination
to sit (for) / take / do an exam
mock-exam
interview
written × oral
to pass an exam × fail an exam



1 What do you understand by the term “public school” in Britain? Do you have any similar institution in your country?

2 What is your opinion of sending children to boarding schools? Is it a good thing or a bad thing?

3 Look at the description of two famous public schools in Britain. Which one do you think would provide a better education? Which would you rather go to? Why?

4 In small groups, describe the school you went to. What kind of curriculum did it have? What kind of atmosphere?



SPRINGDALE co-ed boarding school

Curriculum

Most major subjects are taught, but classes are optional. If the student is not interested, he or she doesn't have to attend.

Atmosphere

Very informal. Teachers do not try to influence or guide the students in any way. Teachers and students are seen as equals. Most school matters are decided in general school meetings, in which every student and teacher has an equal vote.

Rules and discipline

Everyone has to respect other people and their property.

Extra-curricular activities

Drama, art, games, field trips to various interesting places, etc. Emphasis on creativity, with competitive sports discouraged.

DOVECOTE MANOR all-male boarding school

Curriculum

Classics such as history, Greek, and Latin, as well as modern subjects such as chemistry and computers.

Atmosphere

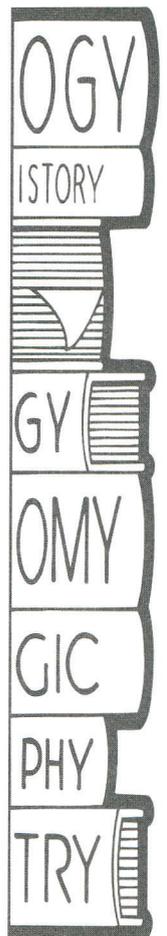
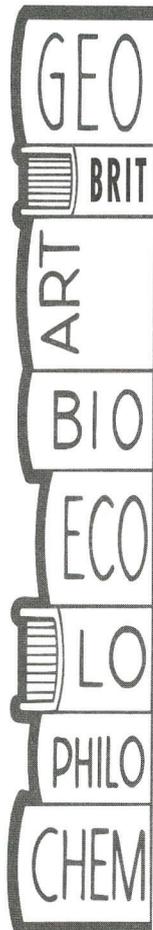
Very formal. There is a dress code. Students wear boaters and blazers. Teachers wear suits, gowns, and mortarboards. Students are expected to be formal and courteous towards their teachers and each other.

Rules and discipline

Strict rules about when students are to be in bed, manners and behaviour. Punishment used to include beatings, but now is mostly community service such as picking up rubbish or cleaning bathrooms.

Extra-curricular activities

Drama clubs, debating societies, philosophical societies, chess clubs, etc. Heavy emphasis on competitive sport; membership of military cadet force obligatory.



UNIVERSITY

1 Role play

Possible roles:

Barbora's sister

her parents

a recruiter from a large computer company

a friend who studies philosophy

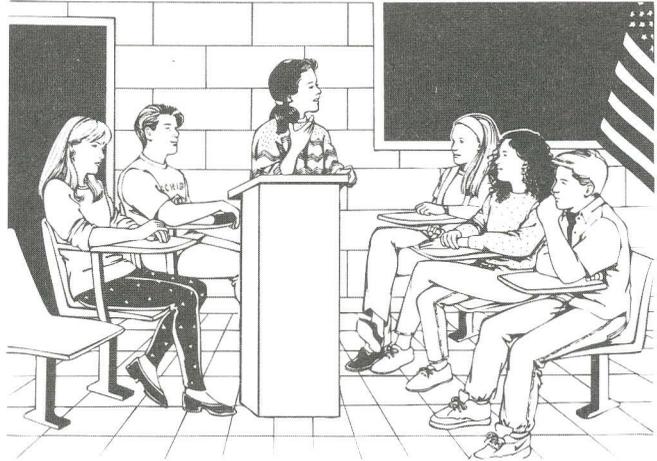
school counsellor.

Situation:

Barbora is in her second year at a large American university. After trying out a few subjects, she has decided that she really wants to major in philosophy. She has taken a few introductory courses and is fascinated by the subject. The only problem is that she is worried about whether or not she will be able to find a job when she finishes college. Although part of her tuition is being paid by a small scholarship, Barbora is paying for most of her education through student loans, and she will owe quite a bit of money when she finishes university. Her older sister recently graduated in computer programming and immediately found a well-paid job, and has been urging her to "get real" and study something that will lead to a "real career". What should she do?



2 Would you like to be a student at an American university? What problems do you think you could come up against? Is it easy to stay away from home for such a long time? How would you put up with the new environment? The following is an excerpt from *International Student Guide to Living & Adapting at Eastern Michigan University* describing four stages every student has to go through. They are referred to as: *Humor Stage*, *Home Stage*, *Honeymoon Stage* and *Hostility Stage*. Read the text and insert the right title for each paragraph.



Why am I so unhappy here?

There are many reasons for you to be unhappy, even if you had been planning to come to the U.S. for a very long time. You may be experiencing culture shock – every international student experiences it at least once, and maybe more often than that, during his or her stay. Cultural adjustment usually happens over many months in 4 stages:

- 1 _____: students usually are very happy and excited to be in the U.S. They enjoy all of the new things and are confident.
- 2 _____: students become frustrated and angry at the same things that made them happy during the honeymoon stage. They don't like the food, the people, the school, their apartment, or the unfamiliarity. They miss their family and friends a lot. This is the stage that most people call "culture shock".
- 3 _____: students begin to relax and realize that they will like some things; about the new culture and won't like other things. They often think that their cultural and language mistakes are funny instead of frustrating.
- 4 _____: students feel comfortable in the new culture, even though they still may not like certain things.

It's important to remember that sometimes you can go back to a stage several times (you may experience the hostility stage a lot) or you may pass right through a stage in a very short time. The important thing to remember is that the hostility stage is not permanent. Talking to other international students may help, and so might keeping a diary. The internet has many places where you can write to people and tell them your problems. It may also help if you talk to an American student who has been to your country.

3 Read the text and fill in the following expressions: catered tuition only compared
 admit further raise entrance
 degrees appointing mature grants

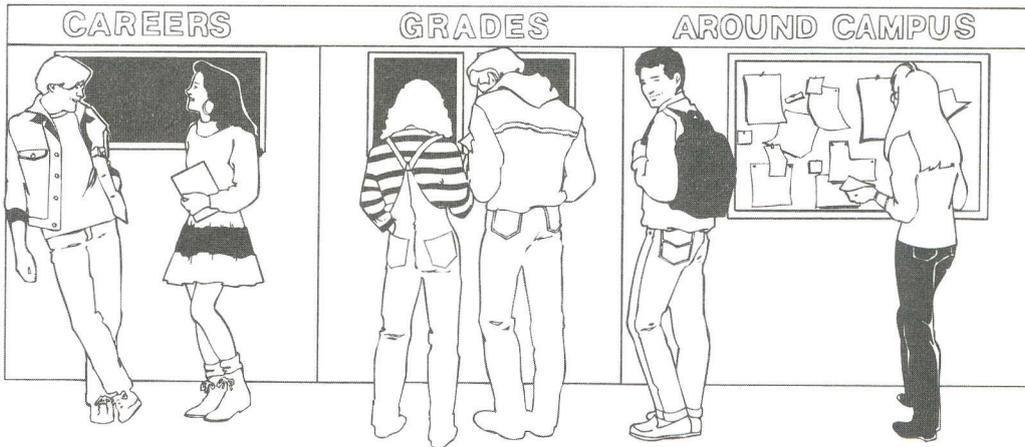
Universities and Higher Education Colleges

There are 89 publicly-funded universities in the UK, counting the Universities of Wales and London as single institutions and including the Open University and 65 other higher education institutions. The University of Buckingham is the **1** _____ independent university. There are about 3,000 private colleges providing both higher and **2** _____ education. Some 300 further education colleges also offer higher education courses.

Universities and most other higher education institutions enjoy complete academic freedom, **3** _____ their own staff and deciding which students to **4** _____, what and how to teach, and which **5** _____ to award. Most first-degree courses last between two and four years.

More young people are entering higher education than ever before – about one in three, as **6** _____ to one in eight in 1979. More recent universities and colleges have **7** _____ increasingly to **8** _____ students and those without traditional **9** _____ qualifications.

Higher education institutions are mainly funded by central government **10** _____ paid through the Higher Education Funding Council and from tuition fees. British students usually have their **11** _____ fees paid for them by their local education authority. Many institutions also receive funding for research from Research Councils, charities, and industry. Universities and higher education colleges are also known to **12** _____ finance from the private sector.



University

higher education
 college
 Oxbridge
 entrance examination / admission
 to be admitted to
 to study humanities
 science
 law
 medicine
 dentistry
 computer science
 at technical university
 at business school
 at School of Economics
 to concentrate / focus on

to change schools
 campus
 assembly hall
 dining hall
 lecture hall
 library
 halls of residence / hostel (GB) /
 dormitory (US)
 to apply for a scholarship
 to be eligible for
 to get a grant / financial aid
 loan
 to enrol (GB) / enroll (US)
 enrolment
 academic year
 term / semester (US)
 to take a course

student / undergraduate
 professor
 to lecture / read
 chancellor (GB) / president (US)
 dean
 department head
 tutor
 teaching assistant (T.A.)
 credit
 paper
 to graduate from ___ with honours
 to get a degree in st
 to have a degree in st
 bachelor
 master
 BA, BA (Hons), MA, PhD, BSc
 graduation ceremony

EDUCATION – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

I The expressions in the left column are used as euphemisms when talking about education. Match them with their meanings in the right column.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 backward | a developing early |
| 2 education welfare manager | b someone who returns to class after years |
| 3 special pupil | c a truancy officer |
| 4 special school | d cooking and housekeeping |
| 5 home economics | e entry to a university without previous examination |
| 6 late developer | f pupil suffering from a mental or physical abnormality |
| 7 mature student | g poor scholar |
| 8 less prepared | h very dull |
| 9 not a great reader | i naughty or stupid |
| 10 precocious | j illiterate |
| 11 open access | k school for special pupils |
| 12 maladjusted | l of inferior attainment |

II Compare the following extract with your experience of the educational system in your country. Are there any differences? Give a talk about your attitude to this problem and suggest ways of tackling it.

The American educational system is based on the idea that as many people as possible should have access to as much education as possible. This fact alone distinguishes the U.S. system from most others, since in most others the objective is as much to screen people out as it is to keep them in. The U.S. system has no standardized examinations whose results systematically prevent students from going on to higher levels of study,

as the British and many other systems do. Through secondary school and sometimes in post-secondary institutions as well, the American system tries to accommodate students even if their academic aspirations and aptitudes are not high, even if they are physically (and in some cases mentally) handicapped, and even if their native language is not English.

(From Gary Althen: *American Ways*. Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, ME. Copyright 1988).

III The following adverbs are typically connected with the verbs TO STUDY and/or TO LEARN. Match them with the appropriate verb.

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 13 by heart | 17 gradually |
| 14 thoroughly | 18 fast |
| 15 in detail | 19 conscientiously |
| 16 from experience | 20 by doing |

IV Read the text below and fill in the following expressions.

BEYOND FOR IN WHOSE DURING OF FROM AND IN CONTRAST TO BY

21 _____ the United Kingdom, public school, also called independent school, is one of a relatively small group of institutions educating secondary-level students 22 _____ a fee and independent 23 _____ the state system as regards both endowment 24 _____ administration. The term “public school” emerged in the 18th century when the reputation of certain grammar schools spread 25 _____ their immediate environs. They began taking students 26 _____ parents could afford residential fees and thus became known as public, 27 _____ local, schools. By the late 20th century the term “independent school” was increasingly preferred 28 _____ the institutions themselves. The typical great public school – such as Eton, Harrow, Winchester, Westminster, Rugby, Shrewsbury, or Charterhouse – evolved 29 _____ an institution founded by a single benefactor 30 _____ the late European Middle Ages or Renaissance.

EDUCATION – AND MORE PRACTICE...

I The expressions in the left column are used as euphemisms when talking about education. Put them back into the sentences.

- | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|----|---|
| a | slow upstairs | 1 | No student ever gets expelled any more, though he may suffer _____. |
| b | less academic | 2 | _____ was just another word for idleness or stupidity. |
| c | concentration problem | 3 | He clearly has a _____, to put it mildly. |
| d | ADD (attention deficit disorder) | 4 | There is a special course for the active _____. |
| e | school phobia syndrome | 5 | _____ is what used to be called cramming. |
| f | academic dismissal | 6 | An _____ child can be either stupid, or “unusually good”, in its literal sense. |
| g | sent down | 7 | If children are _____, they are stupid or unteachable. |
| h | underachiever | 8 | He is very good with his hands but, unfortunately, a bit _____. |
| i | developmental course | 9 | The disease which made it impossible for the child to attend school was the newly identified “_____”. |
| j | exceptional | 10 | You can get _____ (from university) because of misconduct or failure to achieve minimal results. |

II Compare the following extract with your experience of the educational system in your country. Are there any differences? What is your opinion? Write a paragraph and have it corrected by your teacher.

The American approach to teaching may seem unfamiliar to many, not only because it is informal, but also because there is less emphasis on learning facts than is true in the systems of many other countries. Instead, Americans try to teach their children to think for themselves, to analyze, to explore, to develop their own intellectual and creative abilities. Students spend much time learning how to use resource materials, libraries,

statistics, and computers. Americans believe that if children are taught to reason and to research well, they will be able to find whatever facts they need throughout the rest of their lives. Knowing how to solve problems is considered more important than the accumulation of facts, which often grow obsolete.

(From Alison R. Lanier: *Living in the U.S.A.* Reprinted with permission of Intercultural Press, Inc., Yarmouth, ME. Copyright 1996)

III The following adverbs are typically connected with the verbs TO READ and/or TO WRITE. Match them with the appropriate verb.

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------|----|---------------------|
| 11 | brilliantly | 16 | wittily |
| 12 | aloud | 17 | vividly |
| 13 | knowledgeably | 18 | over and over again |
| 14 | from cover to cover | 19 | (il)legibly |
| 15 | convincingly | 20 | with great interest |

IV Read the text below and fill in the following expressions.

APPROXIMATELY TO THROUGH OR BY OF IN THROUGHOUT MOST HOWEVER

In most school systems 21 _____ the United States, high school is any three- to six-year secondary school serving students 22 _____ 13 (or fourteen or fifteen) through 18 years 23 _____ age. Often in four-year schools the different levels are designated, in ascending order, freshman, sophomore, junior, and senior.

Most American high schools are public – meaning that they are tuition-free, supported 24 _____ state funds. There are, 25 _____, a number of private high schools 26 _____ the country, supported generally 27 _____ a combination of tuition charges and private grants 28 _____ endowments. 29 _____ of these schools offer primarily academic courses 30 _____ college-oriented students, and many are sectarian.

HOLIDAYS

1 Look at the following pictures and say which holidays they refer to and what you know about them. Are they also celebrated in your country?

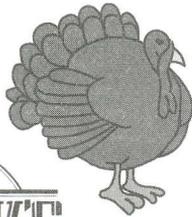
Season's Greetings

Merry Christmas

HAPPY Thanksgiving ONE AND ALL



Remember Our Country's Heroes on MEMORIAL DAY



VETERANS DAY



4TH OF JULY

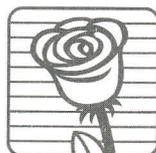
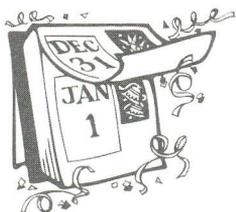
HAPPY EASTER

Honoring America's Work Force

Labor Day

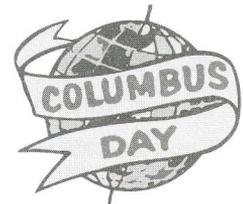


LABOR DAY



HAPPY MOTHER'S DAY

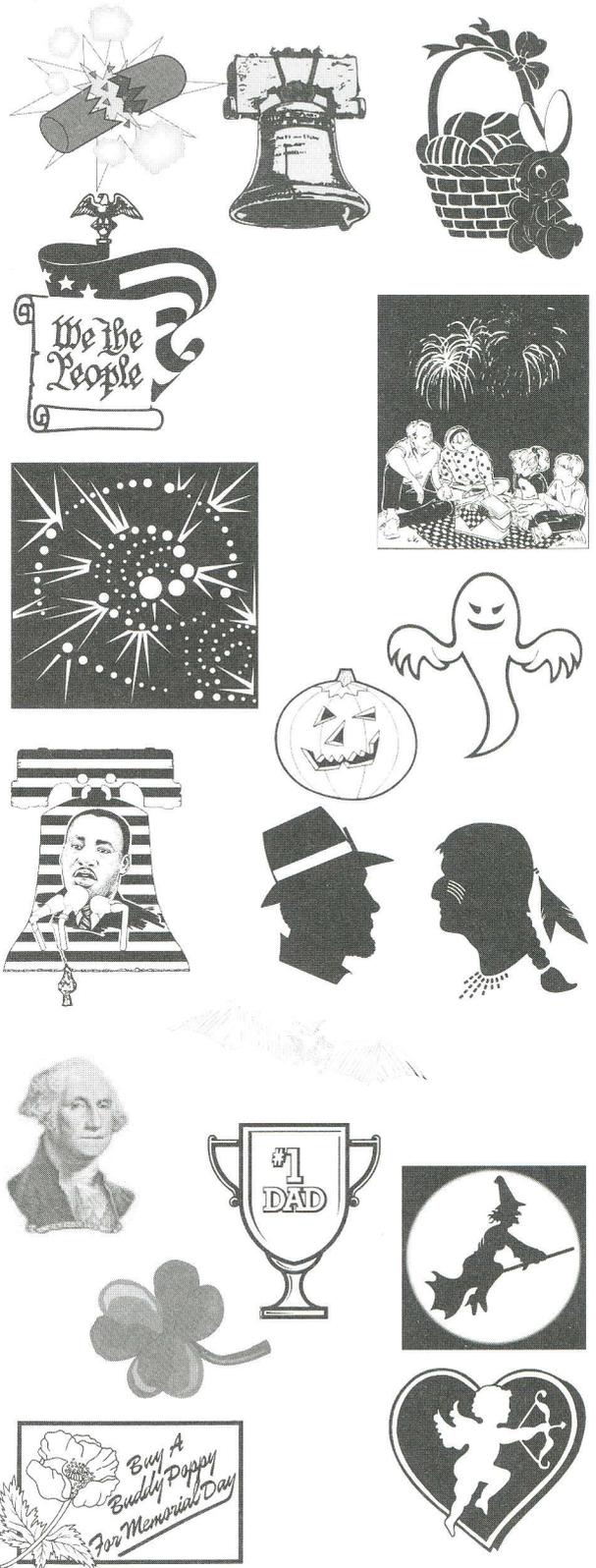
BOXING DAY



2 The names of months have been deleted. Decide which paragraph belongs to which month.

- a** All Saints' Day (1)
Guy Fawkes Night / Bonfire Night (5 – GB)
Armistice / Remembrance / Veterans Day (11 – GB / US)
International Students' Day (17)
Thanksgiving (fourth Thursday – US)
- b** New Year's Day (1)
Epiphany / Twelfth Night (6)
Martin Luther King Day (third Monday – US)
Australia Day (26)
- c** Lord Mayor's Show (9 – GB)
Columbus Day (second Monday – US)
Halloween (31)
- d** May Day (1)
May Day Bank Holiday (first Monday – GB)
VE-Day (8)
Mother's Day (second Sunday)
Memorial Day (last Monday – US)
Spring Bank Holiday (last Monday – GB)
- e** St. Valentine's Day (14)
Washington's Birthday (third Monday – US)
- f** All Fools Day / April Fools Day
Anzac Day (25)
- g** St. Patrick's Day (Ireland, US)
Easter (the first Sunday after the first full moon after the spring equinox)
- h** Labor Day (first Monday – US)
- i** August Bank Holiday (last Monday – GB)
- j** Christmas Eve (24)
Christmas Day (25)
Boxing Day (26)
New Year's Eve (31)
- k** Independence Day (4 – US)
- l** International Children's Day (1)
Trooping the Colour / The Queen's Official Birthday (second Saturday – GB)
Midsummer Day (21 – GB)
Father's Day (third Sunday – US)

3 The following pictures are symbols of some of the holidays mentioned opposite, connected with the way they are celebrated. Identify them and speak about the customs, comparing them with the celebration in your country.



4 Which description fits the following holidays?

- 1 Martin Luther King Day
- 2 St. Valentine's Day
- 3 Washington's Birthday
- 4 St. Patrick's Day
- 5 Easter

- 6 Bank Holiday
- 7 Mother's Day
- 8 Memorial Day
- 9 Independence Day
- 10 Trooping the Colour

- 11 Labor Day
- 12 Halloween
- 13 All Saints' Day
- 14 Guy Fawkes Night
- 15 Veterans Day

- 16 Thanksgiving
- 17 Australia Day
- 18 Anzac Day
- 19 All Fools' Day
- 20 May Day

- a An official public holiday when all banks and post offices are closed, as well as most factories, offices and shops.
- b A public holiday in Australia and New Zealand commemorating the Anzacs (i.e. Australian and New Zealand Army Corps) landing in Gallipoli in 1915.
- c This is a sweethearts' day. People send cards as a token of love. Those who are in love express their affection for their partner.
- d George Washington was the first U.S. President. His birthday was the first federal holiday to honor an American citizen. His birthday was February 22nd, but it is celebrated on the third Monday in February.
- e Martin Luther King was a clergyman who is ranked among the greatest Americans. He fought for full civil rights for people and preached non-violence. He was assassinated.
- f This holiday celebrates the resurrection of Jesus Christ in the Christian church. It symbolizes new life and fresh hope.
- g It is a time of celebration for people of Irish descent. In New York City a parade is held on the Irish patron saint's festival day.
- h On this day Americans honour their war dead. Special ceremonies are held in cemeteries or at monuments for the war dead by veterans of military services. Some hold parades and others hold memorial services or special programmes in churches, schools, or other public meeting places.
- i This day is regarded as the birthday of the US as a free and independent nation. Picnics with patriotic speeches and parades are held. It is also a day on which fireworks displays fill the skies in the evening. The flying of flags is common.
- j An annual ceremony held on the Official Birthday of the sovereign on Horse Guard Parade, London, when regiments of the Guards Division, and the Household Cavalry, parade ("troop") the regimental flag ("colour") before the sovereign. The ceremony dates from the 18th century and was originally a guard-mounting ceremony.
- k It has neither political nor religious origin, nor is it celebrated in any uniform way. Its purpose is to honour the nation's working people. For most Americans it marks the end of the summer season.
- l A public holiday in Australia, commemorating the landing of the British in 1788.
- m It was first celebrated in 1621 by the English settlers of the Plymouth Colony, after the first harvest following a winter of starvation and disease. Nowadays the whole nation gives thanks for a good harvest and the generous gifts of nature. On this day the Americans have the biggest feast of the year.
- n Guy Fawkes (1570 – 1606), was one of several Roman Catholic conspirators in the Gunpowder Plot who tried to blow up the Houses of Parliament. Under torture he revealed the names of the other conspirators and was convicted and executed. In towns and villages you can see bonfires burning, fireworks banging and rockets shooting across the sky. In the weeks before, you will see groups of children pushing an old pram with a figure inside that looks like a scarecrow. The children will ask passers-by for "a penny for the guy".
- o People decorate graves with flowers, lay wreaths, burn candles, pay respect to the family dead.
- p On this day, the dead of all wars are remembered. In the US, the president and other high officials place a wreath on the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier at Arlington National Cemetery outside Washington, D.C. In Britain on Remembrance Sunday, the Sunday nearest to Armistice Day, the chief ceremony is the laying of wreaths at the Cenotaph in London.
- r Although it is not really a holiday, this day is regularly observed. People play practical jokes on each other. Some news organizations also spread hoaxes.
- s Children pretend to be goblins, witches and ghosts. They make jack-o'-lanterns out of pumpkins and put on costumes and masks.
- t It's a day on which children honour their mothers, give them gifts, or perhaps take them to a restaurant for dinner.
- u In Britain this day may be best known for its tradition of dancing round the Maypole and crowning of the May Queen. This day is also called International Workers' Day or Labour Day (to commemorate the Haymarket Riot of 1886 in Chicago, Illinois)

5 After finishing Exercise 4, add to each holiday the date, as in Exercise 2.

CHRISTMAS



1 Christmas greetings

Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year.
Wishing you every happiness in the New Year.
Season's Greetings.

2 Talk about Christmas. Describe the pictures on the left.

Has Christmas lost its true meaning in becoming commercialised?

Do you think that non-Christians should still celebrate Christian holidays?

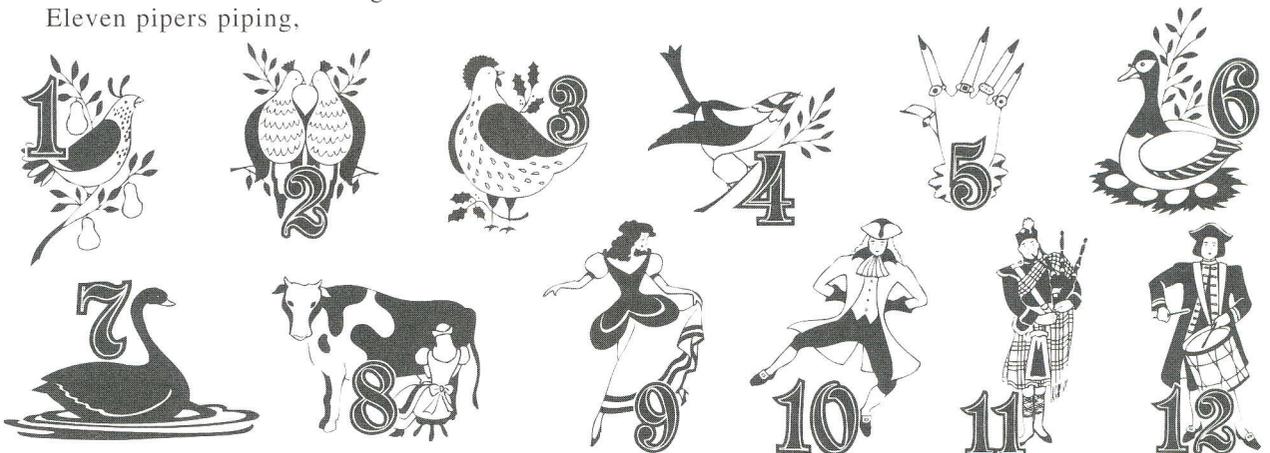
Is Christmas really a pagan festival?

How do you celebrate Christmas and New Year's Eve?

3 The Twelve Days of Christmas

- 1 On the first day of Christmas my true love sent to me
A partridge in a pear tree.
- 2 On the second day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Two turtle doves and a partridge in a pear tree.
- 3 On the third day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Three French hens, two turtle doves,
And a partridge in a pear tree.
-
- 12 On the twelfth day of Christmas my true love sent to me
Twelve drummers drumming
Eleven pipers piping,

Ten lords a-leaping,
Nine ladies dancing,
Eight maids a-milking,
Seven swans a-swimming,
Six geese a-laying,
Five gold rings,
Four colley birds,
Three French hens,
Two turtle doves,
And a partridge in a pear tree.



Christmas

Pantomimes

fairy tales
Cinderella
Little Red Riding Hood
Beauty and the Beast
Puss in Boots
Babes in the Wood
Peter Pan

Christmas tree

spruce or Scots pine
candles
sparklers

sprigs of mistletoe
holly
trinkets
tinsel
a string of lights
a star at the top
homemade ornaments
walnuts
paper chains
strings of popcorn
to decorate the tree
to hang things on the tree
to dangle from the tree

to do Christmas shopping
decorated shop-windows
nativity scene / crib / creche
to fill stockings with presents
to hang up stockings
to write and send off Christmas cards

Christmas food

stuffed roast turkey × goose
fried carp with potato salad
cookies
pastries

mince-pies
fruit cake
egg nog
pumpkin pie
cranberry sauce
to pour brandy over Christmas pudding

Carols and other songs

Silent Night
Jingle Bells
White Christmas
Good King Wenceslas

HOLIDAYS – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

The expressions on the left are used when talking about holidays. Match them with of holidays on the right.

- 1 trick or treat
- 2 carol singers
- 3 anonymous romantic cards
- 4 Queen's message
- 5 Auld Lang Syne
- 6 bonfire
- 7 green beer
- 8 Pilgrim Fathers
- 9 Maundy money
- 10 Trooping the Colour

- a Valentine's Day
- b Christmas
- c Guy Fawkes Night
- d Halloween
- e the Queen's official birthday
- f Maunday Thursday – Thursday before Easter
- g New Year's Eve
- h Saint Patrick's Day
- i Thanksgiving
- j Christmas Day

The following extract is a description of a holiday. Compare it with similar celebrations in your country. Are there any differences?

Festivals are usually devoted to merrymaking. One of the most famous in the United States is Mardi Gras in New Orleans. The custom was brought from France by the early settlers of Louisiana.

Mardi Gras is a time of feasting and fun just before Lent begins. The celebrations start sometime in January, though the most elaborate activities take place during the week preceding Ash Wednesday. They end on the

night of "Fat Tuesday," which is the literal translation of the French "Mardi Gras." Every year thousands of tourists crowd New Orleans to see elaborate floats, dancing in the streets, and the colorful crowning of a queen by Rex, the Lord of Misrule.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe*
© 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)

The expressions on the left go with the verbs on the right. Match them.

- 11 money for charities
- 12 a speech
- 13 tricks on each other
- 14 hidden eggs
- 15 old traditions
- 16 this popular event
- 17 jack-o-lanterns out of large pumpkins
- 18 parties
- 19 the discovery of the Gunpowder Plot of 1605
- 20 the Queen in full regalia in a spectacular horse-drawn carriage

- a carve
- b play
- c takes place
- d hold
- e arrives at
- f deliver
- g keep up
- h search / look for
- i collect
- j is commemorated

Read the text below and fill in the following prepositions.

TO AS FOR IN BY IN OF ACROSS AT THAN

Bank Holiday

In Britain, any of several days designated **21** _____ holidays **22** _____ the Bank Holidays Act of 1871 and a supplementary act of 1875 **23** _____ all the banks in England, Wales, Northern Ireland, and Scotland. Although these days are not statutory public holidays, their observance is no longer limited **24** _____ banks.

By March 2, 1933, more **25** _____ 20 states in the U.S.A. had declared bank "holidays" to stop panic withdrawals. Then Governor Lehman closed all banks and stock exchanges **26** _____ New York. Governor Horner did the same in Illinois. **27** _____ a few days banking operations were halted **28** _____ the country. The economic life **29** _____ the nation was almost **30** _____ a standstill. The American people awaited Roosevelt's solution.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe* © 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)

HOLIDAYS – AND MORE PRACTICE...

The expressions on the left are used when talking about holidays. Match them with the holidays on the right.

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 hot cross buns | a Columbus Day |
| 2 holly and ivy | b Christmas |
| 3 turkey and pumpkin pie | c Good Friday |
| 4 crackers | d Halloween |
| 5 first-footing following Hogmanay | e Independence Day |
| 6 pancake | f Shrove Tuesday, Lent |
| 7 the Declaration of Independence | g New Year's Day |
| 8 dunking for apples | h May Day |
| 9 discovery of America | i Thanksgiving |
| 10 May Queen, maypole or Morris dancing | j Christmas Day |

The following extract is a list of American holidays. Compare them with similar celebrations in your country. Are there any differences?

In 1968 Congress passed a bill – effective in 1971 – changing the days of observance of three existing legal holidays to Mondays and making Columbus Day a ninth legal holiday. The nine legal public holidays established by this bill were: New Year's Day (January 1), Washington's Birthday (third Monday in February), Memorial Day (last Monday in May), Independence Day (July 4), Labor Day (first Monday in September), Columbus Day (second Monday in October), Veterans Day (fourth Monday in November), Thanksgiving (fourth Thursday in November), and Christmas Day (December 25). In 1978, the government moved the observance of

Veterans Day back to November 11, which was originally Armistice Day. In 1986, the birthday of Martin Luther King, Jr., became the tenth legal holiday (third Monday in January).

Sunday is the only holiday under common law. When a legal holiday falls on Sunday, the holiday is observed on the following day.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe*
© 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)

The expressions on the left go with the verbs on the right. Match them.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 11 Christmas wishes | a revived |
| 12 traditions have all but | b is flown |
| 13 local celebration are being | c is put on in London |
| 14 a gift | d fulfil |
| 15 Notting Hill Carnival | e is honoured on March 1 |
| 16 Guy Fawkes tried to | f covered with brandy and set alight |
| 17 a man called Black Rod | g blow up Parliament |
| 18 Christmas pudding is | h bring |
| 19 the national flag | i leads the Queen |
| 20 Saint David, the patron saint of Wales | j died out |

Read the text below and fill in the following prepositions.

AS FOR WITH IN SINCE FROM WITH TO OF IN

Origin of Festivals and Holidays

Festivals and holidays have been celebrated **21** _____ ancient times. The earliest festivals seem to have been connected **22** _____ offerings **23** _____ the dead. Later, people celebrated the change **24** _____ seasons with festivals. Planting time and harvest offerings time were occasions **25** _____ special rejoicing. The festivals of the ancient Greeks and Romans were elaborate affairs. The Romans celebrated Lupercalia **26** _____ February and Saturnalia in mid-December. Dances, amusements, and offerings of presents were mingled **27** _____ pagan religious rites.

Many modern festivals and holidays originated **28** _____ religious celebrations, **29** _____ both terms indicate. These celebrations usually included sacred communal meals, **30** _____ which the term festivals, also called feasts, was derived. And the word holiday originally meant "holy day." Holidays celebrating historic events and other occasions came later.

(From *Compton's Interactive Encyclopedia Deluxe* © 1999 The Learning Company, Inc.)

MODERN SOCIETY

GLOBALIZATION

1 Look at the ten words and try to put them into pairs to form names of some world problems.

economic mania crisis
 globalization
agriculture industrial
genetic extinction
 techno engineering

2 Now read the following newspaper headline. Can you guess what the article might be about? Can you give some concrete points the article could touch upon?

World Culture Resists Bowing to Commerce

3  Now listen to the speaker talking about globalization and what she sees as the future of people in the 21st century. This is a summary of the talk. Fill in the missing words according to the meaning.

Those in favour of globalization think that **1** _____ relationships are vital to successful developments in the future. On the contrary, as the speaker suggests, this **2** _____ is not right. Only when **3** _____ are well developed is it possible to create commercial and **4** _____ institutions.

Civil society movement groups are determined to **5** _____ local cultures. However, the position of culture today is not very strong, and it has to **6** _____ its role as a political force. The new international WCO (World Cultural Organization) is meant to be a counterpart to the existing **7** _____. It is necessary for world leaders to identify with the interests of the **8** _____ society and take the time to listen to those protesting in the streets. If people start sharing their own cultures with others, the 21st century could mean a truly humane **9** _____ of commerce and trade. Nevertheless, if the **10** _____ fail to take this opportunity, the world's future could look rather dim.



4 Work with another student. Using the expressions below, try to prepare a similar talk to deliver at a student conference. First make a plan of your talk, stating the main ideas.

Globalization

global street parties
industrialized countries
developed countries × less well-developed countries
developing × underdeveloped
to impoverish × to become richer and richer
growing influence of multinational corporations
impact on the environment
loss of traditional values
IMF – International Monetary Fund
skinheads × anarchists
bottle battles and violence

ECONOMIC AND POLITICAL SITUATION

1 Read the following text. Put in the parts of sentences that are missing. One part does not fit anywhere.

- A** This was particularly true in the case of military installations and equipment
- B** the unprecedented requirements for dividing the economy assumed a somewhat tentative order of priority
- C** Problems associated with the transition from a centrally planned economy to a market-oriented one led many countries to completely restructure their social security
- D** was relatively diversified and stable, reflecting both a more amenable geography and the historic predominance of Czechs in the federal administration
- E** had caused a dramatic short-term increase in prices and unemployment.
- F** and separate currencies were inaugurated

In many respects, the partition of Czechoslovakia in 1993 represented for the emergent Czech Republic an economizing measure far more effective than any that domestic government policy could hope to accomplish. While the Czech Republic and Slovakia officially shared the status of successors to the federal state, long-standing inequities in economic development gave the Czechs a decided advantage at independence. Rigid compartmentalization under the Czechoslovak planned economy made Slovakia, with its mineral resources and hydroelectric potential, a major producer of armaments for the former Communist nations of eastern Europe. The economy of the Czech Republic, on the other hand, **1**_____. Similarly, the transition to a market economy initiated after the so-called Velvet Revolution of 1989 lagged behind in Slovakia. Irrespective of deeper societal factors, these imbalances predisposed Czechs to favour partition, while the Slovaks were divided in their view of the federal partnership as either an obscuring shadow or a sheltering wing. Once the political breach came to seem inevitable, **2**_____. At partition, the federal monetary system remained essentially intact, each country identifying its currency supply by means of applied stamps. The rapid economic divergence of the two republics, however, ended the arrangement after only one month, **3**_____. The historic imbalance in government assets between the two territories made fair apportionment after partition a difficult goal, **4**_____, of which the Czech Republic held the great majority. The bulk of Slovakia's military-industrial component, by contrast, consisted in its armament manufacture, which had declined precipitously with the collapse of Communism. Despite its inherent advantages, the Czech economy faced independence at a time when recent emergence from the Soviet bloc, coupled with the rigours of privatization, **5**_____. The government instituted a value-added tax in its effort to align the economy with Western markets.

(From *Encyclopaedia Britannica* 2001)

2 Go through the text again. Highlight any useful phrases and supply their Czech equivalents.

3 Working in groups of three, prepare a short summary of events that followed after the described developments and write what the economic and political situation is like at the moment. Which political party is now in power in your country? For inspiration, look at the box below.

Economic and Political Problems, Elections

transformed economy	money laundering	to bring down the government	winning party
half-finished economic reforms	Clean Hands Campaign	to resign / to step down	Parliament x Congress
mass privatisation	financial transparency	no-confidence vote	Lower Chamber x Upper Chamber
centralised x market-oriented	corruption	elections	Chamber of Deputies
low-wage, low-tech economy	financial scandal	general election x local election x by-election	Senate x House of Representatives
working practices	political problems	universal franchise / suffrage	House of Lords x House of Commons
enterprise restructuring	the split of Czechoslovakia	to register as a voter	Speaker x Lord Chancellor x Chairman
pace of industrial modernisation	a phase Slovakia had to go through	electorate	watchdog body
export competitiveness	independence	electoral register / roll	first-past-the-post
balance of trade	the birth of a sovereign republic	to have the right to vote	hung parliament
price liberalisation	political scene	to go to the polls / the polling station	to fulfil pre-election promises
cheap and qualified labour force	Communist dictatorship	to put one's ballot (paper) in the ballot box	post-electoral demoralisation
the incentive to enter the EU	government x Cabinet x administration	to cast a vote	to tarnish international reputation
economic stability	caretaker government of non-elected technocrats	constituency	to abuse the ideals of freedom and democracy
rising unemployment and inflation	(radical) right-wing x left-wing x centrist	to know the election results	
the collapse of banks	majority x minority party	to lose in the elections	
bankruptcy	coalition	to gain x to lose a seat	
	cross-party coalition	to win / to achieve a sweeping / landslide / overwhelming x marginal victory	
	opposition		

DISCRIMINATION

1 Read the following article and discuss whether a similar situation could arise in your country or not.

2 Talk to your neighbour. Do you happen to know what the outcome of this trial was?

3 In groups of four, if you were the judge, what would your ruling be? Give reasons for your decision.

4 In your groups, answer the following questions, using the vocabulary from the box at the bottom of the page.

■ What forms of racism have you come across recently? How were they dealt with?

■ What is the attitude of the people you know towards racial discrimination?

5 Emigration has increased in recent years and has become a very controversial topic. The most discussed questions are listed on the right. Try to provide as many answers as possible.

Microsoft sued for racial discrimination

Software giant Microsoft is facing one of the largest discrimination suits in US history as a group of current and former employees accuse the firm of racism and a "plantation mentality" in the workplace.



The seven African American plaintiffs are seeking \$5bn in compensation, claiming they were paid less than their fellow employees and repeatedly passed over for promotions given to less-qualified white workers.



The workers, who are filing a class action suit against both Microsoft and its figurehead Bill Gates, also claim to have been subjected to racial harassment and retaliation when they complained.

Microsoft has declined to comment in detail on the case but it has vigorously defended its commitment to diversity. While African-Americans make up 2.7 per cent of Microsoft's workforce, minorities as a whole account for 22.7 per cent, company spokesman Dean Katz said.



- Why do people emigrate?
- Why are many people opposed to immigration?
- How can the host country profit from immigrants?

Discrimination, Racism, Immigration

ethnic minority groups / communities

Gypsies / Romanies / Romas

African American racism

anti-Semitism

racial discrimination

ethnic cleansing

racial disadvantage

equal opportunities

anti-discrimination legislation

to support unprivileged minorities

to be entitled to equal rights to integrate into the majority community

to discriminate against

prejudice against minorities

tension in the relations between

to combat racism

subject to intimidation

to feel the hatred of sb

to feel contempt for sb

to despise / treat sb as inferior

to treat sb decently

to commit acts of violence

to be mobbed

to shout abuse

to seek refuge refugees

upsurge in crime

to emigrate x to immigrate

legal x illegal immigration desperate economic or legal situation

political or religious persecution

economic reasons

better economic opportunities

influx of immigration

to restrict immigration

to impose controls limiting the numbers

levels the country can absorb / support

cultural diversity

to corrupt traditions

to destroy local culture

problems of deprivation

exploitation

cheap labour

to take jobs away from the citizens

WAR AND PEACE, TERRORISM

1 The following extract provides information about the former president of Yugoslavia. Fill in the correct verb forms. Change the word order if necessary.

2 Talk about the following questions to your neighbour.

What happened to Milosevic in the following years?

Talk about more examples of trials with former dictators.

What, in your opinion, is the right way to treat these people?

3 On the map, indicate the current hotbeds of international tension, terrorism or war.

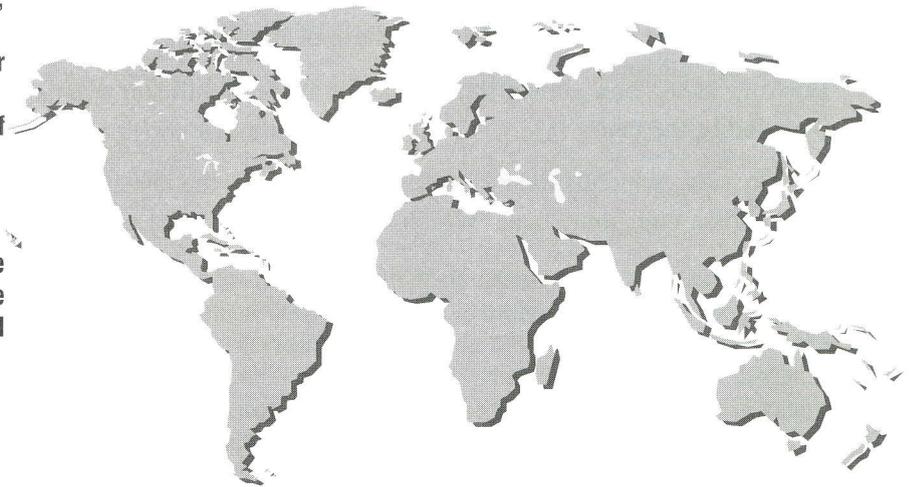
Then compare your map with your classmates.

Did you mark the same places? If not, justify your decision.

4 Using the expressions from the box below, briefly describe some of the current events in the world and present them to the class.

As Serbia's president, Milosevic continued to dominate the new Federal Republic of Yugoslavia, which had been inaugurated in 1992 and consisted of only Serbia and Montenegro. He **1** _____ (maintain) his power by his repression of political opponents, his control of the mass media, and the opportunistic alliances he formed with parties across the political spectrum, **2** _____ (include) the Yugoslav United Left, the party **3** _____ (lead) by his wife. **4** _____ (Serve) two terms as president of Serbia, Milosevic constitutionally **5** _____ (bar) from serving a third term. He retained power, however, by having the federal parliament **6** _____ (elect) him to the presidency of Yugoslavia in 1997. Milosevic's attempt to cling to power by taking the federal presidency **7** _____ (expose) him to indictment by the International Criminal Tribunal for Former Yugoslavia at the Hague, Netherlands. As president of Serbia before 1997, it **8** _____ (be) difficult to charge Milosevic with any possible offences **9** _____ (commit) by Yugoslav troops during the war with Bosnia, but as president of Yugoslavia he was also the commander-in-chief of the federal armed forces. He thus **10** _____ (deem) responsible for any offenses against international law committed during the Kosovo conflict and was indicted in May 1999.

(From Britannica 2001)



War and Peace, Terrorism

to break off diplomatic relations with sb
to declare war on sb
to have military superiority
to fight x win x lose a decisive battle
to skirmish
to attack from ambush
bombing / bombardment
to plant a bomb
to go off
to launch an attack / offensive
retaliation / reprisal

to shift and regroup the forces
to bring in reinforcements
to inflict heavy losses
to strike at an enemy
to repulse / beat an attack
to besiege
to be under curfew
to flee
to pursue
to withdraw
to capture 10,000 troops
to surrender
warring factions

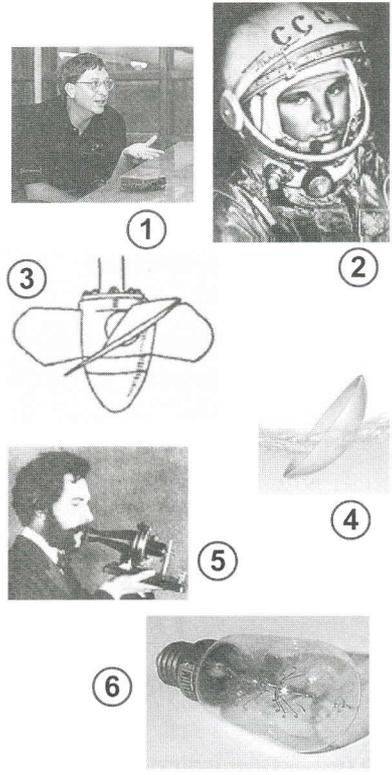
to negotiate a ceasefire
to declare / call a truce / ceasefire x break truce
to force to surrender
lasting ceasefire
the need for restoration of ceasefire
the collapse of ceasefire
to resume campaign of violence
to hand over / surrender one's weapons
decommission of illegally held arms
to accept terms x carry out terms

to oust sb from power
to deploy peace-keeping troops in ...
to take sb prisoner
to set up the War Crime Tribunal in the Hague
to bring former leaders of the guerilla movement to trial
genocide
to be charged with war crimes
to issue sentences as severe as 45 years in prison
to sentence to life imprisonment
jailed for life

PROGRESS IN SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

1 Look at the pictures on the right. Can you recognize the people and inventions in them?

2 Match the names in the first column with the inventions or events in the second and dates in the third. Then discuss the questions below.



Neil Armstrong	propeller water turbine	1969
Alfred Bernhard Nobel	soft contact lenses	1913
Alexander Graham Bell	first man to set foot on the moon	1876
Victor Kaplan	telephone	1961
Otto Wichterle	dynamite	1867
Thomas Alva Edison	electric light bulb	1961
Yuri Alekseyevich Gagarin	Microsoft	1879
Bill Gates and Paul Allen	first manned space flight	1975

- How would the world be different if these events hadn't happened?
- Looking at the box above, think of some more significant events or inventions that have not been included in the table.
- In your view, which is the most useful invention in the last 100 years for all mankind? Try to support your choice with some facts. Which invention is the most useful for you personally? Give reasons.

3 In groups of three, make a list of negative aspects associated with some technical and scientific inventions. In what way can they be abused? Be prepared to discuss your list with the class.

Invention and its use	Negative aspects
<i>Laser - perations, painless drills for dentists</i>	<i>deadly weapon</i>

4 Place the missing words in the correct sentences in the text:

controversial
human

ethical
identical twins

genetically
organ

replacement
reproductive

Human Cloning

Human cloning is the creation of a 1. _____ identical copy of a 2. _____. The term is generally used to refer to *artificial* human cloning; human clones in the form of 3. _____ are commonplace, with their cloning occurring during the natural process of reproduction. There are two commonly discussed types of human cloning: therapeutic cloning and reproductive cloning. A third type of cloning called replacement cloning exists in theory, and is a combination of therapeutic and reproductive cloning. 4. _____ cloning entails the replacement of an extensively damaged, failed, or failing body through cloning.

Human cloning is 5. _____. There have been numerous demands for all progress in the human cloning field to be halted. Some people and groups oppose therapeutic cloning but many more oppose 6. _____ cloning. Various scientific organizations have made public statements suggesting that human reproductive cloning be banned until safety issues are resolved. Serious 7. _____ issues have arisen in discussions of harvesting of organs from clones. Some people have considered the idea of growing organs separately from a human organism – in doing this, a new 8. _____ supply could be established without the moral implications of harvesting them from human organisms.

From Wikipedia

5 Conduct a survey in your class. Do more classmates think that scientists should clone body parts or vice versa? Then choose three representatives on each side to defend their standpoints in an open panel discussion. Each of you should write one question on a slip of paper for these representatives. A moderator should choose the best questions and submit them to the panel. One or two interpreters can interpret the discussion into their mother tongue.

Progress in Science and Technology

advances
research
awards ceremony
Nobel Prize

Outstanding inventions

weapons
arms race
H-bomb × A-bomb
ballistic missile
supersonic aircraft
hovercraft
air-cushion vehicle
satellite/orbiting satellite

satellite communication
automatic camera
Polaroid camera
calculator
computer technology
scanner
websites
adoption websites
buy babies from adoption brokers
overhead projector (OHP)
photocopier
laser
genetic engineering

test-tube babies
cloning
human reproductive cloning
serious monitoring of research
nanotechnology
biotechnology
genetically modified foods

Space exploration

solar system
planets
stars
meteors and meteorites
UFO (unidentified flying object)

flying saucer
cosmonaut × astronaut
space flight / travel
(un)manned flight
circle the Earth
to land on the moon
lunar landing
the Sun
Venus probe
spaceship
space laboratory
space shuttle

ENERGY

1 Here is some information about renewable energy resources. Read the text on the right and decide which type of energy from the headings below the descriptions refer to.

- Geothermal Energy
- Wind Power
- Biomass
- Ocean Thermal Energy Conversion (OTEC)
- Tidal Energy
- Hydroelectric Power

2 Find a word in the text that means:

- 1 change into another form, substance or state
- 2 petrol with a small amount of alcohol in it
- 3 relating to or produced by motion
- 4 utilise

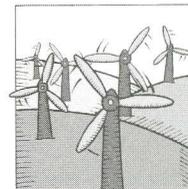
3 Can you think of other energy sources not listed above?

1
 Hot springs, geysers, pools of boiling mud, and fumaroles are the most easily exploited sources of such energy. The greatest potential for this energy, however, lies in the generation of electricity.

2
 This type uses two methods: extracts energy from ocean currents in a way similar to wind power, and uses the temperature differences between the ocean surface and ocean depths to run a heat engine.

3
 Wood and other plants can be burnt directly or converted into a fuel. Conversion of grain to ethanol and the production of gasohol (10 % ethanol and 90 % gasoline) is an example of this process.

4
 The power that can be extracted from the kinetic energy of wind depends upon the wind speed. The theoretical limit of power from wind is 59% of its kinetic energy.



5
 This kind of electricity is produced by generators driven by water turbines that convert the potential energy in falling or fast-flowing water to mechanical energy.

6
 Hydraulic turbine-generator units are presently used to extract energy from ocean tides, although on a very limited scale. There are few sites throughout the world that are suitable for harnessing this kind of energy without constructing prohibitively expensive damlike structures.

4 In the box below you will find a few expressions concerning energy. Using some of them, write a paragraph on nuclear energy and its advantages and disadvantages.



Energy

nuclear power plants
 nuclear reactors
 radioactive waste
 to store nuclear waste
 to contaminate
 disputes over safety
 to jeopardise public safety
 to pose a potential risk
 disastrous effects of the nuclear accident at Chernobyl
 nuclear energy perceived in Hiroshima-like terms
 protracted nuclear debate
 anti-nuclear opponents
 environmental groups
 activists
 blockades

energy resources
 power station
 electricity generation and power supply
 annual energy consumption
 finite nature of the world's fossil-fuel energy resources
 fossil fuels
 firewood
 converting the heat from burning fuels into mechanical energy
 petroleum / oil
 natural gas
 domestic and industrial heating
 exploration and new methods of extraction
 reserves of coal, oil, and gas
 impact on the environment
 burning fossil fuels
 alternatives to these fuels
 biofuels

biomass
 biogas
 renewable energy / alternative energy sources
 to cause little environmental pollution
 economic viability
 hydroelectricity
 nuclear energy
 controversial issue
 fears concerning safety
 undesirable environmental consequences
 solar power
 solar cells / batteries
 wind power
 wind farms
 wind mills / turbines
 geothermal energy
 combustible plant or animal materials
 wave / tidal power

SOCIETY – PRACTICE MAKES PERFECT

Choose the right expressions and fill in the gaps.

- 1 Japan and other _____ countries ...
a growing up c underdeveloped
b developing d industrialized
- 2 It will continue to _____ many of the poorest parts of the world.
a enrich c verify
b impoverish d poverish
- 3 They have built up the industry on _____ .
a cheap labour c banktrupcy
b money laundering d balance of trade
- 4 They also notify the government's other _____ body...
a watching c watchdog
b checking d control
- 5 _____ is seen as the best way to overthrow a dictator.
a enterprise restructuring c fruition
b assassination d price liberation
- 6 The costs of the _____ will be worth bearing.
a no-confidence vote c economic stability
b political scene d cheap labour
- 7 However, _____ boundaries are changed from time to time.
a demoralisation c constituency
b opposition d coalition
- 8 To use raw materials that have minimum _____ on the environment.
a consequence c result
b impact d outcome
- 9 For the disabled, less abled and _____ ...
a underprivileged c minority
b equal d coloured
- 10 Manifestations of _____ and xenophobia are steadily growing in Europe.
a intimidation c racism
b cultural diversity d pickpocketing

Fill in the missing expressions.

- 11 _____ is hostility to or prejudice against Jews.
- 12 _____ is the belief that all members of each race possess characteristics, abilities, or qualities specific to that race, especially so as to distinguish it as inferior or superior to another race or races.
- 13 _____ is a person who has been forced to leave their country in order to escape war, persecution, or natural disaster.
- 14 _____ is a relatively small group of people, especially one commonly discriminated against in a community, society, or nation, differing from others in race, religion, language, or political persuasion.
- 15 _____ unfair treatment on the basis of prejudice.

The following words have been left out of the sentences below. Put them back.

CLEANSING REFUGE INFLUENCE
SKINHEADS RESULTS

- 16 The election _____ had been announced.
- 17 The children have been forced to seek _____ in neighbouring countries.
- 18 This is the harsh reality of ethnic _____, Europe's version of apartheid.
- 19 Maybe this is a consequence of the recession, maybe the growing _____ of the chains.
- 20 By this time all London's pubs and clubs had firmly shut their doors to _____.

Match the collocations.

- | | | | |
|----|-----------|---|-------------|
| 21 | computer | a | missile |
| 22 | test-tube | b | shuttle |
| 23 | space | c | technology |
| 24 | flying | d | saucer |
| 25 | genetic | e | engineering |
| 26 | ballistic | f | babies |

Spot the mistake and correct the following sentences.

- 27 Nigeria has lead African countries in banning the importation of waste from industrialized countries.
- 28 Meanwhile the effectiveness and cost of aids from France (the largest donor to Africa) was being increasingly scrutinized.
- 29 This would be achieved by formulating a convention on climate change, to include legally binding protocols on cutting emissions of gases which contributed to global warming.
- 30 The talks failed produce any clear commitments on proposed treaties to control climate change and to safeguard species diversity.

SOCIETY – AND MORE PRACTICE...

Choose the right expressions and fill in the gaps.

- The Foreign Secretary also predicted that a _____ parliament would lead to another election within a year.
a hung c wrought
b stung d stuck
- Importing waste into the EC will also be banned, with the exception of shipments from _____ countries for treatment or recycling.
a developing c underdeveloped
b industrialized d industrial
- Although human cloning could be a scientific breakthrough, there are _____ concerns.
a functional c ethical
b elemental d colloquial
- An increasing number of Italians want to adopt a British _____ system so that there can be a periodic clean sweep.
a vote c electorate
b first-past-the-post d strong
- Cast a(n) _____ for Britain.
a election c vote
b word d slogan
- If a socialist government came into power and carried out their extravagant promises to the _____, this country would be finished.
a political scene c constituency
b opposition d electorate
- The voting reportedly passed off peacefully and was marked by _____ among the electorate.
a democracy c apathy
b sympathy d bankruptcy
- Universal _____ has not produced the working-class political dominance which so many people either feared or hoped that it would.
a price liberation c corruption
b franchise d ballot
- And, as with all myths, there is a kernel of truth in the _____ perception of themselves as outcasts.
a skinheads c politicians
b technocrats d coalitions
- But the same stone-throwing anarchists complained that they had been brutalized by policemen and thrown into _____.
a Black Marias c Old Bills
b Green Antons d bear cars

Fill in the correct expressions.

- _____ is a disc-shaped flying craft supposedly piloted by aliens.
- _____ is a device that generates an intense beam of coherent monochromatic light (or other electromagnetic radiation) by stimulated emission of photons from excited atoms or molecules.
- _____ is a rocket-launched spacecraft able to land like an unpowered aircraft, used to make repeated journeys.
- _____ is the deliberate modification of the characteristics of an organism by manipulating its genetic material.
- _____ is the branch of technology that deals with dimensions and tolerances of less than 100 nanometres, especially the manipulation of individual atoms and molecules.

The following nouns have been left out from the sentences below. Put them back.

BIOMASS FIREWOOD OIL COAL BIOGAS

- The people who run the country also run the _____ industry.
- The ideal for the future must be a private _____ mine and a power station working together.
- With more breeding and genetic engineering, the productivity of _____ coppices could be doubled.
- We must gather _____.
- _____ is produced by the fermentation of organic matter.

Match the following expressions with their collocations. Sometimes more than one collocation is possible.

- | | | | |
|----|-------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| 21 | burning | a | pollution |
| 22 | to pose a potential | b | public safety |
| 23 | to jeopardise | c | issues |
| 24 | controversial | d | energy |
| 25 | renewable | e | plant |
| 26 | impact on | f | consumption |
| 27 | annual energy | g | fossil fuels |
| 28 | nuclear power | h | resources |
| 29 | energy | i | risk |
| 30 | to cause little environmental | j | the environment |

KEY

FAMILY

5/2

1. c
2. d
3. a
4. a – altered
b – tolerance
c – praise
d – deplore

8/1

Jamie: Hello, Jamie speaking.

Mark: Hi, Jamie! This is Mark. Listen, I was wondering if you wanted to go and see that new Spielberg film.

J: Sounds great! When should we do it?

M: How about tomorrow night at 8:00? We could go get something to eat first and then maybe go out for a drink afterwards.

J: Mmm. You know, tomorrow's out for me. I've already got something planned. Why don't we make it Thursday night instead?

M: Sounds good to me. So I'll pick you up at around 6:00, okay?

J: Great. I'll see you then. Bye.

M: Bye.

8/1

Joe: Hey Anne! I'm having a party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

Anne: Yeah, I'd love to... Oh, wait a minute. What time on Saturday?

J: I don't know. It'll probably start sometime around nine. Why?

A: Oh, shame! I can't make it on Saturday night. I'm going to dinner with my mother.

J: Well, you can always come out after dinner. We'll be going all night.

A: I know, but I have to work early on Sunday morning. Thanks anyway.

J: Sure. Maybe next time.

10/2

1. church wedding
2. organ
3. church bells
4. civil wedding
5. invitations
6. guest list

7. banns posted
8. big day
9. wedding dress
10. lace veil
11. aisle
12. altar
13. tuxedo
14. minister
15. vows
16. ceremony
17. best man
18. wedding rings
19. husband and wife
20. rice
21. wedding reception
22. honeymoon suite
23. white wedding
24. limousine
25. honeymoon

12/1

1. teddy bear
2. rattle
3. bib
4. squeaky toys
5. fluffy animals/soft toys
6. high chair
7. pushchair (GB) / stroller (US)
8. pram
9. baby walker
10. playpen
11. carry-cot

13/3

Dad: Mark, can we talk for a second?

Mark: Uh, yeah, hi dad. What's up?

D: What's up? Do you even have to ask what's up? This report card is disgraceful!

M: Oh, yeah, that.

D: Yes, that! I thought last term's was as bad as it could possibly get, but now this.

M: I know, I'm sorry.

D: I mean, a D in history! A D in Latin. You've totally failed Greek.

M: I know, I know! But I can't help it! All of those stuffy teachers lecturing me, trying to teach me a language that hasn't been spoken in over two thousand years. I mean, what's the point? What good is an A in Latin going to do me?

D: It'll get you into a decent university, that's what it'll do you.

M: Oh, not this again.

D: Well, it's true! Do you really think that Cambridge is going to accept someone with marks like this?

M: I told you I don't want to go to Cambridge or Oxford or any of those snobby places.

D: Oh, yes, that's right! You want to be a car mechanic. I almost forgot, my son wants to be the first Eton graduate to become a grease-monkey! That's a fine future for you.

M: How many times do I have to tell you, I don't just want to work on cars. I want to be a Formula One mechanic, work on the real machines. And I can do it, too! Or at least, I could, if you'd just let me.

D: I didn't spend all of that money on your education just so that you could...

M: No-one ever asked you to spend all of that money, Dad. Besides, the mechanic school is much cheaper, and at least I'd be learning something.

D: Nobody ever asked me? Oh, that's wonderful. That's gratitude for you.

M: Gratitude? Am I supposed to be grateful? Grateful for packing me off to some boarding school, to be shoved in with a bunch of whiny, snobby little brats?

D: It's a place where you can find friends and a job that are worthy of our family name.

M: Aaah! I'm so sick of that! You know what, I don't give a damn about Eton or Cambridge or Oxford. And for that matter, I don't give a damn about our family name either!

D: What? Wait a minute! Come back here!

13/2

The first headline is American; principal – headmaster; program – programme

14/1

1. b;a/b/c/d
2. a;b/d, c
3. e;d
4. b;d
5. c;d

15/2

1. granny flat
2. meals on wheels
3. arthritis
4. senile
5. hard of hearing
6. pension
7. live-in nurse
8. home help
9. nursing home

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 16

1. c – gold
2. a – thrown

3. d – outside
4. b/c – grandfather
5. c – wake up
6. to start a, to break up the, an adoptive, an extended, a single-parent, to look after the, a large, to feed the, to leave the, the immediate
7. undying, to inspire, to send, to fall out of, puppy, to declare, blind, everlasting, unrequited, to show
8. one-parent
9. spouse
10. divorce
11. remarriage
12. marriage
13. child
14. stepfamily
15. siblings
16. c
17. a
18. e
19. b
20. h
21. g
22. i
23. f
24. d
25. b
26. e
27. c
28. a
29. f
30. d

And More Practice... – p. 17

1. b – upwards
2. d – site
3. c – uncle
4. a – woman
5. b – hill
6. foster, illegitimate, naughty, to keep an eye on, to neglect, to scold, to spoil, well-behaved, to abuse a
7. arranged, hasty, loveless, mixed, of convenience, to announce a, break up, to consummate, collapse, to end a, to neglect
8. control
9. infertility
10. unmarried
11. together
12. cohabitate
13. households
14. foster
15. alternative
16. g
17. i
18. b
19. d
20. h
21. f

22. c
23. e
24. a
25. b
26. e
27. f
28. a
29. c
30. d

HOME

19/2

Landlady: Hello.

Peter: Uh, hello. My name is Peter Smith. I'm calling about the ad you placed for the flat. Is it still available?

L: Yes, it is.

P: Great. Could you tell me a little about the flat?

L: Certainly. It's a two-bedroom flat in a Victorian house. It's really spacious, and it has wonderful tall ceilings and everything. Uhm, let's see. It's on the top floor and there's a nice porch in the back that leads to the garden.

P: Ah, it has a garden!

L: Yes, it's very nice. I have my little vegetable plot out there.

P: So you live in the house as well.

L: Yes, I live on the ground floor.

P: And how many other flats are there in the house?

L: There's just three flats, so it's nice and quiet. We are looking for quiet people, you know. No wild parties or anything.

P: No, no, you won't have to worry about that.

L: Right. Well, let's see. What else. The flat has hard-wood floors, uhm, central heating, of course, uh, and, oh yes, there's a laundry room that we all share in the garage.

P: It sounds great! Could I come by and have a look at the place?

L: Yes, well, uhm, that'd be fine. But I have to let you know, there are no pets allowed, and no smokers.

P: Well, I don't smoke. But I do have a dog, Fifi. But I assure you she's completely house-trained. She wouldn't be any bother at all.

L: I'm sorry, but I must insist on no pets.

P: Ohh. Well, that's a shame. Are you sure? I mean, I've never had any problems with...

L: No, I'm afraid I must insist on this point. No pets.

P: Well, thanks anyway. Good bye.

L: Good bye.

19/2

1. two
2. Victorian
3. three
4. landlord / landlady / owner
5. hardwood
6. ceilings
7. laundry room

8. porch
9. garden
10. vegetable plot
11. quiet
12. non-smoker
13. has no pets

19/4

... it was right up ...; It was very cramped; It had a kitchen corner; ... it was in bad part of ...; There was a large swimming pool ...; It was so spacious ...; It is nice and cosy.

20/1

4, 3, 7

1, 6

5, 2

8

21/1

1. chimney
2. roof tiles/ roof
3. lightning conductor (GB) / rod (US)
4. gutter
5. handrail
6. window-box
7. banister
8. sash window
9. window sill
10. patio/porch
11. French window / porch

21/2

Solar panels provide electricity; Sawdust pellets fuel the wood stove; Insulation and double-glazed windows keep in the heat; Wood stove provides heat; Shingles keep water from leaking into the house.

22/1

1. b

2. c

3. c

22/2

inherit; put off; rotten; compress; barren; blisters

23/3

The hinges should be on the other side of the door.

25/2

take/ have a long bath; stand on the scales/ mat/ tiled floor; fill/ to run the bath (tub); spray the floor/ tiles; pull the shower curtain/ the plug; flush the toilet; squeeze the sponge/ toothpaste; go to/ sit on/ read on the toilet; clean one's teeth using a toothbrush, a tooth mug and toothpaste; the bath or washbasin can overflow; slip on the floor tiles

28/2, 3

1. sowing machine – sow the lawn; or a machine for spreading fertilizer
2. wheelbarrow – a small cart with one wheel and two handles for garden work
3. lawn/ grass rake – rake the leaves
4. lawnmower – mow the grass
5. seedling – prick out the seedlings
6. pitchfork – spread manure in the vegetable plot
7. rake – rake the leaves
8. carrot seeds – put into ground to grow, thin out the carrot patch
9. gloves – protect your hands
10. trowel – plant the lettuce and cabbage
11. garden clippers / shears – trim the hedge
12. hoe – weed the flower bed
13. chainsaw – saw big pieces of wood
14. deck chair – sit and rest in
15. lay the lawn – avoid sowing grass
16. watering can – water the plant
17. spade – dig the garden
18. seeds – put into ground to grow
19. spray nozzle – water the plants
20. shears – cut plants and shrubs, trim the hedge
21. pruning shears – prune the fruit trees, trim the hedge
22. ladder – climb to places you cannot reach from the ground
23. flower pots – plant flowers and plants in
24. hosepipe – water the plants

29/1

1. screwdriver – to screw and unscrew; turn screws into and out of their place
2. nails – nail things together
3. saw – saw / cut wood
4. paintbrush – paint walls, furniture etc.
5. spray paint – paint things without touching them
6. spirit level – test a surface to see if it is level
7. pliers – hold things, cut or bend wire
8. brace (and) bits – bore holes in wood
9. adjustable spanner – twist nuts
10. tape measure – measure distance
11. nuts and bolts – fasten things together
12. plane – make surfaces smooth
13. paint roller – paint walls etc.
14. electric drill – to make holes
15. spanner (double open-ended) – twist nuts
16. (drawing) pins – fasten things
17. a set of combination spanners (ring and open-ended)
18. hammer – hit things, esp. nails
19. axe, hatchet – cut or chop wood, etc.
20. folding ruler – measure things
21. vise – hold things tightly while work is done on them

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 30

1. accommodation
2. mansions

3. houses
4. tenants
5. detached
6. detached
7. terraced
8. mortgage
9. property
10. building
11. a, c
12. d
13. c
14. d
15. a, d
16. b
17. b
18. c
19. b
20. c
21. a, b
22. a, c
23. d
24. b
25. c
26. d
27. roof
28. cemented
29. brick wall
30. home

Crossword p. 30

- 1 mansion
- 2 skylight
- 3 gutter
- 4 drive
- 5 bedsitter
- 6 roof
- 7 loft

And More Practice... – p. 31

1. housing
2. flats
3. terraced
4. detached
5. occupy
6. rent
7. need
8. maintain
9. households
10. landlords
11. b
12. b, c
13. c
14. a
15. d
16. c
17. a, c
18. b

19. d
20. a
21. c
22. d
23. a
24. b, c
25. b, c
26. d
27. window
28. ceiling
29. foundations
30. ruins

Crossword p. 31

- 1 stool
- 2 peephole
- 3 tub
- 4 bedlinen
- 5 shelf
- 6 threshold

FOOD

1. peas
2. Chile peppers
3. sweet corn
4. cauliflower
5. aubergine (GB) / eggplant (US)
6. pumpkin
7. spinach
8. cabbage
9. broccoli
10. grapes
11. asparagus
12. peppers
13. celery
14. blackberries
15. lettuce
16. green beans
17. radishes
18. turnip
19. squash
20. blueberries
21. watermelon

33/2

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. b

33/2

I don't know, I know a lot of people who did it because they just don't like the taste, or because the idea of eating flesh really makes them sick, or maybe they had a pet sheep when they were kids or something and have never been able to eat a lamb chop since. The funny thing about me

is that, when I was a kid, I actually used to like eating meat, a lot. I used to feel like a meal just wasn't a meal without at least some meat in it.

No, for me it was mostly a health issue. There are just so many chemicals that go into industrial meat production. There are all of the steroids that the animals are given when they are being raised, and then the preservatives that are put into the meat to keep it from spoiling before it gets to the market. You know, it's just not good for you.

So I decided to stop eating meat for a while, just to see what it was like. I thought about just eating fish, but then I found out that that wasn't any better. You just end up eating all of the pollutants that go into the sea. So now I'm a full vegetarian. I just eat lots of fruits and vegetables and grains, you know, lots of stir-fries and pastas and things. And I try to make sure I get enough beans and things, as well, because you need to replace the proteins that you lose from not eating meat. And I really do feel healthier for it. It's great. You know, I think that, now that I'm so used to it, even if you could get good, healthy meat, I probably wouldn't change my diet.

35/1

Cutting: peel, chop, dice, mince, quarter, crush; **Cooking:** stir, stew, roast, simmer, microwave, boil, fry, grill, bake, steam, sauté, poach, thicken; **Mixing:** stir, blend, whip, beat, scramble, purée

36/1

1. reserve a table
2. go to the restaurant
3. leave your coats in the cloakroom
4. wait for the waiter to seat you
5. ask for the menu
6. look at the menu
7. order your meal
8. eat the appetiser
9. eat the main course
10. eat the dessert
11. ask for the bill
12. pay the bill
13. leave a tip
14. leave the restaurant

37/1

NOTE: The dishes in bold could be on either menu.

American: BBQ chicken wings, nachos, **chef's salad**, chili cheeseburger, Philly steak and cheese sandwich, New York sirloin steak, **spaghetti bolognese**, french fries, **baked potatoes**, **Caesar salad**, apple pie and ice cream, British: **prawn cocktail**, pâté and toast, fillet steak with mushrooms and onion rings, jacket potatoes, **roast duckling in orange sauce**, chips, apple tart and custard, **chocolate mousse**, **banana split**

39

all statements are false

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 40

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. d
5. a
6. c
7. roots
8. orange
9. hop
10. cinnamon OR nutmeg OR cloves
11. cinnamon OR nutmeg OR cloves
12. cinnamon OR nutmeg OR cloves
13. ingredient
14. peach
15. alcohol
16. b
17. a
18. c
19. a
20. b
21. a
22. a, b
23. a
24. a
25. a
26. b
27. a
28. b
29. b
30. a

And More Practice – p. 41

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. c
5. a
6. b
7. vanilla
8. ginger
9. food
10. artificial
11. alcohol
12. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
13. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
14. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
15. celery/lemon/rosemary/thyme
16. c
17. b
18. a
19. b
20. a
21. a

22. b
23. b
24. a
25. a
26. b
27. b
28. a
29. a
30. b

SHOPPING

43/4

1. drain
2. budget
3. distributor / wholesaler
4. household
5. perishable
6. appliance
7. dump
8. charity / Salvation Army
9. reject shops
10. minor imperfection

44/2

- basketball – sporting goods store
- whisky – off-licence (GB) / liquor store (US)
- CD player – hi-fi shop
- fresh cod – seafood shop
- frozen pizza – supermarket
- greeting cards – stationer's
- guide book – bookstore
- hammer – D.I.Y. store / hardware store
- holiday – travel agent's
- house – estate agent's
- magazine – newsagent's
- nails and screws – ironmonger's
- new boots – shoe shop
- perfume – chemist's (GB) / drugstore (US)
- pipe – tobacconist's
- rolls – baker's / bakery
- sandwich – delicatessen (deli)
- sofa – furniture store
- steak – butcher's
- sweets – confectioner's
- tofu – health food store

45/1

Dialogue 1: Joe's corner shop (Joe knows his customers well); **Dialogue 2:** a big shop or a department store (the shop assistant does not know the customer); **Dialogue 3:** at home (people living together); **Dialogue 4:** a hi-fi shop perhaps or any specialized shop, the shop assistant tries to be helpful suggesting mail-order.

45/1/1

Joe: Morning, Mr. Palmer.

Mr. Palmer: Ahh, good morning Joe. What would you like today?

J: Oh, the usual. A pint of milk, half a dozen eggs, a packet of baking powder...

P: I'm afraid we've run out of baking powder.

J: Oh, that's too bad. Barbara wanted to bake a cake. Do you think you'll have it in by tomorrow?

P: No, Joe, I'm not ordering anything any more. I'm closing the shop down, going out of business.

J: What? You can't be serious! I've been shopping here for fifteen years.

P: I know, Joe, and I thank you for it. But with these new supermarkets popping up everywhere, well, I just can't compete.

J: But those markets are way out on the outskirts of town. Surely there's plenty of people who would rather just come down here to the corner shop.

P: Oh, yes, people still come. But it's just for odds and ends these days. The real shopping they do in those big shops. I can't blame them, of course. The supermarkets can buy in bulk, so they have lower prices than I do, and a larger selection too. It's no use.

J: Well, I'll still keep shopping here, even if you don't have any baking powder.

P: Thanks, Joe.

45/1/2

Shop assistant: Well, what do you think?

Customer: I don't know. I hadn't really planned to spend that much. It's a bit too expensive for us.

S: Well, it is true, quality like this doesn't come cheap. But I'll tell you what, next week we're going to be starting our summer sale, and you can get this for a reduced price.

C: Oh, yeah? How much less?

S: Well, the price lists aren't out yet, but I'd say it'll probably be at least fifteen percent off.

C: Well, that's quite good. But it's still more than I can afford right now.

S: No problem! The people in our credit department can put you on a payment plan. You can take this home tomorrow and pay it off in low monthly instalments, at a very reasonable interest rate, too.

C: Uhhm... I don't know.

S: Look, there's no hurry. Think about it for a while, go home, talk to your partner. Then, next week, come and look at the sale price and then decide.

C: Yeah, that sounds like a good idea.

S: Just one thing, though. You might want to leave a deposit, just in case somebody tries to buy it before you make up your mind.

C: Uhhm... I don't know...

45/1/3

Lee: Hey, Susan, come on in.

Susan: Thanks. So what's the big surprise?

L: Well, close your eyes, keep them closed, ready... OK, open them.

S: Wow! You bought a new computer!

L: Yeah, what do you think?

S: Great! You'll finally stop using mine all of the time!

L: Yours! This one's much better than yours! And I got a great deal on it.

S: Did you buy it down at Computer Century?

L: No, at Crazy Mike's Computer Warehouse.

S: Oh, there... Did they have a sale going, too?

L: Well, no, but their retail price was great! Take a look.

S: What? You call that a bargain? Lee, you got ripped off!

L: What do you mean? That's a great price!

S: Lee, I'm telling you, you got taken in! Computer Century has this model on sale for almost half that price.

L: Half that price?

S: When are you going to learn to shop around before you buy something? Look, you didn't even get a decent warranty on it. Only six months.

L: Damn it! And I thought I'd done so well.

S: Look, the next time you go shopping, take me with you, OK?

45/1/4

Shop assistant: Hello, sir, can I help you?

Customer: Yes, I'm looking for this specific model here.

S: Let's see. Oh, I'm sorry. It's out of stock right now.

C: I was afraid of that.

S: We don't normally stock that model, actually. It isn't really in great demand.

C: I know, I know. And you wouldn't happen to know where I could find it?

S: Well, I think it might be pretty much the same story all over town. Have you tried over at Brightimax?

C: Yeah, I've been there already. I've been running all over town looking for it. Could you order it for me specially?

S: Oh, sure, but it would probably take about three to four weeks to get here.

C: Blimey, that's a long time!

S: You know, sir, you might be better off buying it mail-order.

C: Yeah?

S: If you look in Blackwood's Catalogue, I think they've got it in there for a pretty good price. And it'll get to you quicker, too.

C: Well, thanks a lot.

S: Not at all. Just don't tell my boss where you heard it from.

45/2

True statements: **Dialogue 1:** Shoppers can get a better price at the hypermarkets because they can buy goods in bulk.

Dialogue 2: The saleswoman offers to sell the customer the

product even though she does not have all of the money to pay for it immediately. **Dialogue 3:** Lee thinks she got a good deal on her computer. **Dialogue 4:** The shop doesn't usually have the model the customer is looking for.

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 45

1. monolithic hypermarket
2. hypermarket chains
3. jumble sale
4. supermarket trolley
5. wholesale prices
6. street market
7. department
8. grocery
9. enterprise
10. store
11. gourmet
12. cash
13. customer
14. retailers
15. counters
16. cash
17. credit
18. f
19. g
20. b
21. c
22. a
23. d
24. e
25. wrap (sort)
26. obligation (destination)
27. serving (tending)
28. looking/browsing (staring)
29. run (gone)
30. leave (let)

And More Practice – p. 47

1. discount prices
2. shopping malls
3. small shops
4. mail order
5. retail price
6. clearance sale
7. register
8. clerk
9. item
10. checkout
11. code
12. receipts
13. purchase
14. inventory
15. manager
16. retail
17. warehouse
18. g
19. e

20. a
21. d
22. c
23. f
24. b
25. match (snatch)
26. include (conclude)
27. extend (pretend)
28. attended to (listened to)
29. size (taste)
30. look (cook)

CLOTHES

50/2

From left to right: chequered / checked, polka-dot / dotted, tartan, argyle, flowered, paisley, herringbone, zigzag

50/3

1. d
2. f
3. a
4. c
5. b
6. g
7. e

51/1

1. V-neck
2. shawl neck
3. polo neck (GB) / turtleneck (US)
4. crew neck
5. cowl neck

51/2

1. flares / bellbottoms
2. drainpipes / fitted / skin-tight trousers
3. shorts / Bermuda shorts
4. bib and braces / overalls
5. miniskirt
6. knee-length skirt
7. pleated skirt
8. slit skirt
9. kilt

52/1

- a. strap
- b. lace
- c. toe
- d. buckle
- e. heel
- f. sole

52/2

1. Called trainers (GB), sneakers, tennis shoes, or running shoes, these casual shoes are very popular, and not only for sports. Young people wear them quite often. They do

not need polishing: you can just clean them occasionally. Sometimes you may need to wash the shoelaces or buy new ones. They are comfortable.

2. Clogs have wooden soles and are easy to slip on. It's almost impossible to wear them out. Usually they are very comfortable, worn in the summer months or at home.
3. Stilettos, also known as high-heels, need frequent mending of the heels, which can wear down quickly. Although many women prefer platform shoes nowadays, classical high-heels are still a part of evening dress.
4. Hiking boots are lace-up shoes; they are usually strong and heavy duty. As all other sports shoes, they should be comfortable and have a good thick sole. They are low-heeled or almost flat. They should protect you from getting wet feet. That is why they require special care – you have to clean and treat them with the necessary cream or spray as required.
5. Sandals are shoes in leather, fabric or manmade material, consisting of a sole held on to the foot by straps or thongs. They are usually easy-care, soft, lightweight and durable. They are worn in summer by both men and women.
6. Loafers are classic, casual shoes with a broad flat heel.

53/1

1. got undressed / undressed
2. getting dressed
3. dressed
4. tried / put on
5. dressed up
6. fit; letting out
7. take off; loosen; roll up
8. taking in; taking up
9. put on
10. changes out of / takes off; (changes) into / puts on
11. clashes
12. suits
13. matches
14. grown out of

54/1

1. T
2. F
3. T
4. F
5. T
6. T
7. T
8. T

54/1

Well, I actually started modelling when I was in my teens, sort of as a joke. You see, I never really thought of myself as exceptionally beautiful. I've always thought I was rather plain, nothing out of the ordinary or anything. When I was going through my teens I was really concerned about how I looked, and I hated my body and my face and was just really self-conscious. Well, my uncle is a professional photographer, and to help me get over

this negativity I had about my body he brought me to a studio and dressed me up and took some photographs of me. He put together my portfolio, and sent it off to a few modelling agencies, and he said "I'll bet you get a job offer in no time." You know, we both took the whole thing as a kind of a joke, but sure enough, one of the agencies got in touch with us, and I started modelling.

Well, most people don't think so, but it really is. I mean, psychologically it really takes its toll. You always have to be concerned about your body, and always take care of yourself. It seems like everybody wants their models to be thinner and thinner these days, so you have to keep a very careful diet. The pressure to be thin is so great some girls turn to drugs or bulimia and just really get unhealthy, both physically and mentally. My program is much more natural – diet and regular exercise. But I love my body and I think I would take care of it even if I wasn't doing this job.

Photo shoots can be a lot of fun, when they take place in exotic locations and stuff like that. I once did a photo shoot for a new line of bikinis, so I was flown out to Hawaii and they had me standing under these great waterfalls, and it was really beautiful. But it's not really like a vacation because the minute you're done shooting they usually whisk you back to the airport and you don't have any time to see any of the sights. But what I really love are fashion shows. There's nothing like being on a live show. You know, you're there with these really big names in the business, and everyone is excited about the launching of a new line. And I love the pressure of it. You come in off the catwalk and instantly someone is there to whip off your clothes, and you have to change into an entirely new outfit in only a few minutes. And there're always problems, someone has misplaced a necklace or a shirt gets ripped in the rush or something, but when you have to walk out in front of those cameras again you've got to be cool as ice. Like you're just taking a stroll through the park. You know, the feeling at the end of a successful show, when you're out there with the designer and everyone's applauding, it's great. It makes you feel like there's a little part of you in all of those wonderful dresses and clothes that are being sold all over the world.

56/2

old, coarse, prickly

56/3

1. malice
2. keen
3. garment
4. naked
5. ancient
6. spent
7. tension
8. stirred

56/4

1. Yes, he does.
2. No, it isn't.
3. No, he isn't.
4. No, he isn't / hasn't.
5. Sometimes he does.

57/7

iron – used for ironing clothes after they have been washed in a washing machine and dried in a dryer or on a clothesline; **two pairs of scissors** – used for cutting paper and material; **sewing machine** – used for making or mending clothes; **a spool of thread and a needle** – usually used for mending, sewing on buttons, etc.; **knitting needles and yarn** – used for knitting; needle, hook, cotton, **fabrics** – used for embroidering; **washing machine and dryer** – used for washing and drying clothes

57/8

hand wash – bleach – 40° warm wash
tumble-dry – dry-clean – iron

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 58

1. black, white
2. green
3. blue
4. black, red
5. red
6. white
7. white
8. blue
9. red
10. green
11. weaving
12. clothes making
13. metal needles
14. sewing machine
15. stitching
16. clothing
17. a
18. a
19. b
20. a, b
21. b
22. b
23. b
24. h
25. g
26. e
27. c
28. d
29. f
30. a

And More Practice... – p. 59

1. blue
2. black

3. white
4. green
5. grey
6. blue
7. black
8. black
9. red
10. rose
11. dressmakers
12. clothing
13. ready-to-wear
14. haute couture
15. designers
16. fashions
17. a
18. a, b
19. a, b
20. b
21. a, b
22. b
23. b
24. g
25. h
26. f
27. e
28. a
29. d
30. c

WORK & LEISURE**65/1**

1. temporary / summer
2. self-employed / freelance
3. hard-hat worker / unskilled labourer
4. military / national service
5. civil servant / state employee
6. family business

66/2

1. perks
2. company car
3. expense account
4. travelling
5. health scheme
6. sick pay
7. promotion
8. overtime
9. stressful
10. working environment
11. slave-driver / workaholic
12. initiative
13. responsibility
14. passing the buck
15. self-motivated
16. slave-driver / workaholic
17. career change

18. pension
19. retraining
20. qualifications

66/3

Friend: Hi Jane. What's wrong? You look a little down.

Jane: Yeah, it's my job. I really don't know what to do.

F: Why? I thought you were really happy with it.

J: Well, in many ways it's a great job. It definitely has a lot of perks. I have a company car I can use at any time, and I have an expense account I can use to pay for my travelling. The job offers a great health plan with full sick pay when I get ill. And there's a good chance of promotion if I stay with the company for a few years.

F: It sounds great! So what's the problem, then?

J: Well, I'm just not satisfied with the job. I have to travel a lot, so I'm always away from Dan and the kids, and when I am here I always have to work overtime so I don't get a chance to see them much either. It's also a very stressful job, and every body in the office is feeling it, so it's a pretty tense working environment. The boss is a slave driver, which doesn't help. He just walks around yelling about how we all have to show more initiative, take more responsibility for things instead of passing the buck, be more self-motivated, and all of those things. He can be a real workaholic sometimes. But most of all, I'm just sick of selling computers. I want to do something else with my life.

F: Like what?

J: I really want to be a teacher, but I'm not a young girl anymore, and I'm afraid that it's a bit late to be thinking about a career change at my age.

F: Yeah, but what are you going to do, stick with a job you don't like until you get your pension? If I were you I'd leave and find something you like doing better.

J: I know, but how can I do it? I can't go back to school at my age.

F: Well, you might not have to do a full degree. You've got "A" level history, haven't you? You should see if that's enough to get a job teaching history somewhere. And even if you do have to do some retraining, you could go to evening classes before you quit your present job and get all of the qualifications you need.

J: You know, maybe you're right. I'll have to give it some thought.

67/1

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. extra headline

68/1

In order: d, c, a, b / f, f / b, e.

68/2

1. c
sign up – commit oneself in writing to an activity or group
overdraw – take more money out of the bank than you have
afford – have enough (money, means, time, etc.) for; be able to spare
2. d
open an account – business arrangement whereby money is deposited in and may be withdrawn
get oneself into debt – spend more than you have
make a withdrawal – take money out of a bank account
3. a
charge – debit the cost of something to a person or account
take out a loan – borrow a sum of money from a bank
affiliate – associate oneself with a society
4. c/d
automatically pay – transfer money to pay bills without direct action
make a deposit – to put money into a bank account
5. a
high-interest account – bank account with a high interest rate
credit limit – the maximum amount a customer can charge
savings account – an interest-bearing account for customers
6. c
open an account (see 2 above)
make a deposit (see 4 above)
withdraw cash – take money out of bank account

69/5

- A. 5
- B. 4
- C. 1
- D. 3
- E. 2
- F. 6

69/6

Across: 1. ATM 6.purchase 8. overdraft 9. deposit 10. withdrawal 12. bank **Down:** 2. mortgage 3. cheque 4. cash 5. interest 7. loan 11. debt

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 70

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. a, b
5. a
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. a

10. b
11. a
12. a
13. b
14. a
15. wholesale, discount, off the, retail, drop in, official, competitive, adjustment
16. extra, prize, amount of, pocket
17. salaries
18. amount
19. much
20. note
21. change
22. spend
23. owns
24. bill
25. dollar
26. exchange
27. big
28. deserves
29. value
30. money

And More Practice... – p. 71

1. a
2. a
3. a
4. b
5. b
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. a
10. a
11. b
12. a
13. a
14. a
15. range, exorbitant, of shares, stability, reductions, tag, group, worth paying
16. hush, order, easy
17. notes
18. coins
19. pieces
20. year
21. dimes
22. cents
23. love
24. each
25. money
26. market
27. rolling
28. spending
29. interest
30. buy

COMMUNICATION

73/1

1. c
2. f
3. d
4. b
5. e
6. a

74/1

Dear Sirs:

I am writing to enquire about tourist information on your city. I will be visiting your city in late April. Please send me some information about the ... transport routes. Any information about accommodation would also be appreciated.

Yours faithfully,
Patrick McCulley

Hi Christina,

Guess what? I'm going to be in town sometime in late April. I don't know anything about the city... in the mail for me. It doesn't have to be anything too big... tourist map if you have one. Oh, yeah! If you know the names... as well. I can't wait to see you! Love, Pat

75/1

1. make
2. dial
3. number
4. call
5. language
6. calls
7. statement
8. fees / charges
9. rates / bills / charges / calls
10. rates

75/2

- a. push buttons for dialling
- b. earpiece
- c. receiver / handset
- d. mouthpiece
- e. cord

75/3

rotary telephone – push-button phone – mobile
cordless telephone – fax (machine)

76/1, 2

Conversation 1

Hello, 276964.

Hello. Can I speak to Mary, please?

This is Mary speaking.

Hi, Mary. It's David. I was just ringing to make sure that we're still on for the cinema tomorrow.

Oh, yeah! I'd completely forgotten. I'm sorry, I can't make it tomorrow. I've got a lot of work right now.

*Oh well, maybe we can see it some other time.
That'd be great. Maybe some time next week, ok?
That'd be fine. So I'll call you on Thursday, all right?
Great. Talk to you on Thursday, then. Bye.
Bye bye.*

Conversation 2

*Hello, Taylor Residence.
Hello. Could I speak with John, please?
Hold on one second. I'll see if he's in. (Pause.) I'm sorry,
John's in the shower right now. Can I take a message?
Sure. Could you just tell him that Jane called and ask him
to call me when he gets out of the shower?
Does he have your number?
Yes, I think he does.
Ok, I'll let him know you called.
Thank you. Bye.
Bye.*

Conversation 3

*Hello, Bernstein Bank. May I help you?
Yes, I'd like to speak to Mr. Smith, please.
Hold on, I'll put you right through. (Pause.) I'm sorry.
Mr Smith is in a meeting right now and can't come to the
phone. May I take a message?
No, that's all right. I'll try again later. Thank you.
Good bye.
Bye.*

77/1

1. laptop
2. CD ROM
3. sound
4. personal computers
5. networks
6. automatic teller machines
7. telephone lines
8. networking
9. retrieval of information
10. transfer of funds

78/3

1. c
 2. f
 3. b
 4. d
 5. a
- e does not fit

78/4

mouse – used to move ...; monitor – the screen ...; modem
– allows computers ...; cursor – used to highlight ...

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 79

1. a
2. b
3. e
4. d
5. f

6. c
7. to peek
8. technique
9. a
10. b, c
11. b, c
12. a
13. a, b, c
14. a
15. b
16. b, c
17. b, c
18. c
19. a, b, c
20. a
21. stamp
22. civil servant
23. postal reforms
24. knighted
25. labels
26. collect a tax
27. released
28. adhesive postage stamp
29. reigning monarch
30. name of the country

And More Practice... – p. 80

1. d
2. b
3. e
4. a
5. c
6. f
7. –educated
8. millions of
9. a, b, c
10. b
11. a
12. b
13. c
14. a, b, c
15. b
16. a
17. a
18. c
19. a, b, c
20. b
21. established
22. technical advice
23. postal services
24. postal
25. transportation
26. international mail
27. charges
28. letter mail
29. parcel
30. international money orders

TOWN & COUNTRY

83/3

1. quaint
2. charm
3. has gone way up/ doubled in size
4. arable
5. developed over
6. facilities
7. winds its way

83/5

Billy thinks that Mark has got a big house in the country with a big garden.

He thinks that all the people living in the village are farmers and get up early.

He imagines that life in the village must be terribly boring with no nightclubs.

Mark disagrees with Billy.

He thinks his house is a shack on the outskirts of the village. It needs fixing up.

Most of his neighbours are from the city like him. The old villagers are generally quite friendly.

For him life in the village is just right. He enjoys having peace and quiet.

84/3

1. d
2. b
3. c
4. c

83/4,5

Billy: *Hey there, Mark! How's the lord of the manor, then?*

Mark: *How do you mean, Billy?*

B: *Well, you finally bought that mansion in the countryside, didn't you? I can just see you, sitting in your wicker chair in the back garden as you watch the groundsman trim the hedgerows. It must be beautiful, the life of luxury...*

M: *Oh, it's hardly all that! It's more of a small shack on the outskirts of a village, really. It needs some fixing up, but it's cosy, and I've always wanted to move out of Manchester into the countryside.*

B: *But how do you get by out there in the sticks? Don't you miss the convenience of the city, you know, the shopping centres and all that?*

M: *Well, it's not exactly out in the middle of nowhere. We've got our little village shop that stocks just about everything you really need, and I do commute into the city every day, so I do most of my heavy shopping here after work. No, I have to say that I don't miss living in the city one bit.*

B: *Yeah, but it must be terribly boring! I mean, not many night clubs out there, are there?*

M: *To tell the truth, I don't mind at all. I quite enjoy*

having a bit of peace and quiet. And when I do want to go out, I just pop down to the village pub for a few pints and a game of darts.

B: *Yeah, it must be interesting, having a few pints with all of those old farmers and the villagers. But I bet everyone in the town wakes up before dawn, huh?*

M: *Well, I'm definitely not the first person to move out to the village. People have been escaping Manchester for the countryside for years. Most of my neighbours are from the city like me. There's a computer programmer who works at home, a writer who likes to go walking around the town all day with his dog and this enormous walking stick, an airline pilot, and all kinds of other professionals. I'd say the town is about half old villagers and half people like me.*

B: *And how does that work? Do you all get on well?*

M: *Well, for the most part it works out fine. There are a few of the old timers who really resent people like me living there, but on the whole, people are a whole lot friendlier than in Manchester; I can tell you. If anything, they're a little too friendly.*

B: *What do you mean?*

M: *Well, you know, everybody knows everybody, and there's a fair amount of gossip that goes on. Especially in the village store. You know, I've been making special requests, asking them to stock tofu and some other natural foods for me. So, the other day I walked in, and I asked them if they had any vitamin B-12. Well, these two old men who had been talking by cash register stopped talking and stared at me as if I was from another planet. The owner, James, he's a nice old bloke, and he's pretty much used to it now, so he just shook his head a bit sadly. But those other two, I swear they must have thought I was the weirdest thing on earth.*

84/3

I'm sick to death of hearing about the homeless problem! You want to know what the problem is? It's really easy. The problem is that in our society, there are some people who just don't want to take responsibility for themselves. Go down to the train station, or anywhere downtown, for that matter, and what do you see? Lots of able-bodied people, who are perfectly able to work for a living and keep their lives together, sitting around begging change and going on about how hard their lives are. If they wanted to, they could get a job, the papers are full of them. But they just don't want to. For whatever reason, they'd rather drink their lives away in the street, no matter how filthy and disgusting that life is. Well, if they want to, then that's fine with me. But I'm not responsible, no matter what the bleeding hearts say, and they can't expect me to finance their lifestyle for them. Not with my spare change and not with my tax dollars.

Oh yeah, I've heard people talking about how a lot of them have mental problems and really need help. Well, sure, I agree that those people probably can't take responsibility

for themselves and need to be looked after. But that's not society's job, that's their family's job. I mean, if I had a brother or a son that had a mental problem, I sure wouldn't let him just wander around the streets, and I wouldn't expect other people to take care of him. I'd take care of him myself. But these people are really a tiny minority. Most of the homeless people out there know exactly what they're doing. Playing on our sympathies to live an easy life, that's what they're doing. And I'm sick of it!

85/4

1. migration
2. expand
3. prefabricated
4. escape/flee
5. cramped
6. reversal
7. miseries
8. sterile
9. resources
10. neglect

86/5

Role-play – Waste disposal (slips of paper with roles to be distributed in class):

Mr / Ms Whitman: You are the mayor of Crustyville and are facing an election. You don't really have any position on this issue: you just don't want to upset any voters. Try to figure out a solution that makes everybody happy.

Mr / Ms Stinkwell: You are the head of the Crustyville Waste Disposal Centre. You are already understaffed and underfunded, and it's getting harder every day to keep things at the dump from falling apart. You aren't really against ecological waste disposal, but you just don't have the money to make it happen. You don't think the project could work, and don't want to make things at the dump any worse than they already are.

Mr / Ms Smitney: You live next to the landfill and you are totally fed up with the way Stinkwell and his / her staff are running the show. The rubbish is just thrown everywhere and the stench is completely disgusting. You're for anything that might change the way things get done at the landfill.

Mr / Ms Humper: You are sick and tired of Mayor Whitman and all of the new taxes he / she has imposed. This new plan would not only cost more money, but it would also require you to sort out your rubbish into four different categories. You think the whole thing is a terrible idea.

Mr / Ms Shrublove: You are the local representative of Greenwar, a radical environmental organisation. You have made this project the main focus of Greenwar, and are intent on it going through. Don't back down on your position.

Mr / Ms Scrapnest: You are the owner of the local junkyard, and you don't care about environmentalism. What you do care about is money. You see many people dumping working refrigerators and stoves at the landfill, and there is a lot of money in recycling. Offer your help, but don't let anyone know how much money there is in this. They might steal your idea and do it themselves!

88/1

1. called
2. told
3. had been kidnapped
4. gave
5. told
6. had used
7. began
8. apprehended
9. charged
10. could
11. had been seen
12. lurking
13. insisted
14. was
15. produced
16. confused
17. was not contacted / had not been contacted
18. were ever made / had ever been made
19. was acting / acted
20. thought
21. found
22. were
23. broke
24. confessed
25. had killed / killed
26. made
27. to cover
28. was immediately arrested
29. charged
30. were dropped
31. was released
32. portrayed
33. asked
34. pled / pleaded
35. testified
36. had / had had
37. pronounced
38. distinguishing
39. was acquitted
40. sent
41. stayed
42. began
43. serving
44. lives
45. raised / had raised
46. killed / had killed

89/2

1. d
2. i
3. e
4. a
5. f
6. b
7. y
8. j
9. g
10. c

89/3

1. murder / murderer
2. blackmail / blackmailer
3. rob / robber OR thief
4. kill / killer
5. drive drunk / drunk driver
6. rape / rapist
7. burglary, burglarise (US) / burglar
8. mug / mugger
9. assault / assailant
10. kidnap / kidnapper

89/5

1. judge
2. witness stand
3. barrister
4. accused / defendant dock
5. jury
6. public

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 90

1. e
2. h
3. j
4. i
5. c
6. f
7. g
8. b
9. a
10. d
11. retrieval
12. stolen
13. wanted
14. urban
15. direct access
16. missing property
17. a
18. b
19. b
20. a
21. a
22. b
23. a
24. a

25. a
26. b
27. b
28. a
29. b
30. a

And More Practice... – p. 91

1. c
2. h
3. e
4. a
5. i
6. j
7. f
8. d
9. g
10. b
11. patrol cars
12. aircraft
13. fire stations
14. crime
15. mobile
16. transmission
17. a
18. b
19. b
20. a
21. a
22. b
23. a
24. a, b
25. a
26. b
27. a
28. a
29. a, b
30. a

SIGHTSEEING**93/2**

John: Hi, Mike. How was your trip to Italy?

Mike: It was a disaster.

J: Oh, no. Why? What happened?

M: Everything! Everything that could have possibly gone wrong did!

J: But you spent so much time planning the tour. I thought you would have been ready for anything.

M: I thought so too, but I couldn't have been more wrong. Our first stop was Venice, so of course, I thought, everyone would like to go take a ride on a gondola. Well, of course, one of the tourists in my group tried to stand up in the boat to get a photograph.

J: Oh, no. Don't tell me he fell into the canal.

M: Yes, he fell right in. So the gondolier had to haul him out, and he was perfectly fine, you know, just a little wet,

but he insisted on going to the hospital immediately. He said he was worried about the chemicals in the water.

J: So what did you do?

M: Well, I took him to the hospital, of course, and they said that he was fine, but in the meantime the rest of my group got scattered all over Venice.

J: Oh, how awful.

M: And then, in Florence, we were going to drop in on the Uffizi Gallery, because they had this great exhibition of Botticelli's works. I had called ahead to arrange the tickets, but when we got there, they said they had never heard of me, and we had to wait for three hours in the sun to get in.

J: Yeah, the line to get into the Uffizi was a nightmare when I went there, too.

M: But it was so hot, and most of the people in the tour group were pensioners. I was afraid that someone was going to get heat stroke or something.

J: Did they?

M: No, they were all right. But they were so stupid! I don't know why any of them even went to Italy. They were really bored with all of the historical background I had prepared for them. I would explain what something was, and they would all stand there and stare at me with glazed over eyes, but five seconds later someone would ask "OOOHHHH, this is pretty. What is it?". I really had to fight to keep my temper with them.

J: I'm sure.

M: They didn't even want to eat Italian food!

J: What?

M: Yes. They just wanted to eat at hamburger stands. They said that they wanted to eat somewhere where they could understand the menus.

J: That's outrageous! How could anyone go down to Italy, be surrounded by all of that wonderful food, and eat hamburgers?

M: I don't know, John. I'm telling you, after that trip, I'm considering a career change.

93/3

1. charm
2. fatigue
3. desensitise
4. stuffy
5. teeming
6. blend
7. confidence
8. fiercely
9. manage

93/4

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. a

95/6

1. e
2. d
3. g
4. c
5. a
6. f
7. b

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 96

1. bank
 2. dating from
 3. rich in
 4. hundred spires
 5. taverns
 6. housing estates
- Oban Highland Games – 7, 10, 13, 15, 16, 18, 19
Falkland – 8, 9, 11, 12, 14, 17, 20
21. made (done)
 22. owned (owed)
 23. inheritance (heritage)
 24. sold (bought)
 25. taken (caught)
 26. part (place)
 27. court (yard)
 28. out (over)
 29. constructed (conducted)
 30. later (latter)

And More Practice... – p. 97

1. Romanesque
 2. Gothic
 3. Baroque
 4. classical
 5. cemetery
 6. ancient core
- Isle of Skye – 7, 8, 11, 14, 17, 18, 19
St. Giles' Cathedral – 9, 10, 12, 13, 15, 16, 20
21. weaken (weak)
 22. persisted (perceived)
 23. maypole (mayrod)
 24. pressure (press)
 25. peasant (pheasant)
 26. abound (abandon)
 27. customs (usages)
 28. Catholic (Empire)
 29. observance (conservancy)

TRAVEL

99/2

Airport: k, d, c (terminal); b, m (check-in counter); e (security check);
f (immigration officer); i (booking flight back)
Plane: j, l (flight attendant); a, h (captain); g (attendant after landing);

100/1

1. cruise
2. sail
3. dock
4. ports
5. guides
6. ruins
7. land
8. board
9. cabin
10. suites
11. liner

100/3

Paul: Oh, come on. You're not still upset, are you?

Mary: I don't want to talk about it.

P: Look, I'm sorry you didn't like the trip. What am I supposed to do? You're always going on about the Greek Islands and how beautiful they are and how you've always loved them and how someday you've got to go back... so, we went to the Greek Islands! Great! But all you can do is complain...

M: Yes, I do love the Greek Islands and yes, they are beautiful, but how can you tell just from looking at them from a ship? I wanted to actually go down onto the islands, look around, see the people..

P: Then why didn't you go on any of the tours? We had plenty of time in port, you could have gone with the groups and seen the ruins...

M: Oh, God! And listen to that stupid tour guide go on and on about how smart he is? I hate those tour groups, filled with pensioners and their Hawaiian shirts and always taking photos of everything. No thank you, once was enough for me.

P: Well, then, you could have gone off on your own, explored the place.

M: I know, but I didn't want to do it on my own. I wanted you to come with me. I mean, this was supposed to be our holiday together, right? Besides, I was too busy being sea-sick to go on shore. God, I felt awful.

P: I know, I'm sorry. I didn't think you'd get so sick. I mean, the sea isn't usually so rough at this time of year...

M: Why couldn't we just have flown to one or two of the islands and then spent some time really getting to know them?

P: Honey, you know I don't care about the Greek Islands. I only agreed to go there because you love them so much. But I've been working so hard, lately, and you know how hard I've been working. The last thing I wanted to do was go hauling a backpack around some dirty little islands, trying to ...

M: They're not dirty! They're very beautiful...

P: OK, OK they're not dirty, they're beautiful. But all the same, I just wanted to relax! You know, relax! As in sit in a chaise longue, get some sun, read a little. And there's nothing more relaxing than the rolling of the sea.

I've really missed it.

M: Yeah, it did wonders relaxing my stomach!

P: I said I was sorry, OK? I was just trying to plan something we'd both enjoy.

M: Well, then, why don't you try planning it with me? We could have put our heads together and come up with something...

P: I know, I wanted it to be a surprise. I'm sorry. Look, next time, we'll plan it together. We'll do it right, OK?

M: All right.

102/2

no left turn; steep hill; stop

level crossing; no through road; no U-turn; roadworks ahead
cyclists only; slippery road; give way; roundabout; no overtaking

103/1

1. windscreen (GB) / windshield (US)
2. wing mirror (GB) / side mirror (US)
3. bonnet (GB) / hood (US)
4. headlight
5. bumper / fender (both)
6. sightlight; foglight (both)
7. number plate (GB) / license plate (US)
8. tyre (GB) / tire (US)
9. rear lights (GB) / taillights (US)
10. wheel; hubcap
11. indicator (GB) / turn signals (US)
12. rear-view mirror
13. steering wheel
14. petrol gauge (GB) / fuel gauge (US)
15. speedometer
16. gearlever (GB) / stick shift (US)
17. seat belt; safety belt
18. handbrake
19. accelerator (GB) / gas pedal (US)
20. brake
21. clutch

105/2

Oh, yeah, I saw the whole thing. I was riding my bike through here, right, and I stopped to pick some of these berries here that are growing on the side of the road, so I saw the whole thing. OK, so, what happened was... up there, where the dirt road joins the tarmac, there's where that truck there started to pull out into the street. I swear, the kid who was driving it looked about twelve. He obviously doesn't know what he's doing, because he's just pulling out when he pops the clutch and, Bang! stalls the truck. So he's sitting there, with his nose out in traffic, trying to get the thing started again, right, when that fancy sports car over there comes screaming around the corner. You know, it's a pretty sharp bend there, and you can't really see what's around the bend on account of them trees, right? So the sports car comes whipping around there and all of a sudden finds this truck sticking

out in the middle of the street. So the driver of the sports car hits the brakes and tries to swerve out of the way, but of course, he's going too fast, so he fish-tails right across the middle of the road into the oncoming traffic. Almost had a head-on collision with that station wagon that was coming the other way, right, except the station wagon swerved off, and ended up wrapped around a tree. It's a shame, really, cause the station wagon's the only one who really didn't do anything wrong, y'know? Are they OK?

105/3

1. drunk tank
2. double-parked
3. parking ticket
4. tailgate
5. defective brakes
6. pulled over
7. ran over
8. thumb a lift
9. running a few red lights
10. pulled over by the police
11. driving licence
12. insurance
13. clocked me with a radar gun
14. had been drinking
15. breathalyser
16. speeding / reckless driving
17. driving under the influence
18. reckless driving / speeding

106/1

1. commute
2. driveway
3. rush-hour
4. bumper-to-bumper traffic
5. fender-bender
6. road workers
7. exhaust fumes
8. exit
9. congested
10. one-way
11. "no left-turn"
12. parking places

108/2

1. it
2. 0
3. by
4. 0
5. there
6. have
7. 0
8. and
9. 0
10. 0
11. all

12. 0
13. all
14. to
15. don't / no

109

1. airliner
2. locomotive
3. Chunnel
4. vehicle
5. express
6. underground
7. liner
8. flight
9. raft
10. still
11. balloon
12. sailing
13. tyre
14. railway
15. black
16. wild
17. subway

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 110

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. b
5. a
6. b
7. d
8. b
9. c
10. b
11. a
12. all
13. b
14. b
15. a
16. vehicle
17. wheels
18. engineered
19. brake
20. gear
21. people who meet for a brief but intense moment and then part, never to see each other again
22. do what everyone else does
23. leave
24. negative information is passed more quickly than positive information
25. to try to catch a free ride with strangers by standing on the side of the road
26. disappeared
27. behaving in a disorganized way
28. foolish people do not understand danger and therefore do things that would frighten sensible people

29. go against
30. trying to say

And More Practice... – p. 111

1. d
2. all
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. c
7. all
8. c
9. b, c
10. d, e
11. a
12. a
13. d
14. e
15. c
16. steered
17. top gear
18. engine
19. pump
20. chair
21. getting on my nerves
22. I'm very confused
23. follow your instincts OR keep going straight
24. in the process of
25. going the wrong way
26. leave a situation that is bad
27. challenge someone's optimism
28. enjoy the process of doing something rather than anticipate the result
29. when you travel, you learn new things
30. very happy

FARMING

113/1

barley, oats, corn, wheat

113/2

1. seep down
2. contaminate
3. subsidies
4. ban
5. hedgerows
6. erosion
7. topsoil
8. drain
9. sustainable
10. throughout Britain

113

Role-play – Environmental issues (slips of paper with roles to be distributed in class):

You are a representative of a new environmental group that wants to restrict the use of pesticides and fertilisers, the Earth and Farmers' Party, distributing literature outside of a grocery store.

You are a small farmer who is trying to compete with the big industrial farms. As if the pressures of running a farm weren't enough, now there is a new environmental group that wants to restrict the use of pesticides and fertilisers. Without these products, you have no chance of keeping your farm. You hate the way that environmentalists trumpet their high causes but give no thought to how their actions hurt people economically.

114/2

Female	Male	Baby	Food Products
cow	bull	calf	milk, beef, veal, cheese, suet
hen	cock / rooster	chick(en)	(chicken) meat, eggs
sheep / ewe	ram	lamb	milk, cheese, mutton, lamb
sow	boar	piglet	bacon, ham, pork, lard
mare	stallion/ gelding	foal	horsemeat
duck	drake	duckling	eggs, meat
goose	gander	gosling	eggs, meat
she-/ nanny- goat	he-/billy- goat	kid	milk, meat, sausages, cheese

115/1,2

Verb	Animal	Sound
barks, growls, yaps, whines	dog	bow-wow; ruff; woof
miaows / meows / mews, purrs	cat	miaow / meow / mew
neighs, whinnies	horse	--
moos	cow	moo
grunts, squeals	pig	oink oink
clucks	hens	bok-bok-bok, cluck-cluck-cluck
crows	rooster	cock-a-doodle-doo
quacks	ducks	quack-quack
brays, hee-haws	donkey	hee-haw
bleats, baas	sheep	baa-aa-aa; baa, baa
bleats	goat	mee

115/1

a dog barks: bow-wow

a dog yaps

a dog whines

a cat miaows: miaow

a cat purrs

a horse neighs

a horse whinnies
a cow moos: moo
a pig grunts: oink, oink
a pig squeals
hens cluck
a rooster crows: cock-a-doodle-doo
ducks quack
a donkey brays or hee-haws: he-haw
sheep bleat
a goat bleats

115/3

a blackbird sings; a cricket chirps; a bee hums; a frog croaks; a mouse squeaks; an owl hoots; a snake hisses; a hawk squawks; a fly buzzes; a sparrow twitters

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 116

1. d
2. c
3. a
4. a
5. c
6. agriculture
7. hen
8. kid
9. dairy
10. barley, hops
11. vineyard
12. sugar-beet
13. to shear
14. has been adopted
15. are raised
16. fed
17. balanced
18. controlled
19. are fed
20. milking
21. identified
22. passes
23. sheep
24. hound
25. pig
26. cat
27. dog
28. bitch
29. swine / bitch
30. bull

And More Practice... – p. 117

1. b
2. a
3. c
4. c
5. c
6. scythe
7. pigeons
8. hens/chickens / poultry

9. spade, pitchfork
10. rabies
11. orchard
12. dung
13. heifer
14. straw
15. plant
16. soil
17. fertilizer
18. crops
19. leaves
20. insects
21. compost
22. organic
23. horse
24. pigs / swine
25. chicken
26. turkey
27. sheep
28. watchdog
29. dogged
30. hog

CLIMATE

118/1

sunny – cloudy – overcast – rain
thunderstorm – snow – tornado – cyclone

120/3

1. b
2. e
3. d
4. a
5. c
6. f
7. g

120/4

- a. under the weather
- b. take a rain check
- c. save some for a rainy day
- d. it never rains, but it pours
- e. as right as rain
- f. come rain or shine

122/1

1. had
2. plaguing
3. lashed
4. blew
5. dumped
6. ripped
7. tore
8. parched
9. reaching
10. went along

11. institute
12. replenish

122/2

1. heatwave
2. overwhelmed
3. flood
4. blistering
5. reservoirs
6. rationing
7. drought

123/2

- a. flood
- b. drought
- c. avalanche
- d. tornado
- e. landslide
- f. hurricane

124/1

1. false
2. d
3. false
4. a, d
5. false
6. b

124/1

Phone-in Host: Good evening, and welcome to “Keep it Simple”, the phone-in for the people who are sick of hearing discussions about the answers to questions they seem to have missed. With us in the studio is **Professor Bluntsworthy**, an expert on pollution and energy problems. And our first caller is **Jane Bletheron** from Kingsfield – Jane?

Caller: Good evening. Listen, I keep hearing people talking about the greenhouse effect as if it were the end of the world, and I don't even know what it is. Why “greenhouse”? What's the effect? What's it got to do with me anyway?

Phone-in Host: Good evening Jane. Well, that sounds like three questions for the price of one. Just to start with, why “greenhouse”, prof?

Professor: I think we'd better start at the very beginning. Jane, have you got a greenhouse?

Jane: No, Kingsfield's just high-rise flats and concrete. You're lucky if you can get something to grow in a window-box, here...

Host: I worked in a big, commercial greenhouse once, when I was a student.

Prof: What was it like?

Host: Bl.. very hot and uncomfortable.

Prof: Why grow tomatoes in a greenhouse, anyway?

Host: It was too cold for them to grow outside.

Prof: Right. That's where the name comes from. Life needs warmth. The greenhouse effect is what keeps our planet

warm enough to live on. Without it, life could not exist on earth. The atmosphere traps the sun's heat, with the gasses and vapours that make up the air acting like the glass in a greenhouse: they let the heat in, but they don't let it out again. So, strictly speaking, the greenhouse effect is not a problem, that's basic to all life.

Host: But even a greenhouse needs to control its temperature, right? I mean, if it gets too hot, even tomatoes die. We had a complicated system of ventilation where I worked, to keep the temperature within limits. What does the planet do? After all, you can hardly open a window for the whole earth!

Prof: You're right about the temperature regulation – let's call it the world's thermostat – it's complicated. Since the 1960's, many scientists have started to worry that the world's thermostat isn't working properly, or that people have created conditions that it can't deal with. They think that the world is getting warmer, and they call the whole process global warming. And just like the tomatoes, life can only exist between surprisingly tight limits.

Jane: So the greenhouse effect is no problem, but global warming is, right?

Prof: Exactly.

Jane: So, go on, what's wrong with the thermostat, what's global warming and, again, what's it got to do with me?

Prof: As I said, some of the gasses that make up the atmosphere act like the glass in a greenhouse, so, surprisingly enough, they're called the greenhouse gasses. It's generally felt that concentrations of them are getting too high for natural systems to deal with. For example, we all breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide. Carbon dioxide is a greenhouse gas, but we don't have to stop breathing yet because plants breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen. But burning fossil fuels – oil products like petrol and diesel, and coal – also generates carbon dioxide, and cutting down forests takes away many of the trees and plants that have helped to absorb it in the past. Industry also generates nitrous oxides, methane and CFC's, all of which make the world warmer.

Host: CFC's – what's that short for?

Prof: Chlorofluorocarbons. Although they're partially banned in most developed countries, developing countries are still using them in aerosols and refrigeration systems.

Host: So the place is getting warmer, right.

Prof: Some scientists think so, and that there is a very real danger of climate change and natural catastrophes. Others maintain that global weather goes through cycles naturally, and that this one will come and go like all the others before it. Obviously, the figures are difficult to calculate, but a rise of two degrees centigrade over the next fifty years is definitely possible, and when international conferences discuss the problem at a high level, you can be sure than someone, somewhere, is worried.

Host: Worried about two degrees? We would certainly enjoy some more warm weather, but that's not much, surely.

Prof: First of all, two degrees is an average. It could be as much as ten degrees at the poles within the next 25 years, and four degrees or more in northern Europe.

Host: Ten degrees at the poles would melt a lot of ice, I hear.

Prof: Enough to flood low-lying land all over the world – look at the world map and you'll be surprised how many million people live within a metre of sea level – and that's the figure we're talking about!

Jane: Can I say something? If we all know this, why don't people get away from the sea? If they don't, it's their fault and their problem, surely? We're hundreds of metres above sea level where I live. Why should I worry if the place is a bit warmer?

Prof: When millions of people lose their homes and jobs, there's bound to be social trouble, even war, when they start to migrate inland. And if the climate patterns change, we're looking at damage to land and property on a vast scale. If a country has no history of, for example, very heavy rain and flooding, or high winds, even hurricanes, it's simply not ready for them and their effects are exaggerated. And agricultural patterns would change, too, with all the economic and social changes that go with changing from, for example, potatoes to rice in central Europe.

Jane: You must be joking! War and hurricanes! It sounds like something from a mad preacher on late-night radio!

Prof: You're right. But mad preachers just want you to pray and pay. There's lots of ways you can live a greener life, from using public transport to boycotting burger franchises that destroy rain forest to graze beef cattle. It's up to you. You don't have to live like some back-to-nature '60's freak – just adjust the life style to sit a little more lightly on the planet.

Host: Now we're getting into politics and running out of time. Thank you, Jane, thank you, professor. And if you've a question it's too late to ask your friends – or you think they don't really know either – join me and the prof next week for another edition of "Keep it Simple".

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 125

1. hurricanes
2. rainfall
3. flooding
4. snowfall
5. droughts
6. storms
7. a storm of / a hail of
8. the calm before the storm
9. a hail of / a storm of
10. wet
11. under a cloud
12. snowed under

13. tempestuous
14. frosty
15. a fog of
16. lightning
17. gale
18. icicle
19. haze / mist / fog
20. snowdrift
21. melt / thaw
22. overcast
23. a, d
24. b
25. a
26. a
27. c
28. d
29. b
30. c

And More Practice... – p. 126

1. rain
2. flooding
3. thunderstorms
4. hail
5. sleet
6. storms
7. sunny
8. thundered
9. winds of
10. hazy
11. whirlwind
12. the mists of
13. avalanche
14. stormed
15. foggiest
16. clouded
17. breeze
18. drizzle
19. lightning
20. unpredictable
21. sultry
22. scorcher
23. b
24. d
25. d
26. a
27. a, b
28. a
29. c
30. b

NATURE

127/2 (Please, feel free to correct this information if it is wrong.)

	Yosemite	Everglades	Death Valley
ducks	yes	yes	no
coyote	yes	yes	yes
egrets	rarely	yes	no
kangaroo rats	yes	yes	yes
horned lizard	no	no	yes
deer	yes	yes	no
cougar	yes	yes	no
alligator	no	yes	no
bighorn sheep	yes	no	yes
grizzly bear	yes	no	no
bald eagle	yes	yes	no
grey wolf	no	no	no
rattlesnakes	yes	yes	yes
water moccasins	no	yes	no
wild turkey	no	no	no
beaver	maybe not	no	no
lizards	yes	yes	yes

128/4

lions	groups	pride	cub	predator / scavenger
pigs	groups	herd	piglet	omnivore
horses	groups	herd	foal	herbivore
ducks	groups	flock	duckling	herbivore
bald eagles	solitary	-	eaglet	carnivore / scavenger
spiders	solitary	-	-	predator
wolves	groups	pack	cub	predator
snakes	solitary	-	baby snake	predator
vultures	groups	flock/pack	chick	scavenger
hyenas	groups	pack	pups	predator / scavenger

128/5

ANIMAL	PET	FOOD	HUNT	WILD	WORK
rabbit	pet	food	hunt	wild / domestic	
ostrich		food	hunt	wild / domestic	
deer		food	hunt	wild	
camel				wild / domestic	transport
koala				wild	
parrot	pet			wild	

snail		food		wild	
bald eagle				wild	
pheasant	-	food	hunt	wild	
donkey				domestic	transport
frog	-	food		wild	
elephant				wild / domestic	transport

130/1

- cliffs
- beaches
- low tide
- turns
- offshore
- source
- streams
- white water rapids
- mouth
- current
- range of hills
- meadows
- caves and caverns
- stalactites / stalagmites
- stalagmites / stalactites
- reservoir
- creek
- forests

130/2

- c mussels
- e shrimps
- a edible crabs
- b carp
- d salmon
- h trout
- i cockles / clams
- f crayfish
- g mackerel

135/3

Host: Well, Christmas time is coming, and many families across the country are busily looking for a gift for their loved ones and especially for their children. And what could be better than a pet, a cute, furry playmate waiting under the tree on Christmas morning, right? Well, not always. Today we have in the studio **Dr. Mark Preskett**, a veterinarian, who is going to tell us a little bit about the dangers of giving a pet as a Christmas gift.

Host: Hello, Mark.

Mark: Hello.

H: So tell us, what is wrong with giving a pet as a gift?

M: Well, it's not that giving a pet as a gift is wrong, it's just the way that many people do it that sometimes causes trouble.

H: How so?

M: Well, the first day you bring home a pet, whether it be a dog or a cat or even a canary, is extremely important for the relationship you are going to have with the animal. You have to remember that most of the times the animals are very young, and it is the first time they have been away from their mothers, so of course they are very vulnerable and need to be taken care of and made to feel comfortable in their new home. And if you think of Christmas morning, with all of the excitement and the presents and all of the family gathered round the tree, it's probably the worst time to bring a young animal into your household.

H: Yes, if you see it from the animal's point of view, it must really look quite mad.

M: It certainly does. So, a good idea is to tell your children what their present is, maybe by putting a dog collar or something like that under the tree, and then wait a few days until things have settled down before you actually bring the animal home.

H: Well, that makes sense. And tell me, are certain pets better than others as gifts?

M: Well, the animal you choose should fit the person who is going to look after it. Many times people bring home a puppy, and at first the children are all excited and play with it all the time, but then school starts again and they see the puppy needs to be looked after and the puppy gets kind of forgotten...

H: And the parents end up looking after it.

M: Exactly.

H: You're pretty much better off buying fish, then.

M: Well, actually, it's interesting you should say that because fish are some of the most difficult pets to care for. You have to keep the fish tank clean and at a proper temperature, which can sometimes be rather tricky. So many people who buy fish as a kind of low-maintenance pet end up finding out that it's much harder than they thought.

H: So what kinds of animals are the easiest to care for?

M: Well, generally caged animals are the easiest. By this I mean something like hamsters, birds, or even turtles.

H: Well, now, that's definitely an original Christmas gift. Well, Dr. Preskett, thank you very much for coming on the show.

M: Thank you.

136/1

Left: petal, leaf; Right: stalk, bloom / flower, bud, roots (in the flower pot)

136/2

primrose; lily of the valley; daisy; hyacinth; crocus; iris; pansy; lily; narcissus; chrysanthemum; daffodil; tulip

137/3

Left: leaf and blossom, branch, bark, trunk; Right: crown, twig, bough

137/5

- A. pine cone
- B. oak leaf
- C. (horse) chestnut leaf with a conker / chestnut
- D. three acorns
- E. beech leaf
- F. rowan berries
- G. beech nut / mast
- H. pussy willow / catkins

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 138

- 1. c
- 2. d
- 3. a
- 4. a, b
- 5. c
- 6. c
- 7. c
- 8. d
- 9. b
- 10. b
- 11. heather
- 12. forget-me-not
- 13. thyme
- 14. cornflower
- 15. dandelion
- 16. ferret
- 17. rat
- 18. fox
- 19. bear
- 20. ape
- 21. cone
- 22. mast
- 23. acorns
- 24. conkers
- 25. cone
- 26. berries
- 27. c
- 28. d
- 29. a
- 30. b

And More Practice... – p. 139

- 1. a
- 2. b
- 3. c
- 4. b
- 5. d
- 6. a
- 7. d
- 8. c
- 9. b
- 10. d
- 11. cowberry/cranberry
- 12. water lily
- 13. poppy
- 14. daisy

15. daffodil
16. mouse
17. wolf
18. squirreling
19. monkey
20. hares
21. spruce, pine, fir
22. larch, lime, hornbeam, birch, beech, oak, maple, horse chestnut, elm, rowan, willow, ash
23. c
24. f
25. g
26. h
27. b
28. e
29. a
30. d

EVERYDAY PHRASES – p. 140

1. j
2. a
3. l
4. e
5. b
6. c
7. f
8. g
9. h
10. k
11. i
12. d

THE HUMAN BODY

141/2

1. unblemished
2. bulging
3. glistening
4. obesity
5. fitter
6. concepts
7. mohawk
8. tomboy
9. balding
10. host

141/3

Phrases from the text: long legs, firm thighs, flat stomach, huge breasts, tanned skin, god-like man, muscular man, sculpted chest, wide shoulders, slim nation, pierced lips, stocky masculine build, short hair, double chin

142/1

It is the fourth man from the left.

142/1

Police Officer: All right, now, Ms Begbie, I know this is difficult for you, but we need you to give a description of your assailant for the police artist so that we can make a sketch of him. Do you think you can do that for us?

Ms Begbie: Yes, I think so. I got a good look at him. God, I don't think I could ever forget his face.

P: All right then, let's start with the face. Was it a round face or an oval one?

B: Oh, it was round, definitely round. He was a very fat man, and he had a double chin and, I think, yes, with a big cleft.

P: Ok, a cleft chin. Like this? Good. Now let's do the eyes. What kind of eyes did he have?

B: Well, they were big round eyes. No, not quite that round, a little bit more square than that... Yes, good, now you've got it. They were big and brown, and he had big bushy eyebrows that kind of came together. Yes, perfect.

P: Right, and what about the nose? Was it a straight nose?

B: No, no, he had a big flat nose, kind of like a drinker's nose, you know, all veined and red. And it was a little bit crooked, as if it had been broken and never set right.

P: Right, like this? Good. And the lips? Were they full lips?

B: Yes, and very chapped and cracked, as if he had been outside in the cold a long time. And he had a moustache as well. Yes, exactly like that.

P: And did he have any distinguishing features, like a scar or a birthmark?

B: No, but he did have rather bad acne. His face was covered in pimples.

P: All right, let's have a look at the hair, then. How long was it?

B: Oh, it was about shoulder-length, parted in the middle, and very wavy. It was dark brown, but streaked with grey. Right. Oh my god! That's him! That's the man who took my purse!

142/2

- a. chapped lips; teeth
- b. rosy cheeks; chin
- c. low forehead; hair
- d. dimpled chin; nose
- e. slanted eyes; face
- f. receding hairline; eyebrows
- g. short hair; forehead
- h. lank hair; cheeks
- i. yellow teeth; lips

142/3

1st picture: round eyes, flat crooked nose, thick bushy eyebrows, a birthmark on one cheek, dimpled chin; **2nd picture:** straight nose, a pockmarked face, a birthmark under the right eye, thin lips, beard, double chin; **3rd picture:** scars, moustache, thick arched eyebrows, round face, straight nose; **NOTE:** None of them has slanted eyes.

143/6

Friend: Hi, Sue. Nice hat. Is it new?

Sue: Don't even talk about my hat! God, I am so mad I could just scream!

F: Why? What's the matter?

S: What's the matter? Just look! (Sue takes off her hat.) I went to the hairdresser's today and look what she did! She butchered me!

F: Oh, it's not really that bad... I mean, maybe when it grows out it'll...

S: It's awful! God! All I asked her for was a trim and a perm. I had a lot of split ends, and I was tired of my fringe always getting in my eyes, so I wanted it a little shorter. But she chopped my fringe completely off, and the sides are too short too. And this perm is so curly that I look like I have an afro! It's terrible!

F: Well, you know, it could be worse. Have you seen John's new haircut?

S: No, why?

F: Well, you know how John used to have such lovely long hair? Well, he got a new job in an insurance company so he had to cut it off. He wanted it just to be a nice, normal length, with a parting on the side and all that. You know, the businessman look. Well, the barber shaved it all the way off. By the time he realised what was happening, it was too late, so he had to get a crew cut. It doesn't look so bad now that he's grown a moustache and beard, but when he first got it he looked like a skinhead! Not exactly the way to make a good first impression at your new job.

144/1

1. bladder, ear, stomach, lung
2. ankle, wrist
3. arm, shin
4. lung, kidney
5. kidney, gall
6. tendon, hamstring, muscle
7. head, tooth, ear, stomach
8. ankle, toe, leg, arm, wrist, finger, nose, tooth, neck
9. knee, ankle, wrist, finger, collarbone
10. hamstring, tendon, ligament
11. toe
12. muscle, leg, arm
13. heart
14. neck

145/5

A

1. i
2. a
3. g
4. c
5. j
6. h
7. e
8. d
9. f

10. b

B

1. e
2. a
3. g
4. d
5. j
6. f
7. c
8. b
9. h
10. i

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 146

1. i
2. c
3. b
4. j
5. h
6. d
7. f
8. g
9. e
10. a
11. hair
12. mouth
13. forehead
14. knees
15. spine
16. legs
17. belly
18. thighs
19. hands
20. figure
21. b
22. d
23. a
24. d
25. c
26. a
27. a
28. d
29. c
30. a

And More Practice... – p. 147

1. f
2. c
3. e
4. b
5. j
6. i
7. a
8. g
9. d
10. h
11. liver

12. kidneys
13. heart
14. extremities
15. mouth
16. belly
17. tonsils
18. bone
19. lips
20. fingers
21. a
22. b
23. c
24. a
25. b
26. a
27. b, d
28. b
29. a
30. b

HEALTH

148/1

1. influenza / flu / infected throat
2. sore throat, hacking cough, headache, sore muscles
3. about four days
4. aspirin, cough syrup, throat lozenges
5. not yet
6. she thinks the doctor will give her antibiotics and she hates them

148/1,2

Friend: Hi, Samantha, how's it going?

Samantha: Oh, not so good.

F: Yeah, you look a bit under the weather. What's wrong?

S: Oh. I think I've got the flu. My throat is so sore, and I have this hacking cough that just won't go away. Every morning I wake up with this terrible headache and my muscles are sore all over. I feel like I could just die!

F: Yeah, there has been a flu bug going around lately. Jane's been home sick with it for the last few days, and I just hope she doesn't give it to me. I've got too much work right now to get sick.

S: Tell me about it! I'd love to just take a few days off and recover from this, but I can't. My boss is a real slave-driver. I don't think she'd let me have a sick day if I came to work in a coma. Besides, I don't want to go to the doctor. He'd just give me antibiotics, and I hate antibiotics.

F: Well, you should at least go down to the chemist's and get yourself some medicine.

S: I have. I've been taking aspirin and cough syrup, and I go through a bag of throat lozenges a day, but nothing seems to help. Now I think I'm getting a fever.

F: Yeah, you are a little bit hot. How long has this been going on?

S: About four days now. It just keeps getting worse, too.

F: Well, I think you should just go to your doctor. A fever is nothing to take lightly, you know!

S: Yeah, maybe you're right.

150/1

wheelchair; walking aids: walking stick, crutch, forked stick; special bathroom and toilet facilities: grab-handle, handrail; Zimmer frame / walking frame.

151/4

f, b, d, a, e, c

152/1

Nasal drops can be used when you have a bad cold and it is difficult for you to blow your nose because it's blocked. Some people prefer "natural" remedies for the same purpose – sucking mineral water or salt water; **Eye drops** can be used if you suffer from an eye infection or if you have worked somewhere where there was a lot of dust. You can use camomile instead; penicillin and other antibiotics should only be used when prescribed and dosed by a doctor. You should always follow your doctor's instructions carefully. **Various other medicines** can help you feel better – if you suffer from pain, you take painkillers. **Sedatives / tranquillisers** should help you relax. **Sleeping pills** help you induce sleep. **Homeopathic medicine** may be a solution for some, others will prefer various herbs or acupuncture, hypnosis or other alternatives; **Vitamins** can also come in the form of pills or capsules or tablets. **Ointments** are welcome help when you have various dermatological problems. **Camphor creams** relieve aching joints. **Sunscreens / creams** protect skin from sunburn and skin cancer.

153/4

Suggested follow-up activity: Here are the four endings of the four paragraphs. Distribute the photocopied slips in class and ask students to match the speeches to the participants.

1 ... by sanctioning the use of drugs you invite more young people to experiment with drugs until they try more powerful stuff and get hooked. He thinks that Dutch figures show that very clearly.

2 ... soft drugs might be sold under the same conditions as cigarettes and alcohol. He said no research has ever proved grass is more addictive than alcohol and there are no or few restrictions on its sale. He stressed tobacco and alcohol industries have a big share in the national economy.

3 ... legalizing the possessions of drugs. He thinks it evident from Dutch experience that war on drugs has failed. The remedy to drug abuse is to be sought outside the penal system, in schools and in families. Above all, drugs are a social, not a criminal problem. Criminalising the victims is going to lead to more alienation, which is behind drug abuse. More than anything else, it would show how powerless

we are in the face of the breakdown of the family and other institutions responsible for upbringing of the future generation.

4 ... the message "everything's allowed and risk-free" that we are sending out to the kids could be very damaging, especially at an age when they haven't yet developed their personalities and are thus more insecure and susceptible to all kinds of bad influence, such as alcohol and tobacco.

1. J. D. Buckley 2. Martin Blank 3. Capt. John Stewart 4. Janet Homely

154/1

broken bone / limb / fracture; food poisoning, salmonella, upset stomach; diabetes; malignant tumour / cancer

154/3

Children's diseases: scarlet fever, mumps, chickenpox, whooping cough, polio, measles

Affected parts of the body: constipation – bowels; scarlet fever – throat, skin; pneumonia – lungs; flu – respiratory tract, muscles; mumps – salivary glands; cholera – intestines; tuberculosis – lungs; appendicitis – appendix; headache – head; food poisoning – stomach; chickenpox – skin; whooping cough – throat and lungs; typhoid – intestines; throat infection – throat; diarrhoea – intestines; polio – limbs; indigestion – stomach; allergy – various parts; measles – skin; hepatitis – liver; ulcer – stomach, duodenum

NOTE: In the Czech Republic, you get vaccinated against all the children's diseases mentioned above; vaccination against some others (e.g. flu, hepatitis, tuberculosis) is also administered.

154/4

I first started feeling sick at school one day. My throat felt sore and I was having trouble swallowing. My mother let me stay home from school for a few days, but my throat swelled up even further. We went to the doctor, and he said that I had tonsillitis. They operated on me the next day, and I spent the next week at home recovering. It wasn't all bad, though – I got to eat all the ice cream I wanted for the whole week!

155/1

- women have strange cravings: pickles being the most well known
- the beginning of pregnancy is the most crucial time
- many hours
- premature baby – a baby born early
contractions – tightening ...
trimester – a stage of pregnancy
labour – the series of contractions...
foetus – a developing baby

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 156

- b
- b, a
- b

- b
- a
- b
- a
- b
- a
- b
- a
- b
- b
- a
- unhealthy
- ills
- sick / ailing
- infectious / contagious
- symptoms
- pain
- crippling
- paralysed
- i
- a
- g
- j
- h
- e
- d
- f
- c
- b

And More Practice ... – p. 157

- a
- a
- b
- b
- b
- b
- a
- b
- a
- a
- b
- bruised
- healthy
- fatal
- deadly
- painful
- cancer/ disease / epidemic
- headache
- jaundiced
- d
- c
- b
- a
- c
- i
- f
- j

29. g
30. h

SPORT

158/2

1. sprint / dash
2. hurdles
3. pole vault
4. long jump, triple jump
5. javelin
6. (competitive) walking
7. weightlifting
8. boxing
9. judo, ju-jitsu
10. wrestling
11. karate
12. fencing
13. shooting
14. archery
15. downhill skiing
16. sledging / sledding / luge
17. climbing / mountaineering
18. swimming
19. windsurfing / sailboarding
20. water-skiing
21. rowing
22. sailing
23. ice-skating
24. ice hockey
25. football / soccer
26. rugby
27. basketball
28. baseball
29. tennis, badminton, squash
30. golf

161/2

1. a
2. e
3. c
4. d
5. b

161/3

1. was modelled on
2. emphasis
3. pagan
4. clashed with
5. foster
6. broadcast
7. enhancing
8. steroids
9. have been stripped of
10. boycotted

162/2

1. lodge
2. skiing holiday
3. rack
4. hard-packed
5. downhill
6. slope
7. lift
8. ticket
9. snowplough
10. skis
11. poles
12. cross-country

163/1

Because he'd put on a lot of weight.

Lifting weights.

No. He was afraid his new muscles would turn to flab if he stopped exercising.

163/1

Part A

I first started exercising in college, because I'd put on a lot of weight and just wasn't feeling good about myself. At first I was only concerned with how I looked, so I started lifting weights. I went to the gym three times a week, and I saw results almost immediately. My fat started turning into muscles, and if anything, I got bigger. But, even though I looked better, and I was definitely stronger, I still didn't feel much healthier. I was building up these large masses of muscle, and I was afraid that if I stopped exercising, they would all turn to flab and I would be in worse shape than I was before I started. It was also really boring, just lifting those weights up and down over and over again. So I decided that I needed to get some different kinds of exercise.

163/2

Part B

So I gave up weight training, and decided to get more aerobic exercise, but I couldn't decide which kind to take up. I know that swimming is supposed to be the best aerobic exercise, but I'm not a very good swimmer. I can barely do the breast stroke. So that was out. And aerobics, being a woman's sport and all, was definitely out. In the end I decided on cycling and squash. I bike to work every day, and my girlfriend and I go out on longer trips on the weekend when the weather's nice. And I have some friends who I play squash with on Thursday nights, so that works out my upper body and lets me release some tension as well. On the whole, I'd say I'm pretty fit.

163

tennis racquet / racket – tennis; jogging shoes – running; roller skates / blades – roller skating; sledge / sled – sledding; parachute – jumping; saddle – riding; Frisbee – throwing; pool stick – pool; squash racquet – squash;

The Summer Olympic Games will be held in London in 2012 (<http://www.london2012.com/>)

skateboard – skateboarding; walking shoes – walking; dartboard – darts; fishing rod – fishing / angling; swimming costume – swimming; bat – baseball, softball, cricket, table-tennis / ping-pong; snowmobile – riding a snowmobile; wet suit – diving; water skis – water skiing; surfboard – surfing; mallet – croquet, polo; raft – rafting; aqualung – diving; crampons – mountaineering; caddy – golf

NOTE: The pictures depict some more equipment and sports: golf clubs, cross-country boots, safety bindings, goggles, hiking boots, pin balls (ten-pin bowling), stone, broom (curling), landing net, reel (fishing / angling), saddle, stirrups, whip, riding boots (riding), flippers / fins, goggles / face mask, snorkel (diving)

164/3

Role play – professional sports (slips of paper with roles to be distributed in class). Possible combinations: Julie's mother + Julie's trainer, Julie's father + Julie's sponsor, Julie + Jason, Julie's skating friend + Julie's school friend. After a while, the pairs may be exchanged, e.g. Julie's mother + Jason, etc.

Julie: Your dream is to compete in the Olympic Games. You know that this, however, can't be achieved without costs. You suffer from some emotional problems – you worry a lot about your performance, you can't live like a "normal" teenager, you neglect your boyfriend. You don't know whether to commit yourself to a rigorous programme or not.

Jason: You are Julie's boyfriend. You believe secretly that Julie won't train rigorously enough to become a member of the Olympic team. You don't want to tell her openly because you understand her ambition, but you would like her to spend more time with you.

Julie's mother: You would like Julie to give up competitive skating. You are worried about your daughter. She starves herself to retain the lithe figure prized by judges of the sport. She spends most of her time at the ice rink or at competitions. And now she wants to enter even more rigorous training programme.

Julie's father: You support Julie a lot in her ambition to become a member of the team competing at the Olympic Games. You have already invested a lot of time and money in this dream and you believe it will come true.

Julie's trainer: You've been Julie's trainer for 3 years. You believe strongly that she has what it takes to make the Olympic team, but she should forget about her boyfriend and start training more rigorously than ever before.

Skating friend: You are Julie's skating friend. You know Julie as a talented and hardworking skater, who has won several national youth competitions and one international competition. You believe that she will make it into the Olympic team. You yourself would sacrifice anything for this goal.

Sponsor: You are a representative of a large company that produces skating boots. Your company is prepared to fund Julie's new training programme for two years if she appears in a commercial for their product.

School friend: You are Julie's school friend. The two of you have always been quite close. You think Julie's schedule is gruelling. It leaves her very little time for studying, let alone socializing. She doesn't go to the movies or dancing with you any longer. You feel very strongly, that she should give up figure skating and be more of a "normal" teenager.

165

1. golf
2. cricket
3. bowls
4. bowling
5. skittles
6. rugby
7. American football

166/2

throw-in – football and other ball games, ice-hockey; **serve** – tennis and any other net-sport; **shoot** – football, any goal sport; **basket** – basketball; **cleats** – football, rugby, any team sport on a pitch, athletics; **corner kick** – football; **travel** – basketball; **baseline** – tennis, any racquet sport; **slam** – any racquet sport; **forehand** – tennis, any racquet sport; **net** – fishing, polo, football, basketball, volleyball, some racquet sport; **defence x offence** – any team sport with goals / targets, e.g. football, ice-hockey; **umpire** – tennis, American football, volleyball, field hockey, cricket, baseball, badminton; **backhand** – table tennis, any racquet sport; **goalie** – football, hockey, any sport with goals

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 167

1. g
2. d
3. b
4. c
5. f
6. a
7. e
8. pitch / field
9. field
10. course
11. pool
12. rink
13. court
14. court
15. rink

16. trump card
17. keeps his cards close to his chest
18. gamble
19. gambled
20. skating on thin ice
21. plain sailing
22. unsporting
23. key player
24. moving the goalposts
25. ranked as favourite
26. stakes
27. in the running
28. out of the running
29. make all the running
30. the odds are

And More Practice... – p. 168

1. c
2. e
3. a
4. d
5. f
6. b
7. g
8. shoes / track
9. ring
10. rink
11. table
12. racquet
13. hoop
14. shoes
15. wrestler
16. neck and neck
17. outsider
18. at stake
19. against all odds
20. first-past-the-post
21. touch base
22. own goal
23. play his game
24. good sport
25. play fair
26. marathon
27. put / lay your cards on the table
28. pawn
29. game was up
30. baiting

PHRASES AND PHRASAL VERBS – p. 169

Family

1. after
2. on
3. up
4. out
5. up

Home

1. through
2. out
3. off
4. in
5. on

Food

1. on
2. out
3. out
4. off

Shopping

1. on
2. up, down
3. in
4. in

Clothes

1. of
2. up
3. in
4. out
5. in

Work & Leisure

1. out, to
2. ends
3. up
4. on
5. off

Town & Country

1. off
2. out
3. up
4. to
5. to

Sightseeing

1. on
2. round
3. of

Travel

1. to
2. off
3. on
4. in
5. on
6. in
7. on
8. out

Farming

1. while
2. up
3. for

Climate

1. for
2. to
3. from
4. up
5. out

The Human Body

1. out
2. to
3. in

Health

1. in
2. of

MEDIA

170/2

1. tabloid press
2. urgency
3. paparazzi
4. excess
5. intrusion
6. circulation
7. sue
8. reliable sources
9. investigative reporting
10. anonymous

171/3

Contents of a typical newspaper: front page; local news; international news; business and financial news; arts reviews, previews, and people – including book, movie, and theatre news; TV and radio guide; birth, marriage, and engagement announcements; obituaries; sport; lifestyle and fashion; advice column; crosswords; health; law reports; letters to the editor; weather; gossip column; comic strips; horoscopes; classified advertisements

171/4

Andrew: Gary! I can't believe you read that trash!

Gary: What? I like this newspaper.

A: But it's the worst of the gutter press! All of the home news is sensationalised trash about the Royal Family or some sex scandal in the government. There's not a scrap of serious news in that whole paper!

G: It's not that bad.

A: Oh, come on! It doesn't even have an international news section, and the editorials seem as if they were written by the page three girls.

G: All right. All right. But, you know, Andrew, I couldn't care less about the Royal Family. Look, when I read a newspaper, I don't start on the front page. I start at the back. Sports, mate, that's what I wanna hear about. And this paper has the best sports round-up in England. It's got everything on footy, the best full coverage of the games, and the inside stories about each team. And the racing page is spot on, maybe! Best racing page in England! Besides, if you want politics, take a look at the political cartoons in the funnies.

A: You can't form your political opinions from a cartoon strip!

G: Well, what are you reading? Ah-ha! That's a fine example of journalism for you.

A: Well, I know...

G: That's the most mainstream, commercial paper in London! At least my paper says something. That paper just takes whatever the Home Office says and prints it like gospel. They couldn't find a real story if it came up and hit them in the face.

A: I know, I know! I really don't like it either. But my wife insisted that we subscribe to it. She likes the women's pages. You know, the lifestyle and fashion section and things like that. But it does have a decent business section. Almost as good as your racing page.

G: And the crossword puzzle in it is quite good.

A: Yes, especially the Sunday one. It takes me all Sunday morning to finish it.

G: Yeah, but, Andrew...

A: Yes?

G: What about the news?

A: Oh, that. Well, I get that from television.

171/5

attacks – criticises
backs – supports
ban – prohibit
bid – attempt
cuts – reductions
deal – agreement
fights – opposes
looms – is about to happen
plummets – falls
probe – investigation
quits – resigns
rejects – refuses
row – disagreement
set – ready
surge – rise
talks – negotiations
triggers – causes
vow – promise
graft – bribery

171/6

Suggested activity: Cut each headline into words, divide the class into 4 groups and give each group a set of jumbled words for one of the four headlines.

1	Drug	Probe	Backs	Teen	Cig	Ban
2	Minister	Quits	Over	Graft	Scandal	
3	Welfare	Cuts	Loom	as	Tax	Revenues
4	Rebels	Reject	Deal	Vow	to	Keep

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 174

1. over
2. for
3. on
4. case
5. features

6. in
7. on
8. of
9. part
10. after
11. allowances
12. with
13. b
14. a
15. a
16. b
17. a
18. a
19. a
20. a, b
21. regional OR international
22. to bring about; encourage
23. meaningless; minimal
24. dependency
25. together with
26. states
27. receive
28. taking over
29. different
30. nationwide

And More Practice ... – p. 175

1. racist
2. sexist
3. violent
4. concerned
5. criticize
6. superficial
7. important
8. applaud
9. in-depth
10. current
11. recognize
12. provide
13. alternative media
14. complete
15. inadequate
16. minority
17. biased coverage
18. to wet one's feet
19. mainstream sources
20. available
21. b
22. a
23. a / b
24. a / b
25. a
26. a / b
27. a
28. a
29. a / b
30. a

CULTURE

177/2

director – tells the actors how to play, is the head organizer; **lead** – plays the main role; **composer** – writes music; **stage designer** – invents the setting that the play takes place in, and finds props; **performer** – actors; **costume designer** – designs clothing for the actors; **producer** – organizes and funds the show; **stage manager** – carries out what the stage designer has planned; **extra** – people hired only for the big scenes; **understudy** – actor studying a role to substitute for an absent colleague; **prompter** – whispers forgotten lines to help the actors; **lighting operator** – keeps the stage bright or dark; **playwright** – the author of a play

178/2

Positive: The leading man gave a great performance as Napoleon. It was thrilling. The direction was wonderful. I felt the passion. It kept me on the edge of my seat. It was full of tension and suspense. A touching story. A heart-warming film. A film for the whole family. The special effects and stunts were great;
Negative: It was boring. The story was predictable. The actor wasn't very convincing. The story wasn't believable. A total waste of money. I walked out half-way through the film.

179

stringed: lyre, violin, mandolin, balalaika, harp, guitar

wind: saxophone, recorder

brass: French horn, trumpet

percussion: drum, maracas, cymbals, triangle, drum set

keyboards: grand piano

180/2

1. pop music (pub, bar)
2. classical music, violin recital (concert hall)
3. classical music (concert hall), jazz (restaurant with live music)
4. classical music (concert hall, opera house)
5. popular music, jazz (restaurant with live music)
6. popular music, jazz (club, pub, bar)
7. singer (see numbers 5 and 6)
8. rock music, disco music (rock concert, discotheque)
9. classical music, piano recital (concert hall), rhythm and blues, rock (restaurant with live music)

180/4

- a. He thinks it is OK on some occasions.
- b. He isn't very enthusiastic, but says it's not at all bad.
- c. He doesn't mind because Tommy started playing the guitar.
- d. He thought it all right, perhaps a little boring, but he didn't want to hurt his father's feelings.
- e. No, he isn't, but he doesn't know how to tell his father.

Father

As in most families, my son, Tommy, and I have very different lifestyles. But there is one thing, that bridges the generation gap between us, and that's music. I am a passionate lover of classical music and opera, and I am proud of the fact that I have helped to instil that same love in Tommy.

When Tommy was just an infant, I used to put on some Bach or Tchaikovsky when we were in the car on long journeys. He loved it, and he would sing Beethoven's Fifth at the top of his lungs all day long.

When he was older, Tommy started taking piano lessons, and he made excellent progress. He always had a great ear for music, and he played at several recitals. Then one day, when Tommy was 13, he told me that he wanted to try something different: the guitar. That's when things started to change a little. More and more, I started hearing the blaring sounds of heavy metal guitars and drums coming out of his room. He didn't touch the piano any more, but I don't really mind. All that's really important is that he still plays music. In fact, he joined a rock band which now rehearses every Sunday in our basement.

I suppose some parents would have been disappointed. But I consider myself an open-minded father, and I also know that his love for classical music is what drives his passion for heavy metal. After all, much of it is just classical scales played through a distorted guitar. It's not all that bad, when you really listen to it. To show Tommy that I understand, I bought us a pair of tickets to the concert hall and we went, just the two of us. It was a marvellous evening, and I knew then that, even though he might have other tastes in music, he still loved classical music as much as he did when he was a young boy. So I decided to buy season tickets for the two of us. That way, we can keep sharing our love of music together, as father and son.

Son

My dad's a pretty cool guy. He doesn't give me too much trouble, and he lets me dress and act pretty much the way I want to, as long as I get good grades in school. But there is one thing that sometimes annoys me about him. He's always going on and on about classical music.

Don't get me wrong, I don't mind classical. It's OK if you're trying to study or get to sleep or something like that. But he seems to have this idea that I'm as much of a fanatic about classical music as he is. I guess he used to play it to me when I was a kid, and it made me laugh or something like that, and he took that to mean that I was born to play classical.

I don't think Dad ever got over the fact that I gave up the piano for the guitar. I guess he had some idea that I would become some great concert pianist. But what I really like is the hard stuff, you know, music that gets your heart pumping. He tries to act like he doesn't mind it, I guess it makes him feel in touch with the younger generation or something like that. But I know he really

can't stand it, and wishes I was still playing Bach on the piano or singing Beethoven from the child-seat in the car.

The other night he took me out to a concert. It was all right, I guess. But it was a little boring. All of the musicians just sitting on the stage playing, and everybody being quiet and then clapping politely at the end. Of course, I didn't want to hurt Dad's feelings, so I told him it was great, just to make him happy.

Well, that was a mistake. The next day he ran out and bought season tickets, and now he wants me to go once or even twice a month for the whole year! I really don't want to do it, but I don't know how to tell him. He's so excited, and I mean, he does let the band practise in the basement. But oooh! Why can't he just understand that I don't love classical music as much as he does?

181/1

TEACH YOURSELF SWAHILI IN 20 DAYS – self-help book
 FOOT DISEASES SIMPLIFIED – reference book
 THE HITCHHIKER'S GUIDE TO FIJI – guide book
 GHANDI-UNAUTHORISED – biography
 THE VAMPIRE DENTIST – horror
 LOVE IN THE HOT SUMMER – romance
 JJ SPANKS, PRIVATE EYE – detective story
 DANTE'S INFERNO – classic
 THE WELL AT WORLD'S END – fantasy
 LIFE'S A JOKE – humour
 THE WHITE HOUSE FILES – spy novel
 THE EATER OF STARS – science-fiction
 NAPOLEON'S RIGHT HAND – historical novel

181/2

Story 1: After rubbing tanning lotion ..., It was a beautiful day, and the sun ..., Suddenly a shadow blocked out...

Story 2: A heavy rain fell on the streets, drenching ..., Looking around nervously, the man ... He had just got it lit...

Story 3: It was 3 a.m. Standard Earth Time ..., Having grown tired of looking out ..., Suddenly, there was a blinding flash...

182/1

A. Limerick
 B. Sonnet ending (Shakespeare, No. 94)
 C. Part of a free verse (Roger McGough, Comeclose and Sleepnow)
 D. Nursery rhyme
 E. Playground chant (acted ending of Oranges and Lemons)
 F. Narrative poem / Ballad (John Masefield, Reynard the Fox)

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 183

1. act
 2. fiddle
 3. ace
 4. read
 5. c
 6. e
 7. i

8. a
9. f
10. g
11. h
12. d
13. j
14. b
15. c – man
16. a – house
17. c – unhappy
18. d – street
19. a – forgotten
20. c – films
21. a – last
22. d – admiration

And More Practice... – p. 184

1. play
2. drum
3. tune
4. song
5. d
6. a
7. b
8. c
9. g
10. e
11. h
12. i
13. f
14. j
15. b – heaven
16. c – song
17. c – rum
18. b – sniff
19. a – million
20. b – play
21. a – do
22. d – three

EDUCATION

185/2

- to study steadily throughout the year;
- the prepared student is reviewing;
- the unprepared student is trying to learn it for the first time;
- a prepared student should always be highlighting, jotting down notes and using these notes as the basis of studying;
- to focus on the most important things, to form a study group;
- you are at the mercy of others.

185/3

1. ... and that's the coming exam season.
2. ... going over notes, trying to catch up on their reading.

3. ... to cram for a whole year's courses in one night or even in one week.
4. ... to it than that.
5. ...the importance of note-taking when learning.
6. ... highlighting or jotting down the most important points.
7. ... notes and goes through them all together.
8. ... the mercy of other students.
9. ... on them to give you the information that will help you pass the exam.
10. ... luck, and until next week, good bye.

185/2,3

Host: *Hello everybody, and welcome to Schooltalk, the show that examines the major issues facing students, parents, and teachers today. Well, this time of year, there's really only one issue facing students, and that's the coming exam season. As we speak, students everywhere are busily going over notes, trying to catch up on their reading, and spending sleepless nights waiting for the dreaded day. Well, if you're one of those students, then put down your pencil for a few minutes, because in the studio today we have **Julia Briston**, author of the book *Success at School*, and she's going to share a few tips for studying and succeeding in your exams. Julia, welcome to the show.*

Julia: *Thank you.*

H: *So, tell us, Julia, what is the secret of success at exams?*

J: *Well, there's really only one true secret of being a good student, and that is to work steadily throughout the school year. You can't expect to cram for a whole year's courses in one night or even in one week. You have to pace yourself and work at it all year long.*

H: *Like a long distance runner, right?*

J: *Exactly.*

H: *But surely, there must be more to it than that. Students can't be expected to remember things they read six months earlier, can they?*

J: *Well, of course, you still have to study for exams. But the difference is that the prepared student is reviewing the material, while the unprepared student is trying to learn it for the first time. And I cannot stress enough the importance of note-taking when learning. Both in the class, and while reading, you should always be highlighting or jotting down the most important points, and then you can use those notes, and not your textbook, as the basis of your studying. Your textbook should only be used when you need more information to flesh out what you have in the notes.*

H: *Well, that's how a prepared student does it. But what about the unprepared students? Is there any hope for them?*

J: *Yes, of course, if you haven't been the perfect student all year long, all is not lost. The key is to focus on what's most important. The worst thing a last-minute studier can do is try to read all of the books at once. That's just not possible. The best idea is to get together with a few other*

students and form a study group. You can then divide the workload into four or five parts, and each student just has to research and write good notes on one part of the class. Then, a few days before the exam, everybody pools their notes and goes through them all together.

H: Of course, then you're always at the mercy of the other students, aren't you?

J: Yes, you do have to make sure that you choose responsible people for your study group, since you are relying on them to give you the information that will help you pass the exam.

H: Well, Julia, thank you very much for coming on the program.

J: Thank you.

H: And for all of you students out there, good luck, and until next week, good bye.

188/1

Role play – Barbora's dilemma (slips of paper with roles to be distributed to groups of seven students in class).

Barbora: You are a student in your second year at a large American university. You would like to major in philosophy, but you aren't sure whether you will be able to find a job when you finish your studies. You pay for most of your education through student loans, which have to be paid off, so you will need a secure job after you graduate from college. Discuss your plans and your career prospects with your sister, your parents, a recruiter from a large computer company, a friend who studies philosophy, and a school counsellor.

Barbora's sister: You have recently graduated in computer programming and found a well-paid job. You don't like your sister's decision to major in philosophy. You don't think it is a sound education for a successful future career. You feel strongly that Barbora should "get real" and study something that will lead to a "real career" and earn her enough money to support herself and pay off student loans. Barbora should realize too that she can't expect any help from your parents, who are now retired.

Barbora's father: You don't want to dictate what Barbora should or shouldn't do. You are convinced that you have given your younger daughter enough sense of responsibility to cope with her problem on her own. You only want her to be happy. If she feels she has finally found a subject that interests her, she shouldn't hesitate to take it up.

Barbora's mother: You agree with your elder daughter that Barbora should choose a more practical subject than philosophy. You don't want to play the heavy and organize your daughter's life for her, but you believe that if you talk Barbora's dilemma over with her, she will do the right thing. You secretly believe Barbora will follow in her sister's footsteps and major in computer programming.

Barbora's friend: You study philosophy and you think it is a fascinating subject because it provides excellent intellectual stimulation. Philosophy studies are by no means easy (e.g. you have to submit a number of papers each term), but you encourage Barbora to major in this subject. The teachers at the Department of Philosophy are always ready to discuss philosophical problems with their students. Study and library facilities are very good.

A recruiter from a large computer company: Your company has links with Barbora's university. You offer to sponsor a large proportion of Barbora's studies if she decides to major in computer science. All throughout her studies she will undertake coursework assignments on the company premises and will gain business experience. After she graduates from university, she will be encouraged to accept her first work placement in this computer company. Point out that Barbora's sister works for the same company and is very satisfied.

School counsellor: Tell Barbora that she should think carefully and realistically when deciding about which subject to take up because her decision can have a very important bearing on her future. It is vital that Barbora should, after she has tried several subjects, major in a subject that really interests her. On the other hand, she should consider employment opportunities as well as the marketability of the qualification.

188/2

1. Honeymoon Stage
2. Hostility Stage
3. Humour Stage
4. Home Stage

189/3

1. only
2. further
3. appointing
4. admit
5. degrees
6. compared
7. catered
8. mature
9. entrance
10. grants
11. tuition
12. raise

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 190

1. j
2. c
3. f
4. k
5. d
6. g
7. b

8. l
9. j
10. a
11. e
12. o
13. learn
14. learn / study
15. learn / study
16. learn
17. learn
18. learn
19. study
20. learn
21. in
22. for
23. of
24. and
25. beyond
26. whose
27. in contrast to
28. by
29. from
30. during/in

And More Practice... – p. 191

1. f
2. d
3. c
4. h
5. i
6. j
7. b
8. a
9. e
10. g
11. write / read
12. read
13. write
14. read
15. write / read
16. write
17. write / read
18. read
19. write
20. read
21. in
22. approximately
23. of
24. by
25. however
26. throughout
27. through
28. or
29. Most
30. to

HOLIDAYS

192/1

Holidays not described on p. 194: **Mardi Gras** – the festival of Shrove Tuesday, celebrated in some cities with great revelry; **VJ Day** – the day marking the Allied Victory over Japan in WWII (Aug 15, 1945); **Father's Day** – a day observed as a day in honour of fathers, the third Sunday in June; **Columbus Day** – the second Monday in October, commemorating the landing of Columbus in 1492.

193/2

- a. November
- b. January
- c. October
- d. May
- e. February
- f. April
- g. March
- h. September
- i. August
- j. December
- k. July
- l. June

193/3

cracker (pulled at Christmas dinner on **Christmas Day**)
Liberty Bell (The historic bell rung to tell people of the Declaration of Independence from Great Britain, and of the founding of the United States, a symbol of **Independence Day**)

a basket of eggs and bunny (symbols of **Easter**)
the opening words of the U.S. **Constitution** written in 1787 (**Independence Day**)

picnics and fireworks on **Independence Day**
fireworks on **New Year's Eve / Guy Fawkes' Night**

jack-o'-lantern and a ghost (**Halloween**)
Martin Luther King, Jr. for **Martin Luther King Jr. Day**

a Pilgrim and an Indian symbolize **Thanksgiving Day**

bat for **Halloween**

George Washington (**Washington's Birthday**)

cup (**Father's Day**)

witch on a broomstick (**Halloween**)

shamrock (**St. Patrick's Day**)

card indicating **Memorial Day**

heart with a Cupid symbolizing **St. Valentine's Day**

194/4

1. e
2. c
3. d
4. g
5. f

6. a
7. t
8. h
9. i
10. j
11. k
12. s
13. o
14. n
15. p
16. m
17. l
18. b
19. r
20. u

195/1

*Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year.
Wishing you every happiness in the New Year.
Season's Greetings!*

195/2

Pictures from the left: Christmas tree, poinsettia, glass ball / bauble, Santa Claus / Father Christmas, holly, Father Christmas filling the Christmas stocking, holly, nativity scene / crèche

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 196

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. j
5. g
6. c
7. h
8. i
9. f
10. e
11. i
12. f
13. b
14. h
15. g
16. c
17. a
18. d
19. j
20. e
21. as
22. by
23. in
24. to
25. than
26. in
27. For
28. across
29. of
30. at

And More Practice... – p. 197

1. c
2. b
3. i
4. j
5. g
6. f
7. e
8. d
9. a
10. h
11. d
12. j
13. a
14. h
15. c
16. g
17. i
18. f
19. b
20. e
21. since
22. with
23. to
24. of
25. for
26. in
27. with
28. in
29. as
30. from

MODERN SOCIETY

198/1

Suggested answers: extinction crisis; genetic engineering; industrial agriculture; economic globalization; technomania; industrial crisis; economic crisis...

198/3

1. commercial
2. assumption / premise
3. cultures
4. governmental
5. preserve / promote / defend
6. re-establish / take up
7. WTO – World Trade Organization
8. civil / civic
9. globalization
10. leaders

198/3

World Culture Resists Bowing to Commerce
The advocates of globalization would argue that free and open trade and an expansion of commercial relationships and activities of all kinds are the keys to a brighter future for all. The flaw in this premise lies in the misguided

assumption that commerce spurs culture when, in fact, the exact opposite is more often the case. The new cultural activists would argue that there is not an example in history where people first create commercial relations and then establish a culture. Commerce and government are secondary, not primary, institutions. They are derivatives of the culture not the creators of it. People first establish a common language; agreed-upon codes of behaviour and a shared sense of purpose – to wit, social capital. Only when cultures are well developed is there enough social trust to support commercial and governmental institutions.

If the G8 leaders are united in their support of global commerce and trade, the civil society movement groups are just as committed to the idea of preserving local identity and enriching both biological and cultural diversity. Unfortunately, today, the cultural sector exists in a kind of neo-colonial limbo between the market and government sectors. Only by making local culture a coherent, self-aware political force will it be possible to re-establish its critical role in the scheme of human society once again. Indeed, it may be time to establish a World Cultural Organization to represent diverse cultures around the globe, and give the “WCO” an equal footing with the World Trade Organization in international affairs.

Some people worry that a resurgent interest in local cultures must inevitably lead to xenophobia and ultra-nationalist sentiment. That doesn't have to be so. If people everywhere come to think of their own cultural resources not as possessions to defend but, rather, as gifts to exchange with one another, then the great human migrations of 21st century could spawn a cultural renaissance and create the conditions for a truly humane globalization of commerce and trade. The ability of political leaders to identify with and promote both the interests of the civil society and cultural diversity will be critical to ensuring their relevance and viability in the coming century. This was the lesson being taught by the protesters assembling on the streets of Seattle. It's a lesson that is likely to repeat itself again and again. The question is, will the heads of state take the time to listen carefully to the message coming from outside their windows? If they don't, the escalating frustration is likely to play into the hands of the growing number of violence-prone extremists, with untold consequences for the world's future.

199/1

1. D
2. B
3. F
4. A
5. E

201/1

1. maintained
2. including
3. led
4. Having served
5. was constitutionally barred
6. elect
7. exposed
8. had been
9. committed
10. was thus deemed

202/1

1. Bill Gates
2. Yuri Alekseyevich Gagarin
3. propeller water turbine
4. soft contact lens
5. A. G. Bell – telephone
6. electric light bulb

202/2

- Neil Armstrong – first man to set foot on the moon – 1969
- Alfred Bernhard Nobel – dynamite – 1867
- Alexander Graham Bell – telephone – 1876
- Viktor Kaplan – propeller water turbine – 1913
- Otto Wichterle – soft contact lenses – 1961
- Thomas Alva Edison – electric light bulb – 1879
- Yuri Alekseyevich Gagarin – first manned space flight – 1961
- Bill Gates and Paul Allen – Microsoft – 1975

203/4

1. genetically
2. human
3. identical twins
4. replacement
5. controversial
6. reproductive
7. ethical
8. organ

204/1

1. Geothermal Energy
2. Ocean Thermal Energy Conversion (OTEC)
3. Biomass
4. Wind Power
5. Hydroelectric Power
6. Tidal Energy

204/2

1. convert
2. gasohol
3. kinetic
4. exploit

204/4

Suggested follow-up activity: Ask the students to form two teams at opposite sides of the classroom – one team representing

citizens in favour of building a nuclear power plant in their area, the other one against it. The two groups exchange arguments.

Alternative exercise: The two groups are in favour or against Temelin.

Practice Makes Perfect – p. 205

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. c
5. b
6. a
7. c
8. b
9. a
10. c
11. Anti-Semitism
12. Racism
13. Refugee
14. Minority
15. Discrimination
16. results
17. refuge
18. cleansing
19. influence
20. skinheads
21. c
22. f
23. b
24. d
25. e
26. a
27. (lead) – led
28. (aids) – aid
29. (contributed) – contribute
30. (failed produce) – failed to produce

And More Practice... – p. 206

1. a
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. c
6. d
7. c
8. b
9. a
10. a
11. UFO / flying saucer
12. Laser
13. Space shuttle
14. Genetic engineering
15. Nanotechnology
16. oil
17. coal
18. biomass
19. firewood
20. Biogas
21. c, g
22. i
23. b
24. c
25. d, h
26. j
27. f
28. e
29. f, h
30. a

VOCABULARY

FAMILY

absent-mindedness roztržitost, nepozornost
abuse (a child) zneužít, zneužívat, týrat (dítě)
accepted přijatý, uznávaný, oficiální
act out předvádět, ztvárnit
acute disease akutní onemocnění
addiction to st návyk na něco
adolescence dospívání
adolescent dospívající, mladistvý
adopt sb osvojit, adoptovat
adoption osvojení, adopce
adoption agency agentura zprostředkující adopci
adoptive family adoptivní rodina
adulterer cizoložník
adultery cizoložství
advantage výhoda, přednost
age of consent věk pohlavní odpovědnosti před zákonem
ageism diskriminace starých lidí
aggressive útočný, agresivní
alimony [ˈæliməni] výživné, alimenty
alter the face of st změnit tvář něčeho
amazement úžas, ohromení, překvapení
ambitious ctižádostivý, ambiciózní, náročný
amnesia [æmˈni:ziə, ʒə] amnézie; oslabení, ztráta paměti
appointment book termínový kalendář, diář
argue about, over st diskutovat, hádat se o něco
argument between hádka mezi (dvěma)
arrange a date domluvit (si) schůzku
arranged marriage sňatek domluvený příbuznými
arthritis [ɑːˈθraɪtɪs] artritida, zánětlivé onemocnění kloubu
attain one's majority dosáhnout zletilosti
au-pair dívka, která pomáhá v rodině
autopsy [ˈɔ:topsi] pitva, ohledání mrtvolky ke zjištění příčiny smrti

availability of st dostupnost něčeho
baby bouncer hopsadlo
baby break (coll) mateřská dovolená
baby carriage (US) kočárek
baby minder osoba, která se stará o dítě
baby monitor zesilovací zařízení (umožňuje matce slyšet dítě po celém bytě)
baby-backpack batoh na nošení dítěte
baby-carrier nosítka na dítě; tzv. klokan
baby-sit for sb hlídat někomu dítě
baby-sitter osoba, která se stará o dítě po krátkou dobu
baby-walker chodítko
bachelor starý mládenec, neženatý muž
banns ohlášky (veřejné oznámení církevního sňatku)
be cremated mít kremaci, být zpopelněn
be entitled to st mít nárok na něco
be jealous of sb žárlit na někoho
beautician [bjuːˈtɪʃən] kosmetička
behaviour chování
bequeath st to sb [brˈkwi:ð] odkázat někomu něco
best man družba, svědek (obvykle ženichův přítel)
bib bryndák
borstal (GB) polepšovna
bottle-feed krmít z lahve
brat spratek, fracek, fakan
breadwinner živitel rodiny
break up (with sb) rozejít se (s někým)
breast-feed kojít
bride nevěsta
(bride)groom ženich
bridesmaid družička
bring up vychovat; zvracet
broad-minded liberální, snášenlivý, tolerantní
budget rozpočet
buggy (GB) [ˈbʌgi] skládací kočárek

buggy (US) [ˈbʌgi] hluboký kočárek
bullying [ˈbʊliɪŋ] šikánování
buried [berɪd] pohřbený
caress [kəˈres] hýčkat
carry-cot taška na přenášení dítěte
chat sb up hučet do někoho, ukecat někoho, nabalit (si) někoho
cheat on sb podvádět někoho
cheeky (GB) drzý, troufalý
cheerful veselý, šťastný, radostný
child-minder osoba, která se stará o dítě
child-minding hlídání dětí
civil wedding občanský sňatek
comfort chlácholit, konejšit
commit spáchat, dopustit se
chore [ˈtʃɔː] (nepříjemná) povinnost; domácí práce
churchyard hřbitov
co-respondent spoluobžalovaná strana v rozvodovém řízení
cohabitation soužití, spoluzití
coil nitroděložní tělísko
come of age stát se zletilým, dosáhnout plnoletosti
come up přijít na přetřes, vynořit se, nastat
condolences kondolence, vyjádření soustrasti
confusion zmatení, zmatek
congratulations blahopřání, gratulace
conquer a disease [ˈkɒŋkə] přemoci, zvládnout chorobu, nemoc
considerate [kənˈsɪdərət] ohleduplný, taktní, pozorný
consist of st skládat se z něčeho
consummate a marriage [ˈkɒnsjuːmɪt] naplnit, dovršit svazek ženy a muže pohlavním stykem
contraception antikoncepce
contribute (to, towards) přispět, přispívat (k, na)
copycat crime zločinnost inspirovaná filmy
corny staromódní, zastaralý
corporal punishment tělesný trest
cot (GB) postýlka pro dítě

couch potato vášnivý televizní divák
counterculture alternativní kultura
cradle ['krɛdl] kolébka
crèche (GB) [kreʃ, kreɪʃ] jesle
crib (US) postýlka pro dítě
cry plakat, křičet
date sb (US) chodit s někým
dating chození na rande
dating agency seznamovací kancelář
day care pečovatelská služba
day nursery mateřská škola; dětský pokoj
death duties dědická daň
death notice parte
deceased (fml) [dɪ'si:st] zesnulý
dementia [dɪ'menʃə] demence, slabomyslnost
dependants vyživované osoby
deplore odsuzovat
detention; in detention trestní vazba, odnětí svobody; zůstat po škole
dexterity [dek'stɛrətɪ] obratnost, zručnost
diapers (US) plenky
die from (injuries) zemřít následkem (zranění)
die of (e.g. cancer) zemřít na (např. rakovinu)
die of old age zemřít stářím, sešlostí věkem
different ways of life různé životní styly
diminish klesat, slábnout, ubývat
disagree nesouhlasit
disobedient neposlušný, odpírající poslušnost
disposable na jedno použití
diversity [daɪ'vɜ:sɪtɪ] rozmanitost, rozrůzněnost, rozličnost
divorce rozvod; rozvést se
divorced (man, woman) rozvedený, rozvedená
divorcee [dɪ'vɔ:si:] rozvedená osoba
dowry ['daʊrɪ] věno
drinking age věk, kdy je dovoleno pít alkohol
dummy (GB) dudlík, šidítko
dump sb nechat někoho, dát někomu kopačky, pustit někoho k vodě
dusting utírání prachu
easily led snadno ovlivnitelný
easy-going bezstarostný; pohodový, (až příliš) tolerantní
elderly (people) starší lidé

energetic [ˌɛnə'dʒɛtɪk] energický
epitaph ['ɛpɪtɑ:f] nápis na hrobě
euthanasia [ˌju:θə'neɪzə, ʒɪə] eutanázie, ukončení života na žádost nemocného
executor, executrix vykonavatel(ka) poslední vůle, závěti
expecting (infml) v jiném stavu, těhotná
eye up (coll) vrhat zamilované pohledy
faint omdlet, ztratit vědomí
feminism feminismus
feminist feminista, feministka
fiancé, fiancée [fi'a:nseɪ] snoubenec, snoubenka
foster sb vychovávat cizí dítě
fun-loving rád se baví, má rád legraci
funeral pohřeb
funeral director majitel či zaměstnanec pohřebního ústavu
funny legrační, divný
gated (GB) potrestán domácím vězením
geriatrician [ˌdʒɛrɪə'trɪʃən] geriatr
grandma babička
granny flat (GB) vejminek
grass widow slaměná vdova
grave hrob
gravestone náhrobní kámen
greedy chtivý, nenasytý, chamtivý
grounded (US) potrestán domácím vězením
grow up vyrůst, vyrůstat
grown-up, grown-ups dospělý, dospělí
guardian poručník
half-brother nevlastní bratr (jeden z rodičů je společný)
hang out with sb trávit s někým hodně času
hard of hearing nedoslýchavý
hearse [hɜ:s] pohřební vůz
henpecked pod pantoflem
hilarious veselý, bujarý, bujný, rozpustilý
hire pronajmout; zaměstnat
homemaker (US) žena v domácnosti
honeymoon líbánky, svatební cesta
hoovering vysávání prachu
househusband muž v domácnosti
housewife žena v domácnosti
housework domácí práce, práce v domácnosti

howl [haʊl] brečet, skučet
husband and wife muž a žena, manželé
hypercritical příliš kritický
illegitimate child nemanželské dítě
imitation napodobenina, imitace
immaturity nedospělost, nevyspělost
immediate family nejbližší rodina
impertinent nestydatý, neomalený
impressionable citlivý, vnímavý
incompatibility neschopnost přizpůsobit se
incompatible with st, sb [ɪŋkəm'pætɪbl] nesnášející se, nekompatibilní s něčím, někým
independent nezávislý, samostatný
indulge [ɪn'dʌldʒ] povolit, dovolit, rozmazlovat
infant malé dítě, nemluvně
infatuation pobláznění, zaslepení
infidelity nevěra
inherit zdědit
inheritance pozůstalost, dědictví
inquest soudní vyšetřování příčiny úmrtí
invalidity neplatnost; invalidita, pracovní neschopnost
ironing žehlení
irritable podrážděný, nedůtklivý, popudlivý
jealousy žárlivost; závist
joy radost, potěšení, štěstí
kid (coll) dítě
kindergarten školka, mateřská škola
leave st to sb odkázat někomu něco
let sb down nechat na holičkách, ve štychu
live-in nurse pečovatelka, která bydlí u ošetřované osoby
lover milenec; milovník, ctitel
major zletilý
matchmaker dohazovač, zprostředkovatel sňatků
maternity leave mateřská dovolená
maturity dospělost, zralost
mellow vyrovnaný, plný porozumění, uvolněný
minor nezletilý
mistress milenka; paní
mobility pohyblivost
moody náladový, rozladěný, těžkomyslný
morals morálka, mravy
nagging sekýrování, popichování

FAMILY

- nanny** (GB) chůva
nanny (US) dívka, která pomáhá v rodině s dětmi
nappies (GB) plenky
naughty ['nɔ:ti] zlobivý, neposlušný, nezdědný
née [neɪ] rozená, jméno za svobodna
newborn baby novorozeně
newlyweds novomanželé
nursery školka; dětský pokoj
obedient poslušný
obituary nekrológ
occur [ə'kɜ:] vyskytovat se
old folks' home domov důchodců
old maid stará panna
old people's home domov důchodců
one-parent family neúplná rodina
open-minded nezaujatý, objektivní
option možnost
orphan ['ɔ:fən] sirotek
orphanage ['ɔ:fənɪdʒ] sirotčinec
outdoor (konaný) venku, v přírodě, pod širým nebem
outgoing společenský, otevřený
outline osnova; synopse, nástin
pacifier (US) dudlík, šidítka
pamper hýčkat, rozmazlovat
partner partner(ka), manžel(ka)
passed away (euph) zesnul(a)
passed on (euph) zesnul(a)
pension penze, důchod (peníze)
personal ads (US) inzeráty na seznámení, seznamka
playpen dětská ohrádka
polite zdvořilý
poor family chudá, nemajetná rodina
position umístit
post mortem ohledání mrtvolky, pitva
potty nočník
pram (perambulator) kočárek pro dítě
praise chválit
pregnant těhotná
preparations přípravy
propose to sb požádat někoho o ruku
protection ochrana proti početí
punish potrestat
pushchair (GB) sportovní kočárek, golfové hole
quarrel hádat se, hádka
quiet tichý, klidný, zticha, ticho
raise vychovat, vychovávat
rattle chrastítka
rebel [rɪ'bel] bouřit se, vzepít se
register / registry office matrika
rebellion povstání, vzpoura
relations vztahy; příbuzní
relationship vztah
relative příbuzný
relaxed uvolněný
remarriage další sňatek
researcher in... výzkumný pracovník, zabývající se...
retire jít do důchodu
retired people důchodci
retirement odchod do důchodu; důchod
rheumatism ['ru:mətɪzəm] revmatismus, revma
rise in st růst, zvýšení (něčeho)
role role, úloha
routine pravidelná, opakovaná činnost
rude hrubý, drsný
rut zaběhlý způsob života
sarcastic sarkastický
scold vyhubovat
scream křičet
selfish sobecký
senile senilní
senile dementia ['si:naɪl dɪ'menʃə] senilní demence
separation odloučení, rozluka
sharp-tongued jizlivý, kousavý
shoplifting krádež v obchodě
shotgun wedding sňatek, protože nevěsta je těhotná
show off vytahovat se; vejta, ten, kdo se vytahuje
sibling (tech) sourozenec
single mother svobodná matka
single parent samoživitel(ka)
single-parent family neúplná rodina
slacking flákající se
slap plesknout
sleep around jít, vyspat se s každým
smart (US) drzý
sociable společenský
soothe [su:ð] konejšit
spank naplácat
spinster stará panna
split up rozejít se
spoil kazit, rozmazlovat
spot najít, zpozorovat
spouse choť
standards (morální) normy, standardy
stepbrother nevlastní bratr
stepfamily nevlastní rodina
stepfather nevlastní otec
stepmother nevlastní matka
stereotypes vžitě představy o postavení člověka ve společnosti
stroller sportovní kočárek, golfové hole
stubborn ['stʌbən] tvrdohlavý
suckling ['sʌklɪŋ] kojeneček
superannuation scheme [ˌsu:pəˌænjʊ'eɪʃən] systém penzijního připojištění
superstition pověra
sympathetic soucitný
take sb out to (dinner) pozvat někoho na (večeři)
talented nadaný
talk back odmítnout
talkative hovorný, řečný
tastes zájmy a záliby
tax deductions odpočty z daní
teddy bear plyšový medvídek
teenager dospívající, dítě v pubertě
tell off vyhubovat
terminate the pregnancy ukončit těhotenství
termination / abortion umělé přerušování těhotenství
test-tube baby dítě ze zkumavky
thoughtful ohleduplný
toddler batole
tolerant tolerantní
tombstone ['tu:mstəʊn] náhrobní kámen
toy chest skříňka na hračky
trousseau ['tru:səʊ] výbava nevěsty
TV violence násilí v televizi
twins dvojčata
undertaker zaměstnanec pohřebního ústavu
unfaithful nevěrný
unfaithfulness nevěra
upbringing výchova
value hodnota
venereal diseases [və'niəriəl dɪ'zi:zɪz] pohlavní nemoci
violent [vaɪələnt] brutální, násilný
visiting rights právo navštěvovat dítě po rozvodu
vote volit; volební hlas
walk out on sb rozejít se s někým

wedding svatba, svatební
widow vdova
widowed ovdovělý, ovdovělá
widower vdovec
wreath [ri:θ] věnec
yield ustoupit
youngster mladík, chlapec, mládenec;
 dítě
youth mládí; mladík
youth home domov mládeže

HOME

accessory doplněk
alarm-clock budík
Allen key ['æln] imbusový klíč
allotment (GB) parcela, pozemek
 pronajatý zahrádkáři místním
 úřadem
alter ['ɔ:lta] změnit, přestavět
apartment (US) byt
apparently očividně, zřejmě
attic ['ætik] podkroví
attractive (flat, offer) příjemný,
 lákavý, atraktivní (byt, nabídka)
axe sekyra, zednické kladívko, špičák
 (na hrubé opracování kamene)
bannister, banister zábradlí (u scho-
 diště)
barren ['bærən] neúrodný, pustý
basement suterén
bath vana, koupel
bathroom koupelna, záchod, toaleta
bath tub ['ba:θtʌb] vana
beam trám, kláda, nosník
beams and rafters krov
bed linen ['bed, lɪnɪn] ložní pádlo,
 povlečení
bedroom ložnice
bedsit, bedsitter garsonka; obývací
 ložnice
bidet ['bi:deɪ] bidet
blender mixér
blind roleta, žaluzie
bloom (flowers) kvést, rozkvést
 (květiny)
bog (slang) záchod
bookcase knihovna (kus nábytku)
brace spona, svorka; truhlářský
 kolovrátek
bread bin nádoba na uložení chleba
breezblock škvárobetonová tvárnice
brick cihla
bricklayer zedník
broiler (US) gril (ve výši očí)
broom koště
bucket kbelík, vědro
bulldozer buldozer
bungalow ['bʌŋgəlaʊ] přízemní
 dům, bungalov
callipers ['kælpɪəz] posuvné měřítko
cellar sklep
cement [sɪ'ment] cement
chandelier [ˌʃændə'li:ər] lustr
chateau [ˌʃætəʊ] zámek, zámeček

chest of drawers skříňka se zásuv-
 kami, komoda, prádelník
chimney komín
chisel ['tʃɪzəl] dláto
cistern ['sɪstən] splachovací nádrž;
 nádrž na vodu (např. na střeše)
clearance kolaudace
clock hodiny
cloth [klɒθ] látka; utěrka; hadr
coffee table konferenční stůl
comb [kəʊm] hřeben; česat se
comfortable pohodlný
concrete beton, betonový
condo (coll US), condominium (US)
 [ˌkɒndə'mɪniəm] byt v osobním
 vlastnictví v družstevním domě
conservatory (GB) zimní zahrada;
 zasklený balkón
cooker vařič, sporák
cosy ['kəʊzi] útulný
cottage domek, chalupa
couch [kaʊtʃ] pohovka, gauč
cramped [kræmpt] stěsnaný, pře-
 cpaný
cupboard (GB) [kʌbəd] skříň(ka),
 kredenc
curtain záclona, závěs; opona
damp vlhký; vlhko
decorate malovat, tapetovat, zdobit
detached house samostatně stojící
 dům
dilapidated [dɪ'læpɪdeɪtɪd] zchá-
 talý, na spadnutí, chátrající
dingy ['dɪndʒi] špinavý a tmavý,
 ošumělý
dish rack odkapávač na nádobí
dishcloth utěrka na nádobí
dishwasher myčka nádobí (stroj)
distemper (tech) malovat (zejména
 křídlovou barvou)
doorhandle klika
doorknob ['dɔ:nɒb] kulovitá klika
doormat rohožka (u dveří)
doorstep práh, zápraží
dorm (coll US, dormitory) studentské
 koleje; ubytovna
dowel [daʊəl] hmoždinka; špalík; čep
drive (GB), **driveway** (US) příjez-
 dová cesta, vjezd do garáže
duplex (US) [duplex] dvoupodlažní
 byt; dvojdomek
duster prachovka
duvet (GB) ['du:veɪ] prošívaná
 péřová přikrývka, peřina

- eiderdown** (GB) [ˈaɪdədaʊn] prachová prošívaná přikrývka
- electrician** elektrikář, elektroinstalatér
- elegant** [ˈelɪɡənt] elegantní
- estimate** udělat odhad
- excavator** rypadlo, bagr
- excited** vzrušený, rozčilený, nedočkávaný
- exquisite** [ˈɪkˈskwɪzɪt] překrásný, neobyčejný, vynikající
- faucet** (US) [ˈfəʊsɪt] kohoutek (vodovodu)
- feeder** krmítko
- fence** plot
- fertile** [ˈfɜːtaɪl] úrodný, plodný, živný
- file** pilník; pilovat
- fireguard** mříž před krbem
- fireplace** krb
- fix** spravit, opravit
- fix up** dát do pořádku, opravit, spravit
- flagstone** zahradní chodníková dlaždice
- flannel** (GB) žínka
- flat** (GB) byt
- flatlet** byt 1+1, malá garsoniéra
- floor lamp** (US) stojací lampa
- flowerbed** květinový záhon
- flush** spláchnout
- footstool** podnožka
- foundations** základy
- four-poster bed** postel s nebesy
- French doors / windows** zasklené dveře na terasu, balkon nebo zahradu
- foyer** [ˈfɔɪɪ] foyer, vstupní hala
- fretsaw** rejdovačka (pila)
- fridge** lednička
- furnish** zařídit, vybavit nábytkem
- garret** [ˈgærɪt] skrovné podkroví, mansarda (zvl. pro chudé umělce)
- gazebo** [gəˈziːbəʊ] besídka, altán s výhledem
- girder** [ˈgɜːdə] nosný trám
- glazier** sklenář
- gravel** [ˈgrævəl] šterk
- greenhouse** skleník
- gutter** okap, rýna; stoka, odtokové koryto
- halls of residence** (GB) studentské koleje
- handbasin** malé umyvadlo
- handrail** zábradlí; madlo
- handy** (US) šikovný
- handyman** údržbář (manuálně zručný člověk)
- hatchet** [ˈhætʃɪt] sekyrka
- haunted** [ˈhɑːntɪd] kde straší, strašidelný
- headboard** čelo postele
- hedge** živý plot
- hideous** [ˈhɪdiəs] ohyzdný, ošklivý, příšerný
- high-rise (building)** výšková budova
- hinge** pant
- hoe** motyka, motyčka
- hose(pipe)** hadice
- hostel** [ˈhɒstəl] mládežnická ubytovna
- hotbed** pařeniště; semenišťe (např. zločinnosti)
- hothouse** skleník
- housing estate** sídliště
- hovel** [ˈhɒvəl] chatrč (špinavá)
- igloo** iglú
- insulation** [ˌɪnsjuˈleɪʃən] izolace
- john (the) (coll)** záchod
- joiner** truhlář
- joints** spoje (dřevěné)
- kettle** konvice; kotlík, kotel
- keyhole** klíčová dírka
- keys** klíče
- knock down** zbourat (např. starý dům)
- knocker** klepadlo
- ladle** [leɪdl] naběračka, sběračka
- landlady** bytná, paní domácí; hostinská
- larder** spižárna
- lav (coll), lavatory** záchod
- lawn (mower)** [ˈlɔːn ˌməʊə] trávnik, (sekačka na trávu)
- leaky** děravý
- library** knihovna (místnost)
- lightning conductor** (GB), **lightning rod** (US) hromosvod
- lintel** [ˈlɪntəl] překlad (nad oknem, nad dveřmi)
- live alone** žít sám
- loan** půjčka
- locksmith** zámečník
- loft** půda
- log** poleno
- log cabin** srub
- loo (coll)** záchod
- lumber** (US) stavební dříví, řezivo
- luxurious** [lʌgˈʒʊəriəs] přepychový
- magnificent** skvostný, skvělý, velkolepý
- maintain** udržovat
- mantelpiece** římsa nad krbem
- mat** podložka, předložka
- mattress** matrace
- mend** spravit, opravit
- mess** nepořádek, špína
- messy** neuklizený
- mixer** šlehač
- mop** mop; setřít, utřít
- mortar** malta
- mortgage** [ˈmɔːɡɪdʒ] hypotéka; zatížit hypotékou, zastavit
- mug** hrnek, kelímeček
- multimeter** voltmetr a ohmmetr
- nails** hřebíky; nehty
- ottoman** (US) taburet
- oven** [ˈʌvən] pec; kamna, trouba
- overflow** přetéci
- paintbrush** štětec
- painting** malba, obraz; malování
- paintroller** malířský váleček
- pantry** spižárna, komora
- path** cesta; vyšlapaná pěšina; chodník
- patio** [ˈpætiəʊ] vydlážděný dvorek, vnitřní dvůr
- peephole** kukátko ve dveřích
- pelmet** (GB) garnýž
- piano** piáno, klavír
- pincers** štípací kleště
- plank** fošna
- plant** rostlina; pokojová květina
- plant st** zasázat něco
- plasterer** štukatér, omítkář
- pleasant** příjemný
- plumber** [ˈplʌmə] instalatér; klempíř
- poky** těsný, malý, ubohý, chatrný
- porch** veranda, krytý vchod
- pouf(fe)** (GB) [puːf] taburet
- prick out** (GB) přepichovat, přesazovat sazeničky
- pull down** provést demolici
- rafters** krokve
- railing** zábradlí
- ramshackle** zanedbaný, sešlý, zchátralý, na spadnutí
- rebuild** znovu postavit, přestavět
- redecorate** vymalovat (znovu)
- refrigerator** lednička
- relieved** uklidněný, s úlevou
- rent** činže, nájem(né); dát nebo vzít do nájmu
- rent out** pronajímat, pronajmout

restroom (US) záchod
rewire dát nové elektrické vedení
roller (paint roller) váleček (malířský)
roofer pokrývač
roomy prostorný
row (US) / **terraced** (GB) **house** řadový dům
rug menší koberec, předložka
saw pila (nástroj)
scaffolding ['skæfəldɪŋ] lešení
scales váha, váhy
screw šroub
secluded odlehlý, izolovaný
seedling sazenička
settee [se'ti:] pohovka, gauč, sofa
shabby ošuntělý, rozbitý
shears zahradnické nůžky
shed kůlna
shelf police, polička
shelves police, regály
shingle šindel; střešní krytina
shovel ['ʃʌvəl] lopata
shower sprcha
shutter okenice; kovová roleta (v obchodě)
sickle ['sɪkl] srp
sideboard (GB) příborník
sieve síto, sítko
sink dřez, výlevka
skylight vikýř, střešní okno
slate břidlice; střešní taška
slip on vklouznout do (oblečení, obuvi)
sloping šikmý, svažující se
soap mýdlo
socket zásuvka
sofa pohovka
sofa-bed pohovka
soot [sʊt] saze
spacious prostorný, velký
spade rýč; **spades** piky
spanner (GB) klíč
sponge houba
spotless čistěounký, bez poskvrnky
squat nelegálně zabraný prázdný dům (byt); bydlet ve squatu
squeeze zmáčknout, vymáčkat; vecpat se; vymámit, vyždímat (peníze)
staircase-landing odpočívadlo
standard lamp (GB) stojací lampa
(step)-ladder žebřík

stone kámen
stool židle, stolička bez opěradla
storeroom skladiště, skladovací prostor; komora
stove kamna; sporák
strainer sítko, síto
study pracovna
switch vypínač; přepínač; spínač
tap (GB) kohoutek; vnitřní závit
tea-towel utěrka
tear down provést demolici
teepee, tepee vlgvam, indiánský stan, týpí
tenant nájemník
thin out prothrávat, jednotit
threshold ['θreʃhəʊld] práh
tidy uklizený, upravený
tile dlaždice; kachlička; taška
tiler dlaždič; pokrývač; obkladač
timber (GB) stavební dříví, řezivo
toaster toustovač
toilet záchod, toaleta
tools nářadí
toothbrush kartáček na čištění zubů
toothmug kelímek na čištění zubů
toothpaste zubní pasta
towel ['taʊəl] ručník
trailer (US) obytný přívěs
transplant (US) přepichovat, rozsa-
zovat sazeničky
tub vana
utilities služby
valance (US) ['væləns] garnýž,
krátká záclonka nad okny
wallpaper tapeta; tapetovat
wardrobe skříň (šatní); garderoba
washbasin umyvadlo
weed plevel; plít
well-kept dobře udržovaný
wheelbarrow kolečko, trakař
whitewash lícit vápnem, bílit
windowsill okenní parapet, římsa
wipe one's shoes otřít, očistit si boty
workshop dílna
wrench (US) maticový klíč, hasák,
francouzský klíč

FOOD

almond(s) ['ɑ:mənd (GB) 'ælmənd (US)] mandle
anise ['ænis] anýz (rostlina, koření)
aniseed ['ænisɪ:d] anýz (koření)
anorexia nervosa [ˌænə'reksɪə nɜ:'vʊsə] anorexie (chorobné nechutenství)
appearance [ə'piərəns] vzhled
appetiser předkrm, chuťovka
apple jablko
apricot ['eɪprɪkɒt, 'æprɪkɒt] meruňka
asparagus [ə'spærəgəs] chřest
aubergine ['əʊbɜ:ʒɪ:n] lilek, baklažán
baby leeks mladý pórek
bacon slanina
bake péci
banana banán
barbecue opékat na rožni, na jehle nebo na otevřeném ohni
barmaid barmanka, číšnice
barman (GB), **bartender** (US) barman, číšník
basil ['bæzəl, 'beɪzəl] bazalka
beans fazole
beansprouts naklíčené fazole; fazolové výhonky
beat the eggs šlehat vejce
beef hovězí, hovězí maso
beer and ale pivo a anglické pivo (nadkvasné svrchní)
beer mug půllitr (pivní)
biscuits (GB) sušenky
bitter hořký, trpký; hořké pivo
bitters hořká piva
blackcock tetřívěk
blend míchat, mísit, mixovat
boil vařit
bottle zavařovat
bouillon ['bu:ʒɒŋ] bujón, hovězí vývar
bowl [bəʊl] mísa, miska; šálek
breadcrumbs strouhanka
broccoli brokolice
broiler (GB) brojler, mladé kuře; gril
broth vývar (silný, zejm. masový)
brown ale tmavé pivo
brownies (US) čokoládové pečivo s ořechy
Brussels sprout růžičková kapusta
brunch pozdní snídaně spojená s obědem

- bulimia** [buːlɪmiə -'li:mi-] bulimie (chorobná chuť k jídlu)
- bun** sladká země (někdy s rozinkami)
- butter** máslo
- cabbage** zelí
- caffeine** ['kæfi:n] kofein
- calf**, **calves** tele
- cake** koláč; dort
- canapés** ['kænəpeɪz] chuťovky, jednohubky
- candlelight** osvětlení svíčkami
- candy floss** (GB) cukrová vata
- capercaillie** [,kæpə'keɪljɪ] tetřev velký
- capon** ['keɪpən] kapoun
- cappuccino** [,kæpu'tʃi:nəʊ] kapučino
- caraway** kmín
- carnivore** masožravec
- carrot** mrkev
- carryout** (US) restaurace s prodejem jídla přes ulici
- casserole** ['kæsərəʊl] kastrol, rendlík; jídlo vařené nebo podávané v rendlíku
- cassia** ['kæsiə] hrubá, nekvalitní skořice
- catfish** sumec
- cauliflower** ['kɒlɪflaʊə] květák
- caviar** ['kæviɑ:] kaviár
- celeriac** celer (bulva)
- celery** celer (řapíky)
- cereal** ['siəriəl] obilnina, potravina z obilovin
- champagne** [ʃæm'peɪn] šampaňské, sekt
- cheddar** ['tʃedə] čedar (sýr)
- chef** [ʃef] šéfkuchař, vrchní kuchař
- cherry** třešeň
- chicken noodle soup** kuřecí polévka s nudlemi
- chillies** čili (koření)
- chips** (GB) hranolky, pommes frites
- chocolate** čokoláda
- chop** sekát; kotleta
- chunks** kusy, kousky
- cider** (GB) ['saɪdə] nápoj vyrobený z jablek (mírně alkoholický)
- cinnamon** skořice
- clove** hřebíček; stroužek
- (club) soda** (US) soda
- coconut** kokos
- coffee** káva
- contaminate** nakazit, znečistit
- cook** vařit, péci; kuchař
- cooking** vaření; kuchyně
- cornflour** kukuřičná mouka
- cottage cheese** tvaroh, tvarohový sýr
- courgette** (GB) [kɔ:'ʒet, kuə'ʒet] cuketa
- courtship** dvoření se, námluvy
- crackers** (US) sušenky
- cream** smetana; krémová polévka
- crisps** (GB) bramborové lupínky
- cruet** (GB) ['kru:ɪt] karafa
- crumbles** drť, drobky
- crumpet** (GB) placka (z bílého chlebového těsta s dírkami, jí se s máslem)
- crush** rozmáčet, rozdrtit
- cucumber** okurka (salátová)
- cuisine** [kwi:'zi:n] kuchyně (způsob vaření)
- cumin** ['kju:mɪn, 'kʌmɪn] římský kmín, šabrej
- currants** rybíz
- curry powder** kari
- custard** tekutý pudinkový krém (jako šodó)
- cutlery** příbory
- decaf** (infml) káva bez kofeinu
- desirable** [dɪ'zɑɪərəbl] vhodný, potřebný, žádoucí
- dessert** [dɪ'zɜ:t] zákusek, moučník
- dice** nakrájet na kostky
- dill** kopr
- dip** namočit, ponořit
- dish** mísa, nádoba; jídlo
- dissolve** [dɪ'zɒlv] rozpustit
- dough** [dəʊ] kynuté těsto
- doughnut** kobliha
- duck** kachna, kačena
- dumplings** knedlíky
- Edam** ['i:dəm] eidam (eidamský sýr)
- eel** úhoř
- eggplant** lilek, baklažán
- espresso** espresso (káva)
- extras** (GB) přílohy
- fattening** způsobující tloustnutí
- feast on st** pochutnávat si na něčem
- figs** fíky
- fillet** plátek, řízek
- fish** ryba, ryby
- flavouring** koření, esence, aróma, příchut'
- foody** milovník jídla, labužník
- fork** vidlička; vidle
- franchise** ['fræntʃaɪz] udělit povolení, licenci
- fry** smažit, opékat
- game** zvěřina
- garlic** česnek
- gelatine** ['dʒeləti:n] želatina
- goose** husa
- gooseberries** angrešt
- gourmand** [gɔ:'mɑ:d] velký jedlík; gurmán
- gourmet** ['gɔ:meɪ] gurmán, labužník
- grains** obilniny
- grapefruit** grapefruit
- gratuity** [grə'tju:əti] spropitné
- gravy** šťáva z masa
- grill** grilovat; gril, rošt
- groats** [grəʊts] kroupy, krupky; krupice
- grounds** kávová sedlina
- haggis** skotské jídlo (mleté skopové nebo telecí vnitřnosti s ovesnou moukou vařené ve skopovém žaludku)
- ham** šunka
- hors d'oeuvre** [ɔ:'dɜ:v] předkrm
- horseradish** křen
- inaccessible** [ɪnək'sesɪbl] nedostupný
- inn** zájezdní hostinec; hospoda
- jam** (GB), **jelly** (US) džem, zavařenina (ne z citrusových plodů)
- jello** (US), **jelly** (GB) želé, rosol
- juniper** ['dʒu:nɪpə] jalovec
- kidneys** ledvinky
- knife, knives** ['naɪf] **nůž**
- kohlrabi** [,kɒl'ra:bi] kedlubna
- lager** ['lɑ:gə] ležák, pivo
- lamb** ['læm] jehně; jehněčí
- landlord** (GB) hostinský; domácí
- latte** (US) ['lɑ:teɪ] káva s horkým mlékem
- lean** libový
- leek** pórek
- lemon** citrón
- lemonade** limonáda
- lentils** čočka
- lettuce** hlávkový salát
- liqueur** [lɪ'kjuə] likér
- liquor** (US) ['lɪkə] destilát
- liver balls** játrové knedlíčky
- luncheonmeat** nářez, na plátky nakrájené maso nebo uzenina

- malt** [mɔlt] slad; karamelový nápoj
- marinate** marinovat
- marmalade** zavařenina (obvykle z citrusového ovoce)
- mashed potatoes** šťouchané brambory; bramborová kaše
- meat-eater** ten, kdo jí maso
- medium** [ˈmi:diəm] středně propečený (o bifteku)
- microwave** připravit v mikrovlnné troubě
- milk jug** konvička na mléko
- milkshake** (GB) mléčný koktejl
- mince (meat)** [mɪns] mleté maso; mlít (zvl. hovězí)
- mix** míchat, namíchat
- mixers** nealkoholické nápoje (k přípravě míchaných nápojů, např. tonic)
- muffin** sladký koláček
- mug** hrnek, džbán
- mushroom** houba
- mustard** [ˈmʌstəd] hořčice
- mutton** skopové maso
- muzak** [ˈmju:zæk] reprodukováná hudba (jako kulisa v obchodě a restauraci)
- nachos** [ˈnætʃəʊz] kukuřičné placičky
- napkins** ubrousky
- nectarine** nektarinka
- noodles** nudle
- nourishment** [ˈnʌrɪʃmənt] výživa
- nutmeg** muškátový oříšek
- nutritional** výživný
- offal** [ˈɒfəl] vnitřnosti
- onion** cibule
- open sandwich** [ˈsæn(d)wɪtʃ] obložený chlebiček
- orange** pomeranč
- oregano** dobromysl
- oust** [aʊst] vytlačit, vystřádat, vypudit
- oven** [ˈʌv(ə)n] trouba; pec
- overcooked** rozvařený, převařený
- pancakes** palačinky
- paprika** paprika (koření)
- parsnip** pastinák
- party** večírek
- peach** broskev
- peanuts** burské oříšky
- peas** hrášek
- peel** loupat, oloupat
- pepper** paprika (zelenina)
- pheasant** [ˈfezənt] bažant
- pickle** nakládat (zeleninu)
- pie** koláč s náplní uvnitř; piroh
- pineapple** ananas
- pinch of salt** špetka soli
- pint** [paɪnt] pinta (asi půl litru)
- plum** švestka
- poach** hodit do vroucí vody a krátce povařit
- poisoning** otrava (např. jídlem)
- pop** ochucený nealkoholický nápoj s bublinkami
- pop out** odskočit si ven (do restaurace, obchodu apod.)
- pork** vepřové
- potatoes** brambory
- poultry** drůbež
- preservatives** konzervační prostředky
- price** cena
- pub** hospoda
- pudding** (GB) [ˈpuːdɪŋ] moučník; náky
- pulses** [ˈpʌlsɪz] luštěniny
- pure** [pjʊə] čistý
- purée** [ˈpjʊəreɪ] rozmačkat na pyré
- quality** kvalita
- quarter** nakrájet na čtvrtky, rozčtvrtit
- quinine** [ˈkwɪni:n] chinin
- rabbit** králík
- radishes** ředkvičky
- raisins** rozinky
- rare** krvavý (o bifteku)
- raspberries** maliny
- recipe(for)** [ˈresəpi] recept (na)
- refectory** jídelna
- rhubarb** [ˈru:bɑ:b] rebarbora
- risotto** [rɪˈzɒtəʊ] rizoto
- roast** péci (maso)
- rosemary** rozmarýn
- rump** kýta
- salami** salám
- salmon** [ˈsæməŋ] losos
- salt** [sɔ:lt] sůl
- sanctions** postihy, sankce, protiopatření
- sandwiches** obložené chleby, sendviče
- sardines** sardinky
- satsuma** druh mandarinky
- sauce** omáčka
- saucepan** hluboká pánev, rendlík, kastrol
- saucer** podšálek
- sauerkraut** kyselé zelí
- sauté** [ˈsəuteɪ] rychle opéci, osmažit
- savour** vychutnat, pochutnat si; okořenit
- savoury** pikantní, ostré chuti; chutný
- scone** (GB) [skɒn, skəʊn] bochánek či buchta
- scramble** míchat, zamíchat
- seafood** mořské ryby, mořští korýši nebo měkkýši
- seasonings** koření
- shake** (US) mléčný koktejl
- sheep** ovce
- short** (GB), **shot** (US), **tot** sklenička, panák (alkoholického nápoje)
- simmer** povařit na mírném ohni
- sirloin** [ˈsɜ:lɔɪn] svíčková
- skimmed milk** odtučněné, odstředěné mléko
- slice** krájet na plátky; plátek
- snack** malé občerstvení; svačina
- soda (pop)** (US) limonáda
- soda (water)** (GB) [ˈsəʊdə] soda
- spirits** lihoviny
- spirits** (GB) destiláty
- spoon** lžice
- squash** nápoj z rozmačkaného ovoce (zejm. citrónů, obvykle se ředí vodou)
- starter** předkrm
- steam** vařit v páře; pára
- stew** dusit; dušené maso
- stewed fruit** ovocný kompot
- stir** míchat
- stir-fries** čínská jídla připravovaná na pánvi
- stock cube** kostka bujónu
- strawberries** jahody
- sugar bowl** cukřenka
- sundae** [ˈsʌndeɪ] zmrzlinový pohár s ovocem
- surroundings** prostředí
- sweetcorn** sladká kukuřice
- tablecloth** ubrus
- tangerine** mandarinka
- tart** (GB) ovocný košíček
- taste** chuť, příchut'; ochutnat; vkus
- teapot** čajová konvice
- tearoom** čajovna
- teaspoon** kávová lžička
- teetotaler, teetotaler** (US) [ˈti:təʊtələ] abstinent

tender jemný, měkký (o mase)
thicken zahustit
tip spropitné
toast připít; připítek
toffees [ˈtɒfɪz] karamely
tomatoes rajčata
tough [tʌf] tuhý (o mase)
trifle (GB) zákusek (piškot máčený ve víně, s ovocem, šodó a šlehačkou)
tripe dršťky
trout [traʊt] pstruh
turkey krocan
Turkish turecký
tut [tʌt] ts (zvuk vyjadřující netrpělivost, rozhořčení)
TV dinner polotovar pro rychlou večeři
undercooked nedovařený
vanilla vanilka
veal telecí (maso)
vegan [ˈviːɡən] vegan (vegetarián, který nejí ani vejce a mléčné výrobky)
vegetables zelenina
vegetarian vegetarián
venison [ˈvenɪsən] maso vysoké zvěře, zvěřina
vinegar ocet (vinný)
vintage wine [ˈvɪntɪdʒ] archivní víno
waitress číšnice
warrior válečník
watermelon vodní meloun
well-done propečený (o bifteku)
whip šlehat
whiskey (US & Irish), **whisky** (GB) whisky
wholefood (GB) zdravá výživa (potraviny v přírodním stavu)
(wild) boar divočák, divoký kanec
wine víno (nápoj)
winebar vinárna
wintergreen libavka položená (olej z této rostliny)
yoghurt [ˈjɒɡət] jogurt
zucchini (US) [zʊˈkiːni] cuketa

SHOPS

ad, advert (infml) inzerát
advertise inzerovat
advertising inzerce, reklama
affordable [əˈfɔːdəbl] dostupný, za slušnou cenu
allspice nové koření; jamajský pepř
antiques, antique shop /dealer's starožitnictví
attendant obsluha
auction [ˈɔːkʃən] aukce, dražba
baker's pekařství, pekárna
bakery pekařství, pekárna
banknote (GB) bankovka
bargain [ˈbɑːɡɪn] dobrá koupě, výhodná koupě
be in / out of stock být / nebýt na skladě
beware of dát si pozor na, mít se na pozoru před
bill (US) bankovka
billboard (US) velká reklamní tabule, plakátovací plocha
billfold (US) náprsní taška; peněženka
bookshop (GB), **bookstore** (US) knihkupectví
bottled lahvové, v lahvi
braid (US) [breɪd] cop
brand-new zbrusu nový, úplně nový
butcher(s) [ˈbʊtʃə(z)] řezník, řeznictví
can (US) plechovka, konzerva
cart (US) nákupní vozík
carton krabice; lepenka, karton
cash desk pokladna
cashier pokladník
chain store jedna prodejna obchodního řetězce; filiálka
cheap levný, laciný
checkout (counter) pokladna (v supermarketu)
chemist(s) [ˈkemɪsts] drogerie, lékárna
chignon [ˈʃiːnjɔː] uzel vlasů v týle, drdol
china shop obchod s porcelánem
close down zrušit obchod
clothes [kloʊðz] oblečení, šaty
cobbler švec, opravář obuvi
come across st náhodou na něco narazit
commercial reklama (v rádiu nebo v televizi)
confectioner's cukrárna

consumer spotřebitel
crate přepravnice, bedna
curlers natáčky
customer zákazník
cut-price za sníženou cenu, zlevněný
deli lahůdkářství
delicatessen lahůdkářství (US též teplá jídla)
demand poptávka; požadovat, požadovat se
discount sleva; snížit cenu
dress a shop window udělat výlohu, upravit výlohu
drugstore (US) lékárna a drogerie
dye nabarvit
exhibit výstava; exponát; vystavovat
expensive drahý, nákladný
extravagant marnotratný; předražený
faulty goods [ˈfɔːlti] vadné zboží
fishmonger's (GB) [ˈfɪʃmɒŋɡəz] prodejna ryb, rybárna
florist(s) květinářství
flower-stand stánek s květinami
fly-poster plakát nebo leták vyvěšený bez povolení (Výraz pochází z vazby „to do st on the fly“, t.j. nelegálně.)
flyer prospekt, reklamní leták
folder složka
furniture nábytek
garage [ˈɡærɑːʒ, ˈɡærɪdʒ, ɡəˈrɑːʒ] autoopravná; garáž
giftshop dárky, suvenýry (obchod)
glassware obchod se sklem
greengrocer's obchod se zeleninou a ovocem
grocer's obchod s potravinami, smíšené zboží, koloniál
guaranteed [ɡærənˈtiːd] se zárukou
haberdasher's [hæbəˈdæʃəz] galanterie (GB); pánské oděvy (US)
hair spray lak na vlasy
hairclip sponka do vlasů, pinetka
hairdo účes
hairdresser kadeřník
hairdryer vysoušeč vlasů, fén
hairpin sponka do vlasů
handout prospekt, reklamní leták
hardware (US) železářství
healthfood shop zdravá výživa (obchod)
highlights melír
hoarding (GB) [ˈhɔːdɪŋ] reklamní tabule (např. na sportovním stadionu)

- inexpensive** levný, nijak drahý
inferior goods podřadné zboží
instalment, installment (US) splátka, část, díl, pokračování
INVENTORY (US) INVENTURA
ironmonger's (GB) ['aɪən,mʌŋgəz] železářství
irresistible neodolatelný
jar zavařovací sklenice, nádoba
jeweller's klenotnictví
lacquer ['lækə] lak na vlasy
laund(e)rette / laundromat (US) [ˌlɔːn'dret] samoobslužná prádelna
leaflet leták, prospekt
line up (US) postavit se do fronty
line (US) fronta
loaf, loaves bochník
locker (US) mrazicí box, který si lze pronajmout ke skladování většího množství potravin
manicure ['mænikjʊə] manikúra
market trh
market stall prodejní stánek na trhu
marketplace tržiště
milk-shop mlékárna
milkman mlékař
milkround trasa denní roznášky mléka
miller ['mɪlə] mlynář
moderate ['mɒdərət] mírný, umírněný
nail polish lak na nehty
napkin ubrousek
newsagent's obchod s novinami
note (GB) bankovka
notion's (US) galanterie
off-licence (GB) obchod s povolením prodávat lihoviny přes ulici
optician's optika, obchod s brýlemi
packet, pack balíček, krabička, sáček
payment platba
perfume parfém
perm(anent waves) trvalá (ondulace)
pharmacy (US) lékárna
pickpocket kapesní zloděj, kapsář
pipe dýmka
plait (GB) [plæt] cop, vrkoč
poster plakát
pricelist ceník
purchase ['pɜːtʃəs] koupit; koupě
quality goods kvalitní zboží
queue (GB) [kjuː] fronta
queue up for... (GB) postavit se do fronty na...
reasonable rozumný, slušný, přijatelný
receipt [riːsi:t] stvrzenka, lístek, paragon
record shop / music shop obchod s gramodeskami / hudebními nosiči
reduce a price snížit cenu
reduction sleva
refund [riːfʌnd] vrátit peníze; [ˈriːfʌnd] vrácení peněz, náhrada
retail price maloobchodní cena
rip sb off (coll) natáhnout, okrást někoho
rollers natáčky
run out of st vyčerpat zásobu něčeho, dojit
sale prodej, výprodej
sales gimmicks ['gɪmɪks] reklamní obchodní triky
salesman (US) prodavač; obchodní cestující
saleswoman (US) prodavačka; obchodní cestující
sandwich sendvič, chlebiček
seconds kazové zboží, zboží druhé jakosti
shampoo [ʃæmˈpuː] umýt vlasy; šampon
shoemaker obuvník, švec
shoeshop obchod s obuví
shop for st nakupovat, shánět něco
shop (GB) obchod
shop-soiled zboží zašpiněné v obchodě
shopkeeper majitel obchodu, obchodník
shoplifter zloděj, který krade v obchodě
shopper zákazník v obchodě
shopwindow výklad
short-change ošidit při vrácení drobných
shrink-wrapped zabaleno do ochranné folie
sold out vyprodáno
sponsorship sponzorování, finanční podpora
sports goods sportovní zboží
stationer's papírnictví
stay open být otevřený
steak [steɪk] biftek, řízek
STOCKTAKING (GB) INVENTURA
store (US) obchod
string bag síťka, síťovka (na nákup)
supermarket supermarket
superstore velký obchod, který prodává téměř vše
supplies dodávky; zásoby
supply dodat, dodávat, zásobovat; nabídka
sweetshop cukrárna
tablecloth ['teɪblˌklɒθ] ubrus
take in sb podvést, napálit někoho
take st back vzít něco zpět
thrifty šetrný
throw away zahodit, vyhodit
tightwad (US) ['taɪtwɒd] skrblík, držgrešle
till příruční pokladna; zásuvka na peníze v pokladně
tin (GB) konzerva
tint one's hair udělat si přeliv
tobacconist's tabák
toyshop hračkářství
trolley (GB) ['trɒli] nákupní vozík; servírovací stolek; vozík
used goods použité zboží
VAT (value added tax) DPH (daň z přidané hodnoty)
wallet (GB) ['wɒlɪt] náprsní taška, pánská peněženka
warranty ['wɒrənti] záruka
wholefood ['həʊlˌfuːd] biopotraviny
wholesale price velkoobchodní cena
wholesaler velkoobchodník
wig paruka
wrapper ['ræpə] obal

CLOTHES

alterations [ˌɒltə'reɪʃən] přešívání oděvů
amber ['æmbə] jantarový, jantarově žlutý; jantar
ankle-length ['æŋklɪleŋθ] po kotníky; kotníčkový
anorak (GB) nepromokavá větrovka s kapucí
apron ['eɪprən] zástěra
aquamarine [ˌækwəmə'reɪn] akvamarínový, akvamarín
armhole průrámek
baggy ['bæɡi] příliš volný, plandavý; vytažený
barred pruhovaný, proužkovaný, s širšími pruhy
bathrobe (US) koupací plášť
batik ['bætik, bə'ti:k] batikovaný; batik
beaded ['bi:ɪd] s perličkami, s korálky
bellbottoms zvonové kalhoty
belt pásek
bib and braces kalhoty s laclem
bikini bikini
bleach [bli:tʃ] bělit; odbarvovat
bodysuit body, elastický oděv
boots vysoké boty, kotníčkové boty
bra podprsenka
bracelet náramek
braces (GB) šle
brassiere (fml) ['bræziə] podprsenka
briefs spodní kalhotky, pánské slipy
brocade [brə'keɪd] brokát
brogues [brəʊgz] perforované pánské polobotky
brooch [brəʊtʃ] brož
brownish dohnědá
buckle přezka, spona
cagoule (GB) [kə'ɡu:l] nepromokavá bunda s kapucí
calf-length po lýtka
camo(uflage) maskáče
cane hůl; rákoska
cardigan zapínací pletená vesta; svetr na zapínání
carmine ['kɑ:mɪn] karmín
casual ['kæʒuəl] neformální, ležérní
change into st převléci se do něčeho
change out of st vysvléci se z něčeho
check kostkovaný; pepito
checked kostkovaný; pepito

chequered [ˈtʃekəd] kostkovaný
chintz [tʃɪnts] pestře potištěný kartoun
clash neladit, tlouci se (o barvách)
clasp spona, sponka; přezka; háček
clean čistit
clip earrings ['lɪpɪŋz] klipsy
clogs dřeváky
colourfast stálobarevný
conceited domýšlivý
cord(uroy) manšestr; manšestrový
costume jewellery bižuterie
cotton bavlna; bavlněný
court shoes lodičky
couturier ['ku:tjuəriɪ] návrhář moderního dámského oblečení, krejčí
cowneck límeč s kapucí
crease-resistant nemačkový
crew neck výstřih ke krku
crimson karmínový
crocodile krokodýlí (kůže)
cuff manžeta rukávu
cufflink manžetový knoflíček
cuffs (US) záložky kalhot
culottes [kju:'lɒts, ku'lɒts] kalhotová sukně
curious zvědavý; zvidavý
cut out (a garment) stříhnout látku na oděv
cut-offs ustřížené džínsy
 darn štepat, látat, vyspravit; zatraceně
denim džínsovina
dotted tečkovaný, puntíkový
double-breasted suit dvouřadový oblek
down jacket péřová bunda
drainpipes (coll) trubky
dress dámské šaty; obléci
dress up obléci se svátečně
dress up as... převléci se za...
drip-dry prádlo, které není třeba žehlit; vypere se a pověsí, aby uschlo
dungarees (GB) [ˌdʌŋgə'ri:z] montérky
elasticated elastický, pružný
embroider vyšívat
embroidered vyšíváný; zdobený
face mask maska na obličej (ochranná, pleťová...)
faded vybledlý
fashionable moderní
fashions móda

fawn [fɔ:n] žlutohnědý, světle hnědý
felt plst
fit dokonale padnout; hodit se
flannel vlněný flanel; žínka
flannels flanelové kalhoty
flares zvonové kalhoty
flat-heeled /low-heeled s nízkým podpatkem
floral květinový
flowered květovaný, posetý květinami
foldaway umbrella skládací deštník
footwear obuv
fur [fɜ:] kožešina
gabardine ['gæbədɪ:n] gabardén
gaiters štulpny, návleky
galoshes galoše
garment oblečení; část oděvu, prádla
gaudy ['ɡɔ:di] křiklavý
gem drahokam
gloves rukavice
goatskin koží kůže, kozina, kozinka
goggles ['gɒɡlz] ochranné brýle (lyžařské, potápěčské...)
gown ['ɡaʊn] róba; talár; dlouhé splývavé šaty
greyish šedavý, našedlý; prošeďivělý
gumboots gumové holínky, gumáky
handbag (GB) kabelka
handkerchief kapesník
hand-me-downs oděvy po někom
hankie (infml) kapesník
hat klobouk
headband čelenka
heavy silný, masivní, pevný
heavy-duty pevný, trvanlivý
heel podpatek; podrazit
hem obroubit, olemovat; obruba, lem
hemline dolní lem
herringbone vzor rybí kost
homespun ručně tkaná látka z hrubě mykané příze
ill-fitting nepadnoucí, špatně sedící
informal neformální
iron žehlit; žehlička
jersey svetřík s dlouhým rukávem; triko; nátělník; fotbalový dres; cyklistický trikot
jockstrap suspensor
jumper (GB) lehký svetr
jumper (US) šatová zástěra bez rukávů
jumpers (US) dupačky, dětské pyžamo vcelku

- jumpsuit** kombinéza
karakul [kærəkʊ:l] kožešina jehňat karakulské ovce
kerchief šátek
kidskin kůzlečí kůže, kozinka
kilt skotská sukně; kilt
knee-length po kolena
kneesocks [ni:sɒks] podkolenky
knickerbockers (US) ['nɪkə,bɒkəz] pumpky
knickers (GB) ['nɪkəz] spodní kalhotky
knitwear pletené zboží
lace krajka; tkanička
lambskin jehněčí kožešinka, beránek; vydělaná jehněčí kůže
lapel [lə'peɪ] klopa
leather kůže
leggings kamaše
leotard ['li:ətɑ:d] baletní, cvičební, gymnastický trikot
let out vypustit
lightweight lehký, odlehčený
limegreen žlutozelený
line-dry sušit na šňůře
linen ['lɪnɪn] plátno
lingerie ['læ:nʒəri] jemné prádlo, prádélko
lining podšívka, vložka
loafers mokasíny
loose [lu:s] volný; vypustit
loosen ['lu:sən] povolit, uvolnit
loud křiklavý, řvavý, nápadný
lukewarm vlažný; lhostejný
mac plášt' do deště
mackintosh plášt' do deště
maroon [mə'ru:n] kaštanový
match hodit se
material látka
mauve [məʊv] lila, slabě nafialovělý
mending spravování, opravy
miniskirt minisukně
mink norek
mittens palčáky
moccasins mokasíny
model model(ka), manekýn(ka)
nastiness nevlídnost, protivnost
necklace ['nekləs] náhrdelník
nickname přezdívka
nightdress (GB), **nightgown** (US), **nightie** noční košile
nutria nutrie
observant všímavý, pozorný
off-the-peg (GB) konfekční
off-the-rack konfekční
oilskins nepromokavý oděv (např. pro rybáře)
overalls (US) montérky; pracovní kombinéza
overcoat svrchník, převlečník, zimník
overshirt volná košile
pads vycpávky
paisley ['peɪzli] kašmírový vzor
paisley tie vázanka s kašmírovým vzorem
pajamas (US) [pe'dʒɑ:məz] pyžamo
panties (US), **pants** (GB) spodní kalhotky
pants (US) kalhoty
pantyhose (US) punčocháče
parka ['pɑ:kə] kabátek po kolena s kapucí lemovanou kožešinou
parka (US) nepromokavá větrovka s kapucí
pattern ['pætən] vzor; stříh
pendant přívěšek
petticoat spodnička
pigskin vepřovice, vepřová kůže
pleated skirt ['pli:tɪd skɜ:t] skládaná sukně
plimsolls (GB) ['plɪmsəlz] tenisky; plátěné boty
plush [plʌʃ] plyš; plyšový
polish leštit; krém
polka-dot s bílými puntíky, puntikovaný, puntíkatý
poloneck (GB) rolák
polyester polyester, polyesterový
(precious) gems drahokamy
preshrunk předsrážený, přepraný
prêt-à-porter konfekce
prickly pichlavý, kousavý; popudlivý
pullover (GB) pulovr, silnější svetr oblékaný přes hlavu
pumps pánské lakové střevíce; dámské lodičky
purple ['pɜ:pl] nachový, purpurový
put st on obléci si něco
pyjamas (GB) [pe'dʒɑ:məz] pyžamo
quilted ['kwɪltɪd] prošíváný
rack (US) věšák; příhrádka; police
raincoat plášt' do deště
ready-to-wear konfekční
rinse vymáchat, propláchnout; vypláchnout
rip-zip (coll) suchý zip
roll up vyhnout, vykasat
rolled up ohrnutý
roughly-spun ['rʌfli spʌn] hrubě tkaný
round neck kulatý výstřih
sable sobol
safety helmet ochranná přilba
sandals sandály
satin satén
scarf šátek; šála
separates ['sepəreɪts] jednotlivé samostatné části oblečení, které lze kombinovat
sew [səʊ] šít
shades (coll) sluneční brýle
shine lesknout se; leštit
shirt košile
shoelace tkanička
short-sleeved s krátkými rukávy
shorts šortky, kraťasy
shrink srazit se
silk hedvábí
singlet (GB) nátělník, tílko
size velikost
slacks volné kalhoty
sleeve rukáv
slip dámské kombiné
slip off rychle se svléci
slip-ons boty, do kterých se pouze vklouzne
slippers pantofle
slit rozparek
snakeskin hadí kůže, hadinka
sole podrážka; podrazit
spats [spæts] psí dečky, návleky
speckled kropenatý, stříkaný
spectacles, specs [spektəklz, speks] (dioptrické) brýle
spin-dry ždímat v odstředivce
sportswear sportovní oblečení
starch škrobit; škrob
stitch šít, sešít, steh; oko (při pletení)
stilettos [sti'letəʊz] boty na jehlovém podpatku
stockings punčochy
strap pásek, řemínek
stretch natahovat
striped [straɪpt] pruhovaný, proužkovaný
studs [stʌdz] cvočky; náušnice jako knoflíčky
stylish stylový
suede [swɛɪd] jemná hlazená kůže, semiš

CLOTHES

suit slušet; oblek
sunglasses sluneční brýle
suspenders (US) šle
sweater (US) ['swetə] silnější vlněný svetr oblékaný přes hlavu
sweatpants ['swetpænts] tenké tepláky
sweatshirt mikina
sweatsuit tepláková souprava
T-shirt tričko
tacky nevkusný, kýčovitý, vyšlý z módy
tailor krejčí
tailor's krejčovství
tailor-made šitý na míru
take in zabrat
take up zabrat, zvednout, zkrátit
tan světlehnědý
tank top vestička s výstřihem
tape measure (krejčovský) metr; (měřicí) pásmo
tawny ['tɔ:ni] hnědožlutý
tepid vlažný, odražený
terry (cloth) ['teri] froté
thimble ['θɪmbl] náprstek
tie vázanka, kravata; zavázat
tie-dyed batikovaný (vyvazováním)
tiepin jehlice do kravaty
tight těsný
tights (GB) punčochové kalhoty
tissues ['tɪʃu:z; 'tɪʃu:z] papírové kapesníky
toiletries toaletní potřeby
tracksuit tepláky
trainers tenisky
trenchcoat trenčkot, nepromokavý kabát
trendy módní, hypermoderní
trousers (GB) kalhoty
try on vyzkoušet
tumble-dry ['tʌmbl draɪ] usušit v sušičce
tumble-dryer / drier sušička na prádlo
tunic ['tju:nɪk] tunika
turn-up collar stojáček
turnups (GB) záložky nohavic
turquoise ['tɜ:kwoɪz] tyrkysový
turtleneck (GB) ['tɜ:tɪnek] stojáček
turtleneck (US) rolák
tweed tvíd
twill kepr

twinsuit souprava dámského pulovru a vesty, obvykle téže barvy
umbrella deštník
underpants (GB) trenky, slipy (pánské spodní prádlo)
undershirt (US) podvlékačí tričko
underwear spodní prádlo
undress vysvléci se
V-neck výstřih ve tvaru V, věčko
veil závoj
velcro ['velkrəu] suchý zip
velour [və'lʊə] velur, tkanina s hustým vlasem, aksamit, samet
velvet samet
vermilion [və'mɪliən] rumělká
vest (GB) nátlélník
vest (US) vesta
waistcoat (GB) vesta
waterproofs oblečení do deště
wearer ten, kdo nosí (nějaké oblečení)
wool vlna
woollen ['wʊlən] vlněný, vyrobený z vlny
working pracovní
worn-out obnošený
wristbands nátepníčky; náramky; manžety
wristwatch ['rɪstwɒtʃ] náramkové hodinky
yellowish do žluta
zigzag [zɪgzæɡ] cikcak, klikatá čára; klikkovat; klikatit se; entlovací

WORK & LEISURE

account [ə'kaʊnt] účet, konto; zpráva
account (for) být zodpovědný (za); způsobit, zapříčinit
accountant účetní
accounting účetnictví
addiction to st závislost na něčem; narkomanie, návyk
address adresa; oslovit
advanced pokročilý
aftershave voda po holení
agricultural zemědělský
alternative alternativa
amusing zábavný
antiques [æn'ti:ks] starožitnosti
aperture (f-stop) ['æpətʃə] clona; světlost; otvor, štěrbin
application (form) přihláška (formulář)
apply (for) podat žádost, zažádat; ucházet se
apprenticeship učení, učňovská léta
artist umělec, zvl. malíř
attitude to(wards) st or sb postoj, přístup k něčemu nebo někomu
autograph ['ɔ:təgrɑ:f] autogram; rukopis díla
badge odznak, znak; medaile
banknote / bill (US) bankovka
barefoot(ed) bosý
beehive úl; včelín
beekeeper včelař
betting shop sázková kancelář
bilingual [baɪ'lɪŋɡwəl] dvoujazyčný, bilingvální
blackjack (US) jednadvacet (hazardní hra)
bleary-eyed ['bliəriəɪd] ne docela probuzený; mající kalné, zarudlé oči; uslzený
bloodthirsty ['blʌd,θɜ:sti] krvelačný
blue-collar manuálně pracující, dělnický
boozer (GB coll) putyka
building society (GB) stavební spořitelna
busking [bʌskɪŋ] hraní na hudební nástroj za peníze (na ulici apod.)
bustling rušný, kypící životem
butcher ['bʊtʃə] řezník
camcorder videokamera
carpentry tesařina; tesařská práce
cartridge nábojnice, patrona; náboj
cashier [kæ'ʃɪə] pokladník, pokladník

- casino** [kə'si:nəʊ] kasino
- charity** ['tʃærəti] dobročinná organizace, dobročinnost
- check** (US) účet, účtenka; šek; kontrola; odškrtnout, zatrhnout
- checking account** (US) běžný účet (v bance)
- chemin-de-fer** [ʃə'mæn də 'feə] druh bakaratu
- cheque** (GB) šek
- china** porcelán
- clock in** označit dobu příchodu na píchacích hodinách
- clock out** označit dobu odchodu na píchacích hodinách
- cloth** [klɒθ] látka; utěrka; hadr
- coin** mince
- collector** sběratel
- consciously** ['kɒnʃəsli] vědomě; úmyslně
- conscript** (GB) povinně odvedený do armády, branec
- conscription** (GB) povinná vojenská služba, branná povinnost
- counterfeit** ['kauntəfi:t] padělek; padělaný, falešný
- craftsman** řemeslník, umělec, mistr svého oboru
- craps** hra v kostky s dvěma kostkami
- crochet** ['krəʊʃeɪ] háčkovat; háčkování
- current account** (GB) běžný účet (v bance)
- curriculum vitae** (c.v.) [kə'rikjʊləm'vi:tai, 'vɑiti:] životopis
- darkroom** temná komora
- day off** volný den
- dealer** krupiéř; prodejce
- degree** akademická hodnost, titul
- deliberately** úmyslně, schválně, záměrně
- developer** vývojka
- dice** kostka; kostky; krájet na kostky
- die** (US) hrací kostka; lisovadlo; zemřít
- diligence** ['dɪlɪdʒəns] píle, pracovitost, přičinlivost
- disenchanted** rozčarovaný, zbavený iluzí
- doctor** doktor, lékař
- doctorate** doktorát
- dole** (GB coll) podpora v nezaměstnanosti
- doll** panenka
- doze / drop off** usnout, zdřímnout si
- draft** (US) povinná vojenská služba, branná povinnost; koncept
- draft** (US) povinně odvedený do armády
- dressmaker** švadlena, dámská/ý krejčí
- dressmaking** šití dámských šatů, dámské krejčovství
- drop in on sb** zastavit se u někoho na návštěvu
- drowsy** ['draʊzi] ospalý, mátožný
- early riser** ranní ptáče
- education** vzdělání
- elementary** základní
- elevenes** (GB) desátka, dopolední svačina; přesnídávka
- embroidery** [ɪm'brɔɪdəri] výšivka; vyšívání
- employer** zaměstnavatel
- employment office** (US) úřad práce
- enlistee** dobrovolník
- enterprise** podnik; podnikání; podnikavost
- equipment** zařízení, vybavení
- example** příklad, vzor
- exchange** výměna; vyměnit
- experience** praxe
- fail** neudělat, neuspět
- female** žena, ženský
- file** pořadač; soubor; složka; dokumenty
- fill in / out (a form)** vyplnit (formulář)
- fixer** ustalovač
- fluent** plynulý
- focus** ohnisko; zaostřit
- forgery** podvrh, zfalšovaná kopie; padělek
- freelance** na volné noze
- full-time** na plný úvazek
- genuine** opravdový, pravý
- golden handshake** (GB) odměna udělená významnému zaměstnanci (při propuštění nebo odchodu, odstupné)
- go on strike** začít stávkovat
- hard-hat worker** stavební dělník
- have st on** mít něco domluveného
- health insurance, health plan** (US), **health scheme** (GB) nemocenské pojištění
- hobby** koníček, hobby
- honeycomb** ['hʌnikəʊm] plástek
- hustle** ['hʌsl] ruch, shon; spěchat, honit se
- incompetence** [ɪŋ'kɒmpɪtənts] neschopnost, nezpůsobilost
- individuality** osobitost; individualita
- initiative** [ɪ'nɪʃɪtɪv, 'ɪnɪʃɪtɪv] iniciativa
- insomniac** [ɪn'sɒmni,æk] osoba trpící nespavostí
- intermediate** středně pokročilý
- interview** přijímací pohovor
- interviewee** dotazovaná osoba
- in the black** být v plusu, mít zisk
- in the red** v červených číslech, zadlužený
- involved** angažovaný
- jackpot** bank v pokeru; stále zvyšovat vklad až do výhry
- jobless** nezaměstnaný
- journalist** ['dʒɜ:nəlɪst] novinář
- knitting** ['nɪtɪŋ] pletení
- lay off** propustit (dočasně nebo trvale)
- laziness** lenost
- loathe st** [ləʊð] mít odpor, averzi vůči něčemu; hnusit si něco
- lottery** loterie
- male** muž(ský)
- managerial** manažerský, vedoucí
- manual** manuální, pracující rukama nebo tělesně
- mask** (GB) kryt obličeje pro včelaře
- military service** vojenská služba
- moonlighting** (coll) melouchaření
- mortgage** ['mɔ:ɡɪdʒ] hypotéka; zatížit hypotékou, zastavit
- night shift** noční směna
- obedience** [ə'bi:diəns] poslušnost
- obsession with st** posedlost něčím; utkvělá představa
- occupation** povolání, zaměstnání
- odd-jobs** příležitostná zaměstnání
- office-worker** administrativní pracovník
- on income support** (US), **on welfare** (US), **on the dole** (GB coll) (žít) z podpory, (být) na podpoře
- on social security** (žít) z podpory (ze sociálních dávek)
- overdraft** debetní saldo (poukaz na částku přesahující hotovost); dočasný úvěr
- overdraw** vybrat víc než je vklad, přečerpat
- overdrawn** přečerpaný
- overexposed** přeexponovaný
- oversleep** zaspat
- overtime** práce přes čas
- part-time** na částečný úvazek

passionately zaníceně, zaujatě; vášnivě

pastime zábava; hra, sport; rekreace

pattern stříh; vzor; vzorek; model

phone bill účet za telefon

phoney (US) ['fəʊni] falešný

pin špendlík; kolík; čep

pink-collar týkající se povolání, které obvykle vykonávají ženy (např. zdravotní sestry, sekretářky)

plumber ['plʌmə] instalatér

poker poker (karetní hra)

pontoon (GB) [pɒn'tu:n] oko, jednodvacet (karetní hra)

precious ['preʃəs] drahocenný, vzácný

predecessor ['pri:di:sesə] předchůdce; předek

priceless nesmírně cenný, neocenitelný

probation period zkušební lhůta

procrastination [prəʊkræsti'neiʃən] otálení, váhání, odkládání povinností

professional (e.g. doctor, lawyer) vysokoškolsky vzdělaný odborník (např. lékař, právník)

promotion povýšení; propagace, reklama

prospects vyhlídky do budoucna

prune prořezat, ořezat (strom)

punctuality [ˌpʌŋktju'æli:ti] přesnost, dochvilnost

qualifications předpoklady, schopnosti, kvalifikace, způsobilost

recession [ri'seʃən] hospodářský pokles, recese

redundancy payment (GB) odstupné tomu, kdo byl propuštěn

re-enlistment (US) dobrovolné narukování vojáků v záloze

repossess st [ˌri:pə'zes] vzít si něco zpět

reputation pověst, reputace

responsible for st, sb zodpovědný za něco, někoho

résumé (US) ['rezju:meɪ, 'rezumeɪ] životopis

riot nepokoj, povstání

roulette [ru:'let] ruleta

sabbatical roční volno, vědecká dovolená univerzitního profesora, opakující se nejdříve po šesti letech

sack vyhodit, vyrazit (ze zaměstnání)

salary plat

savings and loan bank / association (US) stavební spořitelna

schedule ['ʃedju:l, 'skedju:l] plán, program; rozvrh hodin; jízdní, letový řád

(a pair of) scissors ['sɪzəz] nůžky

seamstress švadlena, šička

set up st založit, zřídit něco

severance pay (US) ['sevərəns] odměna udělená významnému zaměstnanci při propuštění nebo nuceném odchodu, odchodné

sewing ['səʊɪŋ] šití

sewing machine šicí stroj

sex pohlaví; sex

shave holit se, oholit

shortlist zařadit do užšího výběru

shortlisted for v užším výběru

sick pay nemocenská (peníze)

sickness benefit (GB) nemocenské dávky

sideline vedlejší nebo druhé zaměstnání

sign on vstoupit do zaměstnání a uzavřít zaměstnaneckou smlouvu

similarities podobné nebo společné rysy; analogie

situations vacant (ads) (GB) volná místa (inzerční rubrika)

sleep in spát dlouho; zaspát

sleepwalk chodit ve spaní; být náměsíčný

sleepy ospalý

snore chrápat

sociability ['səʊʃəbɪləti] schopnost vycházet a bavit se s lidmi

socialise společensky se stýkat; chodit do společnosti

specimen vzorek

stamp známka; razítko

standing order trvalý příkaz

stressful stresující

strike against st, for st stávkovat proti něčemu, za něco

suggestion návrh, podnět

suitable for sb vhodný pro někoho

surname příjmení

swap výměna

swarm [swɔ:m] roj; rojit se

tailor krejčí; udělat na míru, na zakázku

teller (US) bankovní úředník (u přepážky)

temp přechodně zaměstnaný člověk, výpomoc (obvykle zprostředkuje agentura)

tidy up uklízet; dát věci do pořádku

timetable rozvrh; jízdní, letový řád

toy hračka

tripod ['traɪpɒd] trojnožka; stojan, stativ

trophy trofej; památník

underexposed podexponovaný

unemployed nezaměstnaný

unions odbory

unpaid leave neplacená dovolená

vacation (US) prázdniny, dovolená

valuable cenný, hodnotný

vary in st ['veəri] lišit se, odlišovat se

veil (US) kryt obličej pro včelaře

vice-versa a naopak

viewfinder hledáček

vocation [vəʊ'keɪʃən] povolání; poslání

volunteer dobrovolník; přihlásit se dobrovolně

wage mzda

wake (up) with a start náhle se probudit

waking bdění

waste odpad; plýtvat

weaver ['wi:və] tkadlec

weeding plení

weight váha

white-collar worker úředník

wiped out vymýcený

woodwork práce s dřevem; výrobky ze dřeva

workaholic neúporný pracovník, člověk, který nemůže být bez práce

worthless bezcenný, zbytečný

yell řvát, křičet, ječet

COMMUNICATION

adhesive (postage stamp)

[əd'hi:sv] lepicí (poštovní známka)

aerogramme ['eərəʊgræm] speciální letecký dopis, aerogram**answer, pick up the phone** vzít, zvednout telefon**answering machine** záznamník**answerphone, ansaphone** telefon se záznamníkem; záznamník**@ at @** zavináč**blame** být zodpovědný za něco, způsobit něco**busy signal** (US) obsazovací tón**cancel** zrušit; orazítkovat (známku)**cellotape** průsvitná samolepicí páska, izolepa**coin-operated** (fungující) na mince**collect** vybrat**collect call** (US) hovor na účet volaného**collection** vybírání poštovní schránky**cordless phone** bezšňůrový telefon**cut off, disconnected** přerušený (telefonické spojení)**cyberspace** ['saɪbəspeɪs] kybernetický prostor, kyberprostor**datalink** datové spojení, datový okruh**denomination** nominální, jmenovitá hodnota**determined by st** určen něčím**dial(ling) tone** oznamovací tón**Directory Assistance** (US) informace o telefonních číslech**Directory Enquiries** (GB)[di'rektoəri, daɪ-] informace o telefonních číslech**disconnect** přerušit, odpojit**earpiece** sluchátko**enclosure** příloha**engaged tone** (GB) obsazovací tón**envelope** obálka**excess postage** doplatek poštovního**extension (number)** klapka, linka**facsimile** [fæk'sɪmɪli] fax**fax** [fæks] fax**fax sb** poslat někomu fax**fragile** ['frædʒaɪl, 'frædʒəl] křehké (označení na balících)**franked envelope** ofrankovaná obálka**greeting** pozdrav; oslovení (v dopisu)**guarantee** zaručit; záruka**handset** telefonní sluchátko**hang up** zavěsit**hold the line** nezavěšujte**ID (identification card)** průkaz totožnosti; občanský průkaz**illegible handwriting** nečitelný rukopis**inland** vnitrostátní**insure** pojistit**interface** rozhraní, interface**invention** vynález**issue** ['ɪʃu:, 'ɪʃju:] vydat**knighted** povýšen do šlechtického stavu**letter-box** schránka na dopisy v domě, na dveřích; veřejná poštovní schránka**letterhead** záhlaví dopisu, hlavička**log in, log on** přihlásit se; připojit se**log into the net** přihlásit se do sítě**log off, log out** odhlásit se; odpojit se**loudspeaker** reproduktor**lump sum** odstupné (jednorázová částka vyplácená propuštěným pracovníkům)**make a call** zavolat, zatelefonovat (si)**mail** (US) pošta**mail-box** (US) schránka na dopisy v domě, na dveřích; veřejná poštovní schránka**mailman** (US) listonoš, poštovní doručovatel**mic, mike** (informální) [mark] mikrofon**modem** modem**mouthpiece** mluvítko, mikrofon telefonního přístroje**networking** vytváření sítě (i společenské, navazování profesních kontaktů)**networks** sítě**notebook (computer)** notebook**operator** spojovatel, telefonista**package** balík, balíček**packet** balíček, krabička (např. cigaret)**padded envelope** protinázorová obálka**parcel** balíček, balík, zásilka**partition** [pɑ:'tɪʃən] přepážka; příčka, dělící stěna**pen-friend, pen-pal** známý, přítel k dopisování**philatelist** filatelista**phone book** telefonní seznam**pillar box** (GB) poštovní schránka (červená ve tvaru válce)**plug into st** připojit se do, k něčemu**poison-pen letter** anonymní dopis**postal clerk** poštovní úředník**postal order** (GB) poštovní poukázka**postal rates** poštovní sazby**post-box** poštovní schránka**postcard** pohlednice**poste restante** (GB) [ˌpəʊst'restɑːnt] poste restante**postman** (GB) listonoš, poštovní doručovatel**postmark** poštovní razítko**postmaster** poštovní mistr, přednosta poštovního úřadu**postmistress** poštovní mistrová, přednostka poštovního úřadu**precedent** ['presɪdənt, -ədɛnt] tradice; precedent**printed matter** tiskoviny**proof of identity** prokázání totožnosti**push-button telephone** tlačítkový telefon**receiver** telefonní sluchátko; přijímač**recorded delivery (important letters)** doporučeně (důležité dopisy)**registered post** cenné psaní; doporučeně**regulated by sb, st** řízen, regulován někým, něčím**remote microphone / mike** přenosný mikrofon; mikrofon, který je součástí telefonního přístroje (je možno mluvit z dálky, ne do sluchátka)**ringing tone** vyzváněcí tón**rotary telephone** telefon s kruhovým číselníkem**rough copy** [raf] koncept**R.S.V.P. = please reply to an invitation** prosím o odpověď (z francouzštiny: répondez s'il vous plait)**scale(s)** váha, váhy**seal a letter** zalepit, zapečetit dopis**sealing wax** [wæks] pečetní vosk**sellotape** průsvitná samolepicí páska, izolepa**sign for st** podepsat něco**sorting office** třídírna (poštovních zásilek)**sound** zvuk**stationery** psací potřeby; dopisní papír**stamped addressed envelope (s.a.e.)** ofrankovaná obálka s adresou**string** provázek, motouz

sub-post office (GB) pošta, zvl. na venkově, kterou vede poštovník nebo poštmistřová, kteří jsou samostatnými zaměstnanci pošt

subsequent ['sʌbsɪkwənt] následující, následný

telephone telefon, telefonní přístroj

trunk call meziměstský telefonický hovor

typing psaní na stroji, na počítači

universe svět; vesmír

urgent naléhavý; pilný, spěšný

videophone videofon

weigh [weɪ] vážit, zvážit

window okénko; okno

TOWN & COUNTRY

abduct sb unést někoho

accident nehoda; autonehoda

accused of st obviněný z něčeho

acquitted of st zproštěn něčeho

algae bloom ['ælgi:, 'ældʒi:] přemnožení vodních řas

alley ulička

amber (GB) oranžová (dopravní světlo)

ambulance sanitní vůz, sanitka

amusement park zábavní park, lunapark

annoy obtěžovat, rušit, jít na nervy, vadit

appliance zařízení, přístroj, spotřebič pro domácnost

apprehend zadržet, zatknout, vzít do vazby

arcade pasáž, průchod s obchody

arrest zatknout, vzít do vazby; zatčení, vazba

arrested zatčen; ve vazbě

assault násilné napadení, přepadení

avenue alej, široká třída

back road vedlejší silnice

back street boční, vedlejší ulice

backward areas zaostalé, nerozvinuté oblasti

banned zakázaný

barrack(s) kasárna

barrister (GB) právník, který je oprávněn vést obhajobu u vyššího soudu

biodegradable schopný rozkladu působením mikroorganismů

blackmail vydírat

blame st on st svádět (něco) na něco

blind alley slepá ulička

bobby (GB coll) strážník, policajt

book (US coll) zatknout, uvalit vazbu; vazba

boot (US) botička (při zaparkování na nesprávném místě)

bootleg nezákonně vyráběný, pašovaný, pirátský; pirátská nahrávka

bottle bank kontejner na ulici pro sběr prázdných lahví

boulevard ['bu:ləvɑ:d] bulvár

break down zhroutit se

brewery ['bruəri] pivovar

bribe uplatit; úplatek

bribery úplatkářství, korupce

bring about způsobit, přivodit, přinést

browse / surf the Internet / web / net surfovat po internetu

budget rozpočet

burglar zloděj, který se vloupá do domu

burglary loupež, vloupání

busker (GB) pouliční zpěvák, hudebník, komik apod.

bypass vnější (dopravní) okruh, obchvat

carriageway (GB) vozovka, pruh vozovky

casualties ['kæʒjuəltiz] ztráty na životech při dopravních nehodách

cathedral [kə'thi:drəl] katedrála, dóm, chrám

cemetery hřbitov

census ['sensəs] sčítání lidu

change to... přestoupit na...

chapel kaple

charge sb with st obvinít koho z čeho

cheat podvádět, ošidit

church kostel; církev

circus (GB) kulatě náměstí

climbing frame prolézačka

close to st blízko něčeho; téměř, skoro u

collar sb (coll) dopadnout, chytit někoho

community church společný, ekumenický (mezi církevní) kostel

con ošidit, obalamutit; obrat

confess přiznat, doznat

confuse zmást, splést

contraflow (GB) jízda v obou směrech v jednom pruhu kvůli opravám nebo dopravní nehodě

conurbation městská aglomerace, souměstí

conveniences veřejné toalety

cop (US coll) policajt, polda

copper (GB coll) policajt, polda, fízl

courtroom soudní síň

cover up zamaskovat

crescent ['kresənt] obloukovitá, půlkruhová ulice

criminal zločinec

crook podvodník, lump, darebák, gauz; zloděj; profesionální zločinec

crooked streets

['krʊkɪd (GB) 'krʊkəd (US)] křivolaké ulice

crossroads (GB) křižovatka

cul-de-sac ['kʊldə,sæk, 'kʌldə,sæk] slepá ulice; slepá ulička

- culprit** ['kʌlprɪt] pachatel, viník
- curb** (US) obrubník, obrubní kámen, okraj chodníku
- custody** (vyšetřovací) vazba
- deal with st** vyrovnat se, vypořádat se s něčím
- declare goods** přihlásit zboží k proclení
- defence** (GB), **defense** (US) obrana, obhajoba
- defend** hájit; vystupovat jako obhájce, vést obhajobu
- defendant** obžalovaný
- defibrillator** přístroj k obnovení srdeční činnosti elektrickými šoky
- detective** detektiv
- developed over** zastavěný
- dial** vytočit telefonní číslo
- dishonest** [dɪs'ɒnɪst] nečestný, nepoctivý
- diversion** (GB) [dɪvɜːʃən] objížďka
- dock** lavice obžalovaných
- downtown** (US) střed města; v centru města
- drain** odpad, odtok; drenáž; kanál
- drought** [draʊt] sucho, období sucha
- dustbin** (GB) popelnice, nádoba na odpadky
- dustcart** (GB) vůz na odvoz odpadků
- dustman** (GB) popelář, sběrač odpadků
- embankment** (GB) nábreží
- enforcement** vynucení, vymáhání
- entertainment** zábava
- escape** uniknout
- extinguish** uhasit
- facilities** vybavení, vybavenost, příslušenství, zařízení
- fight** rvačka
- fire brigade** (GB) hasičský sbor, hasiči
- fire escape** nouzový východ v případě požáru
- fire extinguisher** hasicí přístroj
- floods** záplavy
- fly-tipping** nepovolená skládka odpadu
- flyover** nadjezd
- forester** lesník, polesný, revírník
- forge** kovárna; kovářská výheň
- fork** rozcestí
- freeway** (US) dálnice
- frontier** hranice; pohraničí
- funfair** zábavní park, lunapark
- fuzz** (US coll) policajt, chlupatý
- gamekeeper** hajný
- gaol** [dʒeɪl] vězení, věznice, trestnice
- garbage** (US) odpadky
- gasworks** plynárna
- get away** utéci, uniknout, uprchnout, dostat se pryč
- get away with** vyváznout, uniknout potrestání, projít komu co
- gentry** ['dʒentri] nižší venkovská šlechta; vyšší střední vrstvy na venkově
- give directions** říci, popsat cestu
- give evidence** svědčit, vypovídat u soudu
- ghetto** ghetto
- graffiti** nápisy a kresby na zdech, výtvary sprejerů
- graveyard** hřbitov
- gridlock** dopravní zácpa (vozidla se nemohou hnout z místa)
- guilty** vinen
- gurdwara (for Sikhs)** modlitebna sikhů (členů indické náboženské sekty)
- gutter** okap; příkop; stoka
- harbour** přírodní přístav
- headquarters** velitelství; ředitelství
- homelessness** bezdomovectví
- hooligan** chuligán
- hose** hadice
- hospitalised** hospitalizován, umístěn do nemocnice
- hosepipe ban** zákaz zalévání hadicí (připojenou k vodovodní síti)
- hurt** zranit
- hydrant** ['haɪdrənt] hydrant, vodovodní kohout
- hypermarket** velký supermarket, hypermarket
- illegal dumping** nepovolená skládka odpadu
- incinerator** [ɪn'sɪnəreɪtə] spalovna
- inflammable** [ɪn'flæməbl] hořlavý
- inner city** vnitřní město, centrum
- innocent** nevinný
- in plain clothes** v civilu
- insist on st** trvat na něčem
- inspector** policejní inspektor; dozorce; kontrolor
- intersection** (US) křižovatka
- in the middle of nowhere** tam, kde lišky dávají dobrou noc, daleko od civilizace
- involved in st** přítomen, účasten něčeho
- jail** vězení, věznice
- jaywalk** neukázněně přecházet silnici (mimo přechod)
- jewellery** klenoty, šperky
- judge** soudce
- junction** křižovatka
- jury** ['dʒʊ(ə)ri] porota
- kerb** (GB) obrubník, obrubní kámen, okraj chodníku
- kidnap** unést
- kidnapper** únosce
- kidnapping** únos
- kirk (Scots)** kostel
- labour** práce; dělnictvo, pracující
- labourer** dělník
- ladder** žebřík
- landowner** majitel pozemku
- lane** ulička, úzká ulice
- lax** laxní, nedbalý, nedůsledný
- lawyer** právník, právní zástupce, advokát
- licence** povolení, oprávnění, licence
- litter** odpadky
- litter-bin** (GB) odpadkový koš
- louse, pl. lice** veš, vši
- lumberjack** (US) dřevař, dřevorubec
- magistrate** soudce pro drobné přeštky; smírčí soudce
- manhunt** pátrání
- manslaughter** ['mæn,slo:tə] zabití (neúmyslné)
- mayor** [meɔ] starosta
- migration** stěhování, migrace
- minister** duchovní, pastor
- mosque** [mɒsk] mešita
- mugging** násilné přepadení (a okradení)
- mulch** materiál k mulčování; mulčovat
- murder** vražda
- museum** muzeum
- neglected area** zanedbaná, zchátralá část města
- neighbourhood** (US) městská čtvrť, okolí, sousedství
- newspapers** noviny
- next to st** vedle něčeho
- nick sb** (coll) sebrat
- opposite st** naproti něčemu; protiklad
- ordeal** [ɔ:'diəl] martyrium, muka
- outsider** cizí člověk
- overcome by smoke** přidušený, přitrávený kouřem

- overcrowded** přeplněný, přelidněný, přečpaný
- overpass** mimoúrovňový přechod, nadjezd
- overtake** (GB) předjet, předjíždět
- packaging** obalová, balicí technika, balení
- parks** parky, sady
- pass** (US) předjet, předjíždět
- passer-by** kolemjdoucí
- patrol boat** hlídkový člun
- patrol car** (US) policejní vůz
- pavement** (GB) chodník
- pavement** (US) vozovka, jízdní dráha
- peace and quiet** klid
- perjury** [ˈpɜːdʒəri] křivá přísaha; vědomá lež
- pickpocket** kapesní zloděj, kapsář
- pileup** (GB) řetězová srážka vozidel
- plastic bottles** plastové láhve
- playground** hřiště
- poacher** [ˈpɔːtʃə] pytlák
- policeman** policista, policajt
- pollute (water)** znečišťovat (vodu)
- pollution** znečištění
- port** přístav
- pottery** hrnčířská dílna; hrnčířské výrobky; hrnčířství (činnost)
- pour** [pɔː] lít, nalít
- priest** kněz, pastor
- prison** vězení, věznice, trestnice
- prosecutor** žalobce, prokurátor
- prove** dokázat, prokázat; potvrdit
- provincial town** provinciální, zastalé město
- public** veřejnost; veřejný, státní, městský, obecní
- public conveniences** veřejné záchodky
- pull over** zastavit u krajnice; zastavit někoho
- punishment** trest; postih
- put out a fire** uhasit požár, oheň
- quaint** [kweɪnt] malebný; starodávný, starobylý
- rape** znásilnění; znásilnit
- rat** krysa; potkan
- recruitment** nábor, posila
- rector** farář, hlava farnosti, pastor; rektor
- recycle** [riːsaɪkl] recyklovat
- recycled** recyklovaný
- regulation** směrnice, nařízení, dohled
- result in st** mít za následek něco, vést k něčemu
- reuse** znovu použít
- rip sb off** (coll) vzít na hůl, natáhnout, oškubat, okrást někoho
- road** (GB) vozovka, jízdní dráha
- road works** práce na silnici
- robbery** loupež
- roundabout** kruhový objezd
- row** ulice (rovná)
- rubbish** odpadky, smetí
- rule** rozhodnout, vynést rozsudek, odsoudit
- rundown** zchátralý, na spadnutí; vyčerpaný
- safety** bezpečnost
- sandpit** pískoviště
- sanitation** hygiena; ozdravení
- scared** vyděšený, vystrašený
- scrap-heap** (GB) smetiště, skládka
- set up** postavit; založit, zřídit
- sewer** [suə] stoka, kanál
- shanty town** chudinská čtvrť s chatrčemi
- shoplifter** zloděj, který krade v obchodě
- sidewalk** (US) chodník
- siren** [ˈsaɪərən] siréna
- skip** velký kontejner na odpadky
- skyscraper** mrakodrap
- sleeping policeman** (GB) příčný práh, retardér (vyvýšený pás napříč vozovkou nutící řidiče zpomalit jízdu)
- slide** skluzavka (pro děti na hřišti)
- slum** brloh, chudinská čtvrť
- smithy** kovárna
- smuggle** pašovat
- sneak away** vytratit se, vykrást se
- soldier** [ˈsəʊldʒə] voják
- solicitor** (GB) právní poradce, právní zástupce, advokát
- spaghetti junction** složitý systém mimoúrovňových křižovatek
- speed bump /ramp** (US) příčný práh, retardér
- speeding** příliš rychlá jízda, překročení rychlostního limitu
- spread** šířit, šířit se, rozšířit se
- square** náměstí
- steal** krást, ukrást
- stolen** kradený, ukradený
- straight on** přímo, rovně
- stretcher** nosítka pro nemocné
- styrofoam** [ˈstairəfəʊm] polystyren
- suburb** [ˈsʌbɜːb] předměstí
- subway** (GB) podchod
- subway** (US) podzemní dráha, metro
- synagogue** synagoga
- T-junction** křižovatka ve tvaru T
- temple** templ; chrám, svatyně (hinduistická); chrám Božího hrobu v Jeruzalémě
- terrace** (GB) řada domů na svahu
- testify** svědčit, vypovídat u soudu
- throw out** vyhodit
- tip** (US) skládka
- toilets** toalety
- tow away** [təʊ əˈweɪ] odtáhnout (auto)
- toxic waste** toxický odpad
- trial** soud
- trick** podvést, napálit, obelstít; podvod
- twisting** křivolaký
- underground** (GB) podzemní dráha, metro
- undermanned** [ˌʌndəˈmænd] s nedostatečným počtem pracovních sil
- underpass** podchod, podjezd
- undeserved** nezasloužený
- uninhabitable** neobyvatelný
- unintentionally** neúmyslně; bezděčně
- vandal** vandal
- vandalism** vandalismus
- vermin** drobný obtížný hmyz, paraziti, havěť
- vicar** farář, vikář
- violence** násilí
- wanted** hledaný
- warehouse** [ˈweəhaʊs] skladiště; prodej ze skladu
- waste refrigerants** chladicí směsi na skládkách
- waterworks** vodárna
- well-kept** dobře udržovaný, pěstěný
- width** [wɪðθ] šířka, šíře
- winding** klikatý; točitý
- witness** svědek
- woodcutter** dřevorubec, dřevař
- yellow** (US) oranžová (dopravní světlo)

SIGHTSEEING

abandon opustit
abbey opatství, chrám při opatství
abound in, with st oplývat něčím
aisle [aɪl] boční, vedlejší loď chrámu; ambít; ulička mezi sedadly
altar ['ɔ:lta] oltář
altarpiece oltářní obraz
ancient ['eɪnʃənt] starobylý; starý, letitý; starověký
announce oznámit
appreciate st oceňovat; uvědomovat si něco, být si vědom něčeho
arboretum [ˌɑ:bə'ri:təm, ˌabə'ri:təm] arboretum
archaeological archeologický
armour ['ɑ:mə] brnění, pancíř, krunýř
Art Nouveau [ɑ: nu:'vəu] secese
astronomical clock orloj
attractiveness půvab; přitažlivost
aurochs ['ɔ:rɒks] pratur
banishment vypovězení do vyhnanství
bank břeh
baptize [ˌbæp'taɪz] křtít, pokřtít
Baroque [bə'rɒk] barokní, barokový
basilica [bə'zɪlɪkə] bazilika
bastion ['bæstɪən] bašta
battleground bojiště
battlement cimbuří
Beijing [beɪ'dʒɪŋ] Peking
belfry ['belfri] zvonice
bell zvon, zvonek
besiege [bi'si:dʒ] obléhat
bishopric biskupství, diecéze
breathtaking ['breθ'teɪkɪŋ] úžasný; beroucí dech
burn down vyhořet, shořet, lehnout popelem; vypálit
Cairo [kaɪəu] Káhira
candlestick svícen
castle zámek; hrad
catacombs [ˌkætəku:mz] katakomby; podzemní pohřebiště
cathedral [kə'thi:drəl] katedrála, dóm, chrám
cave jeskyně
certainty jistota
chalet ['ʃæleɪ] horská chata
chancel ['tʃɑ:nsəl] oltářní prostor, zpravidla oddělený mřížkou, kněžiště
chasm ['kæzm] propast, rokle, strž

chivalry ['ʃɪvəlri] rytířství; rytířskost; rytířstvo
choir [kwaɪə] kůr, kněžiště; pěvecký sbor, zejm. chrámový; taneční skupina
clubland městská část, v níž jsou kluby, zejm. v Londýně
cobbled vydlážděný kulatými dlažebními kostkami (tzv. kočičí hlavy)
cobblestone dlažební kostka, kočičí hlava
colonnade [ˌkɒlə'neɪd] kolonáda; stromořadí
column ['kɒləm] sloup
compound směs, složení; spojení
conducted tour prohlídka pamětihodností s průvodcem
confessional zpovědnice
conquer st, sb ['kɒŋkə] přemoci, zvítězit nad, podrobit si, dobýt něco, někoho
consecrated vysvěcený
convent ženský klášter
courier ['kʊəriə] průvodce zahraniční skupiny turistů; kurýr
courtyard dvůr, nádvoří, dvorek
cross kříž
crucifix ['kru:sɪfɪks] krucifix, kříž
crypt krypta, podzemní hrobka
cultural heritage kulturní dědictví
date back to / from pocházet z (doby)
dedicated to st, sb věnovaný něčemu, někomu
demolished zbourán, stržen
desensitisation [diˌsensɪtaɪ'zeɪʃn] únava, nezájem při prohlížení památek; znečitlivění, snížení citlivosti
destroyed zničený
disaster neštěstí
dome kupole, klenba
drawbridge padací most, zvedací most
drop in at (a place) zastavit se v (někde)
drop in on sb zastavit se u někoho
dungeon žalář, hradní kobka; hlavní hradní věž
eagle-eyed bystrozraký
earldom [ɜ:lɒdəm] titul, panství hraběte
early raný
embrasure [ɪm'breɪzə] výklenek u okna, dveří; střílna
Empire empír (sloh)
enhanced by st umocněn, zesílen něčím

entrance to ['entrəns] vchod do
ethnographic etnografický
evolve from st vyvinout se z něčeho
extinction zániknutí, zánik, vyhynutí; uhašení, vyhasnutí
falconry sokolnictví
fan vaulting vějířová klenba
fascination půvab, kouzlo
fencing šermování, šerm
Florence ['flɒrəns] Florencie
flying buttress ['bʌtrəs] opěrný oblouk s opěrným pilířem, obloukový pilíř
font křtitelnice, kropenka
footpath stezka, pěšina
fortifications opevnění
fossil zkamenělina, fosilie
founder zakladatel
fountain fontána; kašna; vodotrysk
fresco freska
fun races zábavné závody, soutěže
Georgian ['dʒɔ:dʒən, 'dʒɔ:dʒjən] georgiánský
gondolas gondoly
Gothic [ˈgɒθɪk] gotický; gotika
grove háj, hájek, lesík; skupina stromů
guide průvodce; vedoucí zájezdu
gunsmith puškař, zbrojír; výrobce zbraní
haunt [haʊnt] strašit (kde); pronásledovat, znepokojovat
heat horko, vedro
heraldry heraldika; slavnostní historická pompa; erby; předběžná publicita
highlands vysočina, vrchovina
hill-fort pevnost s ochrannými valy a příkopy na vrcholu kopce
historic [hɪ'stɒrɪk] historický, epochální, dějinný
historical re-enactment [hɪ'stɒrɪkəl] znázornění historických událostí v dobových kostýmech (např. Bitva u Slavkova)
holy ['həʊli] svatý, posvátný; zbožný
impregnable fortress nedobytná pevnost
in the rear of st v zadní části něčeho
inclusion of st zahrnutí, zařazení něčeho
joust [dʒəʊst] rytířský turnaj
karst (the Moravian Karst) kras (Moravský kras)
knight [naɪt] rytíř

- lace-making** výroba krajek
late pozdní
lodge (lovecká) chata
lookout tower rozhledna, vyhlídková věž
mammoth mamut
mansion velký obytný dům, panské sídlo, zámek
medi(a)eval středověký
memorial památník, pomník
merely pouze, jenom
moat vodní příkop, hradní příkop
monastery mužský klášter
monument památník
narrow úzký
nave [neiv] hlavní (střední) loď chrámu
Neo-Renaissance [ni:əʊ rə'neɪs:ns, rə'neɪsəns] novorenesanční; novorenesance
neogothic neogotický, novogotický
niche [ni:f, nitʃ] výklenek, nika
nunnery ['nʌnəri] (lit) klášter (ženský)
objective cíl; plán; úkol
overload přetížení
package tour / holiday turistický zájezd s programem, jehož cena zahrnuje vše
palace ['pælis] palác
palisade [ˌpæli'seɪd] palisáda, ohrada z kůlů nebo železných tyčí
panorama vyhlídka, rozhled do krajiny, panoráma
paperweight těžítka
Paris Paříž
parish farnost
parkland rozlehlý park
pass průsmyk, soutěska, úžina
passers-by kolemjdoucí
pensioner důchodce, penzista
pew [pju:] kostelní lavice
pipers dudáci
plague column ['pleɪg 'kɒləm] morový sloup
porch krytý vchod, přístřešek; veranda
portcullis [ˌpɔ:t'kʌlɪs] padací mříž
predict předvídat
priory ['praɪəri] převorství (klášter)
priority priorita
prosper prosperovat, vést si dobře
Protestant protestant; protestantský
provide with st opatřit něčím
pulpit ['pʊlpɪt] kazatelna
range from... through... to st sahát od... přes... až k... něčemu
rapids peřeje, slapy
rebuilt přestavěný
reference library příruční knihovna (pouze prezenční)
Regency ['ri:dʒənsɪ] sloh začátku 19. stol. v Británii odpovídající empiru v Evropě (princ regent, George IV, vládl v letech 1811–20)
regret st litovat něčeho
reliance jistota; důvěra, spolehnutí
relic ['reɪlɪk] památka, pozůstatek
remarkable pozoruhodný, nevšední
Renaissance [rə'neɪs:ns, rə'neɪsəns] renesance
resent st nesnášet něco
rich in st bohatý na něco
Rococo rokokový; rokoko
Romanesque [ˌrəʊmə'nɛsk] románský; románský styl
rotunda [rəʊ'tʌndə] rotunda
ruins trosky, zřícenina
scarf, pl. scarves šátek; šála
sculpture ['skʌlptʃə] socha
sculptural group sousoší
settlement osada, sídliště
shell kostra domu, vnější zdi, skořepina
shrine schránka s ostatky; hrob svěťce; svatyně
sort out roztřídit
spa lázně s léčivými prameny; minerální pramen, léčivý pramen
spire špičatá věž, zužující se kostelní věž; špička kostelní věže
stained glass vitráž (barevné sklo v oknech kostela)
start at st začít někde
statue socha
stay over in... zůstat přes noc v...
steeple věž; kostelní věž; vysoká štíhlá věžička; špička na věži
stop over in... zastavit se (na noc) v...
swarming with st být plný něčeho; hemžící se něčím
sword [sɔ:d] meč; šavle; dýka
take sb round provést někoho
televised vysílán v televizi
temper povaha; duševní rozpoložení; podrážděnost, rozčilení, zlost, vztek
the Highlands Skotská vysočina
theatre ['θiətə] divadlo
theme park ['θi:m] turistická atrakce v přírodě, např. skanzen, Disneyland...
through přes, skrz
tilting rytířské turnaje s dřevci
tiredness únava
tomb [tu:m] hrob, hrobka; náhrobek
tourist fatigue ['tʊərɪst, 'tɔ:-, 'tʊərɪst fə'ti:g] únava způsobená příliš náročným programem při poznávacích cestách
tourist information informace, turistická informační kancelář
tournament ['tʊənmənt, 'tɔ:-] turnaj, klání
tower věž; bašta
transept ['trænssept, 'trɑ:n-] transept, příčná loď kostela
tribute to sb uctění někoho
Tudor tudorský, tudorovský; Tudor, Tudorovec
twisty klikatý, křivolaký, zatáčející
under reconstruction v rekonstrukci
unique jedinečný
uplands vysočina, vrchovina
vault klenba, klenutí; hrobka, krypta
vehemently silně, prudce, důrazně
Venice Benátky
ventilation větrání, ventilace
vestry sakristie
via [vaɪə, 'vi:ə] přes, skrz
Victorian viktoriánský
visit, visitor to návštěva, návštěvník (čeho)
watchtower strážní věž, pozorovatelna
waterfall vodopád
winding klikatý, křivolaký, zatáčející
woodcarver [wud'kɑ:və] řezbář
zoo [zu:, zu] zoo, zoologická zahrada

TRAVEL

accelerate zrychlit, zvýšit rychlost
accelerator pedál plynu v autě
accessories doplňky; příslušenství
accommodation ubytování
aileron [ˈeɪləron] křídélko na nosných plochách letadla
airborne [ˈeəbɔ:n] ve vzduchu, v letadle; roznášený vzduchem
airbus airbus (velké dopravní letadlo)
aircraft letadlo, letadla
airliner dopravní letadlo (létající na pravidelné lince)
airsick trpící nevolností v letadle
aisle [aɪl] ulička mezi sedadly
alien [ˈeɪlɪən, ˈeɪljən] cizí, zahraniční, odlišný; cizinec; vetřelec
announcement oznámení; hlášení; prohlášení
Armco (GB) svodidlo
automobile (US) [ˈɔ:təmə.bi:l] auto(mobil)
back up (US) couvat, jet zpátečkou
backpack (US) batoh, ruksak; cestovat s batohem
battery [ˈbæt(ə)ri] baterie
bellhop (US) hotelový poslíček; pikolík
bench lavička, sedátko
bend (GB) zatáčka
bendy bus housenka; kloubový autobus
berth [ˈbɜ:θ] lůžko (na lodi, ve vlaku)
bicycle jízdní kolo
bigotry [ˈbɪgətɹi] bigotnost; přehnaná zbožnost
bivouacking [ˈbɪvʊækɪŋ] bivakování
board stravování; paluba
boat člun
bonnet (GB) kapota
boot (GB) zavazadlový prostor v autě, kufr
bow [bau] příď, přední část lodi
brake brzda
brake liquid / fluid brzdová kapalina
breakdown porucha, defekt, havárie
breathalyser [ˈbreθəlaɪzə] balónek (na zkoušku alkoholu v krvi)
bridge (where the helm is) můstek (velitelské stanoviště, kde je kormidlo)
briefcase aktovka; kuřík
brochure [ˈbrəʊʃə, brəʊʃjʊə, brɔ:ʃur] brožura, reklamní leták

broken line přerušovaná čára
bumper nárazník (u automobilu)
bunk (bed) patrové lůžko
cabin (US) chata; bouda, chýše
caboose (US) [kəˈbu:s] služební vůz (vlaku); lodní kuchyně
campsite tábořiště, kemp, autokemp
canoe [kəˈnu:] kánoe
captain [ˈkæptɪn, -tən] hlavní pilot; kapitán
car (GB) vagón, železniční vůz; auto
caravan (GB) [ˈkærəvæn] obytný přívěs
cargo ship [ˈkɑ:gəʊ] nákladní loď
carriage (GB) osobní železniční vagón
chain řetěz
chalet (GB) [ˈʃæleɪ] horská chata; salaš, horská bouda
chambermaid pokojská
change down zařadit nižší rychlostní stupeň, podřadit
change up zařadit vyšší rychlostní stupeň
change up or down řadit nahoru nebo dolů
charter pronájem lodi nebo letadla
check in přihlásit se při příchodu (v hotelu, na letišti)
check out odejít a zaplatit (v supermarketu, v hotelu)
checklist úplný seznam
choke [tʃəʊk] sytič karburátoru
climb [klaɪm] lézt; stoupat
clover-leaf junction [ˈklɒvəli:f ˈdʒʌŋkʃən] mimoúrovňová křižovatka
clutch [klaʊtʃ] spojka
coach [kəʊtʃ] dálkový autobus, auto-kar; vagon, železniční vůz (GB)
cockpit kabina pilota, sedadlo řidiče
come across st, sb narazit na něco, někoho
commissionaire [kəˌmɪʃəˈneə] vrátný hotelu, kina, baru; portýr
commute [kəˈmjʊ:t] dojíždět pravidelně do práce
commuter člověk pravidelně dojíždějící do práce
compartment kupé
condenser kondenzátor
conductor průvodčí
congested [kənˈdʒestɪd] zacpaný; přehuštěný; přeplněný
consulate [ˈkɒnsjʊlət] konzulát

contraflow dočasné převedení dopravy do protějšího jízdního pruhu
corridor chodba; letecký koridor
couchette [ku:ˈʃet, kuˈʃet] lehátko (ve vlaku)
crane (on the quay) [ki:] jeřáb (na přístavní hrázi)
crossroads (GB) křižovatka; rozcestí
cruise liner, cruise ship výletní loď
cruise [kru:z] výletní plavba lodí (z místa na místo)
curb (US) [kɜ:b] obrubník; okraj chodníku
curve (US) [kɜ:v] zatáčka
decelerate zpomalit, snížit rychlost
deck paluba
delayed zpožděný
derrick (on the ship) otočný jeřáb (na lodi)
destination místo určení, cíl cesty
DETOUR (US) [ˈdi:tʊə, ˈdi:tʊr] objížďka
diner (US) [ˈdaɪnə] jídelní vůz; malá levná restaurace
disembark (US) [ˌdɪsmɪˈbɑ:k] vylodit se; vystoupit z dopravního prostředku
DIVERSION (GB) [daɪˈvɜ:ʃən, dɪˈvɜ:r-] odklonění dopravy, objížďka
diverted to... [daɪˈvɜ:tɪd, dɪˈvɜ:rtɪd] (letadlo) odkloněno na (jiné místo přistání)
dock dok, molo
dock at... ležet v přístavu, u přístavní hráze; zajet do doku
domestic flight vnitrostátní let
doorman vrátný v hotelu (v livreji)
drive-in (US) restaurace, kino, banka, prodejna určená pro motoristy, kteří zůstanou sedět ve vozidle
driveway soukromá příjezdová cesta k domu
duty-free osvobozený od cla, bezcelní
economical hospodárný, úsporný
embarkation nalodění, naložení; vstup do lodi, letadla
embassy velvyslanectví, ambasáda
engine lokomotiva; motor
exceed [ɪkˈsi:d] překonat, přesáhnout, překročit
exit [ˈeksɪt, ˈegzɪt] východ; výjezd z dálnice; výjezd ze země
fare [feə] jízdné
fatal to sb osudný pro někoho
fender (US) nárazník (u automobilu)

- ferry (boat)** převoz, trajekt
fill up (US) nabít (baterii)
first-aid kit příruční lékárnička
flap startovací, přistávací klapka
 křídla
flyover nadjezd
flysheets tropiko (tropická střecha
 stanu)
foglights světla do mlhy; mlhovky
footpump nožní hustilka
fork rozdvojení cest, rozcestí
fork junction křižovatka ve tvaru Y
freeway dálnice
freight train (US) [freit] nákladní
 vlak
funnel [ˈfʌnəl] komín (lodi, lokomo-
 tivy, ...)
fuselage [ˈfjuːzələʒ] trup letadla
gangplank [ˈgæŋplæŋk] můstek na
 loď
gangway chodbička, ulička; můstek
 na loď
garage (GB) [gəˈrɑːʒ, ˈgærɑːʒ, ˈgær-
 ɪdʒ] servis, automobilová opravna,
 dílna; čerpací stanice se servisem;
 garáž
gas (US) benzín, pohonná hmota;
 plynový pedál; plyn
get into a slide / skid dostat smyk
glass-calm velmi klidné moře bez vln
 (jako sklo)
goods train (GB) nákladní vlak
grease namazat; usnadnit, ulehčit,
 napomoci
greasy spoon (coll) putyka
gridlock dopravní zácpa (vozidla se
 nemohou hnout z místa)
groundsheet samostatná nepromo-
 kává podlážka (stanu)
guard (GB) průvodčí
gutter strouha, škarpa
handlebars řídítka
harbor (US), **harbour** (GB) přírodní
 přístav
hatchback auto s dvířky kufru ote-
 vírajícími se nahoru a s prostorem
 kufru neodděleným pevnou přepáž-
 kou od prostoru pro cestující
haze opar; lehká mlha
headlights přední světla, reflektory
heavy traffic silný silniční provoz
(heli)copter vrtulník, helikoptéra
helm (steering wheel) kormidlo,
 kormidelní páka
helmsman muž u kormidla, kormi-
 delník
high season hlavní sezóna
highway silnice; dálnice, rychlostní
 komunikace
hijack přepadnout a unést (často pod
 hrozbou zabití rukojmí)
hike chodit na pěší výlety, pěstovat
 turistiku
hitchhike stopovat; jezdit (auto)sto-
 pem
hitchhiker stopař
hold nákladový prostor (v lodi,
 v letadle)
holdall velká cestovní taška, objemná
 kabela
hood (US) kapota, kryt motoru
horn klakson, houkačka
hostage [ˈhɒstɪdʒ] rukojmí
hovercraft [ˈhɒvəkrɑːft] vznášedlo,
 vznášedlová loď
hug sevření v náručí, objetí; objímat
hull trup lodi, letadla; korba tanku;
 kostra balónu
hut chata, bouda
hydrofoil [ˈhaɪdrəʊfɔɪl] křídlový
 člun, mořská raketa
igloo tent samonosný stan (ve tvaru
 iglú)
immigration přistěhovalectví, imi-
 grace
indicate označovat, dávat znamení,
 signalizovat
indicator (GB) ukazatel směru, blinkr
inebriated [ɪˈniːbrɪeɪtɪd, ɪˈnɪbrɪ,eɪtɪd]
 (formal) opilý
insurance pojištění
intersection (US) křižovatka
interstate (US) dálnice
intoxicated (formal) pod vlivem
 alkoholu, opilý
intrusive dotěrný, neodbytný; rušivý
jack zvedák, hever
junction křižovatka
kerb (GB) obrubník, okraj chodníku
label označit nálepkou, označit;
 nálepka
land přistát
languish [ˈlæŋgwɪʃ] ochabnout; nýt,
 melancholicky se dívat
launch vyhlídkový motorový člun;
 zahájit
lay-by (GB) rozšířená krajnice pro
 nouzové parkování; odstavná plo-
 cha; odpočívadlo
layover přerušení jízdy, přestávka na
 cestě
licence povolení, oprávnění, licence
license plate (US) státní poznávací
 značka, SPZ
lifeboat záchranný člun
liftboy hotelový poslíček
limousine [ˌlɪməˈziːn] limuzína
liner pravidelný (zaoceánský) parník;
 pravidelné dopravní letadlo
lollipop lady, man (GB) osoba převá-
 dějící děti přes ulici
look out onto mít výhled na (pokoj)
lorry (GB) nákladní auto
lounge [laʊndʒ] hala; společenská
 místnost
maintenance udržování, údržba
mallet [ˈmæɪlɪt] dřevěná palička
 (např. k zatloukání stanových
 kolíků)
manager ředitel, manažer
mast stěžeň, stožár
Mediterranean (the)
 [medɪtəˈreɪniən] Středozeří; Stře-
 dozemní moře
mirror zrcadlo
motel [məʊˈtel] motel
motorcycle motocykl
motorway (GB) dálnice
mudguard blatník
multiple crash hromadná srážka
notice oznámení, vyhláška; upozor-
 nění, varování, výstraha
numberplate (GB) státní poznávací
 značka (automobilu)
oblique [əʊˈbliːk] lomítko
odometer (US) [əʊˈdɒmɪtə] počítač
 mil (kilometrů)
off-season mimo sezónu
overcharged přetížený; předraženy
overdrive zrychlující převod v auto-
 mobilu
overheat (in heavy traffic) přehřát se
 (v silném provozu)
overlook st s výhledem na (pokoj)
overpass přečhod; nadjezd
overtake (GB) předjet, předjíždět
pannier [ˈpæniə] velká sedlová
 brašna motocyklu
pass (US) předjet, předjíždět
passenger train osobní vlak
passport cestovní pas
pavement (GB) chodník
pavement (US) vozovka, jízdní dráha
pedals pedály
pelican crossing [ˈpelɪkən] přečhod
 se signalizací a tlačítky pro chodce

- penknife** víceúčelový kapesní nůž
- penthouse** luxusní ubytování pod střechou; nástavba; ateliérový byt
- pickup** malý otevřený dodávkový vůz; malé nákladní auto
- pileup** (GB) řetězová srážka vozidel
- pilot** pilot; lodivod; kormidelník
- pitch** houpat se (o lodi) z přídě na zád'
- platform** nástupiště
- plug** zapalovací svíčka
- pole** tyč
- pollution** znečištění
- port** přístav; levobok
- porter** nosič; vrátný
- porthole (window)** kruhový otvor v boku lodí, letadla (okénko)
- potholer** jeskyňář, speleolog
- prejudice** předsudek, zaujatost, předpojatost
- pull away** odtáhnout
- pull over** zastavit u krajnice
- pup tent** pochodový stan
- purser** lodní hospodář, pokladník
- pushbike** (GB) jízdní kolo
- put on the brake** brzdit
- quay (side)** ['ki:(saɪd)] nabřeží; (umělé) přístaviště
- rail** kolejnice, kolej
- raingear** oblečení do deště
- reckless** bezohledný, nezodpovědný
- registration number** státní poznávací značka, SPZ
- request stop** zastávka na znamení
- rescue boat** záchranný člun
- reserved** rezervovaný; zamluvený
- return ticket** (GB) zpáteční lístek, jízdenka
- reverse** (GB) couvat
- rigging** ['rɪɡɪŋ] výstroj lodí; lanová; oplachtování; příprava lodí k plavbě
- road** (GB) cesta, silnice
- roadside restaurant** restaurace při silnici, motorest
- roll** houpat se (o lodi) kolem podélné osy
- roof** střecha
- roof-rack** nosič, zahrádka na střeše auta
- RORO (roll on, roll off)** ['rɔʊəʊ] nákladní loď nebo trajekt pro dopravu nákladních aut s náklady (auto najede a sjeде)
- rotor** ['rɔʊtə] rotor; nosná vrtule vrtulníku
- round-trip ticket** (US) zpáteční lístek, jízdenka
- rucksack** (GB) ['rʌksæk] batoh, ruksak
- rudder** ['rʌdə] kormidlo; směrovka
- ruins** trosky, zřícenina
- run over sb** srazit někoho, přejet někoho
- saddle** sedlo, sedátko; osedlat
- sail** plavit se; plachtit; plachta
- seasick** trpící mořskou nemocí
- seat** sedlo, sedadlo (u dvoustupých vozidel)
- self-catering** s vlastním stravováním
- semi** návěs
- sit facing the engine / backwards** sedět po / proti směru jízdy
- sharp bend** (GB), **curve** (US) ostrá zatáčka
- sheet** plachta
- ship** loď
- shuttle** kyvadlová doprava; raketo-plán
- sidewalk** (US) chodník
- skid** smyk; dostat smyk
- sleeper** lůžkový vůz; pražec
- slippery road** kluzká vozovka
- smuggle** pašovat
- solid line** plná čára
- spaghetti junction** [spə'ʤeti] složitý systém mimoúrovňových křižovatek
- spares** náhradní díly
- speed** zrychlit; rychlost
- speed limit** povolená rychlost
- speed up** zrychlit, zvýšit rychlost
- speeding** překračování povolené rychlosti
- speedometer** [spi:'dɒmɪtə] rychloměr, tachometr
- spokes** hvězdicové dráty jízdního kola
- spotlight** reflektor (kuželový); ostré světlo
- staff** zaměstnanci, pracovníci, personál
- standpoint** stanovisko, hledisko
- stateroom** luxusní soukromá kajuta; vládní salónek na nádraží
- steering wheel** volant; kormidlo
- stern** zadní část lodí, zád'
- steward** stevard
- stewardess** letuška
- stickshift** (US) řadicí páka
- stop** zastávka, přerušení cesty; zastávka, stanice
- subway** (GB) podchod
- subway** (US) podzemní dráha
- suitcase** kufr
- suite** [swi:t] apartmá (v hotelu)
- sunroof** posuvná střecha
- superstructure** nástavba
- swimwear** plavecké oblečení
- T-junction** křižovatka ve tvaru T
- tachometer** (US) otáčkoměr
- tailgate sb** (US) jet v závěsu za někým
- taillight** (US) koncové (brzdové) světlo
- take off** vzlétnout, odstartovat, vznést se
- tandem** sedadla za sebou
- tentpeg** stanový kolík
- tire** (US) pneumatika
- toilet articles** toaletní potřeby
- tollroad** (GB) ['təʊlroʊd] **tollway** (US) silnice, na níž se vybírá mýto, poplatek
- toolkit** brašna na nářadí; souprava nářadí
- touch down** přistát; přistání
- towbar** ['təʊbɑ:] tažná tyč
- towel** ručník, osuška
- towing** závěsné zařízení
- trailer** přívěs
- travel light** cestovat na lehkó (bez zavazadel)
- trek** pěstovat pěší turistiku v přírodě
- truck** (US) nákladní auto
- trunk road** hlavní silnice
- trunk** (US) kufr, zavazadlový prostor
- tube (the)** (GB) metro, podzemní dráha
- tug** vlečná loď, remorkér; vlečné letadlo; vlečné lano
- turbulence** ['tɜ:bjuələns] turbulence, vířivost; neklid, vzrušení
- turnpike** (US) dálnice, na níž se platí poplatek
- twisting country lane** klikatá venkovská cesta
- underground (the)** (GB) metro, podzemní dráha
- underpass** (US) podjezd, podchod
- under the influence of** pod vlivem
- unexpectedly** neočekávaně
- van** dodávka; nákladní vagon
- vehicle** vozidlo; dopravní prostředek
- vending machine** prodejní automat
- verge on st** [vɜ:dʒ] hraničit s něčím; být na pokraji něčeho

vessel [ˈvesəl] plavidlo, loď; letadlo, vzducholod'; nádoba

view of výhled na

voyage [ˈvɔɪdʒ] cesta, plavba

wagon železniční vůz, vagon (US); otevřený nákladní vagón (GB); dodávkový vůz, dodávka, stejšn, kombi

wagon-lit spací vůz, lůžkový vůz

walk (in the hills, etc.) jít, chodit (po horách atd.)

windscreen wipers stěrače

windscreen (GB) přední sklo motorového vozidla

windshield (US) přední sklo motorového vozidla

wing křídlo; blatník auta

yacht [jɒt] jachta

YIELD (US) [ji:lɪd] DEJ PŘED-NOST V JÍZDĚ

FARMING

abyssal [əˈbɪsəl] hlubinný

allotment parcela; pozemek

arable land orná půda

baler balíkovač slámy

bark štěkat; štěkot; kůra stromu

barley ječmen

barn stodola

battery farming chov drůbeže

bee včela

billy-goat kozel

bitch fena; potvora, mrcha

bleat bečet, mečet (ovce, koza)

boar divočák, kanec

bray hýkat

breeding pěstování, chov; rozmnožování

bull býk

bullock (GB) vůl, vykleštěný býk

buzz [bʌz] bzučet

cage klec

calf, pl. calves tele

carcass [ˈkɑ:kəs] mršina, zdechlina

castrated vykastrovaný

cattle dobytek, skot

champion přeborník, mistr, vítěz

chicken coop kurník

chirp [tʃɜ:p] švitořit, cvrlikat

clean up (US) vykydat, vyčistit (stáj apod.)

cluck kvokat, kdákat (slepice)

cock(ere) (GB) kohoutek, mladý kohout

colt [kəʊlt] hříbě, hřebeček

contaminate [kənˈtæmɪneɪt] znečišťovat, znečistit

coop kurník, klec pro drůbež

corn obilí

corn (US) kukuřice

cornfield obilné, kukuřičné pole

cow kráva

cowman kovboj; rančer (US)

cowshed kravín, chlév

cricket cvrček

croak skřehotat; krákat; kvákat

destructive ničivý, destruktivní

domesticated ochočený, zdomácnělý

donkey [dɒŋki] osel

drake kačer

duck kachna

duckling káčátko

ewe [ju:] ovce

famine [ˈfæmɪn] hladomor, hlad

farm-labourer zemědělský dělník

farmer sedlák, hospodář, farmář, zemědělec

farmhouse farma, statek

farmyard dvůr statku

feed krmit

ferret fretka

fertile [ˈfɜ:taɪl, ˈfɜ:təl] úrodný, plodný

fertilisers [ˈfɜ:tɪlaɪzəz] hnojiva

field pole

filly [ˈfɪli] mladá klisna

foal [fəʊl] hříbě

foreman mistr, předák

forest les

fowl drůbež; slepice; kuře

free-range eggs vejce od slepic z volného výběhu

frog žába

gander [ˈgændə] houser

gelding [ˈgeldɪŋ] valach

goose, pl. geese husa

gosling [ˈgɒzɪŋ] house

grain zrnó, zrní, obilí, pšenice (US)

grain elevator (US) silo, sýpka

grapes hrozny

graze pást se

grazing pastvina, pastvisko

groundwater spodní voda

grunt chrochtat; vrčet, bručet

hare zajíc

harmful škodlivý

harrow brány

harvest žně, úroda; sklízet úrodu

hay seno

haystack kupka sena

he-goat kozel

hee-haw hýkat

heifer [ˈhefə] jalovice

henhouse kurník

hiss syčet

hog (US) prase, vepř

hoot houkat; hučet

hops chmel

hormones hormony

horse kůň

horseshoe podkova

hum hučet; bzučet; vrčet; broukat si

hutch králíkárna, kotec

illegal nezákonný, nelegální

irrigation zavlažování

- kennel, doghouse (US)** psí bouda
kid kůzle; dítě
kitten kotě
ladder žebřík
lamb ['læm] jehně
lay eggs snášet, klást vejce
leaching vyluhování
leaf, pl. leaves list, lístek
leak down prosakovat
livestock dobytek
loose box stání pro koně
lorry (GB) nákladní auto
(machine)-milk dojit (strojově)
maize (GB) kukuřice
manor panské sídlo, zámeček
mare klisna
meadow ['medəʊ] louka
miaow [,mi:'aʊ] mňau; mňoukat; mňoukání
mistreat špatně zacházet, týrat
monoculture monokultura
mouse, pl. mice myš
mow sekat, žnout, kosit
muck out (GB) vykydat, vyčistit
muckspreading hnojení, rozhazování hnoje
mulching mulčování
nanny-goat koza
neigh [nei] ržát
nitrites [naɪtraɪts] dusičnany, nitridy
oats oves
orchard ['ɔ:tʃəd] sad
overproduction nadvýroba, nadprodukce
ox, pl. oxen vůl
paddock výběh pro koně; padok
parasite ['pærəsaɪt] parazit, příživník
pasture pastvina
pathway cesta, chodník; cesta (k něčemu)
pellets granule, pelety
pear tree [peə] hrušeň
pesticide ['pestɪsaɪd] pesticid, prostředek k hubení hmyzu
pests škůdci
pick sbírat, trhat (květiny, ovoce)
pig prase, vepř
pigsty prasečí chlívek
pigeon holub
piglet sele
plough (GB) [plau] pluh; orat
plumage ['plu:mɪdʒ] opeření, pera
pony poník
potato brambor
poultry drůbež
purr [pɜ:] příst
pussy(cat) kočka, čiča
quack [kwæk] káchat, kvákat (kačena)
quest for st pátrání po něčem, hledání
rake hrábě; hrabat, uhrabat
ram beran
reap žít, žnout, kosit, sklízet
recklessly bezohledně
recklessness bezohlednost
rooster (US) kohout
roots kořeny
runoff dešťová voda, zvl. přívalová
vymývající živiny
rye žito
salivation ['sæliveɪʃən] slinění
scattering rozptylování
scythe [saɪð] kosa
seedbed záhon připravený k setí; semenišť
seep down prosakovat
she-cat kočka
she-goat koza
shear sheep stříhat ovce
sheep, pl. sheep ovce
shortage of st nedostatek něčeho
silo (GB) ['saɪləʊ] silo
sing zpívat, cvrlikat
slaughter porážka; zabití
slaughtered zabitý, poražený (dobytka)
snake had
soil půda, zem; země
sow [sau] svině, prasnice
sow seeds [səʊ] sít, zasít semena
squawk [skwɔ:k] skřehotat, vřeštět (pták)
squeak kvičet, pištět
squeal [skwi:l] řičet, vřeštět
stable stáj
stack stoh; kupka
stallion hřebec
steer (US) mladý vůl, býček
store skladovat
straw sláma
stubble ['stʌbl] strniště, strnisko (pole i vousy)
stud hřebec (přen. sexuálně aktivní jedinec)
sty chlív, chlívek
subsidy, subsidize dotace; dotovat
tomcat kocour
top-dressing svrchní hnojení, hnojení na list
topsoil horní vrstva půdy, ornice
tractor traktor
turnip tuřín, vodnice
twitter švitořit, štěbetat, cvrlikat
vine [vaɪn] vinná réva; popínavá rostlina
vinegar ['vɪnɪgə] ocet (vinný)
vineyard ['vɪnjɑ:d, -jərd] vinice
vixen liška (samice)
watchdog hlídací pes
wetland mokřina, bažina, močál
wheat pšenice
whine kňučet, kňourat
whinny zaržát, zařehtat (radostně)
yap ňafat, bafnout, štěkat

CLIMATE

aerosol aerosol

albedo [æɪ'bi:dəu] albedo (množství slunečního světla odrážející se zpět do vesmíru)**anemometer** větroměr, anemometr**April showers** dubnové přeháňky**arid** ['æɪrɪd] suchý, vyprahlý; suchopárný, nezáživný**asterisk** hvězdička (*, grafická značka)**authorities** úřady**avalanche** ['ævə,lɑ:nʃ] lavina, příval**barometer** tlakoměr, barometr**beat down** pražit, prát (slunce); lít (déšť)**blizzard** blizzard (sněhová bouře)**blow** foukat; silný vítr**blustery (day)** bouřlivý, větrný (den)**boiling** žhavý, horký**breeze** vánek, větřík; vát**breezy** svěží**broily (GB)** paraple, deštník**burst pipes** prasklé potrubí**CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons)** [ˌsɪ:ɪf'si:z] freony**changeable** proměnlivý**chilly** chladný, studený, mrazivý; prochládlý, zkrhlý; hrůzný, nahánějící husí kůži**cirrus** ['sɪrəs] cirus, řasovitý nebo závojitý oblak**clear the snow** odklízet sníh**clear up** vyjasnit se (obloha)**cloudbank** hradba nízkých mraků**cloudy** oblačný, zamračený; oblačno, zamračeno; nezřetelný, nejasný**cold** studený; zima, chladno**continental** vnitrozemský, kontinentální**crisp snow** křupavý sníh (vrzající pod nohama)**cumulonimbus** [kju:mjʊləu'nɪmbəs] kumulonimbus**cumulus** ['kju:mjʊləs] kumulus, kupa, kupovitý oblak**dam** údolní přehrada (hráz)**downpour** ['daʊnpɔ:] liják**downwind** po větru**drizzle** mrholit, mžít; mrholení**drought** [draʊt] sucho, období sucha**dump** vysypat, vyklopit (na skládku)**dust** prach**equable** ['ekwəbl] stálý, neměnný**equinox** ['ekwɪnɒks] rovnodennost**extreme** extrémní; nejvyšší stupeň, míra**filtration** filtrování, filtrace**fleecy** pokrytý beránky**flood** potopa, záplava, povodeň; zaplavit**flooded** zaplavený**flurry of snow** náhlá metelice, příval sněhu**flying** létání, cestování letadlem**foggy** mlhavý; mlhavo**fossil fuel** fosilní palivo (uhlí, ropa, zemní plyn)**freezing point** bod mrazu**frosty** mrazivý, ledový, ledově studený**get sunburned / sunburnt** spálit se na slunci**ghastly** [ˈgɑ:stli] strašný, hrozný, příšerný**glare** ostré sluneční světlo, prudké slunce**globe** zeměkoule, glóbus, koule**gravity** přitažlivost, zemská tíže**greenhouse effect** skleníkový efekt**gusty** nárazový, prudký (vítr); větrný, bouřlivý (počasí)**hail(stones)** kroupy; krupobití**halo** ['heɪləʊ] kruh kolem měsíce; svatozář**haze** lehká mlha, kouřmo**headwind** protivítr, přední vítr**hoar frost** jinovatka**hospitable** příznivý; pohostinný**hot** horko; horký**humid** vlhko; vlhký**humidity** vlhkost**hurricane** ['hʌrɪkən, 'hʌrɪkeɪn, 'hʌrɪkeɪn] hurikán, uragán, orkán, vichřice**icicle** rampouch**inhospitable** nehostinný; nepohostinný, nevlídný**insular** ['ɪnsjʊlə] ostrovní**inundation** [ɪˌnʌn'deɪʃən] záplava**ionosphere** [aɪ'ɒnəʊsfɪə] ionosféra**island** ['aɪlənd] ostrov; ostrovní**landslide** sesuv půdy; drtivé vítězství ve volbách**light** slabý, lehký**lightning** blesk**melting** tání**mirage** [mɪ'ra:ʒ] zrcadlení na silnicích ve velkém vedru; fáta morgána**mist** lehká mlha, opar**misty** mlhavo**nitrous oxides** ['naɪtrəs 'ɒksaɪdz] oxidy dusíku**moderate** ['mɒdərət] mírný**moist** vlhký, provlhlý, mírně mokrý; deštivý**nimbus** ['nɪmbəs] nimbus (dešťový oblak)**outlook for...** předpověď na...**overcast** zataženo**overflowing** přetečení, vylití**oxygen** kyslík**packed snow** nafoukaný, ztvrdlý, udusaný sníh**plague** [pleɪɡ] sužovat, trápit**prompts** nápověda**pour** [pɔ:] lít, prudce pršet; nalít, nasypat**powdery snow** prachový sníh**rainbow** duha**raindrop** dešťová kapka**rainstorm** bouře doprovázená lijákem**rainy** deštivý**rationing** přidělový systém**reflection** odraz, zrcadlení**reflective** hloubavý, přemítavý**refrigerants** freony**replenish** doplnit, znovu naplnit**rivers in spate (GB)** rozvodněné řeky**saturated** úplně promočený**scattered showers** občasná (misty) přeháňky**scorcher (coll)** pařák, horký den**seaboard** mořské pobřeží; přímořský; záchranný námořní člun**season** roční období**settled** ustálený, stále pěkný (počasí)**severe** [sɪ'vɪə] prudký, ostrý, krutý**skid** dostat smyk**sleet** plískanice, déšť se sněhem; zmrzlý déšť**slide (into)** sklouznout (do)**slip over on st** uklouznout na něčem**slush** rozbředlý sníh; řídké bahno, břečka**smoggy** plný smogu**snowdrift** závěj; sněhová vichřice, metelice, fujavice**snowfall** sněžení**snowflake** sněhová vločka; bledule jarní**snowplough** sněhový pluh; pluh (lyžařský styl)

snowstorm sněhová bouře
soaked to the skin promoklý na kůži
squall náraz větru, poryv; bouře
steady rain vytrvalý déšť
storm bouře
storm off to st vyřítit se směrem někam
stratosphere stratosféra
stratus [streɪtəs] stratus, vrstva oblaků, oblačná vrstva
sultry [ˈsʌltri] dusný, parný
sulphur dioxide (SO₂) [ˈsʌlfə daɪˈɒksaɪd] oxid siřičitý
sun-stroke úžeh, úpal
sunburn opálení, spálení sluncem
suntan opálení sluncem
swollen rivers rozvodněné řeky
tailwind vítr vanoucí do zad (ve směru plavby)
temperate mírný
tempestuous [temˈpestjuəs] bouřlivý
thawing [θɔːɪŋ] tání
thermometer [θəˈmɒmɪtə] teploměr
threat [θret] hrozba
threatening hrozící, hrozivý
thunder hrom
thundercloud bouřkový mrak
thunderhead mrak objevující se před bouřkou
thunderstorm bouřka, bouře, hromobití
tornado [tɔːˈneɪdɔʊ] smršť, tornádo, orkán
trapped uvězněn v pasti
twister (infml US) tornádo; větrná, vodní smršť
typhoon [taɪˈfuːn] tajfun
unbroken celistvý, souvislý
unpredictable nepředvídatelný
upwind proti větru
unsettled [ʌnˈsetld] nestálý, nejistý (počasí); neobydlený; nevyřízený
wane ubývat (o měsíci)
wax [wæks] přibývat, dorůstat (o měsíci)
weathercock korouhvička
whirlwind [ˈwɜːlwɪnd] vzdušný vír, tornádo, cyklón, víchř, smršť, větrná bouře
windy větrný

NATURE

acorn [ˈeɪkɔːn] žalud
adaptable přizpůsobivý
adder [ˈædə] zmije
alligator [ˈælɪgeɪtə] aligátor
Alsatian [æˈseɪʃən] německý ovčák, vlčák
amphibian obojživelník; obojživelný
anaconda anakonda; velký nejedovatý had škrtič
anemone [əˈneməni] sasanka
angler rybář lovící na udici; sportovní rybář
ant mravenec
antlers parohy
ape opice, lidoop
aquarium akvárium
Arab Arab, kůň arabský
archipelago [ˌɑːkɪˈpeləɡəʊ] souostroví
ash jasan; jasanové dřevko; popel
asp bolen (ryba); osika; brejlovec egyptský; jakýkoli jedovatý had
asterisk hvězdička (*, polygrafický znak)
atmosphere atmosféra, ovzduší
attain st dosáhnout něčeho
back down ustoupit, vzdát se
backbone páteř; hřbet knihy
badger jezevec
bait návnada, vnaidlo
bale balík sena; žok
bark kůra stromu; štěkot, štěkání
bass [bæs] okoun; lípa americká
basset (hound) baset
bat netopýr
bay záliv; kotlina; bobkový list
bayou (US, Louisiana, Texas) [ˈbaɪuː] bažinaté rameno řeky; pomalu tekoucí voda
beak zobák
bear [beə] medvěd
beaver bobr
beech buk
beechmast bukvice
berries bobule
beware of... pozor na...
big cats velké šelmy kočkovité
bill zobák
binoculars dalekohled
birch bříza
bison (GB) zubr evropský
bison (US) bizon americký

bit udidlo (uzdy)
blackbird kos
black widow černá vdova (jedovatý pavouk)
blind (US) posed
bluff útes; strmý sráz
boar [bɔː] divočák
boardwalk chodník z prken
bog bažina, močál, slatina
bordering on st hraničící s něčím
bough [bau] hlavní, silná větev stromu
brambles ostružiní; ostružiny
branch větev; rameno vodního toku
breakers příbojové vlny; příval přes palubu
bream cejn
bridle [ˈbraɪdl] uzda
brook potok, říčka
buck [bʌk] jelen; srnec
bud pupen; poupě; pučet
budgerigar, budgie [ˈbʌdʒerɪɡaː, ˈbʌdʒi] andulka
buffalo (GB) buvol (tur žijící v Asii a Africe)
buffalo (US) bizon americký
bulb cibule; hlíza; oddenek
bumblebee čmelák
burdock [bɜːdɒk] lopuch
buttercup pryskyřník
butterfly motýl
buzzard káně
cactus, pl. cacti, cactuses [ˈkæktəs] kaktus
cage klec; zavřít do klece
camel velbloud
camomile heřmánek
canal [kəˈnæl] kanál, průplav
canopy klenba (stromů); příkryt jako baldachýnem nebo nebesy
canter cval; poklus; cválat; klusat
cap klobouček, hlavička houby
captive zajatec; žijící v zajetí
carnivore masožravec
cardinal kardinál červený (pěnkavovitý pták)
carnation hvozdík, karafiát; růžová, světle červená barva
carp kapr
caterpillar housenka
catfish (wels) sumec; sumcovité ryby
catkin jehněda, kočička

cave, cavern [keɪv, 'kævnən] jeskyně; prohlubeň
caviar ['kæviɑ:] kaviár
centipede ['sentɪpi:d] stonožka
cep (penny bun) [sep] hřib
chamois ['ʃæmwɑ:] kamzík
chanterelle ['ʃæntə'rel] liška jedlá
chase honit, pronásledovat; honička
chasm ['kæzəm] rokle, propast
chestnut kaštan
chick kuře; ptačí mládě
chives pažitka
chrysanthemum
 [kri'sænθɪməm, -'zænθ-] chryzantéma
clams (US) mlži, škeble
claw dráp; pařát
cliff útes
coastline pobřežní čára
coat pokrývka těla zvířat (srst, peří)
cobra kobra; mamba
cockle srdcovka jedlá (mořský mlž); koukol polní; plevel
cockroach šváb
cod treska
cold-blooded studenokrevný (živočich); chladnokrevný (kůň)
collar obojek (psa)
collie kolie, skotský ovčák
condemned odsouzený
cone šiška
confinement uvěznění, omezení svobody
confluence soutok
coniferous [kə'nɪfərəs] jehličnatý
conker (infml) kaštan (strom i plod)
constant stálý
coot lyska (pták)
copse houští; přeměnit les v nízký porost osekáním; tvořit výhonky odspoďu kmene
corgi ['kɔ:gi] korgi (psí rasa)
cormorant ['kɔ:mərənt] kormorán
cornflower chrpa
couch-grass pýr plazivý
cougar (US) ['ku:gə] kuguár, puma
cowardice ['kaʊədɪs] zbabělost
cowslip (GB) ['kaʊslɪp] prvosenka jarní
cowslip (US) blatouch bahenní
coyote [kaɪ'əʊti, kəɪəʊti] kojot, stepní vlk
crab krab; lovit kraby

cranberries brusinky
crayfish rak; langusta
creek (GB) úzká zátoka; záliv
creek (US) přítok, říčka; rovina mezi horami
creepy-crawly (infml) hmyz, brouk; nahánějící hrůzu
crocodile krokodýl
crocus krokus, šafrán
crop up objevit se, vynořit se
cross-breed kříženec
crow vrána; kokrhát
crown koruna (stromu)
cruel krutý, nelidský
cub mládě šelmy; mládě žraloka
cubs vlčata; Vlčata (mladí skauti)
cuckoo ['kʊku:] kukačka
cuddle obětí, sevření v náručí; objímat; hýčkat
current vodní tok, proud
cutting řízek (rostliny)
cypress ['saɪprəs] cypřiš, tisovec
dachshund ['dæksənd, 'dækshund] jezevčík
daddy-long-legs sekáč (druh pavouka); tiplice
daffodil ['dæfədɪl] narcis (žlutý)
dahlia ['deɪliə, 'deɪljə] jiřina, jiřinka
daisy sedmikráska, chudobka
dandelion ['dændɪlɪən] pampeliška, smetanka lékařská
deciduous [dɪ'sɪdʒjuəs] opadavý (strom)
deer jelen; vysoká
den doupě, brloh, nora
disfigure znetvořit, zmrzačit
doberman doberman
doe laň; srna
Dolomites, the ['dɒlə'maɪts] Dolomity
dolphin delfin
dormouse plch obecný
dove holubice; hrdlička
downs mírná pahorkatina (obvykle porostlá trávou)
drey veveřčí hnízdo
duck kachna
dyke příkop, kanál; protipovodňová hráz, přehrada; tok
eagle orel
earthquake zemětřesení
earthworm žížala, dešťovka; bídný červ, chudák
eel úhoř

egret [ɪ:gret] volavka bílá, rajka; chmýří na pampelišce
elephant slon
elm jilm
embankment nábrežní
emu ['i:mju:] emu
enclosure ohrada; oplocený pozemek
Equator ['ɪkweɪtə] rovník
estuary ['estʃuəri] ústí řeky
evergreen jehličnatý, stále zelený
falcon sokol
fangs tesáky; hadí zuby
fawn kolouch; smč
falling kácení
feral ['ferəl, 'fɪərəl] zdivočelý, potulný; divoký, volně žijící
fin ploutev
finch pěnkava
fir jedle
fire at sb, st střílet na někoho, něco
firebreak ochranný průsek, příkop proti šíření lesního požáru
fish eagle orlovec říční
fisherman rybář
fishes druhy ryb
fishing rybaření, rybolov
flamingo, pl. flamingos or flamingoes plamenák
flashy třpytivý, blýskavý
fluffy chlupatý, pokrytý peřím; nadýchaný
foe [fəʊ] nepřítel
foothills předhůří
footprint stopa, otisk nohy, šlépěj
for kicks z legrace, pro zábavu
ford brod; přebrodit
forelegs přední nohy
forestry lesnictví, lesní hospodářství; zalesněná krajina, lesy
forget-me-not pomněnka
fox liška
foxglove náprstník červený
foxhunt hon na lišku koňmo; pořádat hon na lišku
frog (eggs are spawn, young are tadpoles) žába (vajíčka jsou jikry, mláďata jsou pulci)
fungus, pl. fungi, funguses ['fʌŋgəs, 'fʌŋɡaɪ, 'fʌndʒaɪ, 'fʌndʒɪ] houba
gaff [gæf] harpuna
gallop trysk, zkrácený cval; cválat
gamekeeper hajný, myslivec
gather sklídit, sbírat, shromažďovat

- gentle** mírumilovný, jemný
- geography** zeměpis
- geranium** [dʒə'reɪniəm] pelargónie
- gills** [gɪlz] žábry; lupeny na spodku klobouku hub
- gin-trap** (GB) talířová železa
- giraffe** žirafa
- girth** podbřišník, podpěška
- gold-seekers** hledači zlata
- gorilla** gorila
- grassland** lučiny, pastviny; step
- grass snake** užovka
- gregarious** [grɪ'geəriəs] stádovitý; společenský, družný
- greyhound** ['greɪhaʊnd] chrt
- guinea pig** ['ɡɪni:pɪɡ] morče
- gull** [ɡʌl] racek
- hake** štikozubec (ryba příbuzná treskám)
- hamster** křeček
- hare** (GB) zajíc
- haw** [hɔ:] hložinka (plod hlohu)
- hawk** [hɔ:k] jestřáb, krahujec
- hawthorn** ['hɔ:θɔ:n] hloh
- hay(making)** seno(seč)
- hazelnut** lískový ořech
- headwater(s)** pramen řeky; horní tok
- hedgehog** ježek
- herb** bylina, bylinka (léčivá, koření)
- herbivore** ['hɜ:bɪvɔ:] býložravec
- heron** ['herən] volavka
- herring** ['herɪŋ] sled'
- hibernate** ['hɪbəneɪt] přezimovat
- hide** kůže, useň
- hillock** kopeček, hromádka
- hind** [haɪnd] laň
- hippo(potamus), pl. hippopotamuses or -ami** hroch
- hit** zasáhnout
- holt** doupě, nora (zvl. vydří)
- hoof, pl. hoofs, hooves** kopyto
- hook** háček
- hoopoe** ['hu:pu:] dudek chocholatý
- hornbeam** habr
- hornet** sršeň
- horns** paroží, parohy; rohy
- horse chestnut** koňský kaštan (strom i plod)
- hounds** lovečtí psi; smečka psů na honu
- hunter** lovecký pes užívaný zejména pro hon na lišku; typ jezdeckého koně pro honební účely; lovec
- hunting** lov
- hunting horn** lovecký roh, lesní roh
- hunter** lovec
- hyacinth** ['haɪəsɪnθ] hyacint
- hyena** [haɪ'i:nə] hyena
- Indian** indický; Ind; Indián; indánský
- inedible** nepoživatelný
- inland sea** vnitrozemní moře
- inquisitive** zvědavý, zívavý, vše-tečný
- insect(s)** hmyz
- invertebrate** [ɪn'vɜ:tɪbrət] bezobratlý; bezpáteřný
- iris** kosatec, iris; duhovka
- jackdaw** ['dʒækɔ:ɔ:] kavka obecná
- jay** sojka obecná
- justify** ospravedlnit, ospravedlnovat; omlouvat
- kangaroo** klokan
- karst** kras
- kayaking** jízda na kajaku
- kestrel** poštolka obecná
- kingfisher** ledňáček
- kite** pták z čeledi krahujcovitých, zejm. luňák červený; přeneseně jestřáb, dravec
- koala** koala medvídkovitá
- labrador** ['læbrədɔ:] labradorský retrivr
- ladybird** slunéčko sedmítečné, beruška
- landlocked** obklopený pevninou, chráněný proti moři
- landslide** sesuv půdy; drtivé volební vítězství
- larch** modřín (strom i dřevo)
- lark** skřivan polní
- latitude** zeměpisná šířka
- lavender** levandule (rostlina, vůně i barva)
- lead, leash** (US) [li:f] vodítko (např. na psa)
- leaf, pl. leaves** list
- leafy** listnatý (les); listový (zelenina)
- leopard** ['lepəd] levhart, leopard skvrnitý
- leveret** ['levərɪt] mladý zajíc, zajíček
- lice, sg. louse** vši, veš
- lifeless** mrtvý, bez života, jako mrtvý
- lily** lilie
- lily-of-the-valley** konvalinka vonná
- lime** lípa; limeta
- limestone** vápence
- lion** lev
- live oak** dub virginický (stále zelený)
- livebait** živá návnada (červí, ryby)
- lizard** ještěrka
- lobster** humr
- located in st** situovaný (umístěný) někde
- loch (Scotland)** [lɒk] jezero
- locust** ['lɒkʌst] saranče, kobylka
- lodge** doupě (vydry, bobra)
- logging** těžba dřeva v lese
- long-haired** dlouhosrstý
- longitude** ['lɒndʒɪtju:d, 'lɒŋgɪ-] zeměpisná délka
- lough (Ireland)** [lɒk] jezero
- lowland(s)** nížina
- lumberjack** ['lʌmbədʒæk] dřevorubec, dřevař
- lure** [ljʊə] návnada, vnadidlo; lákat, vábit
- lynx** rys
- mackerel** makrela
- magpie** straka
- maim** zmrzačit, zohavit
- mainland** pevnina
- mammal** savec
- mangrove** kořenovník obecný; mangrovová dřevina
- Manx** bezocasá kočka (původem z ostrova Man)
- maple** javor (strom i dřevo)
- marjoram** ['mɑ:dʒərəm] majoránka
- marmot** svišť
- marsh** močál, bažina, bahnisko, mokřina, blata
- marshland** mokřina, bažina, blata
- marsupial** [mɑ:'su:piəl] vačnatec
- marten** kuna (zvíře i kožešina)
- martin** jiríčka obecná
- mast, beechmast** bukvice
- mate** druh, družka
- meadow** louka
- meltwater** voda z rozpuštěného sněhu
- menace to st, sb** ['menɪs] nebezpečí, hrozba pro něco, někoho
- midge** [mɪdʒ] pakomár; muška
- midwater** střední vrstva vody na otevřeném moři
- mint** máta; mátový bonbón
- miss** netrefit, minout cíl
- mole** krtek
- moleheap, molehill** krtina, krtinec
- mongrel** ['mɒŋgrəl] pes smíšené rasy, voříšek; bastard

monkey opice; opičí
moor(s) nízko zarostlá pustá planina, zvl. porostlá vřesem; mokřina, slatina, blata
moose [mu:s] los americký
morel [mɔ'rɛl] smrž jedlý
mosquito, pl. mosquitoes, mosquitos [mɔ'ski:təʊ] moskyt; komár
moth [mɒθ] mol šatní; můra
mouflon (GB) [mu:'flɒn] muflon
mouse, pl. mice myš
mouser kočka, která dobře chytá myši
mouth ústa, huba; ústí (řeky)
mudflat nános v ústí řek; část mořského břehu zaplavovaná přílivem
mulberry ['mʌlbəri] moruše (strom i plod)
mussel slávka jedlá
muzzle náhubek; nasadit náhubek; čenich, čumák
mycelium [maɪ'si:lɪəm] podhoubí, mycélium
mysterious tajemný, záhadný
narcissus narcis, narciska
narrows úžina; soutěska
nasty zlý; nevyzpytatelný
nature-lover milovník přírody
nest hnízdo; udělat si hnízdo; hnízdit
nettle kopřiva; hluchavka; šlehat kopřivami
newt [nju:t, nu:t] mlok; čolek
nightingale slavík
nuisance nepřístojnost; zlořád; svízel; otrava
nuthatch [nʌθætʃ] brhlík
oak dub
oasis [əʊ'eɪsɪs] oáza
octopus chobotnice
offshore pobřežní, pevninský; mimo břeh, vzdálený od pobřeží; na volném moři
omnivore ['ɒmnɪvɔ:] všežravec
orangutan [ɔ:'ræŋtʌŋ, ɔ:ræŋu'tæŋ] orangutan
orchid orchidej
ostrich ['ɒstrɪtʃ] pštros
otter ['ɒtə] vydra
owl [aʊl] sova, výr, sýček
ox, pl. oxen vůl; tur
oysters ústřice
palm palma
pampa(s) pampy (rovinné prérie)
pansy maceška, violka trojbarevná
parasol bedla; slunečník, parazit

parrot papoušek; papouškovat, tupě opakovat
parsley petržel zahradní
partridge koroptev
paw tlapa, tlapka, pracka, pacička
pedigree, purebred čistokrevný
pelagic [pe'lædʒɪk] mořský, pelagický
pellet ['pelət] brok; střela; kulka
pelican pelikán
pelt kůže s kožešinou, kožich; surová kůže; stahovat kůži
penguin ['peŋɡwɪn] tučňák
peninsula poloostrov
peony ['pi:əni] pivoňka
perch okoun říční
pest škůdce, škůdci
petal ['petl] okvětní lístek, korunní plátek
pheasant ['feznt] bažant
pigeon holub
pike štika
pikeperch candát
pine borovice, sosna
pink hvozdík pernatý; karafiát
pit jáma; díra; propast; podzemní jeskyně; uhelný důl
plateau, pl. plateaux, plateaus ['plætəʊ] náhorní rovina; plošina; plátó
poacher pytlák
poisonous jedovatý
polecat tchoř
pollen ['pɒlən] pyl
poodle pudl
pool louže, kaluž; tůň, tůňka; jezírko; rybník; stojatá voda; studánka
poplar topol
poppy mák; opium
pores rourky zespodu klobouku houby
porpoise ['pɔ:pəs] sviňucha
prawns krevety; garnáti
predator ['predətə] dravec
primrose prvosenka jarní, petrklíč
puffball pýchavka
pussy willow vrba jíva, kočičky
python ['paɪθən] krajta, pyton
quail [kweɪl] křepelka polní
quarry ['kwɔəri] lom, kamenolom; lovené zvíře, kořist
rabbit králík
rainforest deštný prales

rapids peřeje
rat krysa, potkan
rattlesnake chřestýš
raven krkavec; havran (nepřesně); plenit, drancovat
ravine [rə'vi:n] strž, průrva, rokle, rozsedlina; udělat průrvu, rozbrázdít
ray rejnok
redstart rehek zahradní
reptile plaz
reservoir ['rezəvɔ:ə] nádrž; přehradní jezero; zásobárna
restricted movement omezený pohyb
retriever retrivr (druh loveckého psa)
rhea [ri:ə] nandu (pštrosovitý pták)
rhinoceros [raɪ'nɒsərəs] nosorožec
rhizome ['raɪzəʊm] oddenek
riding jízda na koni
rip-tide bouřlivý příliv a odliv
roach [rəʊtʃ] plotice
robin červenka, čermáček; drozd stěhovavý (US)
rook havran polní
root kořen; bulva; hlíza; oddenek
rose růže
rosemary rozmarýna lékařská
rowan ['rəʊən] jeřáb (strom)
rowdy ['raʊdi] hulvátský, výtržnický
saddle sedlo; osedlat
sage šalvěj; pelyněk
salamander mlok, salamandr
salmon ['sæmən] losos
sardine sardinka; olejovka
savanna(h) [sə'vænə] savana
scales šupiny
scallop ['skɒləp] hřebenatka, jedlá mušle
scavenger ['skævɪndʒə] mrchožrout
scorpion štír, škorpión
scratch škrábat se, drbat se, drápat se
scrubland krajina porostlá křovinami, klečí, kosodřevinou
seal tuleň; lachtan
sea-lion lvoun hřivnatý
seaweed chaluha, mořská řasa
seed semeno, semínko; zasít
sett jezevčí nora
shark žralok
shellfish měkkýši, koryši (zejména jedlí)
shiny lesklý, lesknoucí se
shoal [ʃəʊl] hejno ryb
shooting střelba, střílení

- short-haired** krátkosrstý
show-jumping parkúr
shrimps garnáti
sidekick pomocník, parták
sinker olůvko, závaží na rybářské udici
skate rejnok
slimy sliznatý, slizovitý; hlenovitý; úlisný, hnusný
slow-worm slepýš
snake had
snapdragon hledík větší
snare chytat do oka, nastražit past; nástraha, osidlo
snowdrop sněženka
solitary osamoceně rostoucí; osamělý
spaniel (cocker or springer) ['spænjəl] španěl (kokršpaněl nebo springr)
sparrow vrabec
spawn jikry, potěr; klást jikry, třít se
spectacular působivý, atraktivní, velkolepý
spider pavouk; křížák
spinner třpytka
splendid skvělý, nádherný, ohromný
spruce smrk
squid oliheň
squirrel veverka
stalactite ['stæləktait] stalaktit (krápník rostoucí shora dolů)
stalagmite ['stæləgmait] stalagmit (krápník rostoucí zespodu nahoru)
stalk [stɔ:k] stopovat, plížit se, sledovat; stopka, stéblo, stonek, lodyha
stalking figura sloužící jako kryt při stopování zvěře; záminka, klamné zdání
starling špaček
stem kmen (stromu), stonek, lodyha (rostliny), třeň, noha (houby)
sticky lepivý, lepkavý
stirrup ['stɪrəp] třmen
stoat [stəʊt] lasice hranostaj
stork čáp
straits [streɪts] průliv, úžina
stream proud; říčka, potok
stub (GB) pařež; nedopalek
stump pařež; pahýl
sturgeon ['stɜ:dʒən] jeseter
suckle kojit; pít, sát; krmit, živit; vychovávat
sunflower slunečnice
surf příboj, vlnobití
swallow (one swallow does not make a summer) ['swɒləʊ] vlaš-tovka (jedna vlašťovka jaro nedělá)
swamp [swɒmp] močál, bažina, bahnisko, mokřina
swan [swɒn] labuť
swift rorýs; rychlý
tadpole pulec (larva žáby)
tail ocas, ohon, oháňka, chvost
talon dráp, pařát, spár
tarantula tarantule
tench lín obecný
tern rybák obecný
terrapin ['terəpɪn] mořská želva
thaw tání; obleva; rozmrazení; uvolnění
thistle bodlák, pcháč
thoroughbred ['θɒrəbred] plnokrev-ník, čistokrevný kůň; kultivovaný člověk
thrush [θrʌʃ] drozdovitý pták, drozd
thyme [taɪm] tymián; mateřídouška
tick klíště
tickle lechtat; svědět
tiger tygr
tit sýkora; struk, cecík
toad ropucha obecná; mlok; žába; ještěrka
toadstool jedovatá houba (zejména s velkým kloboukem); mucho-můrka; prašivka
tom-cat kocour
tortoise ['tɔ:təs] želva; mořská želva (US)
traces stopy
tracks stopy vozidla
trap sulka (vozik za koněm při závodu klusáků); past
trot klus, poklus; klusácký závod; klusat
trout pstruh
trunk kmen (stromu); chobot; trup; kufr (US)
tulip tulipán (květ i cibule)
tuna ['tju:nə, tu:nə] tuňák obecný
tunnel-trap sklopec (past s klecí, zvíře se chytí živé)
turtle mořská želva
twig větvička
undergrowth podrost
undertow spodní, zpětný proud příboje
veldt, velt [velt, felt] africká step
venomous ['venəməs] jedovatý; působící otravu; nenávistný, zlostný
vermin (lice, fleas ...) havěť (vši, blechy ...)
violet fialka, violka vonná; fialový
viper zmije
vivarium, pl. vivariums, vivaria [vaɪ'veəriəm] vivárium, terárium
vixen ['vɪksən] liška (samice)
vulture sup, kondor; vydřiduch
wade brodit se
wagtail konipas
walk jít
walnut vlašský ořech
walrus ['wɔ:lrʌs] mrož
warm-blooded teplotekrevný
warren ['wɒrən] území, kde je labyrint vzájemně propojených králíčích nor
wasp [wɒsp] vosa
water-plants vodní rostliny
watershed vodní předěl; povodí; rozvodí
waterside pobřeží
waterweed vodní flóra rostoucí ve stojatých vodách; např. vodní mor kanadský
weasel ['wi:zəl] lasice, lasička
whale velryba
wildcat divoká kočka
wildlife divoká zvěř; život v přírodě
wolf, pl. wolves [wʊlf] vlk
woodpecker datel
worm [wɜ:m] červ; žížala; smrtelník
wound [wu:nd] zranit; rána
zander ['zændə] candát
zebra ['zebrə, 'zi:brə] zebra
zoo [zu:, zu] zoo, zoologická zahrada

THE HUMAN BODY

abdomen břicho, břišní dutina
accentuated zdůrazněný
accomplish st dosáhnout něčeho, uskutečnit něco
ancestor předek
ankle ['æŋkl] kotník (na noze)
anxiety [æŋ'zaiəti] úzkost, strach, obavy
appendix [ə'pendiks] slepé střevo; dodatek
aquiline ['ækwɪlaɪn] orlí
arched eyebrows klenuté obočí, obočí ve tvaru oblouku
arm paže, ruka
artery tepna, artérie
athletic atletický; pohyblivý
awkward ['ɔ:kwəd] nemotorný, neohrabaný; trapný; nepříjemný
backbone páteř; výdrž; morální odvaha
bald plešatý; lysý
barrel-chested robustní, jako sud
be all ears být jedno velké ucho, poslouchat pozorně
be all thumbs mít obě ruce levé, být nešikovný
beard [biəd] plnovous
beer-belly pivní břich
belly břicho; bříško
big-stick policy politika založená na hrozbách a represích
birthmark mateřské znaménko; velká pigmentová skvrna
black černý; černošský
bladder močový měchýř
blink one's eyes mrkat, mrknout
blond blondatý, blond
blood [blʌd] krev
bottom zadní část těla, zadek
bowels [bauəlz] střevo; vnitřnosti, útroby
bowlegged [bəʊlegd] s křivýma nohama (do O)
brain mozek
breast prs, ňadro; hrud', prsa
breastbone hrudní kost
bulbous ['bʌlbəs] baňatý, bachratý, odulý, korpulentní, tělnatý
bushy eyebrows ['bu:ʃi] husté obočí
calf lýtko
cartilage ['kɑ:təlɪdʒ] chrupavka
chapped lips rozpraskané rty
cheek tvář

cheekbone lícní kost
chest hrud', prsa
chin brada
chunky podsaditý, robustní
cleft chin brada se svislou rýhou
clench one's teeth zatnout zuby
clitoris poštvěváček, klitoris
clumsy nemotorný, neobratný
coccyx ['kɒksɪks] kostrč
collarbone klíční kost
colon ['kəʊlən, 'kəʊlən] tračník (největší část tlustého střeva); dvojtečka
concave ['kɒŋkeɪv] vydutý dovnitř
concave chest vpadlý hrudník
corpulent ['kɔ:pjələnt] korpulentní, tělnatý, tlustý
cracked lips silně rozpraskané rty
craggy ['krægi] s ostře řezanými rysy; nerovný, hrbolatý, drsný
cross oneself pokřížovat se
curly kudrnatý; kadeřavý
dandruff lupy
dark tmavý; snědý
determination odhodlání
dimple dolíček
dreadlocks dredy (druh účesu)
dummy zavalitý
eagerly dychtivě, chtivě, nedočkavě
ear ucho
emaciated [ɪ'meɪsɪeɪtɪd] vyzáblý, vyhublý, kost a kůže
enormous obrovský, ohromný
even teeth rovné zuby
extremities končetiny; špičky prstů, nosu, brady, uší
eyebrow obočí
eyelash oční řasa
face obličej, tvář
fair plavý, světlý (o vlasech a pokožce)
fat tlustý
finger prst na ruce
firm pevný, tuhý
foot, pl. feet chodidlo, noha u člověka pod kotníkem
forehead ['fɔ:ɪd, 'fɔ:hed] čelo (část hlavy)
freckle piha
fringe ofina
frizzy kudrnatý, kadeřavý
funnybone brňavka
furrowed ['fʌrəʊd] vrásčité, s hlubokými rýhami
gapped s mezerami

genitals ['dʒenɪtlz] genitálie, pohlavní orgány, pohlavní ústrojí
gland žláza
glistening lesklý, lesknoucí se, třpytící se
goatee ['gəʊti:] kozí bradka
god-like božský, podobný bohu
gorgeous ['gɔ:dʒəs] nádherný, skvělý, úžasný
greasy mastný, zamaštěný
grey šedý
gross [grəʊs] odporlivě tlustý, zavalitý, podsaditý, otlý
growl [graʊl] vrčet, bručet
gullet ['gʌlət] jícen; hltan; hrdlo
gut tlusté, tenké střevo
guts střevo, vnitřnosti; břicho; odvaha (hovorově)
hair vlasy
hamstring podkolenní šlacha
handsome hezký, pohledný
have a sweet tooth být mlsný, být na sladké
head over heels in love zamilovaný až po uši
heart srdce
hips boky
hold hands držet se za ruce
hooked nose [hʊkt] zahnutý nos, skoba
hunk (coll) vazba, kus chlapa
janitor školník
jawbone čelistní kost
knee koleno
lank hubený, vyzáblý
larynx ['læɪŋks] hrtan
layer vrstva
leg noha
lick lízat, olizovat
ligament vaz; vazivo
lined face vrásčité obličej
lip ret
lithe [laɪð] svižný, pružný, mrštný, ohebný
liver játra
lungs plíce
mobile pohyblivý
mole mateřské znaménko
mohawk [məʊhɔ:k] číro
moustache [mu'stɑ:ʃ, 'mʌstæʃ] knír, knírek
mousy (vlasy) jako myš, ucourané, barevně nevýrazné; tichý, bázlivý, nesmělý

mouth ústa
muscle [ˈmʌsl] sval
muscular [ˈmʌskjʊlə] svalnatý, svalový
navel [ˈneɪvəl] pupek; pupík; střed
nod one's head kývnout hlavou; přikývnout
nose nos
nosy zvědavý, dotěrný, vlezlý; nosatý
obese obézní, otlý
obesity obezita, otylost
pancreas [ˈpæŋkriəs] slinivka
parting pěšinka
paunch [pɔːntʃ] velké břicho, pupek, cícha
pear-shaped [peə] hruškovitý, mající tvar hrušky
pelvic girdle pletenec pánevní
pelvis pánev
penis penis
pimple pupínek, uher
plait [plæt, pleɪt] cop
plaited [plæɪtɪd] spletený do copu
plucked eyebrows vytrhané obočí
point with a finger ukázat prstem
pointed chin špičatá brada
ponytail ohon, culík
portly statný, tělnatý, korpulentní, tlustý
pot (-belly) velké kulaté břicho, břicháč
pull someone's leg utahovat si z někoho, tahat někoho za nos
rack one's brains lámat si hlavu, usilovně přemýšlet
receding hairline ustupující linie vlasů
red červený, rudý; zrzavý
ribcage hrudní koš
ribs žebra
rub one's hands mnout si ruce
scars jizvy, šrámy
slanted eyes šikmé oči
shake one's head kroutit, vrtět hlavou
shin holeň
short malý (postavou)
short-sighted krátkozraký
shoulder rameno
shoulders ramena, plece, bedra
shrug (one's shoulders) pokrčit rameny
sideburns kotlety
simile [ˈsɪmɪli] přirovnání
skeleton kostra; kostlivec

skin-deep pouze na povrchu, povrchní
skinny vychrtlý, hubený, vyzáblý
skull [skʌl] lebka
slender, slim štíhlý, útlý
snub nose nos dovrchu, tupý nos
spine páteř
spleen slezina; špatná nálada
split ends roztržené koncečky vlasů
spotty skvrnitý, tečkovaný, kropeňatý, uhrovitý
sprain one's ankle, wrist vymknout si kotník, zápěstí
stiff ztuhlý, strnulý
stomach [ˈstʌmək] žaludek, břicho
stout zavalitý, obtloustlý; houževnatý
stretch one's limbs protáhnout si nohy a ruce
struggle snažit se, usilovat, namáhat se
stub one's toe narazit, nakopnout si palec
stunning senzační, fantastický
swelling vypoulený; vzdouvající se
tear a tendon [teə] natrhnout, přetřhnout si šlachy
testicle varle
thigh [θaɪ] stehno
thumb palec u ruky
tired of st, sb unavený něčím, někým
tongue jazyk
tooth, pl. teeth zub, zuby
trim štíhlý, elegantní; přistříhnout, zastříhnout
tummy bříško, žaludek, žaloudeček
ugly ošklivý, škaredý, šeredný
vagina [vəˈdʒaɪnə] pochva, vagina
vein žíla
veined nose žilnatý nos, nos protkaný žilkami
vertebra [vɜːtəbrə] obratel
vivid živý, svěží, temperamentní, čilý
waist pas
wart [wɔːt] bradavice
wavy vlnitý
well-built silný, svalnatý, dobře stavěný (muž)
well-rounded plnoštíhlá, korpulentní (žena)
whiskers licousy (bez vousů)
windpipe [ˈwɪndpaɪp] průdušnice, trachea
wrinkled face / forehead vrásčitá/-é tvář / čelo
wrist [rɪst] zápěstí

HEALTH

abortion potrat; umělé přerušování těhotenství
accurate přesný
ache [eɪk] bolest; bolet
acid kyselý; kyselina
acne [ˈækni] trudovitost, akné
acupuncture [ˈækjʊpʌŋktʃə] akupunktura
addicted (to) závislý, zvyklý (na)
affect [əˈfekt] zasahovat, postihovat
ailment lehčí onemocnění; zdravotní potíž, problém
alcohol alkohol
allergy to st [ˈælədʒi] alergie na něco
ambulance [ˈæmbjʊləns] sanitka
annoying protivný, otravný
antibiotics [ˌæntɪbaɪˈɒtɪks] antibiotika
appendicitis [əˌpendɪˈsaɪtɪs] zánět slepého střeva
appointment objednání u lékaře
appropriately vhodně
aromatherapy [əˌrəʊməˈθerəpi] aromaterapie
aspirin aspirin
asthma astma, záducha, dušnost
average průměrný; průměr
bandage [ˈbændɪdʒ] obvazová páska, obvaz
Band-Aid (US) náplast, leukoplast
bad chest katar průdušek
bleed krváčet
blind slepý
blister puchýř
blow / clean one's nose vysmrkat se
bone kost
braces rovnátka
Braille [breɪl] slepecké písmo
bronchitis [ˌbrɒŋˈkaɪtɪs] zánět průdušek, bronchitida
bubbles bublinky
burn popálenina
burp [bɜːp] říhat, krkat; říhnutí
cancer rakovina
capsule [ˈkæpsjuːl] kapsle
cardiologist kardiolog
caries [ˈkæriːz] zubní kaz; zánět kosti
cavity zubní kaz; dutina
chemotherapy [ˌkiːməʊˈθerəpi] chemoterapie
chickenpox plané neštovice
childbirth porod

- chiropractic** [ˌkaɪrəʊ'præktɪk] chiropraxe
- chiropractor** [ˌkaɪrəʊpræktə] chiropraktik
- cholera** [ˈkɒləɹə] cholera
- claim** tvrdit, prohlašovat
- clay** jíl; hlína
- cocaine** [kəʊ'keɪn] kokain
- coke** (slang) [kəʊk] koks (kokain)
- coma** [ˈkəʊmə] kóma, hluboké bezvědomí
- conception** početí, zplodění dítěte
- concussion** [kən'kʌʃən] otřes mozku; náraz, otřes
- condom** kondom, prezervativ
- confinement** porod, slehnutí; pobyt doma (zvláště na lůžku)
- constipation** zácpa
- consultant** konzultující odborník, specialista, primář
- continuously** neustále, nepřetržitě
- contract a disease** přivodit si, chytit nemoc
- contractions** stahy, kontrakce
- convey** vyjádřit, vyslovit
- cough** [kɒf] kašel; kašlat
- crack** (slang) crack (čistá krystalická forma kokainu)
- cramp** křeč
- craving for st** neodolatelná chuť na něco
- crippled** zmrzačený, poškozený; ochromený
- crutch** berlá
- curious about st** zvědavý na něco
- cut back** omezit, snížit; snížení
- cuts** pořezání
- deaf** hluchý, neslyšící
- deaf-and-dumb** (GB) hluchoněmý
- deaf-mute** (US) hluchoněmý
- dental floss** dentální / zubní nit
- dentist** zubař
- dentition** chrup; prořezávání zubů
- dentures** umělý chrup
- depression** deprese
- dermatologist** kožní lékař
- diabetes** [ˌdaɪə'bi:tɪz, -əs] cukrovka
- diarrhoea** [ˌdaɪə'ri:ə] průjem
- diphtheria** [dɪf'θɪəriə, dɪp-] záškrta, diftérie
- disabilities** postižení
- disability** tělesná nebo duševní vada; postižení; nevýhoda, handicap
- disadvantaged** (US) postižený
- disease** onemocnění, nemoc
- dislocation** vymknutí, vykloubení, luxace
- disorder** zdravotní potíže, porucha
- donor** dárc
- dose** dávka léku
- drill** vrtačka
- drops** kapky
- drowning** [draʊnɪŋ] utopení
- drug** lék, léčivo; droga
- dumb** [dʌm] němý; hloupý
- dysentery** ['dɪsəntəri, -tri, -ter-] úplavice, dyzentérie
- earache** bolest ucha
- ecstasy (E)** extáze, éčko (droga)
- effective** [ɪ'fektɪv] účinný
- electrocution** [ɪ,lektɹə'kju:ʃən] zabití elektrickým proudem; poprava na elektrickém křesle
- Emmas** (slang) hemeroidy
- encephalitis** [ɛnsəfə'laitɪs] encefalitida, zánět mozku
- enema** ['enɪmə] klystýr
- epidemic** epidemie
- epidural** anestetikum používané zejm. při porodu
- eventually** nakonec
- exhale** vydechnout
- exhausted** vyčerpaný
- extraction** vytržení, vytažení, extrakce
- false teeth** umělé zuby
- fart** prdnout, prdět; prd
- fatal** ['feɪtəl] smrtelný
- fever** horečka; zimnice
- filling** plomba, výplň zubu
- flea** blecha
- floss** dentální nit, nit na čištění mezi-zubních prostor
- flu** chřipka
- focused on st** zaměřený na něco
- foetus** (GB), **fetus** (US) ['fi:təs] plod, zárodek
- food poisoning** otrava potravinami, jídlem
- forceps delivery** [fɔ:səps] porod kleštěmi
- fractures and breaks** fraktury a zlomeniny
- gargle** ['gɑ:gl] kloktat; kloktadlo
- gas** plyn
- gauze** [gəʊz, gɑ:z] gáza
- gay** homosexuál
- germ** [dʒɜ:m] bakterie; choroboplodný zárodek
- gonorrhoea** [ˌgɒnə'ri:ə] kapavka
- grass** tráva, marijána
- grazes** škrábnutí, odřeniny, oděrky
- gulp down** zhltnout, rychle sníst, vypít
- gums** dásně
- gynaecologist** (GB), **gynecologist** (US) [ˌɡaɪnə'kɒlədʒɪst] gynekolog
- hallucinogen** [ˌhælu:'sɪnədʒən, hə'lu:'sɪnədʒən] halucinogen (droga vyvolávající halucinace)
- handicapped** postižený, handicapovaný
- hangover** kocovina
- hash** (coll) hašiš, marihuana
- have a tooth out, pulled** (US) nechat si vytrhnout zub
- hay fever** senná rýma
- headache** bolest hlavy
- headshrinker, shrink** psychiatr
- healer** léčitel
- hepatitis** [ˌhepə'taɪtɪs] žloutenka, zánět jater, hepatitida
- hepatitis B** hepatitida, zánět jater (může být smrtelná, je sexuálně přenosná)
- heroin** heroin
- herpes** ['hɜ:pi:z] herpes, pásový opar
- heterosexual** heterosexuál
- hiccups, hiccoughs** ['hɪkʌps] škytavka
- homosexual** homosexuál
- hooked on st** závislý na něčem
- houseman** (GB) mladší sekundář (lékař v nemocnici)
- hygiene** ['haɪdʒi:n] hygiena; zdravotní péče
- hypnosis** hypnóza
- hypnotic** hypnotický; médium (osoba podléhající hypnóze)
- illness** nemoc, onemocnění
- improvement** vylepšení, zdokonalení
- indigestion** [ˌɪndɪ'dʒestʃən] špatné trávení, porucha trávení
- induced birth** [ɪn'dju:st] uměle vyvolaný porod
- infection** nákaza, infekce
- infestation** zamoření (např. hmyzem)
- inflammation** zánět, zápal
- influenza** chřipka
- infrequently** nepravidelně
- injection** injekce
- inoculate sb against...** (na)očkovat někoho proti...

- inoculation** očkování
- inpatient** hospitalizovaný pacient
- interaction** vzájemné působení, vzájemné ovlivňování, součinnost
- intern** (US) začínající lékař (v nemocnici)
- interrupt** přerušit
- invalid** invalidní, tělesně postižený; invalida
- irregular** nepravidelný
- itch** [ɪtʃ] svědět, svrbět; svědění
- jab(s)** (coll) píchanec, injekce
- jaundice** [dʒɑːndɪs] žloutenka; závist, zášť
- junkie** (coll) feťák, závislák
- kiss of life** umělé dýchání
- labour (pains)** porodní bolesti
- lice, sg. louse** vši, veš
- lift** (GB) výtah
- lotion** roztok; pleťová voda
- lumbago** [lʌmˈbeɪɡəʊ] bederní ústřel, houser, bolest v kříži
- malaria** malárie
- malignant** [məˈlɪɡnənt] zhoubný, maligní
- mania** [ˈmeɪniə] mánie, zuřivost, náruživost
- marijuana** [ˌmæriˈwɑːnə] marihuana
- massage** [ˈmæsɑːdʒ, məˈsɑːdʒ] masáž, masírování
- matron** [ˈmeɪtrən] vrchní sestra
- measles** spalničky
- medicaments** léky, léčiva
- medicines** léky, léčiva
- meditation** meditace
- menopause** přechod, klimakterium
- mescaline (from cactus)** [ˈmeskəlɪn] meskalin (vysoce halucinogenní droga vyráběná z kaktusu *Lophophora Williamsii*)
- methamphetamine** [ˈmeθɪlæmˈfetəmiːn] pervitin (chemická látka obsažená v pervitinu a speedu)
- midwife** porodní bába, porodní asistentka
- migraine** [ˈmiːgreɪn, ˈmaɪ-] migréna
- miracle** zázrak
- miscarriage** samovolný potrat
- mononucleosis, mono** (coll) mononukleóza
- morphine** [ˈmɔːfiːn] morfin, morfiu
- mouth-to-mouth** umělé dýchání z úst do úst
- mumps** příušnice; mrzutá nálada
- mute** (US) němý
- nausea** [ˈnɔːziə, -siə, -zə] nevolnost, nauzea
- nauseous** odporný, nechutný
- needle (syringe)** [siˈrɪndʒ, sɪrɪndʒ] jehla (injekční stříkačka)
- neurosis** neuróza
- nit** hnida
- numb** necitlivý, zmrtnělý; zkůřelý; ochromit; strnout
- nutrients** živiny
- obstetrician** [ɒbstəˈtrɪʃjən] porodník
- oculist** [ˈɒkjʊlɪst] optik
- off-colour** (GB) slabá nevolnost (necítit se ve své kůži)
- offend sb** urazit, dotknout se někoho
- ointment** mast, mazání
- operate on sb** operovat někoho
- opium** opium
- orthodontist** odborník v ortodontii (specializuje se na rovnátka)
- osteopathy** [ˌɒstiəˈpæθi] chiropraxe
- osteoporosis** [ˌɒstiəpəˈrəʊsɪs] odvápnění kostí, osteoporóza
- outpatient** pacient v ambulantním ošetřování
- overall** celkový
- paediatricist, paediatrician** dětský lékař
- pain** bolest, bolesti; působit bolest
- painkiller** lék proti bolesti
- pandemic** pandemie (rozšíření nemoci na obrovském území)
- paralysed** ochrnulý
- paranoia** paranoia (duševní choroba)
- paraplegic** [ˌpærəˈpliːdʒɪk] týkající se paraplegie; postižený paraplegií (ochrnulí spodní části těla, obvykle následkem choroby páteře)
- parasite** [ˈpærəsəɪt] parazit
- peel** loupat se
- penicillin** penicilin
- perception** vnímání, vjem
- Pervitin** pervitin
- pharmaceutical** [ˌfɑːməˈsuːtɪkəl, -ˈsɪj uːtɪkəl] farmaceutický
- pharmaceuticals** léky, léčiva
- physical** (US) lékařská prohlídka, vyšetření
- physiotherapy** fyzikální léčba, fyzioterapie
- pickles** nakládané okurky, zelenina
- piles** (euph) hemeroidy
- pill** tableta, prášek; antikoncepční pilulka
- pimp** pasák, kuplíř
- plaque** [plɑːk, plæk] zubní povlak
- pneumonia** [njuːˈmɔːniə] zápal plic
- polio(myelitis)** [ˈpɒliəʊ(maɪəˈlaɪtɪs)] dětská obrna, poliomyelitis
- polypharmacy** podávání příliš mnoha léků, jejichž účinky se vzájemně ovlivňují
- poor** chudý; chudák
- pot** (coll) hašiš, marihuana
- poultice** [ˈpɒlɪtɪs] teplý obklad; placka; přiložit teplý obklad
- pregnancy** těhotenství, gravidita
- prescription for st** lékařský předpis, recept na něco
- pressure points** tlakové body (body na tepnách, které je třeba stisknout pro zastavení krváčení)
- promiscuity** promiskuita
- prosthesis** [ˈprɒθiːsɪs] protéza, protetika
- prostitute** prostitut(ka), nevěstka
- psilocybin (from mushrooms)** [saɪləˈsaɪbɪn] druh halucinogenní drogy (vyrobené z hub)
- psychiatrist** [saɪˈkaɪətrɪst, sɪ-] psychiatr
- psychosis** [saɪˈkəʊsɪs] psychóza
- psychosomatic** [ˌsaɪkəʊsəˈmætɪk] psychomatický
- pus** [pʌs] hnis
- rabies** [ˈreɪbiːz] vzteklna
- radiologist** rentgenolog
- radiotherapy** radioléčba, léčení ozařováním
- ramps** rampy, nakloněné plošiny
- rash** vyrážka
- rate** ohodnotit, posoudit
- receptionist** sestra u příjmu pacientů; recepční; sekretářka
- ridiculous** vysmívat se, zesměšňovat, dělat si legraci
- run-down** vyčerpaný, uhoňený, ve špatném zdravotním stavu
- scald** [skɔːld] opařit; opařenína
- scar** [skaːr] jizva, šrám; trvale poznamenan, zjizvit
- scepticism** skepse, nedůvěra, pochybovačnost
- schizophrenia** [ˌskɪtʃə(ʊ)ˈfriːniə] schizofrenie
- sciatica** [saɪˈætɪkə] ischias, zánět sedacího nervu
- scissors** nůžky
- scratch** škrábat se, drbat se, drápat se

screening for (e.g. cervical cancer, diabetes) preventivní vyšetření (např. kvůli rakovině děložního čípku, cukrovce)

sedative ['sedətɪv] lék na uklidnění, utišení bolesti, sedativum

senility senilita

shedding vypadávání zubů, prolítí krve

shoot up píchnout si, šlehnout si (drogu)

shot (coll) dávka, injekce, šleh

sick nemocný, chorý; na zvracení

sickness nemoc, choroba; zvracení

side-effect vedlejší účinek; průvodní jev

sign znak; užívat znakovou řeč

sling, arm in a sling (zlomená) ruka v závěsu / na páse

slipped disc vyhozená ploténka

smallpox neštovice

smear (test) test přítomnosti rakovinných buněk v děložním hrdle

snakebite hadí uštknutí

sneeze kýchat, kýchnout; kýchnutí

solvent rozpouštědlo

sore throat [so: θrəʊt] škrábání, bolení v krku; chrapot; zánět hrtanu

speed pervitin, povzbuzující droga

splint dlaha; dát do dlah, do sádry

sprain vymknutí, výron, naražení, podvrknutí; vymknout si

stimulant povzbuzující, stimulační prostředek

stitch zašít, sešít, přišít; steh

stretcher nosítka pro nemocné

stroke mozková mrtvice

suffer from a disease trpět nemocí

surgeon chirurg

surgery chirurgie; chirurgický zákrok, operace; operační sál; ordinace; ordinační hodiny

surgical chirurgický, operativní

symptom příznak, symptom

syndrome (e.g. School Phobia Syndrome) syndrom (např. syndrom strachu ze školy)

syphilis příjice, lues, syfilis

syringe [sɪ'rɪndʒ, srɪnʒ] injekční stříkačka

tablet tableta, pilulka, prášek

take sb to hospital odvézt, zavést někoho do nemocnice

text-phones textové telefony (pro neslyšící)

throw up zvracet

tobacco tabák

tonsillitis [ˌtɒnsɪ'lɪtaɪtɪs] angína

toothache bolest, bolení zubů

tourniquet ['tuəniːkɪt, 'tɔ:-] škrtdlo (k zastavení krváčení)

tranquilliser ['træŋkwɪlaɪzə] uklidňující, tišící prostředek, sedativum

trimester čtvrtletí, období tři měsíců

truancy chození za školu, ulejvání

tuberculosis tuberkulóza, souchotiny

tweezer pinzeta; vytahovat pinzetou

twist (an ankle) vymknout, podvrtnout, vyvrtnout si (kotník)

typhoid ['taɪfɔɪd] břišní tyfus; tyfový, tyfózní, podobný tyfu

typhus ['taɪfəs] skvrnitý tyfus

ulcer ['ʌlsə] vřed

unmentionables (euph) hemeroidy

uterus ['ju:tərəs] děloha

vaccination [ˌvæksɪ'neɪʃən] očkování, vakcinace

victim oběť

vomiting zvracení, dávení, vrhnutí

ward nemocniční oddělení; pokoj

weight-gain přírůstek na váze

wheelchair invalidní vozík, vozíček

white cane bílá slepecká hůl

whore [hɔ:] (derog) děvka, kurva

wind plyn, větry (ve střevech)

withdrawal symptoms abstinenční příznaky, potíže při odvykání (drogám, lékům, alkoholu)

X-ray ['eksreɪ] rentgen, rentgenový snímek; rentgenovat

zoonosis [zəʊ'ɒnəʊsɪs, zəʊ'nəʊsɪs] onemocnění přenosné ze zvířat na člověka

SPORT

acclimatization [əˌklɪmətaɪ'zeɪʃən] aklimatizace, přizpůsobení se

ace eso (v tenisu a volejbalu)

advantage výhoda (bod po stavu shoda v tenisu)

aerobics aerobik

aim cíl

all-in zápas bez pravidel (v zápasu)

amateur ['æmətəʊ] amatér

ammunition munice, střelivo

apartheid [ə'pɑ:təɪt, -teɪt] apartheid

aperture ['æpətʃə] hledí

apres-ski [æpreɪ'ski:] následující po celodenním lyžování; společenská zábava

aqualung ['ækwələŋ] akvalung, potápěčský dýchací přístroj

archery lukostřelba; lučištníci

arrow šíp

arrowhead hrot šípu

athlete ['æθli:t] atlet; sportovec

athletics [æθ'letɪks] (lehká) atletika

atrocious [ə'trəʊʃəs] surový; krutý; odporný

audience publikum, diváci

avalanche ['ævəʊlɑ:nʃ] lavina, příval

backboard deska, na které je připevněn koš

backhand backhand (typ úderu v tenisu)

backstroke znak (plavecký styl)

bail špalík, kolík (v kriketu)

ball míč; míček; nadhoz, odpal (v baseballu); přihrádka (ve fotbalu, v hokeji)

ballboy sběrač míčků při tenisu

ban zákaz; zakázat

barbell vzpěračská činka

barrel hlaveň (zbraně)

baseball baseball

baseline základní čára (např. tenisového dvorce)

basket koš

bat být na řadě k odpalování; páłka

bathing cap koupací čepice

baton ['bætn] štafetový kolík

batsman, batter pálkař (v kriketu)

beam kladina; trám, kláda, nosník

beat / defeat sb porazit někoho, vyhrát nad někým

belly-flop placák (skok do vody na břicho)

belt pásek (v bojových uměních)

- bias** [ˈbaɪəs] šišatost koule; závaží v kouli; faleš daná kouli v bowlingu
- biased against sb** zaujatý proti někomu
- biathlon (cross-country + shooting)** [baɪˈæθlən] biatlon (běh na lyžích + střelba)
- bicycling** cyklistika
- bike** kolo
- biking** jízda na kole, cyklistika
- binding** lyžařské vázání
- birdie** [ˈbɜːdi] počet úderů, který je o jeden nižší než je průměrný počet úderů na jamku (v golfu)
- blades** nože bruslí
- block** odrazení úderu, blok; blokovat
- blocker** blokař
- bobsled (US), bobsleigh (GB)** [ˈbɒbsled; ˈbɒbsleɪ] bob (závodní říditelné sáně)
- bobsledding** boby (disciplína)
- bodysurf** serfovat bez prkna (tělem)
- bogey** [ˈbɒɡeɪ] stanovený počet úderů na hráče nebo hru (par) + jeden
- bolt (US)** střela; šíp vystřelovaný z kuše
- bore (GB)** kalibr, ráže
- bounce** házet míčem (např. o zeď); odrazit míč o zem
- boundary** pomezí čára; hod až za pomezí čáru (v kriketu)
- bowler** kuželkář; nadhazovač v kriketu)
- bowling** kuželky; bowling
- bowls** kuželky
- bowstring** tětva luku
- boxing** box, boxování
- boycott** bojkot
- braker** brzdař (při jízdě na bobech)
- breaststroke** prsa (plavecký styl)
- bull, bull's eye** [bʊl] zásah do terče; do středu, trefa do černého
- bullet** [ˈbʊlɪt] kulka, střela, projektil; náboj
- bunch** jet v pelotonu, běžet v klubku závodníků
- but** pažba pušky, pistole
- butterfly stroke** motýlek (plavecký styl)
- butts** val, který zachycuje střely po proniknutí terčem
- caddy, caddie** vak na golfové hole; vozík na golfové hole; nosič golfových holí
- calculating** schopný si vypočítat, pod jakým úhlem odpálit míček
- calibre** kalibr, ráže, světlý průměr
- callisthenics** [ˌkæɪlɪsˈθenɪks] dívčí gymnastika, rytmika, kalestenika
- canoeing** kanoistika
- cartridge** nábojnice, patrona
- cartwheel** přemet stranou, hvězda
- catch** chycení; chytit
- catcher** zadák, chytač, lapač (v kriketu); chytač (v baseballu)
- cheat** podvádět
- cheer sb on** povzbuzovat někoho
- chop** úder shora, sek (v bojových uměních)
- clamp** svorka; upínadlo; kramle
- cleats** [kli:ts] kolíky na kopačkách
- cliff(-face)** strmá kolmá stěna
- climb st** vystoupit, vylézt, vyšplhat se na...
- clips** spojky; spojovací skoby; karabiny (v horolezectví)
- club** golfová hůl; hokejka; kužel; klub; noční podnik
- cock** natáhnout kohoutek; kohoutek zbraně
- competition** soutěž, závod, soutěžení; soupeř
- contest** soutěž
- corner (red, blue, neutral)** roh (červený pro jednoho, modrý pro druhého soupeře, zbývající dva jsou neutrální - v boxu)
- counterattack** protiútok
- court** dvorec, kurt, hřiště
- coverage** zpravodajství, reportáž
- cox(swain)** [kɒks(weɪn)] kormidelník závodní lodi
- crampons** [ˈkræmpɒnz] mačky, horolezecká stoupací železa
- crawl (free-style)** kraul (volný styl)
- crease** čára; hokej; brankoviště; kriket: čára určující území házeče nebo pálkače
- crew for...** být členem posádky u...
- cross-check** krosčekomat; krosček (bránění ve hře nedovoleným způsobem)
- crossbar** příčné břevno fotbalové branky
- crossbow** kuše, samostřil
- cross-country skiing** běh na lyžích
- crowd** tlačence, dav lidí
- course** dráha, závodníště; hřiště (golfové)
- court** dvorec, kurt, hřiště
- cycle** jezdit na kole
- cyclist** [saɪkɪst] cyklista
- dartboard** terč na šipky
- dash** sprint
- defence** obrana
- defender** obránce
- degree** pásek, dan (v džudu)
- deuce** [dju:s, du:s] shoda (v tenisu)
- discus** disk
- dive** potápět se; skočit po hlavě / šipku
- diving** potápění
- division** divize
- dojo** [ˈdɔʊdʒəʊ] tělocvična; žíněnka (pro bojová umění)
- downhill** sjezdové lyžování
- draw** remíza; tah, losování soupeřů
- dressage** [ˈdresɑːʒ] drezúra
- dribble** klíčkovat (ve fotbalu); driblovat (v košíkové)
- drive** odpálit míček z podstavku, odraziště (v golfu)
- driver** hůl pro odpálení míčku na větší vzdálenost (v golfu)
- drown** [draʊn] (u)topit se
- eagle** jamka zahrnaná dvě rány pod par (v golfu)
- embargo** zákaz
- épée** [ˈeɪpeɪ, eˈpeɪ] kord (v šermu)
- equestrian event** [ɪˈkwɛstriən ɪˈvɛnt] dostihy; dostihový závod; jezdecká disciplína
- ethics** etika
- event** závod, disciplína
- ex-champion** bývalý šampión, přeborník, mistr
- expel** vyloučit
- exposure** vystavení vlivu povětrnosti, zimy; pobyt venku
- fail a drug test** mít pozitivní dopingový test
- fall** pád
- fault** chybné podání (v tenisu)
- fencing** šermování, šerm
- field (US)** hřiště (např. pro baseball)
- final(s)** finále
- fire** střelba, palba; vystřelit
- flag** prapor, vlajka
- flight** opeření šípu
- flippers** nožní ploutve k potápění či plavání
- foil** fleret (šerm)
- footballer / football player** fotbalista
- football field, football pitch (GB)** fotbalové hřiště

- forehand** forhend (úder v tenisu)
forward útočník
foul odpal do autu (v baseballu); faul; faulovat
freestyle zápas ve volném stylu; plavání volným způsobem
frost-bite omrzlina
fullbore velkorážní pistole
funicular [fju'nikjʊlə] zubačková lanovka
game hra (v tenisu)
game X hru vyhrává X
gamesmanship nespportovní chování; používání neetických metod k dosažení cíle (přeneseně)
gauge (US) [geɪdʒ] kalibr, ráže (zbraně)
glacier [ˈglæsiə] ledovec
glove(s) rukavice
goalie brankář
goalkeeper brankář
goggles potápěčské brýle
graceful půvabný
Graeco-Roman řeckořímský
grandstand krytá tribuna s místy k sezení
greens travnaté hřiště
gymnastics gymnastika; tělesná výchova
hammer kohoutek, úderník střelné zbraně
hammerless bezkohoutkový, mající skryté kohoutky (střelná zbraň hamerleska)
handgun (US) pistole, revolver
handicap dát handicap komu, ztížit podmínky silnějším v soutěži
handstand stoj na rukou
headfirst po hlavě
headstand stoj na hlavě
health penalties zdravotní potíže způsobené např. sportem
heat rozběh; rozplavba; rozjížděčka
helmet přilba, helma
hit below the belt rána, úder pod pás
hit the post, crossbar nastřelit tyč, břevno (ve fotbalu)
holding držení (v hokeji)
holes jamky (v golfu)
holster pouzdro na pistoli
home-run oběh domů (postup běžícího pálkaře po vlastním odpalu přes všechny mety až na metu domácí – v baseballu)
hooliganism chuligánství
hoop obruč koše, koš; dát koš, skórovat (v košíkové); obruč (v moderní gymnastice)
hurdles [ˈhɜːdlz] běh přes překážky, překážkový běh; překážky
hurdling běh přes překážky
hypocrisy [hɪˈpɒkrɪsi] pokrytectví, přetvářka
hypothermia [ˌhaɪpəʊˈθɜːmiə] hypotermie, nízká tělesná teplota, podchlazení
ice-axe cepín (v horolezectví)
ice-fall ledopád
ice hockey lední hokej
icing postavení mimo hru (v hokeji)
infield (diamond) vnitřní hřiště, hrací pole ve kosočtverce mezi metami (v baseballu)
inner zásah do předposledního mezikruží
inning směna (doba, po kterou je mužstvo na pálce), podání (v baseballu, v kriketu)
javelin oštěp
jerk up smýknout, vymrštit nahoru
jeu de boules [ʒə də buːl] francouzské kuželky
jockey [dʒɒki] žokej
judo džudo
jumars [dʒu:məz] jumar (svorka na laně, pohybuje se volně, která zaklapne, je-li zatížena směrem dolů – v horolezectví)
jumping skoky
jump the gun vyběhnout před startovním výstřelem
karate [kəˈrɑːti] dřep karate
kayak kajak; jet v kajaku
kick kop (v bojových uměních)
kickoff výkop (zahájení zápasu ve fotbalu)
knee bend [ˈniː bend] dřep
lane dráha (závodní, plavecká...)
lead vedení, čelo (závodu); náskok; vést; mít náskok
leap skok; skočit
league liga; svaz; spolek
let odpálit míč; nový míč (v tenisu)
life-jacket záchranná vesta
lift vlek
lineout roj (při vhazování z autu v ragby)
linesman čárový rozhodčí, rozhodčí na čáře (v tenisu)
linesmen pomezí rozhodčí (ve fotbalu)
load nabít
lob lob (hod vysokým obloukem např. v tenisu)
lock zámek střelné zbraně
loner samotář, člověk žijící osaměle, vyhledávající samotu
longbow středověký dlouhý luk
long distance rubber běžec na dlouhé tratě
lose prohrát
loser ten, kdo prohrál
luge [luːʒ] sáně, sáňkování
magpie [ˈmæɡpaɪ] zásah do středního kruhu terče
marathon [ˈmæɾəθɒn] maratón
mask ochranná maska
mat žíněnka
match zápas
miniature [ˈmɪniətʃə] malorážka
minor nezletilý
mob (rozvážněný) dav; masy
modelled on st založen na něčem, vycházející z něčeho
moraine [mɒˈreɪn] moréna
mountaineer, mountain climber [ˌmaʊntɪˈnɪə, ˌmaʊntɪnˈklaɪmɪə] horolezec
mountaineering horolezectví
mouthpiece (US) chránič zubů (v boxu)n
musket [ˈmʌskɪt] mušketa
net síť, síťka
nil (no score) nula
ninepins kuželky
nobleman šlechtic
non-professional neprofesionální
novice [ˈnɒvɪs] nováček
number 2 iron kovaná golfová hůl
oars [ˈɔːz] vesla
obstacles překážky
obstruction [əbˈstrʌkʃən] bránění ve hře
offside ofsajd, postavení mimo hru (ve fotbalu)
outer zásah do vnější části terče
outfield vnější část hřiště (v kriketu, v baseballu)
overhang převis
over-step přešlap
padding chránič
paddle pádlo, veslo
parachute [ˈpærəʃuːt] padák
pass prohoz (v tenisu)

- pass (the ball)** přihrát míč (ve fotbalu)
- pentathlon** [pen'tæθlɒn] pětiboj
- periods** třetiny (v ledním hokeji)
- photo-finish** proběhnutí (projektí) cílem v těsném sledu, takže vítěze je možno určit pouze z fotografie
- physique** stavba těla, tělesná konstituce
- pin** vítězství na lopatky (v zápasu)
- pins** kuželky (nářadí)
- pistol** (GB) pistole, revolver
- pitcher** nadhazovač (v baseballu)
- pitons** ['pi:tɒnz] skoby, železné hřeby s očkem k upevnění lana (v horolezectví)
- player** hráč
- pole vault** ['vɒ(:)lt] skok o tyči
- pommel horse** kůň našít s madly
- puck** [pʌk] touš, kotouč, puk
- Pull!** [pul] Pal!
- punch** udeřit, dát ránu pěsti
- punishment** trest
- push-ups** (US) kliky
- putter** ['pʌtə] krátká golfová hůl na doklepnutí míčku do jamky (v golfu)
- quarrel** (GB) střela, šíp vystřelovaný z kuše
- quarter-final(s)** čtvrtfinále
- quiver** toulec (v lukostřelbě)
- race** běžet, letět jako o závod, závodit; závod
- racism** rasismus
- racket, racquet** ['rækt] raketa
- raft** vor; jízda na raftu
- rafting** rafting, raftování
- rangemaster** pracovník střelnice zodpovědný za bezpečnost
- rapier** rapír; kord (šerm)
- referee (in the ring)** rozhodčí (v ringu)
- regulator** regulátor (v potápění)
- reserve** náhradník
- return** return (úder v tenisu)
- revenues** příjmy, výnosy
- ribbon** stuha (v moderní gymnastice)
- ride** jízda
- rider** jezdec
- rifle** puška, ručnice
- rifle-shooting** střelba z pušky
- rings** kruhy (tělocvičné nářadí)
- rink** kluziště; hokejové hřiště
- rock-climbing** lezení po skalách
- rock-fall** padání kamenů
- roller-skating** jízda na kolečkových bruslích
- root for sb** fandit někomu
- rope** lano, provaz; švihadlo (v moderní gymnastice)
- rope up** šplhat připoután na laně; jistit se
- ropes (on the ropes)** provazy boxer-ského ringu (na provazech)
- rowing** veslování
- rowlocks** veslové vidlice
- rudder** kormidlo (u lodí); kormidlovat
- ruffian** ['rʌfɪən] surovec, rváč, násilník, brutální člověk
- rugby** ragby
- runner-up** závodník na druhém místě
- runners** skluznice saní, sanice
- running** běh
- sabre** ['seɪbə] šavle
- sailboard** prkno na windsurfing
- sailboat** plachetnice
- sailing** plachtění
- sanctions** sankce
- score** vstřelit branku, skórovat; skóre
- scorekeeper** zapisovatel bodů během hry
- scorer** střelec branky; zapisovatel výsledků
- scrum** mlýn (zápas o míč v ragby)
- scuba** ['sku:bə] kyslíková bomba (v potápění)
- SCUBA (Self-Contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus)** akvalung (potápěcí dýchací přístroj)
- sculling** ['skʌlɪŋ] veslování na moři za použití párových vesel
- sculls** skulérské závody (od r. 1931 součástí primátorek, zúčastnit se může veslař, který dosud nezískal titul mistra v párové disciplíně)
- self-defence** sebeobrana
- semiautomatic** poloautomatický; samonabíjecí
- semi-final(s)** semifinále
- serve** podávat; podání
- set** set (v tenisu)
- shamateur** ['ʃæmə,tɜ:, -tjʊə, -tə] poloamatér (oficiálně nehraje za peníze, ale dostává je)
- shin-guards** chrániče holení
- shoot** střilet; hodit; přihrát
- shot-putting** vrh koulí
- shotgun** brokovnice
- shove sb** [ʃʌv] vrazit, narazit do někoho
- shuttlecock** opeřený míček (v badmintonu)
- sidestroke** ouško (plavecký styl)
- silencer** tlumič (ve střelbě)
- sin-bin** trestná lavice (v hokeji)
- sit-ups** sedy lehy
- skate** bruslit
- skate-guards** chrániče na brusle
- skater** bruslař
- skates** brusle
- skeet** skeet (střelba na 200 letících asfaltových holubů, terčů)
- ski-jump** skok na lyžích; lyžařský můstek pro skok na lyžích
- ski-lift** lyžařský vlek; lanovka
- ski-poles, ski-sticks** lyžařské hole
- skirack** nosič na lyže (na autě)
- skier** lyžař
- skiing** lyžování
- skis** lyže
- skittles** kuželky
- slam** zavěsit míč (v košíkové)
- sled** (US) sáně
- sledge** (GB) sáně; sáně tažené psy
- sleigh** sáně tažené koňmi
- slope** lyžařský svah
- smallbore** malorážka
- snatch** trh (ve vzpírání)
- snorkel** šnorchl (dýchací trubice)
- snowmobile** sněžný skútr
- soccer** evropský fotbal, kopaná
- somersault** ['sʌməʊd(:)lt] salto
- spare** srazit všechny druhým hodem (v bowlingu)
- sparring** stínový box (naprázdno)
- spectacle** efektní podívaná
- spells** třetiny (v ledním hokeji)
- spiker** smečař (volejbal)
- spikes** tretry
- spin** pirueta; točit se v piruetě (v krasobruslení)
- sportsman** sportovec
- sportsperson** sportovně založený člověk
- sportswoman** sportovkyně
- springboard** skokanské prkno
- sprint** sprint
- sprinter** sprinter
- stadium** sportovní stadion
- stands** tribuna na sportovním stadionu

starting block startovní, startovací blok

steeplechase steeplechase (koňský dostih s překážkami; běh na 3000 metrů překážek); terénní běh (přespolní, lesní, silniční)

stern záď lodi

stick hokejka (v ledním hokeji)

sticks lyžařské hole

stock pažba

stopwatch stopky

strike srazit všechny prvním hodem (v bowlingu)

string out běžet jeden za druhým (roztažený peloton)

stroke úder (v tenisu, v golfu)

stump tyčka branky (v kriketu)

submission neschopnost odolat soupeřovu chvatu

substitute náhradník

surf jezdit na příbojových vlnách, surfovat

surfboard surf, surfovací prkno

surfing surfování

suspended suspendovaný, dočasně vyloučený

suspension vyloučení; odložení, suspendování, sestup o třídu níž v soutěži

swimming plavání

swordfighting [sɔ:dfaitɪŋ] šerm; šermování mečem

swordplay [sɔ:dpleɪ] šerm, šermování mečem; šermířský výstup; slovní šerm

table stůl

tackle bránit ve hře útočníkovi; krýt soupeře s míčem; zadržet, složit útočícího hráče v ragby

tackling bránění

takeoff odraz

take up st zabývat se čím; začít znovu s čím

target ['tɑ:ɡɪt] terč

tee off odpálit míč z podstavku, odraziště (v golfu)

tennis tenis

terraces tribuna k stání (ve fotbalu)

threequarter(s) tříčtvrtka, levý nebo pravý vnitřní útočník (v ragby)

throw házet, hodit; hod

throw-in vřazování

ticket lístek, vstupenka

tie-break rozhodující hra na konci nerozhodného setu (v tenisu)

timekeeper časoměřič

toboggan nízké sáně, tobogan; dlouhé dopravní sáně; toboganová dráha

touché [tu:'ʃeɪ] tušé (zvolání při zásahu v šermu nebo při obratné odpovědi v debatě); zásah

tournament ['tuənəmənt, 'tɔ:-] turnaj

towed by... [təʊd] tažený, vlečený...

towel ['taʊəl] ručník

transfer přestup

travel udělat kroky; kroky (přestupek v košíkové)

tremble chvět se, třást se

trigger spoušť

triple jump trojskok

tripping podražení

trunks pánské plavky

umpire ['ʌmpaɪə] rozhodčí, soudce; rozhodovat, soudit

umpires (at ringside) rozhodčí (na vnější straně ringu)

vault ['vɔ:lt] přeskok (ve sportovní gymnastice)

violent násilný

visor ['vɪzə] maska, hledí

volley volej (úder do míče)

volleyball volejbal

water-skiing vodní lyžování

wax vosk

weightlifting vzpírání

wetsuit neoprénová kombinéza

white-water (canoeing) divoká voda (kanoistika)

wicket branka (v kriketu)

win zvítězit, vyhrát

win a match vyhrát zápas, zvítězit

windsurf pěstovat windsurfing

winger hráč na křídle

winner vítěz

wishbone ráhno pro držení (v surfingu)

wood dřevěná golfová hůl

wrestling ['reslɪŋ] zápas

yachting ['jɒtɪŋ, 'jɑ:tɪŋ] jachtařský sport

MEDIA

abusive [ə'bjʊ:sɪv] urážlivý, hanlivý

accuse sb of st obvinít někoho z něčeho

advertiser (US) reklamní noviny, které jsou distribuovány zdarma

aerial (GB) televizní anténa

affect sb [ə'fekt] ovlivnit, postihnout někoho

agreement dohoda

AM (Amplitude Modulation) střední vlny (vlnová délka)

anchor(man) moderátor, hlasatel

announce oznámit

announcer rozhlasový nebo televizní hlasatel; sportovní komentátor

antenna (GB) anténa (většinou velká, komerční)

antenna (US) anténa (většinou pro domácínost)

apply a law uplatnit, použít zákon

article článek

arts umění

assistant editor zástupce šéfredaktora

attack [ə'tæk] napadat, napadnout; útok

attitude towards st postoj k něčemu

auxiliary verb pomocné sloveso

back podporovat

ban (on st) zákaz (něčeho); zakázat

bass basový, hluboký; bas

be concerned with st zabývat se něčím

bid for st snaha, úsilí; usilovat o něco

bold tučné písmo

book review knižní recenze

box rámeček

branding typ reklamy, vyzdvihující jednu značku (např.: A chocolate bar is a Mars bar.)

bribery korupce; úplatkářství

bribery charges obvinění z korupce

brightness jas

brilliant vynikající, skvělý

broadcaster rozhlasový, televizní hlasatel; reportér; komentátor

broadcasting rozhlasové, televizní vysílání

broadsheet noviny velkého formátu

button tlačítko, knoflík

by-line novinový podtitulek se jménem autora článku

cable kabelová televize

capitals velká písmena

caption text pod obrázkem; nadpis, titul	crosshead podtitulek, mezititulek	formerly dříve; kdysi
cartographer kartograf	crossword (puzzle) křížovka	fortnightly čtrnáctideník; čtrnáctidenní; čtrnáctidenně
cartoon kreslený vtíp, seriál; komiks; karikatura	current affairs současné, aktuální události	freelance na volné noze
cassette recorder kazetový magnetofon	cut omezení, snížení, redukce; omezit, snížit	free-sheet reklamní noviny, které jsou distribuovány zdarma
cause způsobit; důvod, příčina	damage sb's reputation poškodit něčí jméno, zničit dobrou pověst	frequency frekvence
censorship ['sensəʃɪp] cenzura	deal dohoda	front page první strana novin; titulní stránka knihy
channel televizní kanál; program (např. ČT 1, CNN...)	debate, discussion debata, diskuse	funded from sb, st financován někým, z něčeho
chat show / talk show (US) televizní, rozhlasová beseda (se známými osobnostmi)	decency ['di:sənsi] slušnost, slušné chování	gadget přístroj
chat-show host moderátor televizní, rozhlasové besedy	designer návrhář; výtvarník	give away (GB) reklamní noviny, které jsou distribuovány zdarma
circulation náklad; oběh	despicable behaviour [di'spɪkəbl] opovrženímhodné, ohavné chování	glossy časopis tištěný na lesklém křídovém papíru
civil service státní služba	differ in approach to st lišit se v přístupu k něčemu	go downhill upadat, horšit se, jít z kopce
civil legal proceedings against... občanskoprávní řízení s...	disagreement neshoda; nesouhlas	graft korupce; úplatkářství
classified advertisements inzertní část periodického tisku (rozdělená podle typu inzerátů)	disc jockey / deejay DJ	graph graf, diagram, obrazec
clone věrná kopie; klon	dismiss propustit	graphics užitá grafika; grafické metody, prostředky
coach potato pecivál, člověk, který se pořád dívá na televizi a nikam nechodí	distract attention from st odvádět pozornost od něčeho	gutter press bulvární tisk
column sloupec; rubrika; sloupek	distract sb from st odvést někoho od něčeho	habitually drunk alkoholik, notorik, neustále opilý
comic strip kreslený seriál na pokračování v periodickém tisku	distributor distributor; roznašeč	half-truths polopravdy
comment poznámka; kritika	documentary dokumentární film	headline novinový titulek
current affairs současné události	due to st následkem něčeho; kvůli něčemu	help wanted (US) volná místa (inzeráty)
compact disc CD, cédéčko	duplicate ['dju:plɪkət] kopie; duplikát	host (talk show) konferenciér, moderátor (v talk show)
comparison with st srovnání s něčím	edition vydání; náklad; verze	image obrázek; představa
compere ['kɒmpɛə] konferenciér	editorial assistant člen redakce	vigorously ['vɪgərəʊslɪ] důrazně
competition soutěžení, soutěž	editorial úvodník, redakční článek	inadequately nepřiměřeně
complex složitý, komplikovaný	editor-in-chief šéfredaktor, hlavní redaktor	indifferent to st lhostejný k něčemu
concept pojem	eject vysunout	inquire into zabývat se čím
consistency of style jednotnost stylu	embarrassment rozpaky; záležitost vzbuzující rozpaky	integrity mravní bezúhonnost, integrita
contrast kontrast	encourage st, sb podporovat něco, někoho; dodat někomu odvalu	interference interference, vzájemné rušení (příjmu rozhlasových stanic)
control řídit; ovládat	endure snášet	intruding obtěžování
controls ovládací prvky	established fact nepopiratelná skutečnost	investigate st vyšetřovat, zkoumat něco
conveniently bez obtíží; pohodlně; pěkně	evidence důkazy	investigation into st vyšetřování něčeho
convey the message sdělit zprávu, předat sdělení	exaggeration [ɪg,zædʒə'reɪʃən] nadsazování, zveličování	investigative reporting investigativní žurnalistika
copy text (např. inzerátu nebo reklamy); exemplář, výtisk; kopie	fast forward rychlý posun dopředu, rychlé přetáčení	irresponsible neodpovědný
copywriter reklamní textař	feature hlavní článek; hlavní program; uvést na význačném místě	issue ['ɪʃu:, 'ɪsju:] vydání, číslo; problém, otázka
corporate identity ['kɔ:pəreɪt ar'dentrti] stavovská čest, souměřitelnost	fight st bránit něčemu, bojovat s něčím	italics [ɪ'tælɪks] kurzíva
creative director tvůrčí vedoucí pracovník	license fee koncesionářský poplatek	journal ['dʒɜ:nl] deník; odborný časopis
critic kritik, recenzent	FM (Frequency Modulation) VKV (velmi krátké vlny)	jumble přeházet; promíchat
		knob [nɒb] knoflík (např. rozhlasového nebo televizního přijímače)

- lapdog journalism** populistická, servilní žurnalistika
- lead story** hlavní zpráva v novinách
- leader, leading article** úvodník, redakční článek
- leave out** vynechat, vynechávat
- letter** dopis; písmeno
- libel** ['laɪbl] pomluva, urážka na cti (písemná); veřejně někoho očernit
- libellous** ['laɪbələs] nactiutrháčny, hanlivý
- licence fee** koncesionářský poplatek (za rozhlas, televizi)
- line** řádek
- live broadcast** přímý přenos, živé vysílání
- local** místní
- lonely hearts** osamělá srdce, seznámení (inzerční rubrika)
- long wave** dlouhá vlnová délka
- loom** rýsovat se; být na spadnutí
- low-grade** podřadný, méně hodnotný
- magazine** časopis
- mail-order** objednávka zboží poštou podle katalogu
- mainstream media** většinová média
- medium** střed; prostředek; médium
- medium wave** střední vlnová délka
- merger** spojení; sloučení; fúze
- miscellaneous** [mɪsəl'eɪniəs] týkající se různých témat; různé
- monopoly** [mɒ'nɒpəli] monopol
- monthly** měsíčník; měsíční; měsíčně
- negotiations** jednání, vyjednávání, rozhovory
- newscaster** (US) hlasatel, který obvykle čte zprávy
- newsreader** (GB) hlasatel, který obvykle čte zprávy
- obituary** [ə(ʊ)'bɪtʃuəri] nekrolog
- obviously** zřejmě
- oppose st** oponovat, odporovat něčemu
- opt for st** rozhodnout se pro něco
- page 3 girls** fotografie nahých dívek na 3. straně bulvárního tisku
- paparazzi** paparazzi (senzacechtiví lovci fotografií)
- parody st** parodovat něco
- periodical** časopis; pravidelný
- personal** ['pɜ:sənəl] oznámení (inzerční rubrika v novinách týkající se jednotlivých osob)
- persuasion** [pə'sweɪzən] přesvědčení, smýšlení, mínění, názor
- phone-in / call-in** (US) pořad založený na telefonických dotazech posluchačů či diváků; volná tribuna
- photographer** [fə'tɒɡrəfə] fotograf
- pie chart** kruhový graf
- play** hrát; hra, drama
- playback** přehrání nahraného záznamu
- plummet** ['plʌmɪt] padat; prudce klesat
- popular press** bulvární tisk
- pornography** [pɔ:'nɒɡrəfi] pornografie; sprostota
- press** tisk
- preview** předpremiéra hry, filmu; předběžná recenze (před uvedením díla); upoutávka na televizní pořad
- prime time / peak time** (US) hlavní vysílací čas
- printer** tiskař; tiskárna
- probe** vyšetřování, prošetření; hledat, zkoumat, vyšetřovat
- production editor** výrobní redaktor
- prohibit** [prə'hibɪt] zakázat, nedovolit
- promise** slib; slíbit
- proof-reader** korektor
- public service radio** veřejnoprávní rozhlas
- publisher (owner)** nakladatel(ství); vydavatel; majitel (novin)
- quality newspaper** kvalitní, seriózní noviny (velký formát)
- quality press** seriózní tisk
- quarterly** čtvrtletník; čtvrtletní; čtvrtletně
- quit** rezignovat
- race** běžet, letět jako o závod, závodit; závod
- racist** rasistický; rasista
- radio set** radiopřijímač
- real estate** nemovitost(i), reality
- rebel forces** ['rebəl] oddíly vzbouřenců, povstalců
- receiver** (tech) přijímač; sluchátko
- recognize** dát najevo; zjistit; uznat
- record** [rɪ'kɔ:d] nahrát
- reduction** omezení, snížení, redukce
- refuse** odmítat, odmítnout
- reject** odmítat, odmítnout
- reliable sources** spolehlivé, hodnověrné zdroje
- reliance on st** spoléhání na něco
- remote (control)** dálkové ovládání
- report** zpráva (novinová)
- resign** rezignovat
- responsible** odpovědný; nesoucí zodpovědnost
- restrictions on st** omezení něčeho
- review** recenze, kritika
- reviewer** recenzent, kritik
- rewind** [ri:'waɪnd] přetočit zpět
- rise** stoupnout, stoupat
- rocket** prudce vzrůst, vylétnout nahoru
- row** [raʊ] neshoda; nesouhlas; hádka
- rumours / gossip** fámy, klepy
- satellite dish** satelitní anténa (talíř)
- scan** zběžně prohlédnout, přeletět očima
- screen** obrazovka
- sensationalised** [sen'seɪʃənəlaɪzd] plně senzací
- sensitive** citlivý
- serial** seriál, dílo na pokračování
- set** připravený; ochotný
- sexist** sexistický, stranící jednomu pohlaví
- shared authorship** kolektivní autorství
- short wave** krátká vlnová délka
- sitcom** (situation comedy) situační komedie (v televizi)
- situations vacant** (GB) volná místa (inzeráty)
- skim the headlines** prolétnout (zběžně prohlédnout) titulky
- sleazy** (derog) vulgární
- small-ads** krátké inzeráty
- smear campaign** [smɪə kæm'peɪn] organizovaná očerňovací kampaň, (např. série novinových článků)
- soap (opera)** komerční seriál (rozhlasový nebo televizní, obvykle z rodinného života)
- source** zdroj, pramen
- special correspondent** zvláštní zpravodaj
- spending** výdaje
- sports editor** sportovní redaktor
- state-run** státní, řízený státem
- static** atmosférický; statický (týkající se atmosférických poruch)
- stringer** redaktor, který pracuje pro více redakcí
- strip** kreslený seriál na pokračování v periodickém tisku
- sub-editor** pomocný redaktor; spoluvydavatel
- subhead** podtitulek, mezititulek
- subscription to st** předplatné něčeho

subtitle podtitulek, mezititulek
sue sb for libel [su:] žalovat koho pro urážku na cti
supplement novinová příloha; dodatek, doplněk
surge [sɜ:dʒ] prudce stoupnout, stoupat
survey ['sɜ:veɪ] anketa; dotazování; přehled
switch the set off / on vypnout / zapnout přijímač
switch vypínač, přepínač, spínač
tabloid bulvární plátek (noviny malého formátu)
tabloid press bulvární tisk
talks rozhovory (jednání, vyjednávání)
target audience ['tɑ:ɡɪt 'ɔ:diəns] čtenářská obec určitého zaměření
taxation příjem z daní; daňový systém; daně
tax revenues příjmy z daní
the box (coll) bedna, televize
the tube (coll) bedna, televize
timer časový spínač
trade press noviny nebo časopisy pro odborníky, zasílané přímo (nelze je běžně koupit)
transmit vysílat
transmitter vysílač
treble vysoká frekvence tónů, výšky
trigger způsobit, odstartovat
tuner (hi-fi) ['haɪfaɪ] ladící zařízení, tuner (hi-fi: dokonale reprodukcující zvuk)
turn up / down the volume zesílit / zeslabit (zvuk, hlasitost)
TV commercial televizní reklama
TV host televizní moderátor
TV set televizní přijímač
type tiskový typ, písmo; psát na stroji
typeface druh písma
typesetter sazeč; sázecí stroj
typical of st příznačný, typický pro něco
ugly škaredý, ošklivý, nehezky
unbiased [ʌn'baɪəst] nezaujatý, nestranný, objektivní
unscramble [ʌn'skræmbəl] spojit; složit, dát dohromady
variety show varietní představení
verbose drunkard [vɜ:'bəʊs, və-] užvaněný opilec
video cassette recorder (VCR) video (rekordér)

violence násilí
volume hlasitost
vow [vaʊ] slib; slíbit, slibovat
want ad, wanted krátký inzerát, kterým se hledá zaměstnání, různé předměty apod.
wavelength vlnová délka
weekly týdeník; týdně, každý týden
welfare sociální zabezpečení

CULTURE

accordion [ə'kɔ:diən] akordeon, tahací harmonika
accurately přesně
act akt, dějství, jednání div. hry; hrát roli
act st out předvádět, hrát něco
adapt (for) upravit, adaptovat (pro)
admire sb, st obdivovat se někomu, něčemu
adulthood dospělost
adventure dobrodružství
advertisement reklama, reklamní film
afterword doslov
air [eə] melodie, nápěv, árie
aisle [aɪl] ulička mezi sedadly
alien ['eɪliən] cizinec; vetelec; cizí; nepřátelský
alto ['æltəʊ] alt; altistka; altsaxofon; viola
an R-film (restricted) film nepřístupný dětem
ancestor ['ænsesə] předek
animation animace; kreslený film
anthem ['ænθəm] hymna
antiquarian bookseller [ˌæntɪ'kwɛəriən] antikvariát
appendix, pl. appendixes, appendices [ə'pendɪks] rejstřík, dodatek
applaud [ə'plɔ:d] tleskat, aplaudovat
aria ['ɑ:riə] árie
arrangement hudební úprava, zpracování
artist ['ɑ:tɪst] umělec, zvláště malíř
artiste [ɑ:'ti:st] artista
assassin [ə'sæsɪn] vrah, atentátník
atlas ['ætləs] atlas
attendance návštěvnost, počet přítomných návštěvníků
auditorium, pl. auditoriums, auditoria [ˌɔ:di'tɔ:riəm] hlediště, sál
author's proofs autorská korektura
autobiographical [ˌɔ:təʊbaɪə'græfɪkəl] autobiografický
autobiography [ˌɔ:təʊbaɪ'ɒgrəfi] autobiografie, vlastní životopis
avant-garde [ˌævɑn:'gɑ:d] avantgardní
backstage zákulisí; zákulisní
bagpipes dudy
balalaika balalajka
balcony balkón
ballad balada

- band** kapela, hudební skupina; orchestr
- banjo** bendžo
- bar** taktová čára; takt
- baritone** baryton
- barrack** pokřikovat, povykovat, pískat na někoho
- bass** [beɪs] basový, hluboký; kontrabas, basa
- bassoon** [bə'su:n] fagot
- battle** bitva; boj; zápas
- beheading** stětí; useknutí hlavy
- believable** věrohodný
- bells** zvonky; zvony
- bibliography** [ˌbɪbli'ɒgrəfi] bibliografie, bibliologie
- binding (cloth, leather)** knižní vazba (plátno, kůže)
- biography** [baɪ'ɒgrəfi] životopis
- blues** blues
- blurb** reklama, upoutávka na záložce knihy nebo v tisku
- boast** chlubit se, vychloubat se
- boo** vypískat někoho; volat hanba, fuj
- booklet** knížka, brožura
- bookshop** knihkupectví
- bouquet** [bu'keɪ] kytice
- bow** [bəʊ] smyčec
- box** lóže
- brochure** ['brɔʃə] brožura, leták
- brush** štětec; kartáč; smeták
- brushes** metličky
- bugle** ['bjʊ:gl] trubka; polnice; signální roh
- burst into applause** začít tleskat, propuknout v potlesk
- bust** bysta; poprsí
- butterflies in the stomach** (coll) nervozita, tréma
- by heart** z paměti, nazpaměť
- cacophonous** [kə'kɒfənəs] kakofonický, nelibozvučný
- cameraman** kameraman; fotoreportér
- cantata** [kæn'tɑ:tə] kantáta
- canvas** ['kænvəs] malířské plátno; malba, obraz
- cartoon** [kɑ:'tu:n] kreslený seriál, komiks; kreslený vtíp
- cast list** osoby a obsazení
- castanets** kastaněty
- cello, pl. cellos** ['tʃeləʊ] violoncello, cello
- chant** [tʃɑ:nt] zpěv, nápěv; liturgický zpěv; žalm; zazpívat; recitovat
- chapter** kapitola
- charcoal** ['tʃɑ:kəʊl] kreslířský uhlí; kresba uhlím, uhlokresba; dřevěné uhlí
- cheer** ['tʃiə] povzbuzovat, provolávat slávu
- chisel** ['tʃɪzəl] dláto; sekáč; majzlík; dlabat; sekát; tesat
- choir** [kwaɪə] pěvecký sbor; skupina stejných nástrojů v orchestru
- chorus** ['kɔ:rəs] chór (antický; postava alžbětinského dramatu); sbor (pěvecký, taneční v opeře, operetě, muzikálu); refrén
- chronicle** ['krɒnɪkl] kronika; zaznamenat, zapsat
- clap** (one's hands) tleskat
- clarinet** [,klærɪ'net] klarinet
- classic** klasika; klasický, tradiční
- classical** klasický
- classical music** vážná, klasická hudba
- clay** jíl; sochařská, hrnčířská hlína
- climb on the bandwagon** [klaɪm 'bænd,wægən] přidat se k vítězné straně; „chytit vítr“
- clip** klip
- cloakroom** ['kləʊkrum, -ru:m] šatna; toaleta (GB); předsálí parlamentu (US)
- close-up** záběr zblízka
- collage** ['kɒlɑ:ʒ] koláž; dělat koláže
- column** ['kɒləm] sloupec sazby; sloupek; sloup
- comedian** komik; autor komedií
- comedy** veselohra, komedie
- complimentary ticket** volná, čestná vstupenka
- composer** skladatel
- concert-goer** návštěvník koncertů
- concert-hall** koncertní síň
- concerto** [kən'tʃeətəʊ] koncert pro sólový nástroj s doprovodem orchestru
- conductor** dirigent
- connoisseur** [,kɒnə'sɜ:ʒ] znalec
- considerable** značný
- contemporary** současný; současník
- contents** obsah
- copyright** autorské právo
- cornet** ['kɔ:nɪt] kornet; kornetista
- corpse** (coll) [kɔ:ps] mrtvola; zkazit divadelní výstup, vyvést herce z konceptu
- costume designer** návrhář kostýmů
- costumes** kostýmy
- counterpoint** kontrapunkt; zdůraznit; kontrastovat
- country** country (hudba)
- cover** deska; vazba
- crayon** kreslicí uhlí, pastel
- cunning** prohnáný, mazaný, vychytralý
- curtain** ['kɜ:tn] opona; záclona; závěs
- curtain call** vyvolávání účinkujících potleskem
- cut** řezat; stříhat
- cutting room** střižna
- cymbalon** dulcimer (strunný nástroj připomínající cimbál)
- cymbals** ['sɪmbəlz] činely
- dauber** (informal) [dɔ:bə] špatný malíř, mazal
- deadly** smrtící, vražedný; hrozný, strašný
- dedication** věnování
- deserve** [dɪ'zɜ:v] zasloužit si, zasluhovat
- detective story** detektivka
- diary** ['daɪəri] deník, zápisník
- dictionary** slovník (knih)
- dilettante, pl. dilettantes, dilettanti** [ˌdɪlɪ'tænti] diletant; amatér; ochotník
- director** [daɪ'rektə, dɪ'-] režisér; dirigent; ředitel
- disco** diskotéka
- discordant** disonantní; disharmonický
- distance shot** záběr z dálky
- distributors** distributoři; půjčovna filmů
- documentary** dokumentární film
- doggerel** ['dɒgərəl] kostrbatý verš, báseň psaná v kostrbatých, neumělých verších
- dolly shot** záběr jedoucí kamerou
- double bass** ['dʌbl beɪs] kontrabas
- drama** divadelní hra; dramatické umění, drama
- drawing** kresba; náčrt; výkres
- drench** promočit, promáčet, zmáčet
- dress circle** (GB) balkón
- dress rehearsal** generální zkouška
- dressing room** herecká šatna
- drive-in** (US) kino, restaurace, banka apod., kam lze vjet autem
- drum** buben
- drum sb out of st** vyhnat, vyloučit někoho z něčeho
- drum set** bicí (nástroje)

- drummer** bubeník
drumstick palička na buben; pečené (drůbeží) stehno
dry point suchá jehla na rytí; rytina suchou jehlou; rytí suchou jehlou
dubbed dabovaný
dulcimer [ˈdʌlsɪmə] dulcimer (nástroj podobný cimbálu)
dustjacket obal, přebal
easel [ˈiːzəl] malířský stojan
edit stříhat, sestříhat; sestavit; připravit k vydání
educational výchovný, vzdělávací, naučný
electronic elektronický
elegy elegie, žalozpěv
emergency exit nouzový východ
emit [ɪˈmɪt] vysílat, vydávat
encounter sb [ɪnˈkaʊntə] setkat se s někým
encyclopaedia [ɪnˌsɑːkləˈpiːdiə] encyklopedie; naučný slovník
endnote koncová poznámka (na konci knihy nebo části knihy)
engraver rytec
epic [ˈepɪk] epická báseň, epos
epilogue [ˈepɪləɡ] epilog, doslov, závěr
erotic [ɪˈrɒtɪk] erotický; milostný; smyslný
etching [ˈetʃɪŋ] lept
euphonium [juːˈfəʊniəm] eufonium, malá tuba
excitement nadšení
exhibit ukázat, dát najevo; vystavovat
exhibition výstava
expectation očekávání, naděje
experimental experimentální
extras členové komparsu, statisté
facsimile reprint [fækˈsɪmɪli ˈriːprɪnt] dotisk v nezmeněném vydání
fade in zesílit zvuk; roztmívat obraz
fade out zeslabit zvuk; zatmívat obraz
faded colours vybledlé, vyrudlé barvy
failure [ˈfeɪljə] neúspěch
fanfare [ˈfænfeə] fanfára; vytroubit, vyhlásit
fantasy [ˈfæntəsi] fikce; fantazie
farce fraška
favourite (GB), favorite (US) oblíbený; oblíbenec
fiction beletrie; fikce
fiddle about, around hrát, pohrávat si; marnit čas
fife píšťala, pikola
filthy obscénní; špinavý; hnusný
fine pokuta
fire curtain bezpečnostní opona
first night premiéra
flat tón o půl tónu snížený (béčko)
flop propadák, fiasko, neúspěch
flugelhorn křídlovka
flute flétna
flyleaf, pl. flyleaves [ˈflaɪliːf] volný list, prázdný, krycí list
folk [fəʊk] lidový
follower stoupenec, přívrženeček
footnote poznámka pod čarou
foreword předmluva
foyer [ˈfɔɪeɪ] kuloár, foyer
frame rám (obrazu); okénko (filmu); zasazení, rámeček (děje)
fraudulent [ˈfrɔːdʒələnt] podvodný, falešný
free verse volný verš
French horn lesní roh
full house vyprodaný sál
gala performance [ˈɡɑːlə] gala představení
gallery galerie; nejvyšší balkón, pořadí v hledišti
gangway (GB) ulička mezi řadami sedadel
genre [ˈʒɑːnrə, ˈʒɒn-] žánr
grand piano [grænd piˈænoʊ] koncertní křídlo; klavír
graphics grafika, grafické metody, prostředky
grisly [ˈɡrɪzli] příšerný, nahánějící hrůzu
group skupina; hudební skupina
grunge [grʌndʒ] hudební a módní styl počátku 90. let 20. století; rocková móda
guesswork dohady
guitar kytara
hammond organ varhany Hammond (elektronické se dvěma klávesnicemi)
handbook příručka, průvodce
happy ending šťastný konec, happy-end
hardback vázaná kniha ve tvrdých deskách
harmonica [hɑːˈmɒnɪkə] foukací harmonika
harmonious [hɑːˈməʊniəs] harmonický; libozvučný
harmony [ˈhɑːməni] harmonie
harp [hɑːp] harfa; hrát na harfu
harp on about st stále mluvit o něčem
harpisichord [ˈhɑːpsɪkɔːd] cembalo
have a long run být dlouhou součástí repertoáru
have an ear for music mít hudební sluch
head hlava; hlavička; být v čele, vést
heading záhlaví, nadpis, titul
heavy metal heavy metal (druh rockové hudby); těžký kov
hero [ˈhɪərəʊ] hrdina
heroine [ˈhɪərəʊn] hrdinka (hlavní postava díla)
hi-hat, high hat šlapací činely (součást bicích)
hiss vypískat
historical novel historický román
humour (GB), humor (US) [ˈhjuːmə] humor; nálada, rozpoložení
hymn [hɪm] hymnus, církevní píseň, chvalozpěv
illustration [ˌɪləˈstreɪʃən] ilustrace
improvise improvizovat
in the wings v zákulisí
index, pl. indices, indexes [ˈɪndeks] seznam; rejstřík
instrumental instrumentální
intellectual property duševní vlastnictví
interior [ɪnˈtɪəriə] interiér
intermission [ˌɪntəˈmɪʃən] přestávka
interval [ˈɪntəvəl] přestávka
intrigue [ˈɪntriːɡ] intriky
introduction úvod
jacket obal, přebal, obálka
jazz džez
jazz st up (infml) dát něčemu šmrnc, trochu života
kettle drums tympány, kotle
keyboard klávesnice, klaviatura
keyboards klávesové nástroje
lacklustre [ˈlæk,lʌstə] fádni, bezduchý
landscape krajina
latecomer opozdilec
launch [lɔːntʃ] uvést na trh; vypustit
layman laik
leather binding [ˈleðə ˈbaɪndɪŋ] kožená vazba
librarian knihovník
limerick limerik (pětřádková vtipná nebo nesmyslná rýmováčka)

lino cut [ˈlaɪnəʊ kʌt] linoryt
lithograph [ˈlɪθəʊɡrɑːf] litografie
live theatre [laɪv ˈθiətə, θiˈetə] skutečné, opravdové divadlo
lobby kuloár; foyer
lullaby [ˈlʌləbaɪ] ukolébavka
lyric lyrika, lyrická báseň, píseň
lyrics text, slova, zejm. populární písně
madman blázen, šílenec
madrigal [ˈmædrɪɡəl] madrigal
mallet [ˈmæɪlt] palice, dřevěná palička
mandolin [ˌmændəˈlɪn] mandolína
mankind [ˌmænˈkaɪnd] lidstvo
manual [ˈmænjʊəl] manuál, příručka
manuscript [ˈmænjʊskrɪpt] rukopis
margin okraj
market economy [rˈkɒnəmi] tržní hospodářství
mass [mæs] mešní zpěvy; mše
matinée [ˈmætiːneɪ, ˌmætənˈeɪ] odpolední představení
melodious [məˈləʊdiəs] melodický, dobře znějící
melody [ˈmelədi] melodie, nápěv
memoirs [ˈmemwɑːz] paměti
mercy [ˈmɜːsi] milost, milosrdenství
mezzanine (US) [ˈmetsəniːn, ˈmezə-] první balkon
mezzo soprano [ˈmetsəʊ səˈprɑːnəʊ] mezzosoprán
Mills and Boon romance harlekýnka
miniature [ˈmɪnɪtʃə] miniatura; drobnokresba
minute detail [maɪˈnjuːt ˈdiːteɪl] drobný detail
misfit člověk na nesprávném místě; ztracená existence
motif [məʊˈtiːf] motiv
mouth organ foukací harmonika
mouthpiece náustek, nátrubek
movie (US) film
musical hudební; muzikální, hudebně nadaný; muzikál
musical instruments hudební nástroje
mystery detektivka
newsreel týdeník (v kině)
non-fiction literatura faktu; populárně naučná literatura
note nota; tón; klávesa
novel román; řídkěji novela
nudes akty

nursery rhyme dětská říkanka
oboe [ˈəʊbəʊ] hoboj; varhanní rejstřík
obscure nejasný
observe [əbˈzɜːv] pozorovat
ode [əʊd] óda
oil painting olejomalba, olej
on location v terénu, v realu
one-act play jednoaktovka
open-air theatre divadlo v přírodě
opera [ˈɒ(ə)prə] opera
oratorio oratorium
orchestra (US) [ˈɔrkəstrə] sedadlo v přízemí (v divadle)
orchestra pit [ˈɔːkɪstrə] místo pro orchestr, orchestřiště
orchestral orchestrální
outdoor cinema (GB) letní kino
out of tune falešný, rozladěný
output tvorba
overdue book kniha s prošlou výpůjční lhůtou
overture [ˈəʊvətʃə, ˈʊʊvətʃə] předehra
overwrite přepisovat, přepsat
painter malíř
painters' supplies malířské potřeby
pan snímáči kamera; najet, zabrat, panorámovat
panpipes Panova píšťala, syrx, moldánky
pantomime pantomima; pohádková revue hraná o Vánocích (GB)
paperback vázaná kniha v měkkých deskách
paragraph odstavec; sloupek
part část; díl; role
passage pasáž, úryvek
pastel [ˈpæstəl] pastel (obraz i barva); borytová modř
pedestal [ˈpedəstəl] podstavec, stojan, piedestal, sokl
percussion [pəˈkʌʃən] bicí, perkuse
performance představení; provedení (díla); interpretace; vystoupení
performer účinkující; umělec
periodicals [ˌpɪəriˈɒdɪkəlz] časopisy, periodický tisk
personnel [ˌpɜːsəˈnel] osazenstvo, zaměstnanci; osobní, kádrový
PG (parental guidance) mládeži přístupno v doprovodu rodičů
physique [fɪˈziːk] stavba těla, postava
piano [piˈænoʊ] klavír, piáno

piano accordion pianová, klávesová harmonika
piccino pikola (malá flétna)
pick vybrnkávat, brnkat; vybrat
picture gallery galerie, obrazárna
plates obrazová příloha
play by ear hrát podle sluchu; improvizovat
play to a packed / empty house hrát před vyprodaným / prázdným hledištěm
playwright dramatik, autor divadelní hry
plectrum [ˈplektrəm] trsátko, plektrum
plot zápletka
pluck vybrnkávat, brnkat
podium [ˈpəʊdiəm] sedadlo v amfiteátru; pódium
poem báseň
poetry poezie
popular populární
porcelain vase [ˈpɔːsəlɪn vaɪz, veɪs] porcelánová váza
pornographic [ˌpɔːnəˈgræfɪk] pornografický
portrait [ˈpɔːtrɪt, -treɪt] portrét, podobizna
practise cvičit (hru na hudební nástroj)
praise oneself chválit se
predictable předvídatelný
preface [ˈprefɪs] předmluva
premiere [ˈpremiə, ˈpremiːə] premiéra, první provedení
pretentious [prɪˈtentiʃəs] pompézní; domyšlivý, sebevědomý
previews (GB) [ˈpriːvjuz] kritiky uveřejněné před uvedením díla, filmu, atd.
previews (US) [ˈpriːvjuz] krátké ukázky z filmů promítané jako reklama, filmové upoutávky
printing tisk
producer producent; režisér (GB)
promenade [ˌprɒməˈnɑːd, ˌprɑːməˈneɪd] promenádní koncert
prompt napovědět, napovídat
prompter nápověda (v divadle)
prompter's box nápovědní budka
prose próza
pseudo-art [suːˈdɒu aːt] pseudo-umění
psychodrama [ˌsaɪkəʊˈdrɑːmə] psychologické drama
publish publikovat; vydat

- pulp** literature literární škvár
- punk music** punková hudba
- purple poetry** sentimentální poezie
- put down a book** odložit rozečtenou knihu
- quote** citovat
- rack** police, polička, přihrádka, regál, stojan
- rattle st off** odhrkat, odemlít, oddrmolit něco
- read music** znát noty; umět zpívat, hrát podle not
- reassurance** ujištění; útěcha, uklidnění
- recital** [rɪˈsaɪtəl] recitál
- recite** [rɪˈsaɪt] přednášet, recitovat, deklamovat
- recorder** [rɪˈkɔːdə] zobcová flétna
- reed** jazýček, plátek hudebního nástroje
- reel st off** odříkat, oddrmolit, odhrkat něco
- reference** reference, doporučení, vysvědčení
- reference book** příručka, informační dílo
- refuge** [ˈrefjuːdʒ] útočiště; útulek; záchrana
- rehearse** [rɪˈhɜːs] zkoušet, nacvičovat
- rehearsal** zkouška
- reject** odmítnout; propadnout
- repertory, rep** (coll) [ˈrepətəri] repertoár; repertoárové divadlo
- requiem (mass)** [ˈrekwiəm məs] rekviem, zádušní mše
- rest** pomlka, pauza
- rest on one's laurels** [ˈlɔːrəlz] usnout na vavřínech
- revert to st** vrátit se k něčemu
- revolutionary** revoluční
- rhyme** [raɪm] rým; rýmovat
- rhythm** [ˈrɪðəm] rytmus; metrum
- rhythm and blues (R & B)** směs rockenrollu a blues
- ridiculous** směšný, absurdní, zasluhující si výsměch
- rock** rock, rocková hudba
- rock'n'roll** rokenrol
- romance** [rəʊˈmæns, ˈrəʊmæns] milostný román; rytířský román; romance (hud.)
- royalties** autorský honorář (daný procenty z prodaných knih), tantiémy; licenční poplatek, poplatek z patentu
- rushes** promítání výsledku denního natáčení filmu
- safety curtain** bezpečnostní (ohnivzdorná) opona v divadle
- saga** [ˈsɑːgə] sága, legenda
- scale** stupnice; škála; rozsah hudebního nástroje
- scan** mít správný rytmus (o verši)
- scene** [siːn] jevištní výstup; scéna; árie
- scenery** [ˈsiːnəri] dekorace, kulisy, výprava
- sci-fi film** [ˈsaɪfaɪ] vědeckofantastický film
- science fiction** vědeckofantastická literatura, film
- screenplay** filmový scénář
- script** scénář, text
- scriptwriter** autor textu, scénárista
- sculptor** sochař
- sculpture** [ˈskʌlptʃə] socha, sousoší, sochařství; plastika
- section** knižní arch; úsek; část; oddíl
- secular** světský
- sequel** [ˈsiːkwəl] řada, série
- serious** vážný
- set** scéna
- set to music** zhudebnit
- shape** tvar, forma; podoba
- sharp** tón zvýšený o půl tónu (křížek)
- shoot a film** točit film
- shot** záběr (ve filmu); snímek, fotografie
- show sb to their seats** uvést na místa (v divadle, v kině apod.)
- side drum** malý bubínek s dvěma paličkami
- sight-read** umět číst, hrát z listu
- sitar** [ˈsɪtɑː] sitar (indický hudební nástroj)
- sketch** náčrtek, náčrt, črta, skica
- slapstick comedy** groteska; klauniáda
- slow motion, slo-mo** (coll) zpomalený film
- snare drum** [ˈsneədrʌm] malý bubínek
- sold out** vyprodáno
- soloist** [ˈsəʊləɪst] sólista
- sonata** [səˈnɑːtə] sonáta
- sonnet** [ˈsɒnɪt] sonet, krátká lyrická milostná báseň
- soprano** [səˈprɑːnəʊ] soprán; sopránista, sopránistka
- sound track** zvuková stopa, zvukový záznam
- spatula** [ˈspætjʊlə] špachtle, stěrka
- special effects** zvláštní efekty
- spine** hřbet knihy
- spinnet** [spiˈnet] spinet, krátké pianino
- spy novel** špionážní román
- stacks** sklad knih v knihovně
- staff, pl. staves** notová osnova, linky
- stage** jeviště, scéna; divadlo; drama
- stage crew** štáb
- stage designer** jevištní návrhář
- stage fright** tréma
- stage hand** kulisák
- stage manager** hlavní inspicient
- stage props** rekvizity
- stand in for sb** zastoupit někoho
- stand-in** dvojník, dubl
- standing ovation** ovace, potlesk vestoje
- stanza** [ˈstænzə] verš, strofa
- statue** socha
- still life** zátiší
- stringed instruments** strunné, smyčcové nástroje
- strum** drkat na hudební nástroj
- studio** (malířský) ateliér; (filmové, televizní) studio
- stunt-man / woman** dvojník, kaskadér
- subject matter** téma, námět, obsah
- subsidise** [ˈsʌbsɪdaɪz] podporovat, subvencovat
- subtitles** titulky
- suite** [swiːt] suita
- summary** shrnutí, krátký obsah
- superstitious** [ˌsuːpəˈstɪʃəs] pověřčivý
- supplement** příloha; dodatek
- supporting part** vedlejší role
- symphonic poem** symfonická báseň
- symphony** symfonie
- synthesiser** [ˈsɪnθesaɪzə] syntetizátor
- take curtain calls** děkovat se před oponou
- talkies** (historical) zvukové filmy
- tambourine** [ˌtæmbəˈriːn] tamburína
- tapestry** goblén, tapisérie
- tasteless** fádňí, neslaný nemastný; nevkusný, netaktní
- tearjerker** [ˌtiːəˈdʒɜːkə] doják, sentimentální kýč
- technique** [tekˈniːk] způsob, postup, technika, technologie
- techno** [ˈteknəʊ] techno

tenor [ˈtenə] tenor; tenorista
textbook učebnice
theme music hlavní melodie
thesaurus [θɪˈsɔːrəs] tezaurus, tematický slovník
thriller napínavý román, film, detektivka
title titul, název
tocatta and fugue [təˈkɑːtə, fjuːg] tokáta (skladba pro klávesové nástroje) a fuga
tone-deaf bez hudebního sluchu
tongue twister jazykolam
touching dojmavý
traditional [trəˈdɪʃ(ə)nəl] tradiční
tragedian [ˈtrædʒɪdiən] tragéd; autor tragédií
tragedy [ˈtrædʒədi] tragédie; tragika
tragicomedy tragikomedie
trailers (GB) krátké ukázky z filmů promítané jako reklama, upoutávky
translated by BF přeložil(a) BF
trapdoor propadliště v divadle
trash kýč, umělecký brak
travel film cestopisný film
travelogue [ˈtrævəlɒg] cestopis (film, článek, kniha, přednáška s diapositivy)
triangle [ˈtraɪæŋɡl] triangl; trojúhelník
trilogy [ˈtrɪlədʒi] trilogie
trombone pozoun(ista), trombón(ista)
trump up zinscenovat, zosnovat
trumpet trubka, trumpeta; trumpetista
tuba [ˈtjuːbə] tuba
tune melodie, nápěv; čistý zvuk nástroje
tune (up) naladit
unauthorized [ʌnˈɔːθəraɪzd] neoprávněný; nedovolený, nepovolený
understudy náhradník, záskok
U-film (universal) (GB) film přístupný mládeži
unputdownable (coll) poutavý (o knize)
upset rozčilený
usher(ette) [ˈʌʃə, ˈʌʃəˈret] uvaděč(ka)
utensils [juˈtensɪlz] nástroje; nádobí
variety show [vəˈraɪəti] varietní představení, estráda
variety theatre varieté
varnish lak; politura; glazura
verse verš; poezie
vibes (jazz) [vaɪbz] vibrafon (džez)

villain [ˈvɪlən] zlosyn, padouch, ničema
viola [viˈəʊlə] viola
violin [ˌvaɪəˈlɪn] housle
vocal vokální, hlasový
vocalist [ˈvəʊkəlɪst] zpěvák
voices (pěvecké) hlasy
wind instrument [wɪnd ˈɪnstrəmənt] dechový nástroj
woodcarver řezbář
woodcut dřevoryt, dřevorezba
woodwind instrument dřevěný dechový hudební nástroj
work out vymyslet; vypracovat
xylophone [ˈzaɪləfəʊn] xylofon

EDUCATION

academic [ˌækəˈdemɪk] akademický; teoretický; vědecký
ADD (attention deficit disorder) porucha schopnosti se soustředit
admission přijetí
admit [ədˈmɪt] přijímat; připustit
afford to do st [əˈfɔːd] dovolit si něco
A-level závěrečná zkouška na vyšší střední škole před vstupem na univerzitu
analyze [ˈænəlaɪz] analyzovat, rozebrat (problém, situaci apod.)
apply for a scholarship žádat o stipendium
appoint jmenovat
apprentice school učiliště
art umění; výtvarné umění; dovednost
arts humanitní, společenské vědy
assembly hall školní aula
assistant principal (US) zástupce ředitele
award a degree udělit titul
BA (Bachelor of Arts) Bc., bakalářský stupeň v humanitních vědách
BA (Hons) Bc s vyznamenáním, tzv. červený diplom
backward zaostalý, opožděný ve vývoji
beatings bití
boarding school internátní škola
break (GB) přestávka
BSc (Bachelor of Science) Bc., bakalář přírodních věd
bulletin board (US) [ˈbʊlətɪn bɔːd] nástěnka, vývěsní tabule
bully [ˈbʊli] týrat, šikanovat, zstrašovat, tyranizovat
bunk sb for st vyhodit, vyloučit někoho (ze školy) kvůli něčemu
by mistake omylem
cafeteria [ˌkæfəˈtɪəriə] jídelna (se samoobsluhou)
campus [ˈkæmpəs] areál univerzity, kampus, akademická půda
certificate [səˈtɪfɪkət] osvědčení; vysvědčení
chalk křída
chancellor (GB) [ˈtʃɑːnsələ] rektor univerzity
cheat sheet tahák
chemistry [ˈkemɪstri] chemie
chess šach
classics klasická studia (zabývající se starověkým Řeckem a Římem)

- class** třída, hodina, ročník, úroveň
classroom třída (místnost)
co-ed pro dívky i chlapce, koedukovaný
college vysoká škola, univerzita; vyšší střední škola; akademie; britská střední škola, kde se platí školné
collocation kolokace, ustálené slovní spojení
community service veřejně prospěšné práce
compared to st v porovnání s něčím
complete a degree in... dokončit studium... (čeho)
compulsory subjects povinné předměty
computer room počítačová učebna
concentrate on st soustředit se na něco
confident of, about st jistý, přesvědčený o něčem
cooking and housekeeping vaření a domácí práce
correct opravit, opravovat
course ['kɔ:s] kurs
cover for sb zastupovat někoho
courteous towards sb ['kɜ:tiəs] zdvořilý k někomu
cram for šprtat se, dřít, biflovat na
cramming šprtání, biflování
credit kredit (za dokončení předmětu); zápočet
crib tahák
curriculum [kə'rikjʊləm] učební plán, studijní program, učební osnovy
custodian (US) [kʌs'təʊdiən] školník
dean děkan
department head vedoucí oddělení, katedry
deputy head (GB) zástupce ředitele
designated ['deziɡneɪtɪd] určený
dilemma [di'leɪmə, daɪ'leɪmə] těžké rozhodování, dilema
dining hall jídelna
discourage st bránit něčemu
distinguish st from st else odlišovat něco od něčeho jiného
do one's homework dělat úkoly
do research into zabývat se výzkumem něčeho
dorm (coll US, dormitory) studentské koleje; ubytovna
dress code oblečení vyžadované pro určitou příležitost
economics [i:kə'nɒmiks, ekə-] ekonomie, ekonomika; ekonomická stránka
elective subjects volitelné předměty
element ['elɪmənt] prvek
eligible for st ['elɪdʒəbl] způsobilý k něčemu; kvalifikovaný; mít nárok na něco
emphasis on ['empfəsɪs] důraz na
empowered to st zplnomocněný k něčemu
endowment [ɪn'dəʊmənt] dotace
enrol (GB), **enroll** (US) zapsat se, přihlásit se; přijmout ke studiu
enrolment zápis, přihlášení
enter higher education jít na vysokou školu
entrance exam přijímací zkouška
examine zkoušet
exceptional výjimečný, mimořádný, zvláštní, neobyčejný
expelled [ɪk'speld] vyloučený (ze školy)
explore zkoumat, bádát
extra-curricular activities mimoškolní zájmová činnost
evening classes večerní kursy
fail an exam neuspět u zkoušky, neudělat zkoušku
fall behind the class zaostávat za třídou
field trip exkurze
first-degree course bakalářské studium
focus on st zaměřit se na něco
formal formální, oficiální
freshman student prvního ročníku VŠ (v USA i SŠ)
geography [dʒɪ:'bɒɡrəfi]
go to university navštěvovat univerzitu
gown [gaʊn] talár
grade známkovat, hodnotit; známka; třída
graduate from... with honours ukončit střední školu (US), promovat... (GB) s vyznamenáním
graduate in... (US) maturovat z...
graduation ceremony promoce
grammar school (GB) výběrová střední škola
Greek řečtina
guidance counsellor ['ɡaɪdəns 'kaʊnsələ] výchovný poradce
gymnasium, gym (coll) tělocvična
halls of residence (GB) studentské koleje
have a degree in... mít titul, vysokoškolské vzdělání v oboru...
headmaster, headmistress, the head (GB) ředitel, ředitelka
headmaster's office ředitelna
highlight zdůraznit, vyzdvihnout (informace)
high school (US) střední škola
history dějiny, historie
home economics [i:kə'nɒmiks, ekə-] nauka o vedení domácnosti
hostel (GB) ['hɒstəl] kolej; ubytovna; noclehárna
idleness lenost
illiterate [ɪ'lɪtəɪt] negramotný, analfabet
in contrast to st oproti něčemu
independent school soukromá střední škola
influence ovlivňovat
informal neformální, neoficiální
insert [ɪn'sɜ:t] vložit, připojit
janitor (GB) ['dʒæniətə] školník
jot down poznamenat si
junior student nižší střední školy
keep a diary vést si deník
knock sb down shodit, svalit, srazit někoho
lag behind the class zaostávat za třídou
Latin latina
learn učit se, naučit se
lecture přednášet; přednáška
lecture hall posluchárna; aula
lecturer vysokoškolský učitel
locker room šatna s uzamykatelnými skříňkami
lunch room školní jídelna
MA (Master of Arts) Mgr., titul magistra
make a mistake udělat chybu
maladjusted [ˌmælə'dʒʌstɪd] nepřízpůsobivý, neadaptabilní
mark známkovat; známka
master učitel, profesor
mathematics, maths [ˌmæθə'mætɪks, mæθs] matematika
mature student dospělý student
memorise učit se z paměti
misconduct špatné chování
mock-exam cvičná zkouška, zkouška na zkoušku
mortarboard ['mɔ:təbɔ:d] baret nošený studenty a vyučujícími při slavnostních příležitostech
music hudební výchova, zpěv

- notice board** (GB) nástěnka
- nursery school** mateřská škola
- obligatory** povinný
- off the roll** vyřazený ze seznamu studentů
- open access** volný přístup
- optional subject** nepovinný, volitelný předmět
- oral** ['ɔ:rəl] ústní
- Oxbridge** univerzity v Oxfordu a Cambridgi
- paper** písemná zkouška, práce, test; kompozice; referát
- parents' meeting** třídní schůzka
- pass an exam** udělat, složit zkoušku
- pay attention** dávat pozor
- pencil case** pouzdro
- permanent** stálý, trvalý
- PhD** doktor přírodních věd; doktor filosofie
- physically (or mentally) handicapped** tělesně (nebo duševně) postižený
- physical training / education (PT, PE)** tělesná výchova, tělocvik
- physics** fyzika
- picking up rubbish** sbírání odpadků
- play truant** chodit za školu
- poor** [pɔ:, pʊə] špatný
- precocious** [pri'kəʊʃəs] předčasně vyspělý (zejm. duševně)
- president** (US) ['prezɪdənt] děkan, rektor
- prevent sb from doing st** zabránit někomu, aby něco udělal
- private schools** soukromé školy
- professor** profesor(ka) na vysoké škole
- public school** (GB) soukromá střední škola
- public school** (US) státní střední škola
- publicly-funded** dotovaný státem
- push sb around** komandovat někoho, sekýrovat, zametat s někým
- put up with** vyrovnat se s
- raise finance** získat peníze
- read** číst; studovat na univerzitě (určitý obor)
- recess** (US) [ri'ses, 'ri:-] přestávka (ve škole)
- recruiter** [ri'kru:tə] náborový pracovník
- review** (US) opakovat (naučené); kritika, recenze
- revise** (GB) opakovat (naučené)
- schedule** (US) ['ʃedju:l, 'sked-] rozvrh hodin
- school fees** školní poplatky, školné
- school principal** (US) ředitel školy
- school report** vysvědčení
- secondary school** střední škola
- semester** (US) [si'mestə, sə'mestə] semestr
- senior** ['si:niə, -njə] student vyššího ročníku
- sent down** (euph) vyloučen
- sit (for) an exam** dělat zkoušku
- skip classes** chodit za školu, ulejšvat se
- slow upstairs** trošku pomalejší (v myšlení)
- sophomore** ['sɒfəmə:] student/ka druhého ročníku střední školy, univerzity
- special pupil** žák zvláštní školy
- special school** zvláštní škola
- spoilt and ill-mannered** rozmazlený a nevychovaný
- standardized examinations** jednotné zkoušky
- state schools** státní školy
- stand in for sb** zastupovat někoho
- student** student (vysoké školy)
- substitute for sb** suplovat za někoho, zastupovat někoho
- suspend sb from school** vyloučit někoho ze školy
- swot** (infml) šprtat, biflovat, drtit se
- syllabus** program, plán
- take an exam in st** dělat zkoušku z něčeho
- take attendance** dělat docházku, zjišťovat, kdo je přítomen
- teach** učit
- teachers' room** sborovna
- teaching assistant (T.A.)** asistent učitele
- term** (GB) semestr
- timetable** (GB) rozvrh hodin
- tough** [tʌf] drsný, tvrdý, hrubý
- tuition (charges, fees)** [tju:'ɪʃən] školné, poplatky za vzdělávání
- tutor** učitel; doučovatel
- undergraduate** vysokoškolský student, posluchač, který ještě nezískal titul bakaláře
- underachiever** neúspěšný student
- unfamiliarity** [ʌnfə'mɪli'ærəti] neznalost, novost
- unteachable** nevzdělatelný
- urge sb** naléhat na někoho
- vandalise** ['vændəlaɪz] (z)ničit, (z)devastovat
- write down** zapisovat si
- write (il)legibly** psát (ne)čitelně
- written** psaný, písemný

HOLIDAYS

a penny for the guy pence pro figurinu představující Guy Fawkesa

affection zalíbení, náklonnost, láska

All Fools Day 1. duben, Apríl

All Saints' Day svátek Všech svatých

annual ceremony [ˈænjʊəl ˈserɪməni] každoroční oslava

April Fools Day Apríl

Armistice (GB) [ˈɑ:mɪstɪs] Den příměří (11. 11. 1918)

assassinate [əˈsæsɪneɪt] úkladně zavraždit, spáchat atentát (zvláště z politických důvodů)

August Bank Holiday (GB) den pracovního volna v srpnu, státem uznaný svátek, kdy jsou zavřeny všechny banky (poslední pondělí)

Babes in the Wood název pohádky (o perníkové chaloupce)

banging [bæŋɪŋ] bouchání, práskání, střílení

bauble [ˈbɔʊbl̩] cetka, tretka

Beauty and the Beast Kráska a zvíře

become commercialised stát se komerčním

Boxing Day sv. Štěpána, 2. svátek vánoční, 26. prosinec

bun (GB) [bʌn] buchtička; drdol

bunny zajíček

burn bonfires [ˈbɒnfʌɪəz] dělat ohně

candle svíčka

carol koleda

carp kapr

celebrate [ˌseləˈbreɪt] slavit, oslavovat

cemetery [ˈsemətəri, ˈseməˌteri] hřbitov

Christian holiday [ˈkrɪstɪən, -tɪən] křesťanský svátek

Christmas Day [ˈkrɪsməs deɪ] Boží hod vánoční, 25. prosinec

Christmas Eve Štědrý večer, Štědrý den, 24. prosinec

Christmas greetings vánoční přání

Christmas tree vánoční stromček

Cinderella [ˌsɪndəˈrelə, -dəˈrel-] Popelka

civil rights občanská práva

clergyman duchovní, zejm. anglikánský kněz

colley bird [ˈkɒli bɜ:d] kos (nářečí)

Columbus Day (US) Kolumbův den (připomíná 12. 10. 1492)

commemorate připomínat

common obvyklý, běžný

consistently důsledně

conspirator [kənˈspɪrətə] spiklenec, konspirátor

convict [ˈkɒnvɪkt] odsouzený, odsouzenec, trestanec

convicted [kənˈvɪktɪd] odsouzený

cookies (US) koláčky, sušenky, drobné cukroví

cranberry sauce brusinková omáčka; kompot

dangle from houpat se, viset na

declare slavnostně, veřejně vyhlásit, prohlásit

decorate zdobit, ozdobit

delete vymazat, smazat

descent [dɪˈsent] původ (people of ... descent)

do Christmas shopping dělat vánoční nákupy

douse [daʊs] polít vodou

dyed or painted eggs barvená nebo malovaná vajíčka

Easter egg hunt hledání velikonočních vajíček

Easter lamb [læm] velikonoční beránek

Easter Monday velikonoční pondělí

Easter Sunday Boží hod velikonoční

egg nog vaječný koňak

Epiphany, Twelfth-Night [ˈɪpɪfəni, ˈeɪfɪ-] svátek Tří králů

execute [ˈeksɪkjʊt] popravít

express one's affection for sb vyjádřit svoji lásku, náklonnost k někomu

fairy víla; napřirozená pohádková bytost

fairy tale [ˈfeəri, ˈferi] pohádka

Father Christmas / Santa Claus

Father's Day (US) svátek otců

feast svátek

firework ohňostroj

flying of flags vyvěšování praporů

fruit cake biskupský chlebiček

full moon úplněk

generous velkorysý; štědrý; bohatý

ghost [gəʊst] duch, strašidlo

gift dar, dárek

give thanks for a good harvest vzdávat díky za dobrou úrodu

goblin (zlý) skřítek, šotek

gold ring zlatý prsten

Good Friday Velký pátek

goose, pl. geese husa

grave [ɡreɪv] hrob; hrobka, náhrobek

guard-mounting ceremony přehlídka královských stráží na koních

Gunpowder Plot spiknutí, pokus vyhodit do povětří londýnský parlament 5. 11. 1605

Guy Fawkes Night, Bonfire Night (GB) výročí dne 5. 11. 1605

Halloween předvečer Všech svatých

hard-boiled eggs vejce na tvrdo

hide schovat

holly [ˈhɒli] cesmína

Holy Saturday [ˈhəʊli] Bílá sobota

homemade ornaments doma vyrobené ozdoby

honour (GB), **honor** (US) [ˈɒnə] vzdát čest; uctívat; čest

hot cross buns velikonoční pečivo

Independence Day (US) Den nezávislosti

ingredient [ɪŋˈɡri:diənt] složka, součást, přísada, ingredience

International Children's Day Mezinárodní den dětí

International Students' Day Mezinárodní den studentů

ironically [aɪˈrɒnɪkli] paradoxně, ironií osudu

jack-o'-lantern [dʒæk əʊ ˈlæntən] vydlaná tykev s otvory pro oči a ústa

Jingle Bells Rolničky

Labor Day (US, Canada) Svátek práce

lay wreaths [leɪ ri:θs] pokládat věnce

leap [li:p] skočit, skákat

Liberation Day Den osvobození

Little Red Riding Hood Červená Karkulka

Lord Mayor's Show (GB) [lɔ:d meəz ʃəʊ] slavnostní průvod na oslavu londýnského starosty

maid služka; děvečka

Martin Luther King Day (US) Den Martina Luthera Kinga

mask maska, škraboška; kukla

maundy [mɔ:ndi] obřadné mytí nohou chudým na Zelený čtvrtek

Maundy Thursday Zelený čtvrtek

May Day 1. máj

May Day Bank Holiday (GB) den pracovního volna 1. května, státem uznaný svátek, kdy jsou zavřeny všechny banky

maypole májka, máj

HOLIDAYS

- Memorial Day** (US) Den obětí války
memorial service bohoslužba
k uctění památky zesnulých
- Midsummer Day** (GB) svátek sv.
Jana (24. 6.)
- mince-pie** [ˈmɪnsˈpaɪ] vánoční plněné
pečivo
- mincemeat** [ˈmɪnsmi:t] nadrobno
nasekaná směs jablek, sušeného
ovoce, hrozinek, pomerančové kůry
s cukrem; sekané maso
- monarch** [ˈmɒnək] panovník, -ice,
vládce, vladař
- monument** památník
- Mother's Day** Den matek
- nativity scene / crib / creche**
[nəˈtɪvɪti sɪn.kreʃ,kreɪʃ] jesličky,
betlém
- New Year's Day** Nový rok
- New Year's Eve** Silvestr
- non-Christian** [ˌnɒnˈkrɪstʃən, -tʃən]
nikoli křesťanský
- non-violence** nenásilí
- observe** [əbˈzɜ:v] slavít, držet (svá-
tek)
- official public holiday** oficiální státní
svátek
- pagan** [ˈpeɪɡən] pohan, neznaboh;
pohanský
- pagan festival** [ˈfestɪvəl] pohanský
svátek
- pantomime** (GB) [ˈpæntəmɪm]
pantomima, groteskní pohádková
revue hraná zejména o Vánocích;
- paper chain** papírový řetěz
- parade** [pəˈreɪd] přehlídka
- pay respect to** uctívat památku
- Peter Pan** hrdina hry J. M. Barrieho
- piper** dudák
- place / lay (a wreath)** [ri:θ] položit
(věnec)
- plait a birch rod** [plæt] plést mrs-
kačku
- play a trick on sb** vystřelil si z ně-
koho
- play pranks on sb** provádět žertíky
- pram** kočárek
- preach** kázat; mluvit veřejně
- Presidents' Day** (US) Den prezidentů
- pretend to be...** předstírat, že je...
- previously** dříve, předtím
- pumpkin pie** dýňový koláč
- Puss in Boots** Kocour v botách
- rank among...** patřit, náležet k, být
zařazen mezi...
- regimental** patřící pluku, plukovní
- reindeer** [ˈreɪnˌdɪə] sob
- Remembrance Sunday** (GB)
vzpomínka na vojáky padlé v obou
světových válkách
- reveal** odhalit; prozradit; zjevit
- rocket** rachejtle
- scarecrow** [ˈskeəˌkrəʊ] strašák,
strašidlo, hastrůš
- Scots pine, Scotch fir** borovice lesní
- Season's Greetings** formální přání
k svátkům vánočním a k Novému
roku
- Silent Night** Tichá noc
- shamrock** [ˈʃæmˌrɒk] trojlístek,
symbol Irska
- snowman** sněhulák
- sovereign** [ˈsɒvrɪn] panovník, -ice,
vladař
- sparklers** prskavky
- spinach** [ˈspɪnɪʃ] špenát
- sprigs of mistletoe** [ˈmɪsɪtəʊ] vět-
vičky jmelí
- Spring Bank Holiday** (GB) den
pracovního volna na jaře, státem
uznaný svátek, kdy jsou zavřeny
všechny banky
- spring equinox** [ˈi:kwɪnɒks] jarní
rovnodennost
- spruce** smrk
- squib** [skwɪb] papírová trubka nebo
koule naplněná pyrotechnickým
prachem; rachejtle
- St. George's Day** (GB) svátek sv. Jiří
- St. Patrick's Day** (Ireland, US) svá-
tek sv. Patrika
- St. Valentine's Day** svátek sv. Valen-
týna
- starvation** hladovění; smrt hladem
- string of lights** šňůra světel
- strings of popcorn** řetězky z pražené
kukuřice
- stuffed roast turkey** pečený krocán
s nádivkou
- swan** [swɒn] labuť
- sweethearts' day** den zamilovaných
- Teachers' Day** (CZ) Den učitelů
- Thanksgiving** (US) Den děkuvzdání
- tinsel** [ˈtɪnsəl] cetka; lesklá, blyšková
nitka
- token** [ˈtəʊkən] znak, znamení,
důkaz
- Tomb of the Unknown Soldier**
[tu:m] hrob Neznámého vojína
- torture** [ˈtɔ:tʃə] mučení, týrání;
tortura
- treat** dárek, malá radost
- trinket** [ˈtrɪŋkɪt] maličkost, drobnost;
laciný šperk; cetka, ozdoba
- Trooping the Colour, Official Birth-
day** (GB) slavnosti přehlídka oddílů
stráže s vlajkami v den oficiálních
narozenin královny
- turtle dove** [ˈtɜ:tɪˈdʌv] hrdlička
- twig** větvička, snítka
- unwrap** [ʌnˈræp] rozbalit, rozbalovat
- Veterans' Day** (US) Den veteránů
(1. světové války)
- veterans of military services** veteráni
vojenské služby
- walnut** vlašský ořech
- White Christmas** Bílé Vánoce
- witch** [wɪtʃ] čarodějnice
- wreath** [ri:θ] věnec
- Xmas** [ˈeksməs] Vánoce

MODERN SOCIETY

A-bomb atomová bomba
abuse [ə'bjʊ:s] zneužívat
accept terms přijmout podmínky, požadavky
accuse sb of st [ə'kju:z] obvinít někoho z něčeho
achieve a marginal victory [i'mɑ:dʒɪnəl] zvítězit těsnou většinou
achieve a sweeping victory dosáhnout drtivého vítězství
activist ['æktɪvɪst] aktivista
acts of violence násilné činy
administration vláda; exekutiva
adoption [ə'dɒpʃ(ə)n] adopce, osvojení
advances in st pokrok, rozvoj něčeho
afflict [ə'flɪkt] postihnout
air-cushion vehicle [ə'e'kuʃ(ə)n'vi:k(ə)l] vznášedlo
anarchist ['ænəkɪst] anarchista
answerphone telefonní záznamník
anti-nuclear opponents [ˌænti'nju:kliə] odpůrci atomové energie
anti-Semitism antisemitismus
arms race závody ve zbrojení
artificial umělý
assumption předpoklad, domněnka
astronaut ['æstrɔ:nɔ:t] astronaut
atomic / nuclear power station atomová elektrárna
attack from ambush [ə'tæk 'æmbʊʃ] napadnout ze zálohy
automatic camera automatický fotoaparát, kompak
awarding ceremony slavnostní předávání cen
backward zastaralý, zaostalý
balance of trade obchodní bilance
ballistic missiles [bɔ'lɪstɪk 'mɪsɪlz] balistické střely
ballot box volební urna
ballot paper hlasovací lístek
bankruptcy ['bæŋkrəptsi] bankrot
beat an attack odrazit útok
besiege in vain [bɪ'si:dʒ] marně obléhat
biomass biomasa
biotechnology [ˌbaɪəʊtek'nɒlədʒɪ] biotechnologie
blockade blokáda; blokovat
bombing bombardování

bow [bau] sklonit se, sklonit hlavu; poklona
break a truce [tru:s] porušit příměří
break off přerušit
bring down svrhnout
bring sb to trial postavit někoho před soud
bring in reinforcements [ˌrɪ:ɪn'fɔ:smənts] přivolat posily
by-election doplňovací volby
Cabinet kabinet, vláda
calculator kalkulačka
call a truce [tru:s] vyhlásit příměří, klid zbraní
capture ['kæptʃə] zajmout
caretaker government prozatímní vláda
cast a vote volit
cease-fire [ˌsi:s'faɪə] příměří, klid zbraní; zastavení palby
centralised centralizovaný
centrist přívrženec politického středu
chairman předseda
Chamber of Deputies poslanecká sněmovna
charged with st obviněn, obžalován z něčeho
cheap labour levná pracovní síla
Christian Democratic Party Křesťansko-demokratická unie
Civic Democratic Alliance Občanská demokratická aliance
Civic Democratic Party Občanská demokratická strana
civil občanský, občanskoprávní; státní
Clean Hands campaign akce Čisté ruce
cloning klonování
coalition [kəʊə'lɪʃən] koalice
collapse [kə'læps] zhroutení; konec; zhroutit se
combat st ['kɒmbæt] bojovat proti něčemu, potírat něco; boj, zápas
commerce obchod
commit páchat
Communist dictatorship komunistická diktatura
Communist Party Komunistická strana
competitiveness konkurenceschopnost
computer technology [tek'nɒlədʒɪ] počítačová technologie
consequence následek, důsledek
constituency [kən'stɪtjuənsɪ] volební okrsek, obvod

constitutionally barred dle ústavy nepřipustný
contaminate [kən'tæmɪneɪt] znečistit, zamořit
convert [kən'vɜ:t] přeměnit, konvertovat; [ˈkɒnvɜ:t] konvertita
corrupt [kə'rʌpt] kazit, zkažit; podplacený, zkorumpovaný
corruption [kə'rʌpʃən] korupce, úplatkářství
cosmonaut ['kɒzməʊnɔ:t] kosmonaut (zvl. sovětský)
counterpart protějšek
cross-party coalition koalice napříč stranami
cultural diversity [daɪ'vɜ:sɪti, dɪ'vɜ:rsəti] kulturní rozdílnost, odlišnost, rozmanitost
curfew ['kɜ:fju:] zákaz vycházení
deadly (weapon) smrtelný, smrtelnosný (zbraň)
declare a truce vyhlásit příměří, klid zbraní
declare war on sb vyhlásit někomu válku
decommission [ˌdi:kə'mɪʃən] odevzdání (a zneškodnění)
demoralisation demoralizace
deploy peace-keeping troops rozmístit mírová vojska, mírové jednotky
deprivation [ˌdeprɪ'veɪʃən] deprivace
desperate zoufalý
despise sb [dɪ'spaɪz] opovrhovat, pohrdat někým
destroy local culture zničit místní kulturu
developed country průmyslová, rozvinutá země
developing country rozvojová země
disastrous katastrofální
discriminate against sb diskriminovat někoho
disputes over... pře, debaty...
dynamite ['daɪnəmaɪt] dynamit
economic opportunities [ˌi:kə'nɒmɪk, -'nɑ:mɪk, ekə] ekonomické možnosti
economic problems [ˌi:kə'nɒmɪk 'prɒbləmz] hospodářské problémy
economic reasons ekonomické důvody
economic stability hospodářská stabilita
economical (car...) [ˌi:kə'nɒmɪkəl] úsporný, hospodárný (automobil...)

- election(s)** volby
- electoral register, roll** [rəʊl] soupis, seznam voličů
- electorate** [ɪˈlektərət] voliči
- emigrate** [ˈemɪɡreɪt] emigrovat, vystěhovat se
- enterprise** podnik
- email** nést s sebou, znamenat; mít za následek
- engineering** strojírenství; strojírenský
- entitled to...** mít nárok na...
- environmental groups** ekologická sdružení, skupiny
- equal opportunities / rights** rovné příležitosti / práva
- ethnic minority groups** [ˈeθnɪk] etnické menšiny
- exploitation** [ˌeksplɔɪˈteɪʃən] vykořisťování; zneužívání; čerpání (zdrojů)
- extinction** vyhynutí, vymření, zánik
- fax** [fæks] fax
- feel contempt for sb** opovrhovat někým
- first-past-the-post** většinový volební systém
- flee** uprchnout, utéci
- flying saucer** [ˈsɔːsə] létající talíř
- Freedom Union** Unie svobody
- gain / win a seat** získat křeslo
- gasohol** palivová směs benzínu (90%) a etylalkoholu (10%)
- general election** všeobecné volby
- genetic engineering** genetické inženýrství
- genetically modified foods** geneticky upravené potraviny
- geothermal energy** geotermální energie
- global street parties** shromáždění na ulicích proti globalizaci
- globalisation** globalizace
- go off** vybuchnout
- go to the polls** jít k volbám, jít volit
- government** vláda
- guerrilla movement** [gəˈrɪlə] partyzánské hnutí
- Gypsies** Cikáni, Romové
- harvest** sklízet, sbírat; žně
- H-bomb (hydrogen bomb)** [ˈeɪtʃbɒm ˈhaɪdrɪdʒən bɒm] vodíková bomba, puma
- hand over one's weapons** odevzdat zbraně
- harness** využít (energii), spoutat; postroj (na koně)
- hatred of, for sb** nenávisť k někomu
- House of Commons** (GB) poslanecká sněmovna
- House of Lords** (GB) horní sněmovna, sněmovna lordů
- House of Representatives** (US) sněmovna reprezentantů
- hovercraft** vznášedlo
- hung parliament** parlament neschopný dojít k rozhodnutí (v němž žádná strana nemá výraznou většinu)
- humane** humánní, lidský
- hydroelectric power station** vodní elektrárna
- illegal** nelegální
- IMF - International Monetary Fund** MMF – Mezinárodní měnový fond
- immigrate** [ˈɪmɪɡreɪt] imigrovat, přistěhovat se
- impact on the environment** vliv na životní prostředí
- impoverish** ožebračit; vyčerpat (půdu)
- incentive of entry into the EU** [ɪnˈsentɪv] stimul vstupu do EU
- independence** nezávislosť
- indict for...** [ɪnˈdaɪt] obvinít z...
- inflict heavy losses** způsobit velké ztráty
- information about safety measures** informace o bezpečnostních opatřeních
- integrate into the majority community** integrovat se do většinové společnosti
- intimidation** zastrašování
- invention** vynález
- Internet (the)** Internet
- jailed for life** být uvězněn na doživotí, odpykávat si doživotní trest odnětí svobody
- jeopardise** [ˈdʒeɪpədaɪz] ohrozit
- land on the moon** přistát na Měsíci
- landslide victory** drtivé vítězství (ve volbách)
- laser** laser
- lasting cease-fire** trvalé příměří
- launch an attack** [lɔːntʃ] zahájit útok
- left-wing** levicový
- legal** legální
- life imprisonment** doživotí
- light bulb** žárovka
- local election** volby do místních zastupitelstev
- Lord Chancellor** (GB) lord kancléř (předseda sněmovny lordů)
- lose a decisive battle** prohrát rozhodující bitvu
- lose a seat** ztratit křeslo
- Lower Chamber** (GB) dolní sněmovna, poslanecká sněmovna
- lunar landing** [ˈluːnə ˈlændɪŋ] přistání na Měsíci
- majority party** většinová strana
- make excuses** vymlouvat se
- manned flight** let s lidskou posádkou
- market-oriented** tržně orientovaný
- meteors and meteorites** [ˈmiːtɔːz ˈmiːtɔːrɪts] meteory a meteority
- methanol** [ˈmeθənl] metanol, metylalkohol
- minority party** menšinová strana
- mobbed** obklopen, napaden davem
- mobile (phone)** [ˈməʊbaɪl, ˈmɔʊbəl] mobilní telefon
- money laundering** praní špinavých peněz
- moral implications** etické důsledky
- negotiate** jednat, vyjednat, dohodnout
- no-confidence vote** hlasování o důvěře
- Nobel Prize** [nəʊˈbeɪˌpraɪz] Nobelova cena
- oppose st** být, postavit se proti
- oust sb from power** [aʊst] zbavit někoho vlády, připravit o moc
- outstanding** významný
- overhead projector (OHP)** zpětný projektor
- overwhelming** ohromný, drtivý, naprostý
- perceive** [pəˈsiːv] vnímat
- persecution** [ˌpɜːsɪˈkjuːʃən] pronásledování
- photocopier** [ˈfəʊtəʊˌkɒpiə] kopírka, xerox
- pickpocketing** kapesní krádeže
- planets** planety
- plant a bomb** [bɒm] umístit, nastrážit bombu
- Polaroid camera** Polaroid
- political scene** [pəˈlɪtɪkəl siːn] politická scéna
- polling station** [ˈpəʊlɪŋ ˈsteɪʃən] volební místo
- pose a potential risk** představovat možné riziko
- post-electoral** [ˌpəʊst ɪˈlektərəl] povolební
- prejudice against** [ˈpredʒʊdɪs] předsudky vůči

- price liberalisation** [ˌlɪbərəlaɪ'zeɪʃən] liberalizace cen
- progress** pokrok, rozvoj, vývoj
- propeller water turbine** vrtulová vodní turbína
- protracted nuclear debate** [prə'træktɪd] dlouhotrvající debata o jaderné energetice
- publicly available** veřejně dostupné
- pursue** [pə'sjuː] pronásledovat
- Quad Coalition** [kwɒd kəʊə'lɪʃən] čtyřkoalice
- racial discrimination** rasová diskriminace
- racism** rasismus
- radical right-wing** radikálně pravicový
- refugees** [ˌrefjʊ'dʒiːz, ˌrefjʊdʒiːz] uprchlíci, utečenci, běženci
- renewable (source of energy)** obnovitelný (zdroj energie)
- replacement** náhrada, nahrazení
- Republican Party** Republikánská strana
- repulse an attack** [rɪ'pʌls] odrazit útok
- research** [rɪ'sɜːtʃ, ˈriːsɜːtʃ] výzkum; zkoumat
- resign from...** [rɪ'zɑːn] rezignovat na..., odstoupit z..., podat demisi
- restrict immigration** omezit imigraci, přistěhovalectví
- retaliation** [rɪ,tæli'eɪʃ(ə)n] oplata, odvěta
- retreat** ustoupit, stáhnout se do bezpečí; ústup, útočiště
- right to vote** volební, hlasovací právo
- rising unemployment** rostoucí nezaměstnanost
- Romas, Romanies** [ˈrəʊmæz ˈrəʊmənɪz] Romové
- science and technology** [tek'nɒlədʒi] věda a technika
- seek refuge** [ˌrefjʊːdʒ] hledat útočiště
- Senate** ['senət] senát
- sentence to...** odsoudit na...
- shock therapy** [ˈθerəpi] šoková terapie, léčba šokem
- shout abuse** [ʃaʊt ə'bjuːs] vykřikovat urážky, nadávky, sprostá slova
- skirmish** ['skɜːmɪʃ] potyčka; výměna názorů, spor
- Social Democratic Party** Česká strana sociálně-demokratická
- soft contact lenses** kontaktní čočky
- solar power / energy** sluneční energie
- solar system** sluneční soustava
- sovereign republic** ['sɒvrɪn] nezávislá, suverénní republika
- space flight, travel** kosmický let, let do vesmíru
- space laboratory** [lə'bɒrətɪ, ˈlæbrətɔːri] vesmírná laboratoř, orbitální stanice
- space shuttle** raketoplán
- spaceship** kosmická loď
- Speaker (GB)** předseda Dolní sněmovny
- split of Czechoslovakia** rozdělení Československa
- star** hvězda
- step down (from)** odstoupit, rezignovat (na)
- store nuclear waste** skladovat jaderný odpad
- strike at an enemy** zaútočit na nepřítele
- subject to indignation** vystaven nevoli, pobouření
- suffrage** ['sʌfrɪdʒ] volební právo
- Sun (the)** Slunce
- supersonic aircraft** nadzvukový letoun, letadlo
- surrender** vzdát se, kapitulovat
- surrender one's weapons** složit zbraně
- take sb prisoner** zajmout někoho
- tarnish** pošpinit
- tension** napětí
- terrorism** terorismus
- test-tube babies** děti ze zkumavky
- therapeutic** [ˌθerə'pjʊːtɪk] léčebný
- thermal energy** [ˈθɜːm(ə)l] tepelná energie
- tidal power** přílivová, slapová energie
- tunnelled out** [ˈtʌnəld'əʊt] vytunelován
- twins** dvojčata
- UFO (unidentified flying object)** [ˌjuːɪf'əʊ] UFO (neidentifikovaný létající objekt), létající talíř
- universal franchise** [ˈfræntʃaɪz] všeobecné volební právo
- Upper Chamber (GB)** sněmovna, sněmovna lordů
- upsurge in crime** [ˈʌpsɜːdʒ] nárůst zločinnosti
- Venus probe** [ˈviːnəs prəʊb] sonda k Venuši
- vital to** nezbytný, životně důležitý pro
- war and peace** válka a mír
- war crimes** válečné zločiny
- War Crime Tribunal in the Hague** [traɪ'bjuːnəl də heɪg] Mezinárodní soudní tribunál v Haagu
- warring factions** [ˈwɔːrɪŋ ˈfæksjənz] válčící strany, frakce
- watchdog body** dohlížecí, kontrolní orgán
- weapons** ['wepənz] zbraně
- websites** internetové stránky
- win a decisive battle** vyhrát rozhodující bitvu
- windmill** větrný mlýn; větrná elektrárna
- wind power** větrná energie
- winning party** vítězná strana
- withdraw from...** stáhnout (se), odstoupit, odejít (odkud)
- World Wide Web, Web (the)** Internet, světová síť Internet

The car	103	SPORT	158
☞ Road accidents	105	Sports in the modern Summer Olympic Games	159
Public transport	106	The Olympics	161
Travelling by train	107	Winter sports	162
On two wheels or on foot	108	☞ Keeping fit	163
Crossword puzzle	109	Professional sport	164
Practice makes perfect	110	Sports in English-speaking countries	165
And more practice...	111	The games people play	166
		Practice makes perfect	167
		And more practice...	168
FARMING	112	PHRASES AND PHRASAL VERBS	169
Modern developments	113		
Animals on and around the farm	114	MEDIA	170
☞ The sounds of a farm	115	☞ Newspapers	170
Practice makes perfect	116	Television	172
And more practice...	117	Radio	173
		Practice makes perfect	174
		And more practice...	175
CLIMATE	118	CULTURE	176
Talking about the weather	118	Going to the theatre	176
Rainy weather	120	Going to the cinema	178
Cold weather	121	Musical instruments	179
Hot weather	122	☞ Going to a concert	180
Weather in general	123	Books and reading	181
☞ Atmosphere	124	Poetry (<i>TL</i>)	182
Practice makes perfect	125	Practice makes perfect	183
And more practice...	126	And more practice...	184
		EDUCATION	185
NATURE	127	☞ Studying and examinations	185
In the wild	127	Secondary school	186
Classification of Animals	129	Public school	187
The countryside (<i>TL</i>)	130	University	188
Friend or foe? (<i>TL</i>)	132	Practice makes perfect	190
At the zoo	134	And more practice...	191
☞ Pets	135	HOLIDAYS	192
Plants	136	☞ Christmas	195
Practice makes perfect	138	Practice makes perfect	196
And more practice...	139	And more practice...	197
EVERYDAY PHRASES	140	MODERN SOCIETY	198
		☞ Globalization	198
THE HUMAN BODY	141	Economic and political situation	199
First impressions	141	Discrimination	200
☞ Head and face	142	War and peace, terrorism	201
Body and limbs	144	Progress in science and technology	202
Practice makes perfect	146	Energy	204
And more practice...	147	Practice makes perfect	205
		And more practice...	206
HEALTH	148	KEY	207
☞ Routine illnesses and accidents	148	VOCABULARY	248
First aid	149		
Disabilities	150		
Teeth and the dentist	151		
Medicines and treatments	152		
STDs and drug abuse	153		
Other health problems	154		
Pregnancy and childbirth	155		
Practice makes perfect	156		
And more practice...	157		

Jarmila Fictumová,
John Ceccarelli, Tony Long

ANGLIČTINA
KONVERZACE PRO POKROČILÉ
Topic-based Vocabulary for Advanced Learners

Odpovědná redaktorka Anne Johnson
Kreslené ilustrace Lukáš Fictum
Obálka Bohdan Lukáš
Sazba Čestmír Kučera
Vydala Společnost pro odbornou literaturu –
– Barrister & Principal
Martinkova 5, 602 00 Brno
www.barrister.cz
e-mail: distribuce@barrister.cz
Tel.: 545 211 015

Brno 2008
vydání druhé, upravené
Doporučená prodejní cena 445 Kč

ISBN 978-80-87029-40-4

V čem se tato učebnice liší od jiných?

Jde s dobou, ale současně vychází z prověřených učebních metod.

Tato učebnice je kolektivním dílem. K jeho vytvoření přispěla celá řada českých učitelů a rodilých mluvčích, kteří v průběhu několika desetiletí řešili stejný problém – jak naučit studenty mluvit anglicky tak, aby byli schopni komunikovat v každodenních situacích a byli připraveni úspěšně splnit požadavky jazykových zkoušek na vyšší úrovni (podle Společného evropského rámce úrovně B2 až C2).

V dnešní době se stále více lidí učí angličtinu i po ukončení studia na různých typech škol. Samostudium a využití možností, které nabízí internet, se stává součástí běžného života. Je proto třeba, aby i studijní a výukové materiály „šly s dobou“ a byly šity na míru dnešním studentům. Cvičení obsažená v původním vydání učebnice byla určena převážně pro práci ve třídě. Nyní je součástí učebnice také klíč a slovníček zahrnující nejdůležitější výrazy.

Učebnice má rovněž e-learningovou podporu. Na specializovaném portálu Filozofické fakulty Masarykovy univerzity naleznete stejnojmenný kurz (<http://eldum.phil.muni.cz/course/view.php?id=19>), vytvořený v e-learningovém prostředí Moodle. Tento kurz nabízí několik možností dalšího studia slovíček k jednotlivým tématům – od běžných online cvičení na různých místech internetu přes software na procvičování slovní zásoby z učebnice (s možností jejího doplnění výrazy dle vlastní volby) až po interaktivní testy. Seznamy slovíček k jednotlivým stranám učebnice potom usnadňují přípravu na vyučování, případně slouží k opakování. Kurz je volně přístupný, učitelé si jej mohou stáhnout a používat ve vlastní instalaci systému Moodle.

Součástí učebnice je:

- CD s nahrávkami MP3 a dalšími materiály ke každému tématu;
- klíč ke cvičením a texty nahrávek;
- anglicko-český slovníček, který zahrnuje slovní zásobu (21 témat), britskou i americkou angličtinu, idiomy, fráze, metafory a eufemismy;
- e-learningová podpora.



7150

www.barrister.cz



Barrister & Principal